ICSE

2027

HISTORY & CIVICS

NODIA

CHAPTERWISE QUESTION BANK

21 Years (2026-2006) Solved Exam Papers

Class 10

Nodia

Scan QR for Demo PDF

GET ALL STUDY MATERIAL IN ONE APP!

- Textbooks
- Previous Year Chapterwise Question Banks
- 30 Sets Sample Papers
- Worksheets

FREE!

DOWNLOAD NOW!

SCAN & DOWNLOAD

GET IT ON Google Play

ICSE 2027

HISTORY & CIVICS

Including Case Based Questions

CLASS 10

Chapter-wise Question Bank

Based on Previous 21 Year 55 Papers

NODIA

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

ICSE History and Civics Question Bank Class 10
Edition April 2026
Published by : NODIA
An Imprint of NODIA EDITIONS LLP

Information contained in this book has been obtained by author, from sources believes to be reliable. However, neither NODIA nor its author guarantee the accuracy or completeness of any information herein and NODIA nor its author shall be responsible for any error, omissions, or damages arising out of use of this information. This book is published with the understanding that NODIA and its author are supplying information but are not attempting to render engineering or other professional services.

© NODIA EDITIONS LLP

MRP ₹410.00

This book is available on amazon and flipkart only and not available in market.

NODIA EDITIONS LLP
125, Sector 6, Vidyadhar Nagar, Jaipur 302039
Phone :+91 9024037387
email : mail@nodia.in

CONTENTS

	ICSE Examination Paper 2026	5-15
	ICSE Examination Paper 2025	16-24
Section-A	**HISTORY**	
CHAP 1.	The First War of Independence 1857	25-54
CHAP 2.	Growth of Nationalism	55-81
CHAP 3.	First Phase of The Indian National Movement	82-100
CHAP 4.	Second Phase of Indian National Movement	101-129
CHAP 5.	Gandhian Era and The Struggle for Independence	130-153
CHAP 6.	Forward Bloc and The INA	154-167
CHAP 7.	Independence and Partition of India	168-187
CHAP 8.	The First World War	188-211
CHAP 9.	Rise of Dictatorships	212-227
CHAP 10.	The Second World War	228-248
CHAP 11.	The United Nation	249-274
CHAP 12.	Non Aligned Movement	275-287
Section-B	**CIVICS**	
CHAP 13.	The Union Legislature	288-318
CHAP 14.	President and Vice President	319-338
CHAP 15.	Prime Minister and Council of Ministers	339-358
CHAP 16.	The Supreme Court	359-378
CHAP 17.	High Court and Subordinate Courts	379-397

****

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

NODIA APP

Free PDF For All Study Material

Search Play Store by NODIA

ICSE CLASS X EXAM 2026

HISTORY & CIVICS

H.C.G. Paper - I

Time: 2 Hours **Max. Marks: 80**

General Instructions:

1. Answer to this Paper must be written on the answer sheet provided separately.
2. You will not be allowed to write during first 15 minutes.
3. This time is to be spent in reading the question paper.
4. The time given at the head of this Paper is the time allowed for writing the answers.
5. Attempt all questions from Part I (Compulsory).
6. A total of five questions are to be attempted from Part II, two out of three questions from Section A and three out of five questions from Section B.
7. The intended marks for questions or parts of questions are given in brackets [ ].

PART - I

(Attempt all question from this part)

QUESTION 1.

Select the correct answers to the questions from the given options.

(Do not copy the questions, write the correct answer only).

(i) Choose the correct option to replace the underlined word. The collection of State Revenue falls under the **Consultative** Jurisdiction of the High Court.

(A) Advisory
(B) Revisory
(C) Original
(D) Appellate

Ans :

(C) Original
The collection of State Revenue falls under the Original Jurisdiction of the High Court, meaning the court has the authority to hear such cases for the first time. Advisory Jurisdiction belongs to the Supreme Court, while Revisory and Appellate deal with reviewing lower court decisions.

(ii) Which session of the Parliament is most associated with this picture?

(A) Budget Session
(B) Summer Session
(C) Winter Session
(D) Monsoon Session

Ans :

(A) Budget Session
The image shows a rupee coin, symbolizing finances/budget. The Budget Session of Parliament is the most important session where the Union Budget is presented, usually held between February and May. It deals with financial matters, demands for grants, and appropriation bills.

(iii) Given below are the details of a few Indian Citizens.

Person	Age (in years)	Description
W	30	Is an army officer
X	25	Is a Union Leader
Y	34	Is a school Principal
Z	69	Is a retired Professor

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

Select the one who is eligible to be a Vice President.
(A) X
(B) W
(C) Y
(D) Z

Ans :

(D) Z
To be Vice President, one must be: a citizen of India, at least 35 years old, and eligible for Rajya Sabha membership. W is an army officer (holds office of profit), X is only 25, Y is 34 (underage). Z, aged 69, a retired professor, fulfills all qualifications.

(iv) The rule mentioned in the headline below can be proclaimed in a state on the recommendation of _____.

INDIAN EXPRESS
Punjab is in for President's rule
Situation alarming: Chaturvedi
New Delhi,

(A) The President
(B) The Vice President
(C) The Governor
(D) The Chief Justice of India

Ans :

(C) The Governor
The headline refers to President's Rule (Article 356) in Punjab. It can be proclaimed in a state on the recommendation of the Governor, who reports to the President that the state's constitutional machinery has broken down. The President then imposes direct central rule.

(v) Mr. Anand has been illegally detained by the police, and his family has not been able to meet him. The family members have approached the High Court for help. Which writ will the court issue in this case?
(A) Habeas Corpus
(B) Quo Warranto
(C) Mandamus
(D) Certiorari

Ans :

(A) Habeas Corpus
Habeas Corpus means "produce the body." It is issued when a person is illegally detained without trial or lawful justification. Since Mr. Anand is being unlawfully held and his family cannot meet him, the High Court would issue this writ to produce him before the court.

(vi) Identify the correct statements about the Lok Sabha.
P. Has no nominated members.
Q. Term can be extended during emergency.
R. Has two members nominated by the President.
S. Can be dissolved by the Speaker.
(A) P and Q
(B) R and S
(C) Q and R
(D) P and S

Ans :

(A) P and Q
Statements P and Q are correct. The Lok Sabha has no nominated members, as the Anglo-Indian nomination was abolished by the 104th Constitutional Amendment. Its term can be extended during a National Emergency. Statement R is incorrect due to this amendment, and S is incorrect because only the President can dissolve the Lok Sabha.

(vii) **Assertion (A) :** Hitler attacked Poland to capture the Danzig Port.
Reason (R) : Poland was accused of committing atrocities against the Germans.
(A) (A) is true and (R) is false.
(B) (A) is false and (R) is true.
(C) Both (A) and (R) are true and (R) is the correct explanation of (A).
(D) Both (A) and (R) are true but (R) is not the correct explanation of (A).

Ans :

(C) Both (A) and (R) are true and (R) is the correct explanation of (A).
Hitler aimed to capture Danzig and expand German territory, which was a major cause of attacking Poland. He also accused Poland of atrocities against Germans to justify the invasion. These accusations were used as a pretext, directly supporting his objective, making the reason a correct explanation.

NODIA

(viii) Identify the option which shows the correct chronology of the following events:
1. The Lucknow Pact
2. The Surat Split
3. The establishment of the Muslim League

(A) 1-2-3
(B) 1-3-2
(C) 3-2-1
(D) 2-1-3

Ans :

(C) 3-2-1
Correct chronological order:
Muslim League established — 1906
Surat Split — 1907
Lucknow Pact — 1916
So the order is 3→2→1. This sequence is important in understanding early 20th-century Indian political history and Hindu-Muslim relations.

(ix) Identify the odd one out of the following signatories of the Triple Entente.
(A) France
(B) Russia
(C) Japan
(D) England

Ans :

(C) Japan
The Triple Entente consisted of France, Russia, and Britain. Japan was NOT a member of the Triple Entente — it was part of the Triple Alliance initially and later joined the Allied side in WWI separately. Hence Japan is the odd one out among the given options.

(x) In the town of Sundar Nagar, the local government decided to cut down a large number of trees to build a shopping mall. The children were upset because the trees provided a place to play. A group of school students decided to take action based on the lesson they had studied about the Earth Nationalists. Which of the following actions are they **NOT** likely to adopt?
(A) Hold placards with the message "Save Our Trees".
(B) Write letters to the local newspapers expressing their concerns.
(C) Plant saplings to show their commitment to the environment.
(D) Forcibly prevent workers sent by the Government.

Ans :

(D) Forcibly prevent workers sent by the Government.
The students studied about Earth Nationalists (environmentalists) who believe in peaceful, non-violent activism. Holding placards, writing letters, and planting saplings are all lawful actions. Forcibly preventing government workers is illegal and violent — not something environmentalists would advoca

(xi) Under which policy of expansion was the place marked in the map annexed by the British?

(A) The Doctrine of Lapse
(B) The Subsidiary Alliance
(C) Pretext of misgovernance
(D) Outright wars

Ans :

(C) Pretext of misgovernance
The map shows Awadh (Oudh). It was annexed by Lord Dalhousie in 1856 on the pretext of misgovernance by the Nawab. Unlike the Doctrine of Lapse (applied to states without heirs) or Subsidiary Alliance, Awadh was taken over citing alleged maladministration as justification.

(xii) Identify the correct pair of words from the given options.
(A) Doctrine of Lapse -- Lord Canning
(B) Subsidiary Alliance -- Lord Wellesley
(C) Arms Act -- Lord Curzon
(D) Vernacular Press Act -- Lord Dalhousie

Ans :

(B) Subsidiary Alliance -- Lord Wellesley
The Subsidiary Alliance was introduced by Lord Wellesley in 1798. The Doctrine of Lapse was introduced by Lord Dalhousie (not Canning). The Arms Act was passed by Lord Lytton (not Curzon). The Vernacular Press Act was also Lord Lytton's (not Dalhousie).

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

ICSC CLASS 9

Previous Year Solved Exam Question Bank

Click your Subject and Instantly get a free PDF or Order the Hard copy from Amazon.

English Language

English Literature

Physics

Chemistry

Biology

Mathematics

Geography

History and Civics

Economics

Commercial Studies

Environmental Science

Physical Education

Computer Application

Economics Application

Commercial Application

Environ. Application

Home Science

Hindi

Robotics and AI

Yoga

For Other Subject PDF of all Classes, and for NEET, JEE and CUET visit

www.pdf.tube

ICSC CLASS 10

Previous Year Solved Exam Question Bank

Click your Subject and Instantly get a free PDF or Order the Hard copy from Amazon.

English Language	English Literature	Physics	Chemistry
Biology	Mathematics	Geography	History and Civics
Economics	Commercial Studies	Environmental Science	Physical Education
Computer Application	Economics Application	Commercial Application	Environ. Application
Home Science	Hindi	Robotics and AI	Yoga

BUY IT ON amazon

DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM

For Other Subject PDF of all Classes, and for NEET, JEE and CUET visit

www.pdf.tube

ISC CLASS 11

Previous Year Solved Exam Question Bank

Click your Subject and Instantly get a free PDF or Order the Hard copy from Amazon.

English Com

Mathematics

Physics

Chemistry

Biology

Physical Education

Environmental Science

Computer Science

Accountancy

Business Studies

Economics

Commerce

Legal Studies

Mass Media

Home Science

History

Geography

Political Science

Psychology

Sociology

For Other Subject of All Clasess PDF and for NEET, JEE and CUET visit

www.pdf.tube

ISC CLASS 12

Previous Year Solved Exam Question Bank

Click your Subject and Instantly get a free PDF or Order the Hard copy from Amazon.

English Com

Mathematics

Physics

Chemistry

Biology

Physical Education

Environmental Science

Computer Science

Accountancy

Business Studies

Economics

Commerce

Legal Studies

Mass Media

Home Science

History

Geography

Political Science

Psychology

Sociology

For Other Subject of All Clasess PDF and for NEET, JEE and CUET visit

www.pdf.tube

(xiii) Which of the following is **NOT** a consequence of the Second World War?
(A) Cold War
(B) Defeat of the Axis Powers
(C) Formation of the United Nations
(D) Formation of the League of Nations

Ans :

(D) Formation of the League of Nations
The League of Nations was formed after World War I (1919), not World War II. Consequences of WWII include: the Cold War, defeat of Axis Powers, and formation of the United Nations (1945). Hence the League of Nations is NOT a consequence of the Second World War.

(xiv) Read the description and choose the correct option:
He was an early nationalist leader who presided over the second session of the Indian National Congress. Choose the correct option.
(A) Dadabhai Naoroji
(B) Gopal Krishna Gokhale
(C) Bipin Chandra Pal
(D) Lokmanya Tilak

Ans :

(A) Dadabhai Naoroji
Dadabhai Naoroji presided over the second session of the Indian National Congress held in Calcutta in 1886. Known as the "Grand Old Man of India," he was an early moderate nationalist leader who also introduced the Drain of Wealth Theory criticizing British economic exploitation.

(xv) Which organ of the United Nations Organisation gives this special power to its permanent members?

(A) The General Assembly
(B) The International Court of Justice
(C) The Security Council
(D) The Trusteeship Council

Ans :

(C) The Security Council
The image shows a VETO power symbol. The Security Council grants the special veto power to its five permanent members (P5) — USA, UK, France, Russia, and China. Any one of these can veto (block) a resolution, making it one of the most powerful features of the UN.

(xvi) The International Court of Justice has _____ judges.
(A) 15
(B) 10
(C) 9
(D) 5

Ans :

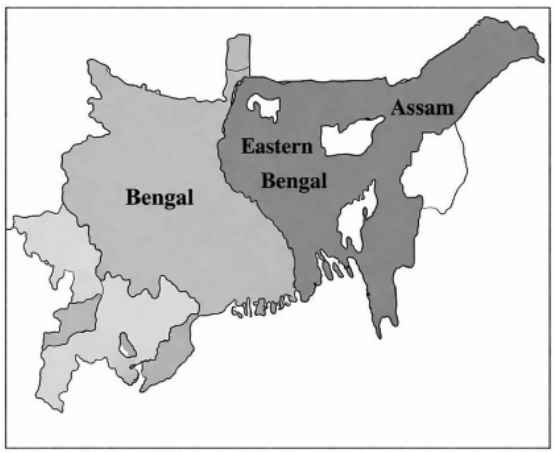
(A) 15
The International Court of Justice (ICJ), based in The Hague, Netherlands, consists of 15 judges elected by the UN General Assembly and Security Council for 9-year terms. No two judges can be from the same country. It settles legal disputes between nations and gives advisory opinions.

QUESTION 2.

(i) Mention any two reasons for the indirect election of the President.

(ii) Imagine you were part of the Indian National Army. Mention any two objectives of the army.

(iii) Look at thqme picture given and answer the question that follow.



In which year did this Partition happen? Who was responsible for this Partition?

(iv) Mention any two objectives of the Muslim League.

(v) UNESCO provides protection for great cultural institutions.
Mention any two ways in which it works towards the preservation of cultural heritage.

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

(vi) Mention any two causes for the Second World War.

(vii) President Ramnath Kovind promulgates an Ordinance which will legally allow the farmers to sell their produce without restrictions across the country.

— The Times of India, 5th June 2020

When can the President introduce an Ordinance? When does an Ordinance become inoperative?

Ans :

(i) Two reasons for the indirect election of the President :
1. Maintains neutrality — Direct election would make the President politically active and partisan. Indirect election through elected representatives ensures the President remains a constitutional head, above party politics.
2. Reflects federal character — The Electoral College includes both Parliament members and State Legislative Assembly members, ensuring states have a voice and the federal structure of India is respected in the election process.

(ii) Two objectives of the Indian National Army (INA) :
1. Liberate India from British rule — The primary objective of the INA under Subhas Chandra Bose was to overthrow British colonial rule by military force, using the slogan "Delhi Chalo" (March to Delhi).
2. Establish a free and united India — The INA aimed to set up a free Indian government after independence, uniting Hindus, Muslims, and Sikhs under one national force regardless of religion or caste.

(iii) The Partition of Bengal took place in 1905.
Responsible: Lord Curzon, the then Viceroy of India, was responsible. He divided Bengal into two parts — West Bengal (Hindu majority) and East Bengal with Assam (Muslim majority) — officially citing administrative reasons, but actually to divide the nationalist movement and weaken Indian unity.

(iv) Two objectives of the Muslim League :
1. Protect Muslim interests — The Muslim League, founded in 1906, aimed to safeguard the political rights and interests of Muslims in India, ensuring they were not dominated by the Hindu majority in a democratic setup.
2. Demand for a separate nation — Over time, a key objective became achieving a separate homeland for Muslims, which eventually led to the demand for Pakistan through the Lahore Resolution of 1940.

(v) Two ways UNESCO works towards preservation of cultural heritage :
1. World Heritage Sites — UNESCO designates important cultural and natural sites across the world as World Heritage Sites, providing them international recognition, legal protection, and financial assistance for conservation and restoration.
2. Safeguarding Intangible Heritage — UNESCO works to preserve intangible cultural heritage such as traditional music, dance, crafts, and oral traditions through its 2003 Convention, documenting and promoting endangered cultural practices globally.

(vi) Two causes of the Second World War :
1. Rise of Fascism and Nazism — The rise of aggressive dictators like Hitler in Germany and Mussolini in Italy, who pursued expansionist foreign policies and militarism, directly threatened world peace and led to the outbreak of war in 1939.
2. Failure of the League of Nations — The League of Nations failed to check the aggressive actions of Germany, Italy, and Japan due to lack of strong enforcement powers and the absence of major powers like the USA, making war inevitable.

(vii)(a) When introduced: The President can promulgate an Ordinance under Article 123 when Parliament is not in session and immediate legislative action is required. It has the same force as an Act of Parliament.

(b) When inoperative: An Ordinance becomes inoperative in the following cases:
1. If it is not approved by Parliament within 6 weeks of the reassembly of Parliament.
2. If both Houses pass resolutions disapproving it before the 6-week period ends.
3. If the President withdraws it at any time.

NODIA

PART - II

SECTION-A

(Attempt any two questions from this Section.)

QUESTION 3.

The Union Parliament comprises the President and the two houses. With reference to this, answer the following questions:

(i) Mention any three powers which are common to both the houses of the Parliament.

(ii) Who elects the members of the Rajya Sabha? Mention any two exclusive powers to analyse the advantages of the Rajya Sabha.

(iii) The Parliament controls the functioning of the Executive.
Mention any four ways in which it exercises control.

Ans :

(i) Three powers common to both Houses of Parliament :
1. Legislative Power — Both Houses have the power to pass ordinary bills. A bill must be passed by both Lok Sabha and Rajya Sabha before it can become law. Neither house can unilaterally pass a bill except in cases of deadlock resolved by a Joint Session.
2. Power to Amend the Constitution — Both Houses equally participate in constitutional amendments under Article 368. A Constitutional Amendment Bill must be passed by a special majority in both Houses separately. There is no provision for a Joint Session in case of disagreement.
3. Power over the Executive — Both Houses can question ministers, move adjournment motions, and hold discussions to hold the government accountable. Members of both Houses can ask questions during Question Hour to scrutinize executive functioning.

(ii) Members of the Rajya Sabha are elected by the elected members of the State Legislative Assemblies (Vidhan Sabhas) through the method of Single Transferable Vote with Proportional Representation. 12 members are nominated by the President for their expertise in art, science, literature, and social service.
Two Exclusive Powers of Rajya Sabha:
1. Power under Article 249 — The Rajya Sabha can pass a resolution by a 2/3rd majority authorizing Parliament to legislate on a subject in the State List in the national interest. This gives Rajya Sabha a unique federal role in protecting national unity.
2. Power under Article 312 — The Rajya Sabha can pass a resolution by 2/3rd majority to create new All India Services common to both the Union and the States. This power exclusively belongs to Rajya Sabha and highlights its role as the protector of federal balance.

(iii) Four ways Parliament controls the Executive:
1. Question Hour — During Question Hour, members of Parliament ask questions — starred, unstarred, and short notice — to ministers about the functioning of their departments. This forces ministers to remain accountable and transparent about government policies and actions.
2. No-Confidence Motion — The Lok Sabha can pass a Vote of No Confidence against the Council of Ministers. If passed, the entire Cabinet must resign. This is the most powerful tool of Parliament to remove a government that has lost public trust.
3. Cut Motions — During budget discussions, members can move Cut Motions on Demands for Grants to reduce the allocation of any ministry. This is an effective tool to criticize government spending and express disapproval of specific policies or actions.
4. Adjournment Motion — Members can move an Adjournment Motion to draw urgent attention to a serious matter of public importance. If admitted, it suspends normal business and puts the government on the defensive, compelling ministers to explain their position.

QUESTION 4.

The Prime Minister is the executive head of the country. With reference to the Prime Minister and his Cabinet, answer the following questions:

(i) On whose advice are the Cabinet Ministers appointed? Name the other two categories of the Council of Ministers.

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

(ii) What is meant by the term collective responsibility of the Council of Ministers?

(iii) The Prime Minister is central to the life of the Cabinet.
Justify this statement by mentioning any four powers of the Prime Minister with reference to the Cabinet.

Ans :

(i) Cabinet Ministers are appointed by the President of India on the advice of the Prime Minister. The President has no discretion in this matter and must act according to the Prime Minister's recommendations under Article 75.
Other two categories of the Council of Ministers:
1. Ministers of State — They are junior ministers who may or may not be attached to a Cabinet Minister. They assist Cabinet Ministers or independently hold charge of smaller departments.
2. Deputy Ministers — They assist Cabinet Ministers or Ministers of State in their work. They do not attend Cabinet meetings independently and work under the supervision of senior ministers.

(ii) Collective Responsibility means that all ministers, regardless of their personal opinions, must stand united behind every decision taken by the Cabinet. It is enshrined in Article 75(3) of the Constitution.
Key aspects:
1. If a minister disagrees with a Cabinet decision, they must either accept it publicly or resign from the Cabinet.
2. If the Lok Sabha passes a Vote of No Confidence, the entire Cabinet must resign together — not just one minister.
3. All ministers speak with one voice in public — no minister can publicly oppose a Cabinet decision.
4. This principle ensures governmental stability, unity, and accountability to the Lok Sabha as a whole.

(iii) Four powers of the Prime Minister with reference to the Cabinet:
1. Formation of the Cabinet — The Prime Minister has the sole power to decide the size and composition of the Cabinet. The President appoints ministers only on the PM's advice, so effectively the PM chooses who enters the Cabinet and which portfolio each minister holds.
2. Allocation of Portfolios — The Prime Minister allocates and reshuffles portfolios among ministers at will. A minister holds office at the pleasure of the PM. This power makes the PM the supreme authority in determining ministerial responsibilities and priorities.
3. Presides over Cabinet Meetings — The Prime Minister chairs all Cabinet meetings and sets the agenda. The discussions and decisions in Cabinet are guided by the PM's leadership. No meeting of the Cabinet can be held without the PM's presence or authorization.
4. Dismissal of Ministers — The Prime Minister can ask any minister to resign or advise the President to dismiss them. Since the Cabinet functions on the basis of collective responsibility, a minister who refuses to resign on the PM's request effectively loses their position, making the PM the undisputed leader of the Cabinet.

QUESTION 5.

The single integrated system of judiciary has the Supreme Court at the apex. With reference to the Supreme Court, answer the following questions:

(i) What is the term of the Supreme Court Judge? Mention any two qualifications required for a person to be a Supreme Court Judge.

(ii) Mention any three ways in which the Constitution ensures the independence of the Judiciary.

(iii) Explain the following terms:
(a) Advisory Jurisdiction
(b) Judicial Review

Ans :

(i) A Supreme Court Judge holds office until they reach the age of 65 years. They can also resign earlier by writing to the President, or be removed by Parliament through a special majority on grounds of proved misbehaviour or incapacity.
Two Qualifications:
1. Must be a citizen of India and must have served as a Judge of a High Court (or two or more High Courts in succession) for at least five years, OR must have been an advocate of a High Court for at least ten years.

2. Must be, in the opinion of the President, a distinguished jurist — meaning a person of exceptional legal knowledge and scholarship, even if they haven't served as a judge or advocate, can be appointed under this provision.

(ii) Three ways the Constitution ensures independence of the Judiciary:

1. Security of Tenure — Supreme Court judges cannot be removed easily. Removal requires an address by both Houses of Parliament passed by a special majority on grounds of proved misbehaviour or incapacity. This protects judges from political pressure or arbitrary dismissal.
2. Service conditions cannot be varied to their disadvantage — After a judge's appointment, their salary, allowances, and service conditions cannot be changed to their disadvantage during their term. This ensures judges are not financially pressured by the government to deliver favorable judgments.
3. Prohibition from practice after retirement — A retired Supreme Court Judge cannot plead or act in any court or authority within India after retirement. This prevents judges from being influenced during their tenure by hopes of future employment from parties appearing before them.

(iii) Explanation of terms:

(a) Advisory Jurisdiction : Under Article 143 of the Constitution, the President can refer any question of law or fact of public importance to the Supreme Court for its opinion. The Supreme Court may (not must) give its advisory opinion. This opinion is not binding on the President but carries great persuasive value. For example, the President may seek the Court's opinion on constitutional questions before making important decisions.

(b) Judicial Review : Judicial Review is the power of the Supreme Court (and High Courts) to examine the constitutional validity of any law passed by the Legislature or any executive action. If a law is found to violate the Constitution or Fundamental Rights, the Court can declare it null and void. This power is implied in Articles 13, 32, and 226 and serves as a vital check on the arbitrary use of power by the government, making it the guardian of the Constitution.

SECTION-B

(Attempt any three questions from this Section)

QUESTION 6.

The 1857 Revolt is also referred to as the Sepoy Mutiny by the British. With reference to the role played by the soldiers, answer the following questions:

(i) What was the General Service Enlistment Act? Why were soldiers unhappy with it?

(ii) How did the introduction of the new Enfield Rifle become an immediate cause of the revolt?

(iii) The British reformed the army after the revolt ended.
Mention any four changes made in the army.

Ans :

(i) General Service Enlistment Act Passed in 1856 by Lord Canning, it required soldiers to serve anywhere the British government ordered, including overseas (crossing the seas/black waters).
Why unhappy:

1. Hindus believed crossing the seas would cause loss of caste and religion.
2. Soldiers were forced to serve far from home without extra allowances.
3. It was seen as a direct attack on their religious beliefs and customs.

(ii) Enfield Rifle as Immediate Cause : The new Enfield Rifle required soldiers to bite off the cartridge before loading. A rumour spread that the cartridge grease was made from cow fat (sacred to Hindus) and pig fat (forbidden for Muslims). This deeply hurt the religious sentiments of both Hindu and Muslim soldiers. When soldiers who refused to use these cartridges were punished, it triggered the revolt at Meerut in May 1857.

(iii) Four reforms in the British Army after 1857:

1. Increased European strength — The ratio of European to Indian soldiers was increased to prevent Indians from dominating the army numerically.
2. Divide and Rule in Army — Indians were recruited on the basis of caste, religion, and region to prevent unity among soldiers.

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

3. Control of Artillery — Heavy artillery was placed exclusively under European soldiers so Indians could never gain military superiority.
4. Loyalty-based Recruitment — Soldiers from regions that supported the British during the revolt (like Gurkhas, Sikhs, Pathans) were preferentially recruited as "loyal classes."

QUESTION 7.

Mahatma Gandhi with his principle of Non-violence, changed the direction of the freedom movement. With reference to the Gandhian Movements, answer the following:

(i) Who launched the Khilafat Movement in India? Mention two other causes of the Non-Cooperation Movement.

(ii) Mention any three points to analyse the impact of the Non-Cooperation Movement.

(iii) Mention any four clauses of the Gandhi-Irwin Pact.

Ans :

(i) The Khilafat Movement was launched by Ali Brothers — Muhammad Ali and Shaukat Ali to protest against the dismemberment of the Ottoman Empire and the humiliation of the Caliph (religious head of Islam).
Two other causes of Non-Cooperation Movement:
1. Jallianwala Bagh Massacre (1919) — The brutal killing of hundreds of innocent Indians by General Dyer deeply angered Gandhi and the nation, making non-cooperation inevitable.
2. Rowlatt Act (1919) — This act allowed detention without trial, which Gandhi considered a direct attack on civil liberties, prompting mass resistance.

(ii) Three impacts of the Non-Cooperation Movement:
1. Mass Awakening — For the first time, millions of ordinary Indians — peasants, workers, students — participated in the freedom struggle, making it a truly national movement.
2. Economic Impact on British — Boycott of foreign goods and British institutions caused significant economic damage, forcing the British to take Indian demands more seriously.
3. Communal Unity — The movement successfully united Hindus and Muslims through the joint Khilafat-Non-Cooperation platform, representing rare Hindu-Muslim solidarity.

(iii) Four clauses of the Gandhi-Irwin Pact (1931):
1. Suspension of Civil Disobedience — Gandhi agreed to suspend the Civil Disobedience Movement unconditionally.
2. Release of Political Prisoners — The British agreed to release all non-violent political prisoners arrested during the movement.
3. Right to make Salt — Indians living in coastal areas were permitted to make salt for personal use without paying tax.
4. Congress to attend Round Table Conference — Gandhi agreed to represent Congress at the Second Round Table Conference in London as the sole representative.

QUESTION 8.

Read the passage given below and answer the questions that follow:

India's last Viceroy released a plan on the country's independence from the British on June 3, 1947. The plan came to be celebrated as the 'last plan for independence'. He was appointed Viceroy to India to speed up the process of transfer of power by the then British Prime Minister Clement Atlee.

(i) Identify the Viceroy. Mention any two terms of his plan with reference to the Princely States.

(ii) Mention any three reasons given by the Congress to justify the acceptance of the plan.

(iii) Mention any four provisions of the Indian Independence Act of 1947.

Ans :

(i) Viceroy : Lord Mountbatten — appointed by British PM Clement Attlee to oversee the transfer of power.
Two terms regarding Princely States:
1. Lapse of Paramountcy — British paramountcy over Princely States would lapse, making them technically independent upon British withdrawal.

NODIA

2. Freedom to join either Dominion — Princely States were free to accede to either India or Pakistan based on geographical contiguity and the wishes of their rulers.

(ii) Three reasons Congress accepted the plan:
1. Further Violence — Widespread communal riots were killing thousands daily. Congress accepted partition to stop the bloodshed and restore peace quickly.
2. Immediate Independence — The plan offered complete independence and sovereignty, which Congress prioritized over maintaining undivided India at the cost of more conflict.
3. Guarantees for Minorities — The plan included provisions to protect minority rights, giving Congress confidence that partition could be managed with safeguards.

(iii) Four provisions of the Indian Independence Act 1947 :
1. Two Dominions created — India and Pakistan were established as two independent dominions from August 14–15, 1947.
2. Partition of Bengal and Punjab — The provinces of Bengal and Punjab were partitioned between the two new dominions based on a Boundary Commission.
3. Governor-General for each Dominion — Each dominion would have its own Governor-General — Mountbatten for India, Jinnah for Pakistan.
4. Constituent Assemblies — Each dominion would have its own Constituent Assembly with full powers to frame its constitution and legislate for the country.

QUESTION 9.

Look at the picture given and answer the following questions:

WAR EXTRA! The Evening World. WAR EXTRA!

GERMANY DECLARES WAR; ALL EUROPE IS IN ARMS

THE POWDER MAGAZINE OF THE NEW EUROPE IS ABLAZE AND ITS NEIGHBORS ARE BEING DRAWN INTO THE MAELSTROM. SAYS FRANCE AND ENGLAND HAVE DECIDED IMMEDIATE ACTION TO COUNTRACT THE OFFICIAL ANNOUNCEMEMENT.

BELGIUM ORDERS FULL MOBILIZATION; PARIS GIVEN PANIC VICTORY FOR 52 EXERTION ORDERS.

AUSTRIA ALSO MOBILISED, REPORTS SAY.

AUSTRIA ALSO MOBILIZES, REPORTS SAY.

BALKAN ITALY BREAKS THE TRIPLE

FRANCE CALLS OUT HER WAR ARMY

(i) Explain the immediate cause of the war associated with this headline.

(ii) According to the Treaty of Versailles, mention the following:
(a) The war reparation to be paid by Germany.
(b) Two ways in which France benefitted from the Treaty.

(iii) Name the two dictators who rose in Europe after this war. Mention any two common causes for the rise of dictatorship.

Ans :

(i) Immediate cause of WWI : The assassination of Archduke Franz Ferdinand, heir to the Austro-Hungarian throne, and his wife in Sarajevo on June 28, 1914 by Gavrilo Princip (a Bosnian Serb nationalist) was the immediate cause. Austria-Hungary blamed Serbia and declared war, triggering the alliance system that drew all major European powers into the conflict.

(ii) Treaty of Versailles:
(a) War Reparations by Germany : Germany was forced to pay £6.6 billion (132 billion gold marks) as war reparations to the Allied Powers. This enormous financial burden crippled the German economy, causing massive inflation and unemployment that fueled resentment among Germans.
(b) Two ways France benefitted:
1. Return of Alsace-Lorraine — France recovered the provinces of Alsace and Lorraine, lost to Germany in the Franco-Prussian War of 1871.
2. Saar Coalfields — France received control of the Saar coalfields for 15 years as compensation for German destruction of French coal mines during the war.

(iii) Two dictators & Two common causes for rise of dictatorship:
(a) Two Dictators:
1. Adolf Hitler — Germany
2 Benito Mussolini — Italy
(b) Two common causes:
1. Economic Hardship — The Great Depression of 1929 caused massive unemployment and poverty, making people desperate for strong leaders who promised economic revival and national glory.

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

2. Failure of Democratic Governments — Weak democratic governments failed to address economic and social crises, pushing people towards authoritarian leaders who promised order and stability.

QUESTION 10.

The United Nations Organisation and the Non-Aligned Movement emerged after the Second World War. With reference to these, answer the following questions:

(i) Mention any three objectives of the United Nations Organisation.

(ii) The General Assembly is the deliberative organ of the United Nations. Mention any three functions of the General Assembly to analyse this statement.

(iii) With reference to the Non-Aligned Movement, mention:
(a) any two architects
(b) any two objectives

Ans :

(i) Three objectives of the United Nations:
1. Maintenance of International Peace — To prevent wars and settle disputes between nations through peaceful negotiation, mediation, and collective security measures.
2. Promotion of Human Rights — To promote and protect fundamental human rights, social justice, and equal rights for all people regardless of race, gender, or religion.
3. International Cooperation — To encourage cooperation among nations in solving economic, social, cultural, and humanitarian problems globally.

(ii) Three functions of the General Assembly:
1. Deliberative Function — It discusses and debates any matter within the scope of the UN Charter, serving as the world's main forum for international dialogue and opinion.
2. Budgetary Control — It considers and approves the UN budget, apportioning expenses among member states, giving it financial control over the entire organization.
3. Election of Members — It participates in electing members of the Security Council, ICJ, and other UN organs, making it central to the functioning of the entire UN system.

NODIA

(iii) Non-Aligned Movement:
(a) Any two architects:
1. Jawaharlal Nehru — India
2. Marshal Tito — Yugoslavia
(b) Any two objectives:
1. Non-alignment with power blocs — To stay independent of both the US-led Western bloc and USSR-led Eastern bloc during the Cold War, preserving national sovereignty.
2. Promotion of world peace — To work towards disarmament, peaceful coexistence, and settlement of international disputes through dialogue rather than military confrontation.

END

ICSE CLASS X EXAM 2025
HISTORY & CIVICS
H.C.G. Paper - I

Time: 2 Hours **Max. Marks: 80**

General Instructions:

1. Answer to this Paper must be written on the answer sheet provided separately.
2. You will not be allowed to write during first 15 minutes.
3. This time is to be spent in reading the question paper.
4. The time given at the head of this Paper is the time allowed for writing the answers.
5. Attempt all questions from Part I (Compulsory).
6. A total of five questions are to be attempted from Part II, two out of three questions from Section A and three out of five questions from Section B.
7. The intended marks for questions or parts of questions are given in brackets [].

NODIA

PART - I

(Attempt all question from this part)

1. Select the correct answers to the questions from the given options.
(Do not copy the questions, write the correct answer only).

(i) The Council of Ministers is collectively responsible to the _____.
(a) Lok Sabha
(b) President
(c) Rajya Sabha
(d) Prime Minister

Ans :

(a) Lok Sabha
According to Article 75(3) of the Indian Constitution, the Council of Ministers, including the Prime Minister, is collectively responsible to the Lok Sabha. This means that if the Lok Sabha passes a no-confidence motion against the government, the entire Council of Ministers must resign.

(ii) Given below are details of a few Indian Citizens.

Person	Age (In years)	Description
W	25	Is a famous journalist
X	45	Is an industrialist
Y	35	Has declared insolvency
Z	50	Has taken citizenship of another country

Select the one who is eligible to be a member of the Rajya Sabha.
(a) W
(b) X
(c) Y
(d) Z

Ans :

(b) X (The industrialist)
To be eligible for Rajya Sabha membership, a person must:
(i) Be at least 30 years old (as per Article 84 of the Indian Constitution).
(ii) Be an Indian citizen.
(iii) Not be insolvent or disqualified under law.
W (25 years): Not eligible (below the age requirement).
X (45 years, industrialist): Eligible (above 30 years and no disqualifications mentioned).
Y (35 years, insolvent): Not eligible (insolvency is a disqualification).
Z (50 years, foreign citizenship): Not eligible (must be an Indian citizen).

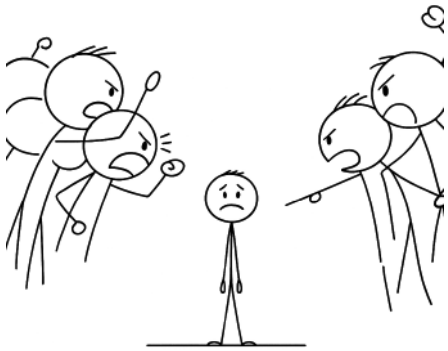
(iii) With reference to the Supreme Court of India, complete the following:
Advisory Jurisdiction : Advice the President : : Judicial Review :
(a) Review its own judgements.
(b) Review the judgements of the High Court.
(c) Review the laws passed by the Parliament.
(d) Review the administration of the Government.

Ans :

(c) Review the laws passed by the Parliament.
Judicial Review is the power of the Supreme Court

to examine the constitutionality of laws passed by Parliament and state legislatures. If a law violates the Constitution, the Supreme Court can declare it unconstitutional. This ensures that all laws adhere to the principles of the Constitution.

(iv) Observe the given picture. In case of a similar unruly situation in the Lok Sabha, choose the action that may be taken by the Speaker.



(a) adjourn the house for lack of quorum.
(b) dissolve the Lok Sabha.
(c) adjourn the house for lack of discipline.
(d) disqualify the members under Anti-defection law.

Ans :

(c) Adjourn the house for lack of discipline.
The image depicts a chaotic situation, similar to an unruly session in the Lok Sabha where members are shouting and arguing. In such a case, the Speaker of the Lok Sabha has the authority to restore order by adjourning the house if members are not maintaining discipline. This is done under Rule 375 of the Lok Sabha Rules, which allows the Speaker to suspend the sitting temporarily to control disorderly conduct.

(v) If an Adjournment Motion is passed in the Lok Sabha ..... .
(a) the Lok Sabha will be dissolved.
(b) the House will discuss a matter of urgent public importance.
(c) the President ends the session.
(d) the Government will fall.

Ans :

(b) The House will discuss a matter of urgent public importance.
An Adjournment Motion is used to draw attention to an urgent matter of public importance. If accepted, it leads to the suspension of normal business for discussion. However, it does not dissolve the Lok Sabha or bring down the government.

(vi) Which emergency will be declared by the President if the security of the Nation is under threat?
(a) General Emergency
(b) Financial Emergency
(c) Constitutional Emergency
(d) President's Rule

Ans :

(a) General Emergency
A General Emergency (National Emergency) is declared under Article 352 when there is a threat to the security of India due to war, external aggression, or armed rebellion. The President declares it on the advice of the Prime Minister and Council of Ministers.

(vii) Read the statements given below and select the option that shows the correct relationship between (A) and (R).
Assertion (A) : Lord Curzon partitioned Bengal in 1905.
Reason (R) : The Nationalists felt that the British wanted to divide the Hindus and the Muslims.
(a) (A) 1s true and (R) Is false.
(b) (R) is true but (A) is false.
(c) Both (A) and (R) are independent of each other.
(d) (A) is the reason for (R).

Ans :

(d) (A) is the reason for (R).
Lord Curzon partitioned Bengal in 1905, citing administrative reasons. However, Indian nationalists believed that the true motive was to divide Hindus and Muslims, thereby weakening the growing nationalist movement. This led to widespread protests, including the Swadeshi Movement.

(viii) Read the description and identify the person. He introduced the Subsidiary Alliance to expand the British control over India.
(a) Lord Dalhousie
(b) Lord Canning
(c) Lord Wellesley
(d) Lord Curzon

Ans :

(c) Lord Wellesley

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

Lord Wellesley introduced the Subsidiary Alliance in India to expand British control. Under this system, Indian rulers had to accept a British force in their territory and were forbidden from making alliances with other powers. In return, they received British protection.

(ix) Identify the odd one out of the following Assertive Nationalists Leaders.
(a) Bipin Chandra Pal
(b) Lala Lajpat Rai
(c) Dadabhai Naoroji
(d) Bal Gangadhar Tilak

Ans :

(c) Dadabhai Naoroji
Bipin Chandra Pal, Lala Lajpat Rai, and Bal Gangadhar Tilak were Assertive Nationalists (Extremists), advocating direct action against British rule.
Dadabhai Naoroji was a Moderate Nationalist, known for his Drain Theory and constitutional approach to self-rule.
Thus, Dadabhai Naoroji is the odd one out.

(x) Who among the following is MOST associated with this picture?

(a) Jyotiba Phule
(b) Raja Ram Mohan Roy
(c) Swami Dayanand Saraswati
(d) Aurobindo Ghosh

Ans :

(a) Jyotiba Phule
Jyotiba Phule, along with his wife Savitribai Phule, pioneered girls' education in India by opening the first school for girls in 1848. He strongly advocated for women's empowerment through education.

1. Raja Ram Mohan Roy focused on abolishing Sati.
2. Swami Dayanand Saraswati emphasized Vedic education.
3. Aurobindo Ghosh was more involved in freedom and spirituality.

(xi) Identify the contributions of Subhash Chandra Bose:
P Was the Supreme Commander of INA
Q Signed the Lucknow Pact
R Led the Quit India Movement
S Founded the Forward Bloc
(a) P and Q
(b) Q and R
(c) P and S
(d) R and S

Ans :

(c) P and S
P: Was the Supreme Commander of INA - Correct (Bose led the Indian National Army).
Q: Signed the Lucknow Pact - Incorrect (The Lucknow Pact was signed in 1916 between Congress and the Muslim League, long before Bose's prominence).
R: Led the Quit India Movement - Incorrect (Mahatma Gandhi led the movement in 1942, Bose had already left India).
S: Founded the Forward Bloc - Correct (Bose founded the Forward Bloc in 1939 after resigning from Congress).

(xii) The market of a small industrial town X has been dominated by many products of foreign companies. The local residents decide to save the Indian industries by helping them increase their sales. Which method of the Assertive Nationalists must they follow to become self-reliant?
(a) Passive Resistance
(b) National Education
(c) Swadeshi
(d) Revivalism

Ans :

(c) Swadeshi
Swadeshi (meaning self-reliance and boycott of foreign goods) was a major strategy used by Assertive Nationalists to promote Indian industries. It was especially significant during the Partition of Bengal (1905) and later during Mahatma Gandhi's movements.

NODIA

(xiii) Which of the following is NOT an objective of the United Nations Organization?
(a) Disarm
(b) Disengage
(c) Decolonise
(d) Develop

Ans :

(b) Disengage
The UNO's objectives include:
1. Disarmament (limiting weapons to maintain peace).
2. De colonization (helping colonies gain independence).
3. Development (promoting social and economic progress).
4. "Disengage" is not a goal, as the UN actively intervenes in global conflicts and crises.

(xiv) Which agency of the United Nations Organization is associated with this picture?

(a) UNESCO
(b) UNICEF
(c) WHO
(d) ILO

Ans :

(a) UNESCO
UNESCO (United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization) promotes education, including girls' education, literacy, and cultural preservation worldwide.
UNICEF focuses on child welfare and healthcare.
WHO deals with global health issues.
ILO focuses on labor rights.

(xv) Which of the following is a common cause for the rise of dictatorship?
(a) Faith in Democracy
(b) Economic Crisis
(c) Freedom of Press
(d) Political Stability

Ans :

(b) Economic Crisis
Economic crises often lead to instability, making people desperate for strong leadership. Hitler in Germany and Mussolini in Italy rose to power due to severe economic problems after World War I. Democracy weakens when economic hardship creates social unrest.

(xvi) Which of the following causes of the First World War is connected to this headline?

WEATHER: Loc and Showers Fair Tomorrow
The Washington Times
FULL LEASED WIRE SERVICE
SUNDAY EVENING EDITION
SERB STUDENT ASSASSINATESATES ARCHDUKE AND HIS DUCHESS

(a) Imperialism
(b) Aggressive Nationalism
(c) Armament Race
(d) Sarajevo Crisis

Ans :

(d) Sarajevo Crisis
The Sarajevo Crisis (1914) occurred when Archduke Franz Ferdinand of Austria-Hungary was assassinated in Sarajevo. This triggered a chain reaction of alliances and declarations of war, leading to World War I. Other factors like Imperialism, Aggressive Nationalism, and the Arms Race contributed but were not the direct cause.

2. (i) Mention any two powers of the Prime Minister with reference to the Cabinet.
(ii) Imagine you are an Early Nationalist leader. Mention any two methods you would follow to fight against the British.
(iii) Mention any two factors that led to the formation of the Muslim League.

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

(iv) Mention any two objectives of the Forward Bloc.
(v) Mention any two ways in which the Treaty of Versailles affected the German Miliary Force.
(vi) What is meant by the term Non-Alignment?
(vii) When a judicial system is correctly calibrated, the law is applied by judges fearlessly, without favour or fear and with respect. That is why judicial security of segue is so fundamental. It is also why judges must be properly paid without any interference from the Executive or Legislature.
The Need for Independent Judiciary) UNODC
From the passage, deduce and mention any two ways in which the Constitution ensures the independence of the Judiciary.

Ans :

(i) Two powers of the Prime Minister with reference to the Cabinet:
1. Formation of the Cabinet – The Prime Minister selects ministers and allocates their portfolios.
2. Leader of the Cabinet – The Prime Minister presides over Cabinet meetings and guides policies.

(ii) Two methods used by Early Nationalist leaders against the British:
1. Petitions and Memorandums – They submitted petitions to the British government demanding reforms.
2. Constitutional Agitation – They used newspapers, speeches, and debates to create awareness.

(iii) Two factors that led to the formation of the Muslim League:
1. Hindu-Muslim Differences – Muslims feared domination by Hindus in a future independent India.
2. Partition of Bengal (1905) – British policies led to the rise of communal consciousness among Muslims.

(iv) Two objectives of the Forward Bloc:
1. Complete Independence – It aimed for full freedom from British rule.
2. Social and Economic Equality – It sought to establish a socialist society in India.

(v) Two ways the Treaty of Versailles affected the German Military Force:
1. Army Reduction – Germany's army was limited to 100,000 soldiers.
2. Weapons Restrictions – Germany was prohibited from having tanks, submarines, and an air force.

(vi) Non-Alignment refers to a policy where a country does not join any military alliance like NATO or the Warsaw Pact. It allows a nation to maintain independent foreign relations without being influenced by global power blocs.

(vii) Two ways the Constitution ensures the independence of the Judiciary:
1. Security of Tenure – Judges cannot be removed arbitrarily and serve till retirement age.
2. Financial Independence – Their salaries are fixed and not subject to the government's approval.

PART - II

SECTION-A

(Attempt any two questions from this Section.)

3. The Parliament of India comprises the President and the two houses. With reference to the Indian Parliament, answer the following questions:
(i) Mention any three circumstances under which the Parliament can make laws on subjects in the state list.
(ii) Explain the following terms:
(a) Question Hour
(b) Quorum
(c) No Confidence Motion
(iii) When can the term of the Lok Sabha be extended? Mention any three powers of the Lok Sabha which show its superiority over the Rayya Sabha.

Ans :

(i) Three circumstances under which Parliament can make laws on subjects in the State List:
1 National Interest (Article 249): If the Rajya Sabha passes a resolution with a two-thirds majority, Parliament can make laws on a State List subject.
2 During National Emergency (Article 250): When a National Emergency is in force, Parliament can legislate on State subjects.
3 Agreement Between States (Article 252): If two or more states request Parliament to make a law on a State List subject, it applies only to those states.

NODIA

(ii) Explanation of Terms:
(a) Question Hour: The first hour of a Parliamentary session where members ask questions to ministers about government policies and administration.
(b) Quorum: The minimum number of members required to be present for a session to be valid. In Parliament, it is one-tenth of the total membership.
(c) No-Confidence Motion: A motion moved in the Lok Sabha to test whether the government still enjoys the majority. If passed, the government must resign.

(iii) The Lok Sabha's term can be extended by one year at a time during a National Emergency (Article 352).
Three powers of Lok Sabha showing its superiority over Rajya Sabha:
1 Money Bills: Only Lok Sabha can introduce Money Bills, and Rajya Sabha can only suggest changes (Article 110).
2 No-Confidence Motion: The government can be removed only if the Lok Sabha passes a No-Confidence Motion.
3 Budget Approval: The Annual Budget is presented and passed only in the Lok Sabha before implementation.

4. The Executive Power of the country is vested in the President and Vice President. With reference to this answer the following questions:
(i) Explain the impeachment process through which the Parliament can remove the President from power.
(ii) Mention any three powers of the Vice President in her/his role as the Chairman of the Rajya Sabha.
(iii) With reference to the powers of President, mention:
(a) Any two Financial Powers
(b) Any two Executive Powers

Ans :

(i) Impeachment Process of the President:The President of India can be removed through impeachment for violating the Constitution (Article 61). The process includes:
1 Notice of Charges: A resolution with charges is signed by at least one-fourth of either House and a 14-day notice is given.
2 Parliamentary Approval: Both Houses of Parliament must pass the resolution by a two-thirds majority of total membership.
3 Removal: If both Houses pass the motion, the President is removed from office.

(ii) Three Powers of the Vice President as Chairman of the Rajya Sabha:
1 Maintaining Order: Ensures smooth proceedings and maintains discipline in the Rajya Sabha.
2 Casting Vote: Can cast a deciding vote in case of a tie.
3 Referring Bills to Committees: Has the power to send bills to parliamentary committees for further review.

(iii) Powers of the President:
(a) Two Financial Powers:
1 Money Bills Approval: No Money Bill can be introduced in Parliament without the President's recommendation.
2 Annual Budget Presentation: The President lays the Union Budget before Parliament every year.
(b) Two Executive Powers:
1 Appointment of Officials: Appoints the Prime Minister, Governors, Chief Justice, and other key officials.
2 Administration of Union Territories: Directly administers Union Territories through appointed Lieutenant Governors.

5. The High Courts of India are the highest courts of appeal in each state. With reference to the High Courts of India, answer the following questions:
(i) What is meant by the term Original Jurisdiction of the High Court? Mention any two cases which fall under this jurisdiction.
(ii) Mention any two advantages of the Lok Adalat. Mention any one difference between the Sessions Court and the Court of the District Judge.
(iii) Explain the following with reference to the High Court:
(a) Revisory Jurisdiction
(b) Court of Record

Ans :

(i) Original Jurisdiction refers to the power of a High Court to hear cases directly without them being appealed from a lower court.
Two Cases Under This Jurisdiction:
1 Disputes related to Fundamental Rights – The High Court can hear cases involving violations of Fundamental Rights under Article 226

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

2 Election Disputes – High Courts handle election-related disputes for Members of Parliament and State Legislatures.

(ii) Two Advantages of Lok Adalat:
1 Speedy Justice – Cases are resolved quickly and without long delays.
2 Cost-Effective – No court fees are required, reducing financial burdens.

Difference Between Sessions Court and Court of District Judge:
1 Sessions Court deals with criminal cases, including serious offenses like murder and robbery.
2 Court of the District Judge handles civil cases, such as property disputes and family matters.

(iii) (a) Revisory Jurisdiction : The High Court has the power to review the judgments of lower courts to ensure they follow the correct legal procedures and do not exceed their authority.
(b) Court of Record : A High Court is called a Court of Record because:
1 Its judgments are recorded and have legal precedence.
2 It has the power to punish for contempt of court if its authority is disrespected.

SECTION-B

(Attempt any three questions from this Section)

6. The Revolt of 1857 was conscious beginning of the independence struggle against the British. With reference to this, answer the following questions:
(i) What was the Doctrine of Lapse? Who introduced it?
(ii) The British Government interfered in the social and religious matters of the Indians. Mention any three socio religious causes to Justify this statement.
(iii) Mention any four military causes which led to this Revolt.

Ans :

(i) The Doctrine of Lapse was a policy introduced by Lord Dalhousie, stating that if a ruler of a princely state died without a natural heir, his kingdom would be annexed by the British. Adopted heirs were not recognized.
Examples of States Annexed:
1 Satara (1848)
2 Jhansi (1853)
3 Awadh (1856)

NODIA

(ii) Three Socio-Religious Causes of the Revolt:
1 Ban on Sati and Widow Remarriage Act: The British outlawed Sati (1829) and legalized widow remarriage (1856), which was seen as interference in Hindu customs.
2 Christian Missionary Activities: Missionaries were allowed to promote Christianity, creating fear among Indians that their religion was under threat.
3 Western Education and Social Reforms: English education and laws like the Abolition of Caste Discrimination angered conservative Indians.

(iii) Four Military Causes of the Revolt:
1 Low Salary and Discrimination: Indian soldiers were paid much less than British soldiers and faced racial discrimination.
2 Enfield Rifle Incident (1857): The new Enfield cartridges were greased with cow and pig fat, which offended both Hindus and Muslims.
3 Service in Foreign Lands: Indian soldiers were forced to fight overseas, violating their religious beliefs (crossing the sea was considered a loss of caste).
4 Lack of Promotion: Indian soldiers had no chance of promotion beyond subedar rank, as higher positions were reserved for the British.

7. The oppressive British colonial rule led to the growth of nationalism in India. With reference to this, answer the following questions:
(i) The repressive policies of Lord Lytton became a catalyst to the growth of nationalism. Mention any three of his repressive policies to justify this statement.
(ii) Mention any three ways in which the Press promoted nationalism.
(iii) Who presided over the Second session of the Indian National Congress? Mention any three objectives of the Congress.

Ans :

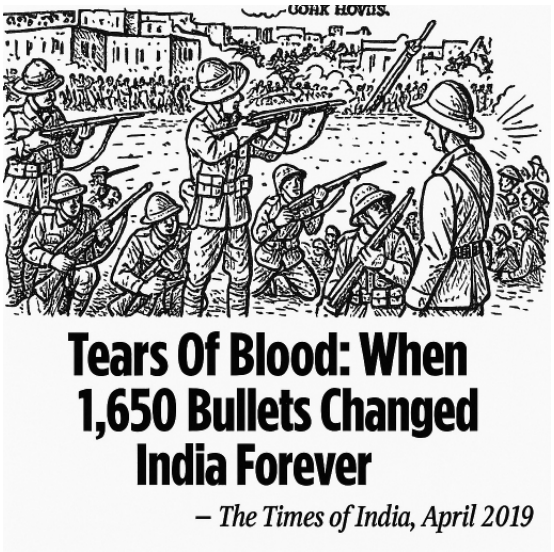
(i) Three Repressive Policies of Lord Lytton (1876-1880):
1 Vernacular Press Act (1878): This law censored Indian newspapers, restricting their ability to criticize British rule.
2 Arms Act (1878): Indians were forbidden from carrying weapons without a license, while Europeans faced no such restrictions.

3 Grand Delhi Durbar (1877): While India faced a severe famine, Lord Lytton organized a lavish Durbar to proclaim Queen Victoria as the Empress of India, showing British insensitivity.

(ii) Three Ways in Which the Press Promoted Nationalism:
1 Spreading Awareness: Newspapers like Kesari and The Hindu informed people about British oppression and inspired resistance.
2 Uniting People: The press helped Indians from different regions and communities unite against British rule.
3 Exposing British Policies: It criticized unjust laws like the Partition of Bengal (1905) and mobilized public opinion.

(iii) Second Session of the Indian National Congress & Objectives : Presided by: Dadabhai Naoroji in 1886 (Calcutta Session). Three Objectives of the Indian National Congress:
1 Promote National Unity: Encourage cooperation between Indians of different religions and regions.
2 Demand Constitutional Reforms: Seek greater participation of Indians in government affairs.
3 Protect Indian Interests: Work for the social, economic, and political rights of Indians under British rule.

8. Look at the piven picture and answer the questions that follows:



(i) Identify the above incident. Which Gandhian movement did it lead to? Which incident led to the suspension of that movement?

(ii) Mention any three repressive provisions of the Rowlatt Act.

(iii) Mention the following:
(a) Any two causes of the Quit India Movement.
(b) Any two causes of the Civil Disobedience Movement.

Ans :

(i) The incident depicted in the image is the Jallianwala Bagh Massacre (1919), where British troops under General Dyer fired upon a peaceful gathering in Amritsar. This brutality led to widespread outrage and was a major cause of the Non-Cooperation Movement (1920-1922) launched by Mahatma Gandhi. The Chauri Chaura Incident (1922), where angry protestors set a police station on fire, killing 22 policemen, led Gandhi to suspend the movement.

(ii) Three Repressive Provisions of the Rowlatt Act (1919):
1 Arrest Without Trial: Authorities could arrest and detain people without a trial for up to two years.
2 No Right to Appeal: Those arrested had no right to appeal against their detention.
3 Press Censorship: The Act imposed strict restrictions on newspapers and public gatherings, limiting freedom of expression.

(iii) (a) Two Causes of the Quit India Movement (1942):
1 Failure of the Cripps Mission: The British government's Cripps Mission (1942) failed to offer real independence to India, leading to frustration.
2 Economic Hardships: The economic crisis during World War II, including food shortages and inflation, increased public resentment against British rule.

(b) Two Causes of the Civil Disobedience Movement (1930):
1 Salt Monopoly: The British imposed a heavy tax on salt, an essential item, leading Gandhi to launch the Salt March (Dandi March, 1930).
2 Opposition to the Simon Commission: The Simon Commission (1927), formed without Indian members, angered Indians and increased demand for self-rule.

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

9. Read the passage given and answer the following questions:

In an effort to secure resources for its expanding industries, Japan invaded the northern Chinese province of Manchuria. Although many Western nations protested the Japanesé action, most members of the League of Nations, including Canada, opposed any form of military intervention to defend Chinese sovereignty.A League of Nations commission, headed by the British diplomat Lord Lytton, was dispatched to Manchuria to investigate.

Loyal Edmonton Regiment Museum

(i) How did the incident being described above become a cause for the Second World War?

(ii) Mention any three reasons for Hitler's attack on Poland.

(iii) Mention any four reasons for the failure of the League of Nations.

Ans :

(i) The Japanese invasion of Manchuria (1931) exposed the weakness of the League of Nations, as it failed to take any strong action. This encouraged Germany and Italy to pursue their own expansionist policies without fear of consequences. It marked the rise of militarism and aggression, eventually leading to World War II.

(ii) Three Reasons for Hitler's Attack on Poland (1939):

1 Lebensraum (Living Space): Hitler aimed to expand German territory by capturing Poland for German settlers.

2 Treaty of Versailles: Poland had gained land from Germany (Danzig and the Polish Corridor), which Hitler wanted to reclaim.

3 German-Soviet Non-Aggression Pact (1939): Hitler secured a secret deal with Stalin, ensuring that the Soviet Union would not oppose Germany's invasion of Poland.

(iii) Four Reasons for the Failure of the League of Nations:

1 Lack of Military Power: The League had no army of its own to enforce decisions.

2 Absence of Major Powers: The USA never joined, weakening its authority.

3 Failure to Prevent Aggression: It failed to stop Japan (Manchuria, 1931), Italy (Ethiopia, 1935), and Germany (Rhineland, 1936).

4 Unanimous Decision Rule: Decisions required unanimous approval, making it difficult to take quick and effective action.

10. The organs and the agencies of the United Nation Organization work towards the development of the world. With reference to this answer the following questions:

(i) What is the composition of the General Assembly?

(ii) Mention any three functions of the International Court of Justice.

(iii) Give the full form of UNICEF. Mention any three of its functions.

Ans :

(i) The General Assembly is the main deliberative body of the United Nations Organization (UNO). Its composition includes:

1 All Member States: Each of the 193 UN member countries is represented in the General Assembly.

2 Equal Representation: Every member state has one vote, regardless of its size or power.

3 Annual Sessions: It meets once a year in September at the UN Headquarters in New York, but emergency special sessions can be convened if needed.

(ii) Three Functions of the International Court of Justice (ICJ):

1 Settles Disputes Between Countries: The ICJ resolves legal disputes between member nations based on international law.

2 Advisory Opinions: It gives legal advice to the UN General Assembly and Security Council on international law matters.

3 Interprets International Treaties: The ICJ clarifies treaties, agreements, and conventions to ensure fair application of laws.

(iii) Full Form of UNICEF is United Nations International Children's Emergency Fund (now simply United Nations Children's Fund).

Three Functions of UNICEF:

1 Child Health and Nutrition: Provides vaccination and healthcare to reduce child mortality.

2 Education Programs: Supports primary education and literacy for children, especially in developing countries.

3 Emergency Relief: Provides food, water, and medical aid during wars, famines, and natural disasters affecting children.

END

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

BETTER THAN BOOK IN THE MARKET

Why students are choosing this book 👉

School teachers already use this content to set papers.

Still not sure?

- 👉 Match this PDF with your question papers
- 👉 See the similarity yourself

Why does this happen?

- ✓ Teachers have its PDF & Word files
- ✓ Easy access
- ✓ Direct copy-paste questions
- ✓ Same pattern followed

Don't miss out—get the advantage today!

CHAPTER 1

THE FIRST WAR OF INDEPENDANCE, 1857

NODIA

SUMMARY

1. CAUSES OF THE REVOLT

1.1 Political Causes

The British administration's expansionist policies, particularly the Doctrine of Lapse introduced by Lord Dalhousie, played a crucial role in sowing discontent among Indian rulers. This doctrine allowed the British to annex any princely state where the ruler did not have a natural male heir, leading to the loss of sovereignty for several Indian kingdoms. The annexation of states like Jhansi and Awadh, along with the disregard shown towards Indian rulers such as Bahadur Shah II, deeply offended the Indian nobility and fueled resentment against British rule

1.2 Socio-Religious Causes

The British interference in India's social and religious practices caused widespread unrest among the population. The fear of forced conversions to Christianity, supported by the activities of Christian missionaries, created anxiety among both Hindus and Muslims. Laws such as the Religious Disabilities Act and reforms like the abolition of Sati, the legalization of widow remarriage, and the prohibition of child marriage were viewed by many as direct assaults on traditional customs and beliefs. This perceived threat to their way of life contributed to a growing sense of alienation and anger towards the British authorities.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

1.3 Economic Causes

The economic policies imposed by the British were designed to exploit India's resources for the benefit of British industry and commerce. Indian industries, particularly textiles, were deliberately undermined through heavy taxation and the import of British goods at low tariffs, which led to the destruction of local craftsmanship and widespread unemployment. The land revenue systems, such as the Zamindari, Ryotwari, and Mahalwari systems, imposed excessive taxes on farmers, driving them into debt and poverty. The economic hardships faced by the Indian population created a fertile ground for discontent and rebellion.

1.4 Military Causes

The Indian soldiers, or sepoys, in the British army were subjected to discriminatory treatment, with lower pay and limited opportunities for promotion compared to their British counterparts. The introduction of the General Service Enlistment Act, which required sepoys to serve overseas, was deeply resented as it violated Hindu religious beliefs about crossing the sea. The final spark was the introduction of greased cartridges for the Enfield rifles, rumored to be coated with cow and pig fat, which was offensive to both Hindu and Muslim soldiers. This act of insensitivity by the British military authorities led to widespread anger and was a key trigger for the revolt.

2. CONSEQUENCES OF THE REVOLT

2.1 End of East India Company's Rule

The failure of the revolt marked the end of the East India Company's control over

India. The British government, recognizing the need for a more direct and stable form of governance, passed the Government of India Act in 1858, which transferred all administrative powers to the British Crown. This marked the beginning of the British Raj, with Queen Victoria assuming the title of Empress of India.

2.2 Reorganization of the British Indian Army

In response to the revolt, the British undertook a major reorganization of the Indian army. The number of British troops in India was increased, and strategic positions were occupied by British soldiers to prevent any future uprisings. Indian soldiers were deliberately kept away from key positions, artillery, and advanced weaponry, and the British enforced strict segregation between European and Indian troops to maintain control.

2.3 Policy Changes Regarding Indian Rulers

The British government abandoned the Doctrine of Lapse, recognizing the need to secure the loyalty of Indian princes and rulers. They promised to respect the rights of Indian rulers to their territories and titles, and to honor all existing treaties. This was intended to pacify the Indian nobility and prevent them from joining any future rebellions against British rule.

2.4 Social and Religious Policies

In an effort to pacify the Indian population, Queen Victoria's Proclamation of 1858 promised non-interference in religious matters and assured equal treatment for all her subjects, whether Indian or European. The British sought to portray themselves as benevolent rulers, committed to justice and fairness, although these promises were often not fully realized in practice.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTION

1. Who organized the Grand Delhi Durbar?
(a) Lord Curzon
(b) Lord Canning
(c) Lord Lytton
(d) Lord Dalhousie

Ans : MAIN 2024

Thus (c) is correct option.

2. The East India Company's territorial power began to increased rapidly in India after which of the following Battles?
(a) The battle of Buxar
(b) The Battle Plassey
(c) The First Anglo-Mysore War
(d) The Third Anglo-Maratha War

Ans : MAIN 2024

Thus (b) is correct option.

3. The First Indian State to enter into the Subsidiary Alliance with the East India Company using.....
(a) Awadh
(b) Mysore
(c) Tanjore
(d) Jhansi

Ans : COMP 2020

Thus (a) is correct option.

4. Lord Dalhousie annexed a number of Indian States to the East India Company using.....
(a) The Subsidiary of Lapse
(b) The Doctrine of Lapse
(c) The government of India Act of 1858
(d) Queen Victoria's Proclamation

Ans : SQP 2010

Thus (b) is correct option.

5. Nana Saheb was the adopted son of.....
(a) Bahadur Shah Zafar
(b) Tantia Tope
(c) Baji Rao I
(d) Baji Rao II

Ans : MAIN 2012

Thus (d) is correct option.

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

6. Where was the family seat of Nana Saheb located?
(a) Nagpur
(b) Lucknow
(c) Pune
(d) Kanpur

Ans : COMP 2015

Thus (c) is correct option.

7. Which of the following reforms was resented by the Indians?
(a) The Abolition of Sati
(b) The Widow Remarriage Act
(c) Opening of Girls's school
(d) Both (a) and (b)

Ans : SQP 2017

Thus (d) is correct option.

8. Jhansi was annexed by applying which of the following?
(a) Alleged Misrule
(b) Subsidiary Alliance
(c) Queen's Proclamation
(d) The Doctrine of Lapse

Ans : MAIN 2019

Thus (d) is correct option.

9. Seventy-five thousand of the company's sepoys belonged to which of the following states?
(a) Jaipur
(b) Awadh
(c) Mysore
(d) Sambalpur

Ans : COMP 2000

Thus (b) is correct option.

10. By the provisions of which of the following, 20,000 estates of the landlords were confiscated by the East India Company?
(a) The Hunter Commission
(b) Frazer Commission
(c) The Inam Commission
(d) The Woods Dispatch

Ans : MAIN 2002

Thus (c) is correct option.

11. Which of the following Acts was resented by the Indian sepoys?
(a) The General Service Enlistment Act
(b) The Indian Service Rules
(c) The Government of India Act, 1858
(d) The Queen's Proclamation

Ans : COMP 2006

Thus (a) is correct option.

12. Which of the following events of the Uprising of 1857 and their leaders is not correctly matched?
(a) Lucknow – Begum Hazrat Mahal
(b) Kanpur – Nana Saheb
(c) Kalpi – Tantia Tope
(d) Bihar – Khan Bahadur

Ans : MAIN 2008

Thus (d) is correct option.

13. Which of the following was the result of the Great Uprising of 1857?
(a) End of the rule of the British Crown
(b) End of the rule of the East India Company
(c) End of the rule of the Governor-General
(d) End of the Board of Directors

Ans : COMP 2010

Thus (b) is correct option.

14. The Uprising of 1857 began from_____.
(a) Meerut
(b) Plassey
(c) Buxar
(d) Delhi

Ans : SQP 2015

Thus (a) is correct option.

15. An effect of the Uprising of 1857 was that –
(a) The spirit of rebellion in India was crushed
(b) The British became totally demoralised
(c) The British abandoned their repressive policies
(d) Unity was forged between the Hindus and Muslims

Ans : COMP 2017

Thus (d) is correct option.

NODIA

16. Who introduced the Subsidiary Alliance in India?
(a) Lord Hastings
(b) Lord Amherst
(c) Lord Wellesley
(d) Lord Cornwallis

Ans : SQP 2019

Thus (c) is correct option.

17. After the initial success of the Uprising of 1857, the objective of the leaders of the Uprising included
(a) Restoring the former glory to the Mughal empire;
(b) Forming a federation of Indian States under the aegis of Bhadur Shah II;
(c) Eliminating foreign rule and return of the old order;
(d) Establishing his own power in his respective region by each leader.

Ans : MAIN 2022

Thus (c) is correct option.

18. Under the Government of India Act 1858, who gave up the direct administration of India?
(a) The East India Company
(b) The British Crown
(c) Lord Mountbatten
(d) The Mughal Emperor

Ans : COMP 2024

Thus (a) is correct option.

19. The Uprising of 1857 was a prolonged period of armed uprising against the British in Northern and Central India. Which of the following was not a major centre of the Uprising?
(a) Delhi
(b) Awadh
(c) Mumbai
(d) The Chambal Region

Ans : MAIN 2010

Thus (d) is correct option.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

ONE MARK QUESTIONS

20. Under what pretext was Oudh annexed by the British ?

Ans : COMP 1998, 2003

Oudh was annexed to the Company's dominions on the grounds of maladministration.

21. Which is called India's First War of Independence?

Ans : MAIN 1996

The Revolt of 1857

22. Mention the last Mughal emperor of India before the British Crown declared India to be its colony.

Ans : SQP 2004

Bahadur Shah Zafar.

23. Name any one policy used by Lord Dalhousie for the extension of British territories in India.

Ans : MAIN 2002

The Doctrine of Lapse.

24. In which year did the First War of Independence take place?

Ans : MAIN 2006

The First War of Independence took place in the year 1857.

25. Mention any two social reforms advocated by the British which affected the religious traditions of the Indian people.

Ans : COMP 2009

(i) Abolition of Sati system.
(ii) Widow remarriage.

26. Mention one reason for the unhappiness of the Indian soldiers in the British Army before 1857.

Ans : SQP 2004

The Indian soldiers were unhappy because of their low salary and poor prospects of promotion.

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

27. Give one change brought about by the British Government in the army after the revolt of 1857.

Ans : MAIN 2008

The proportion of the British to Indian soldiers was increased and different castes and creeds were mixed to avoid any other revolt.

28. Name any two states that fell victim to the Doctrine of Lapse.

Ans : COMP 2009

Satara and Jhansi.

29. What was Nana Saheb's grievance against the British ?

Ans : COMP 1995, 2003, 2012

The British had refused to recognise him as the legitimate heir to the throne of Peshwa Baji Rao II, because he was his adopted son.

30. Who was the first Viceroy of India ?

or

Who became first Viceroy of India under the Act of 1858 ?

Ans : MAIN 1997, 2004

Lord Canning.

31. Name the last Mughal emperor of India before the British Crown declared India to be its colony.

Ans : SQP 2004

Bahadur Shah Zafar.

32. Name any two Indian rulers who remained loyal to the British during national uprising in 1857.

Ans : MAIN 2010

Sindhia of Gwalior and Nizam of Hyderabad.

33. Name the Act that transferred the Government of India from the Company to the Crown. When was it passed ?

Ans : COMP 2015

Act for the Better Government of India. It was passed on August 2, 1858.

TWO MARKS QUESTIONS

34. Imagine you are an Indian ruler who has signed the Subsidiary Alliance. Mention any two conditions of this agreement which will affect you.

Ans : MAIN 2024

(i) I must allow British troops to be stationed in my territory, which limits my independence.

(ii) I am responsible for the expenses of maintaining these troops, placing a financial burden on my state.

35. Name the two ways in which the British expanded their territorial power in India ?

Ans : COMP 2019

The ways in which the British expanded their territorial power in India are :

(i) Doctrine of Lapse : This policy allowed the British to annex any princely state where the ruler died without a direct male heir.

(ii) Subsidiary Alliance : Under this system, Indian rulers were forced to accept British forces in their territories and cede control over their foreign affairs, effectively reducing them to puppet states.

36. Mention two political causes of the First War of Independence.

Ans : MAIN 2017

(i) Expansionist Policies: The British pursued aggressive policies of territorial expansion.

(ii) Disrespect towards Bahadur Shah Zafar: The British showed disrespect to Bahadur Shah Zafar, further fueling discontent.

37. What was General Service Enlistment Act ? Mention any one provision of the 'General Service Enlistment Act of 1856'.

Ans : MAIN 2019

The General Service Enlistment Act of 1856 mandated that all new recruits to the Bengal Army must be prepared to serve in any location, whether within India or abroad.

NODIA

38. What was the immediate cause of the revolt of 1857?

Ans : SQP 2018

The immediate trigger was the introduction of Enfield rifles, accompanied by a rumor that the cartridges were greased with cow and pig fat. This ignited the Mutiny, leading to the uprising of all three sepoy regiments in Meerut on May 10, 1857.

39. Why was the "War of 1857" hailed as the First War of National Independence ?

Ans : MAIN 2002

The Revolt of 1857 is regarded as the First War of National Independence because it was the first uprising where kings, soldiers, peasants, and ordinary people both Hindus and Muslims united with a shared goal of reclaiming their lost independence.

40. With reference to the British rule in India, mention two economic factors, which became the cause of the First War of Independence, 1857.

Ans : COMP 2005

(i) In 1720, an Act was enacted that banned the use of Indian silk and calicoes in England to curb the growing popularity of Indian textile products there.
(ii) High taxes were levied on Indian goods, while British products were sold without any such duties.

41. What impact did uprising of 1857 have on the Mughal Rule ?

Ans : SQP 2016

The Mughal Empire, which had already lost its importance, was completely destroyed. The last Mughal emperor, Bahadur Shah Zafar, was put on trial for treason and sent into exile in Burma.

42. What was the nature of revolts against the British before the First War of Independence?

Ans : MAIN 2010

The uprisings against the British before the First War of Independence did not present a major threat because they were localized, scattered, and isolated. However, these rebellions created a local tradition of resistance against British rule.

43. Why was the "War of 1857" hailed as the First War of national independence ?

Ans : COMP 2015

It involved all sections of society, regardless of caste or creed, and was not confined to a specific area. In this revolt, not only did army personnel participate, but Indian civilians also joined the struggle to end foreign rule. This uprising posed a genuine threat to the British.

44. Explain the term : Doctrine of Lapse. Name the two States annexed by the British using the Doctrine of Lapse.

Ans : SQP 2011

The Doctrine of Lapse, introduced by Lord Dalhousie, stipulated that if a ruler of a dependent state died without a natural heir, the state would be annexed by the British. Using this policy, the British took control of states like Satara (1848), Jhansi (1853), and Nagpur (1854).

45. Who was Nana Sahib ? What was his main grievance against the British?

Ans : COMP 2015

Nana Sahib was the adopted son of the last Peshwa, Baji Rao II. His main grievance against the British was their refusal to grant him the pension that was due to his adoptive father, as they did not recognize his claim as the rightful heir after the Peshwa's death. This denial of pension led to his deep resentment towards the British.

46. Which policy was used by Lord Dalhousie against Rani Laxmi Bai ? Why did Rani Laxmi Bai become a bitter enemy of the British ?

Ans : SQP 2016

Lord Dalhousie used the Doctrine of Lapse against Rani Laxmi Bai. According to this

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

policy, when her husband, the ruler of Jhansi, died without a natural heir, the British refused to recognize her adopted son as the successor and annexed Jhansi.

Rani Laxmi Bai became a bitter enemy of the British because they denied her the right to rule Jhansi and took away her kingdom, leading to her deep resentment and fierce resistance during the First War of Independence in 1857.

47. State two announcements which adversely affected the Mughal dynasty in India.

Ans : COMP 2011

Two announcements that adversely affected the Mughal dynasty in India were:

(i) End of Titles : The British declared that Bahadur Shah Zafar's successors would lose their royal titles.

(ii) Exile : The British announced that after Bahadur Shah Zafar's death, his family would be exiled from the Red Fort.

48. Mention any two consequences of the annexation of Awadh.

Ans : SQP 2013

(i) The people of Awadh faced heavier land taxes and additional levies on food, houses, ferries, and legal matters.

(ii) The disbanding of the Nawab of Awadh's army and administration led to thousands of nobles, officials, and soldiers losing their jobs.

49. State any two consequences of the disbanding of the armies of the annexed States by the British.

Ans : MAIN 2015

(i) The disbanding of the Nawab of Awadh's army and administration rendered thousands of nobles, officials, and soldiers jobless.

(ii) The British confiscated the estates of the taluqdars or zamindars, turning these dispossessed landowners into adversaries of British rule.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

50. Give the meaning of Absentee Sovereignty. Why was it resented by the Indians ?

Ans : COMP 2017

Absentee Sovereignty refers to the situation where India was governed by the British government from England, far removed from the realities and needs of the Indian people. It was resented by Indians because they believed that their country's wealth was being drained to England, with little benefit or investment being made for the welfare and development of India itself.

51. What were the apprehensions of Indians about the introduction of the railways?

Ans : MAIN 2019

The introduction of Railways played a major role as a religious factor in sparking the Revolt of 1857. It was viewed as a threat to the social order and caste system because people of all castes were required to sit together in railway compartments. This was seen as an effort to undermine traditional caste practices.

52. Mention any two social reforms advocated by the British which affected the religious traditions of the Indian people.

Ans : COMP 2021

NODIA

Two social reforms by the British that affected Indian religious traditions were:

(i) Banning of Sati : The British outlawed the practice of Sati, interfering with Hindu customs.

(ii) Widow Remarriage : The British legalized widow remarriage, challenging traditional Hindu beliefs.

53. Mention any two measures which point to the policy of social discrimination followed by the British in India.

Ans : SQP 2020

(i) All top employment positions were reserved for the British, and Indian soldiers were not allowed to rise above the rank of Subedar.

(ii) Indian soldiers were compelled to serve in distant regions without receiving extra

pay or the additional foreign service allowance (Bhatta).

54. Give two examples to show how the British exploited resources of India.

Ans : MAIN 2000

(i) India was compelled to accept British-made goods with either no duties or very low duty rates, while Indian products were subjected to high import duties in England.

(ii) Following the British conquest of Bengal, they ceased bringing gold into India and began purchasing raw materials for their industries in England using the surplus revenue from Bengal and profits from duty-free inland trade.

55. Give any two grievances of the peasantry against the British?

Ans : COMP 2005

(i) The peasants were unhappy with the British land revenue policies, which often led to the loss of their land.

(ii) The peasantry bore the brunt of heavy taxes, which were used to fund the company's trade profits, administrative costs, and the British wars of expansion in India.

56. What did the British do to reduce the landed aristocracy to poverty?

Ans : MAIN 2007

The British economic exploitation, decline of local industries, high taxes, wealth drain, agricultural stagnation, and the exploitation of poor peasants led to the impoverishment of the landed aristocracy.

57. What was the provision of the General Service Enlistment Act which was resented by the Indian soldiers ? Why was it resented ?

Ans : COMP 2009

The provision of the General Service Enlistment Act that was resented by Indian soldiers was the requirement for them to serve overseas if ordered. This was resented because it violated the religious beliefs of many Hindu and Muslim soldiers, who believed that crossing the sea would lead to the loss of their caste or religious identity.

58. Mention any two grievances harboured by the Indian soldiers which created an atmosphere favorable to the First War of Independence.

Ans : MAIN 2010

(i) All higher positions in employment were reserved for the British, and Indian soldiers were not allowed to advance beyond the rank of Subedar.

(ii) Indian soldiers were obligated to serve in distant regions without receiving extra pay or the additional foreign service allowance (Bhatta).

59. State two effects of the defeat of the British in the first Afghan War and the Punjab Wars on the Indian soldiers.

Ans : COMP 2015

(i) Although the British managed to suppress the Santhal Uprising, the heavy losses they endured shattered the belief in their invincibility.

(ii) It also showed Indian soldiers that a determined Indian force could indeed defeat the British army.

60. What was the immediate cause of the First War of Independence?

Ans : MAIN 2017

The immediate cause of the First War of Independence was the introduction of the Enfield rifle, which required soldiers to use cartridges rumored to be greased with cow and pig fat. This deeply offended both Hindu and Muslim soldiers, as it violated their religious beliefs, leading to widespread anger and ultimately sparking the revolt.

61. Who was Mangal Pandey ? What did he do ?

Ans : COMP 2019

Mangal Pandey, a Brahmin soldier, refused to use the greased cartridges on March 29, 1857, and killed two British officers. As a

NODIA

consequence, he was hanged, which triggered widespread uprisings in Meerut, Delhi, Kanpur, Lucknow, and Jhansi.

62. State two consequences of the First War of Indian Independence on the East India Company?

Ans : SQP 2011

Two consequences of the First War of Indian Independence on the East India Company were:

(i) Abolition of the Company : The British government dissolved the East India Company.

(ii) Transfer of Power : Control of India was transferred to the British Crown, establishing the British Raj.

63. How was the Army organized after the First War of Independence ?

Ans : MAIN 2013

After the First War of Independence, the British reorganized the Indian Army by increasing British troops, recruiting from different regions to prevent unity, disbanding rebel units, and strategically deploying troops to maintain control.

64. What impact did the uprising of 1857 have on the Mughal rule and Peshwaship?

Ans : COMP 2016

With the death of Bahadur Shah II, who was exiled to Yangon, the Mughal dynasty came to an end. Nana Sahib, the last Peshwa, actively participated in the uprising but fled to Nepal after its failure, leading to the end of the Peshwa's office.

The First War of Indian Independence also marked the end of the East India Company's rule in India, as British leaders decided it was unwise to entrust the governance of such a vast country to a private trading company.

65. Mention any two drawbacks of the First War of Independence.

Ans : MAIN 2015

(i) The movement lacked coordinated military plans and centralized leadership. The uprisings across the country were disconnected and uncoordinated.

(ii) The East India Company benefited from the expertise of exceptional leaders like Lawrence, Nicholson, Havelock, Outram, and Campbell. They managed to handle the toughest battles early in the uprising and maintained control until reinforcements arrived from abroad.

66. Mention two grievances of the Mughal Emperor against the British.

Ans : COMP 2013

(i) In 1849, Lord Dalhousie declared that Bahadur Shah Zafar's successors would no longer be allowed to use the Red Fort as their residence and would need to relocate to a place near the Qutab Minar.

(ii) In 1856, Lord Canning announced that after Bahadur Shah Zafar's death, his successors would not be permitted to use imperial titles or honors with their names.

67. What assurance did the Queen's Proclamation of 1858 give to the Indian people regarding (i) religious freedom, and (ii) appointment to public offices?

Ans : MAIN 2010

(i) In her 1858 Proclamation, the Queen pledged not to interfere with the religious beliefs of the Indian people.

(ii) Concerning public appointments, she stated that they would be based solely on education, ability, and integrity.

68. How did the Doctrine of Lapse become a political cause for the Great Uprising of 1857?

Ans : COMP 2000

The Doctrine of Lapse, through which the British annexed states lacking a male heir, infuriated many Indian rulers. This loss of sovereignty sparked resentment and became a significant political cause of the Great Uprising of 1857.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

69. Name two humanitarian measures taken by the British which invoked adverse reaction from the Indian masses.

Ans : MAIN 2001

Two humanitarian measures taken by the British that provoked adverse reactions from the Indian masses were:

(i) Abolition of Sati : The British banned the practice of Sati, which was seen as interference in traditional Hindu customs.

(ii) Legalization of Widow Remarriage : The British introduced laws permitting widow remarriage, challenging long-standing religious and cultural practices in Hindu society.

70. What was the General Service Enlistment Act of 1856?

Ans : COMP 2005

In 1856, Viceroy Lord Canning passed the General Service Enlistment Act, requiring every new recruit to agree to serve overseas (lands beyond the seas) if commanded.

71. What assurance was given to the Indian princes by Queen Victoria in her Proclamation of 1858?

Ans : SQP 2007

In Queen Victoria's Proclamation of 1858, Indian princes were guaranteed that their territorial rights, including the right to adopt heirs, would be honored. The British vowed not to annex their states in the future, preserving their sovereignty and ensuring their loyalty.

72. State any four features of Queen Victoria's Proclamation of 1858.

Ans : COMP 2009

(i) Equal treatment would be given to all subjects, both Indians and Europeans.

(ii) The government would take responsibility for the material and moral advancement of the people.

(iii) An official pardon was granted to all Indians, except those involved in the murder of British citizens.

(iv) All appointments would be based strictly on education and ability.

73. Although the Revolt of 1857 failed, but it had important consequences on the Princely States. Justify by giving three reasons.

Ans : MAIN 2010

(i) The Doctrine of Lapse was discontinued, and the right to adoption was acknowledged.

(ii) Indian princes were guaranteed that their territories would not be annexed.

(iii) The government promised to honor all existing Treaties and Agreements.

THREE MARKS QUESTIONS

NODIA

74. The Revolt of 1857 was the beginning of the independence struggle against the colonial rule of the British. With reference to the consequences of the Revolt, answer the following:

(i) Mention any three changes made in the administration with the end of the Company's Rule.

(ii) State any three policies promised to Indians in Queen Victoria's Proclamation.

(iii) Mention any four changes made in the army after the Revolt.

Ans : MAIN 2024

(i) Three changes made in the administration with the end of the Company's Rule :

(a) **End of East India Company's Rule :** The Government of India Act of 1858 transferred the powers of the East India Company to the British Crown, bringing an end to the Company's rule in India.

(b) **Creation of the Secretary of State for India :** A new office, the Secretary of State for India, was established with full control over Indian administration, supported by a 15 member council known as the India Council.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

(c) **Governor-General became Viceroy :** The title of Governor-General was changed to Viceroy, making him the direct representative of the British monarch, emphasizing that India was now under the Crown's rule.

(ii) Three policies promised to Indians in Queen Victoria's Proclamation :

(a) **Equal treatment under law :** The Queen promised equal treatment for all British subjects in India, regardless of race, caste, or religion, with no discrimination in public appointments.

(b) **Non-interference in religious affairs :** The British government assured that it would not interfere in the religious practices of Indians, addressing concerns that had fueled the Revolt.

(c) **Respect for Indian princes and treaties :** Indian princes were assured that their treaties would be honored, and their territories would remain under their control, provided they were loyal to the Crown.

(iii) Four changes made in the army after the Revolt :

(a) **Increased number of European soldiers :** The British increased the number of European soldiers in the Indian army to maintain a greater ratio of British to Indian troops, ensuring better control over the army and minimizing the chances of future uprisings.

(b) **European officers in key positions :** All important posts, especially in artillery and other key divisions of the army, were reserved for European officers to prevent Indian soldiers from holding positions of significant power or influence.

(c) **Divide and rule policy :** To prevent unity among Indian soldiers, the British introduced a deliberate policy of dividing the army along religious, ethnic, and caste lines. This ensured that there was minimal chance of soldiers from different communities uniting against British rule.

(d) **Disbanding of certain Indian regiments :** Indian artillery units were largely disbanded, and many Indian soldiers who had participated in the revolt were either dismissed or barred from holding military posts. The mountain units were the only ones allowed to remain intact.

75. The Indian Nationalists described the Great Uprising of 1857 as the First War of Independence. With reference to this, answer the following questions:

(i) Mention any three policies used by the British to expand their political power in India.

(ii) The Revolt of 1857 is also known as the Sepoy Mutiny. Mention any three military causes which led to the uprising.

(iii) Mention any four economic causes of the Revolt.

Ans : MAIN 2023

(i) Three Policies used by the British to expand their political power in India :

(a) **Doctrine of Lapse :** This policy allowed the British to annex states where the ruler died without a male heir, like Jhansi and Satara.

(a) **Subsidiary Alliance :** Indian rulers had to accept British troops in return for protection, losing their sovereignty. Introduced by Lord Wellesley.

(b) **Annexation of States :** The British annexed states on grounds of mismanagement, as seen with the annexation of Awadh.

(ii) Three military causes which led to the uprising :

(a) **Discrimination :** Indian soldiers were paid less and faced discrimination in promotions compared to British soldiers.

(b) **General Service Enlistment Act (1856) :** This act forced sepoys to serve overseas, violating their religious beliefs.

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

(c) **Greased cartridges issue :** The cartridges used in the new Enfield rifles were rumored to be greased with cow and pig fat, offending both Hindu and Muslim soldiers.

(iii) Four economic causes of the Revolt :

(a) **High taxes :** British land revenue policies burdened peasants with high taxes.

(b) **Drain of wealth :** The British exploited India's wealth for their own benefit, impoverishing the country.

(c) **Decline of industries :** Cheap British goods destroyed local industries, causing unemployment

(d) **Peasant exploitation :** Peasants were heavily taxed and lost their land, leading to widespread poverty.

76. The Great Uprising of 1857 was an important event which produced far reaching results. Explain the following with reference to the Great Uprising :

(i) The changes introduced in the administrative set up of the British territory in India.

(ii) Rights granted to Indian princes.

(iii) Rise of nationalism.

Ans : MAIN 2009

(i) (a) An Act for the Better Government of India was passed, ending the rule of the East India Company in India.

(b) The title of the Governor-General was changed; while he continued as Governor-General for the provinces, he became known as the Viceroy when interacting with the Nawabs and Rajas.

(ii) (a) All treaties made by Indian rulers with the East India Company were to be respected.

(b) It was declared that the British Government would not annex Indian states.

(c) The rights of adoption and succession for Indian rulers were also recognized.

(iii) (a) The revolt fostered a remarkable sense of unity between Hindus and Muslims.

(b) The sacrifices made by Indian leaders during the 1857 revolt sparked the birth of nationalist movements.

(c) For the first time, Indians fought against the British with a shared goal: ending British rule.

77. The First War of Independence of 1857, was the culmination of people's dissatisfaction with the British rule. In this context enumerate the following causes.

(i) Economic causes

(ii) Military causes

(iii) Political causes

Ans : MAIN 2011

(i) Economic Causes :

(a) A law passed in 1720 banned the use of Indian silk and calicoes in England to diminish the popularity of Indian textiles.

(b) High taxes were placed on Indian goods, while British products were imported duty-free.

(c) The Industrial Revolution dealt a severe blow to India's handicraft industries, mostly comprised of cottage industries.

(d) The East India Company took control of the country's trade and commerce, monopolizing these sectors.

(ii) Military Causes :

(a) Indian soldiers were paid low wages and were not allowed to advance beyond the rank of Subedar, leading to dissatisfaction and a sense of injustice.

(b) They were treated as inferior and subjected to poor treatment by their British superiors, which deepened their resentment.

(c) The General Service Enlistment Act of 1856 required Bengal Army recruits to serve anywhere, which alarmed Hindu soldiers who believed that crossing the sea violated their religious beliefs.

(d) The introduction of greased cartridges,

NODIA

rumored to be coated with cow and pig fat, sparked a revolt among the soldiers, as it was seen as an affront to their religious practices.

(iii) Political Causes :
- (a) Lord Dalhousie's annexation policies, especially the Doctrine of Lapse, angered Indian rulers, with states like Satara, Jhansi, and Nagpur being particularly affected.
- (b) Lord Canning's decision to deny Bahadur Shah's successor the imperial title of "King", along with Lord Dalhousie stopping Nana Saheb's pension, heightened resentment among the Indian rulers.
- (c) The annexation of the kingdom of Oudh in 1856 due to alleged maladministration further deepened dissatisfaction among both the Indian rulers and the general population.

78. There were many causes for the Revolt of 1857. In this context, state the following :
(i) Policy of economic exploitation.
(ii) Unhappiness of the Indian Artisans and Craftsmen.
(iii) Discontent of the Sepoys.

Ans : MAIN 2020

(i) Policy of economic exploitation:
- (a) The British implemented high land revenue systems, like the Permanent Settlement, causing widespread poverty among Indian farmers.
- (b) The influx of inexpensive British goods into India severely damaged local industries, leading to the decline of traditional crafts and trades.
- (c) These policies caused economic hardship and resentment among the Indian population, contributing to the discontent that led to the revolt..

(ii) Unhappiness of the Indian Artisans and Craftsmen:
- (a) British policies prioritized the import of British-made goods, resulting in the decline of India's traditional handicraft industries.
- (b) High tariffs on Indian products and the lack of protection for local industries led to widespread unemployment among artisans and craftsmen.
- (c) The economic difficulties experienced by these groups due to the collapse of their trades fueled their anger and involvement in the revolt.

(iii) Discontent of the Sepoys:
- (a) Indian sepoys experienced discrimination, receiving lower pay and inferior treatment compared to their British counterparts.
- (b) The British officers' disregard for the sepoys' customs and religious beliefs caused widespread dissatisfaction among them.
- (c) The introduction of the Enfield rifle, with cartridges rumored to be greased with cow and pig fat, insulted the religious beliefs of Hindu and Muslim sepoys, triggering their rebellion.
- (d) Sepoys, many from traditional warrior communities, felt their honor and status were diminished by the British, who showed little respect for their traditions and military heritage, further intensifying their discontent.

79. 'Numerous causes were at work in causing the great upsurge of 1857'. Explain the following with reference to the above statement.
(i) The introduction of Railways and Telegraphs.
(ii) The introduction of Enfield Rifles.
(iii) The laws that interfered with the religious customs of the people.

Ans : MAIN 2005

(i)
- (a) The introduction of the railway was primarily aimed at exploiting India's resources.
- (b) It was perceived as a method to disrupt social order and caste rules, as people of all castes had to sit together in railway compartments.
- (c) A rumor circulated that telegraph poles were being erected to hang those who opposed British rule.

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

(ii) (a) **Religious Offense :** The introduction of the Enfield rifle in 1857 required soldiers to bite greased cartridges, believed to be coated with cow and pig fat, which deeply offended Hindu and Muslim sepoys by violating their religious beliefs.

(b) **Widespread Resentment :** The use of these greased cartridges caused widespread anger and distrust among Indian soldiers, who perceived it as a deliberate attempt by the British to disrespect their religious practices.

(c) **Catalyst for Rebellion :** The Enfield rifle issue became a catalyst for rebellion, uniting the sepoys in their discontent and sparking the broader uprising against British rule, leading to the Great Revolt of 1857.

(iii)(a) **The Act of 1850 :** This law modified the Hindu Law of Property, allowing those who converted from Hinduism to inherit their father's property. Hindus viewed this as encouragement to abandon their religious beliefs.

(b) **Taxes :** The British administration imposed taxes on properties belonging to temples and mosques, which were previously exempt from such taxes.

(c) **The Widow Remarriage Act :** Enacted in 1856, this progressive law followed earlier bans on the Sati system and female infanticide. However, these reforms were met with resistance, as people felt their religion was under threat.

80. 'Although the Revolt of 1857 failed, but it had important consequences for India'. In this context state the impact of the Revolt on :

(i) The East India Company.

(ii) The Mughal Empire.

(iii) Hindu-Muslim Unity.

Ans : COMP 2015

(i) (a) **End of Company Rule :** The Revolt of 1857 resulted in the termination of the East India Company's control over India. The British Government enacted the Government of India Act 1858, which transferred the administration of India from the Company to the British Crown.

(b) **Direct British Rule :** Following the transfer of power, India came under the direct governance of the British Crown, initiating the era of the British Raj. A Viceroy was appointed as the Crown's representative to manage the administration of India.

(c) **Army Reorganization :** The revolt highlighted the flaws in the Company's army, prompting its reorganization. The British increased the proportion of British soldiers relative to Indian soldiers and implemented significant changes to prevent future rebellions.

(ii) (a) **Collapse of the Mughal Dynasty :** The Revolt of 1857 resulted in the definitive end of the Mughal Empire, with Bahadur Shah II, the last emperor, being captured and exiled by the British to Rangoon.

(b) **Elimination of the Mughal Title :** The British officially abolished the Mughal Emperor's title and dissolved the Mughal court, bringing an end to the dynasty's symbolic power.

(c) **Erasure of Mughal Legacy :** The British took deliberate steps to dismantle the remaining symbols of the Mughal Empire, including seizing properties and dismantling structures linked to Mughal rule, thereby erasing its historical legacy.

(iii)(a) **Unity During the Revolt :** The Revolt of 1857 witnessed notable cooperation between Hindus and Muslims, who joined forces to resist British rule.

(b) **Joint Leadership :** Hindu and Muslim leaders, such as Rani Lakshmi Bai and Bahadur Shah II, played pivotal roles in leading the revolt in their respective regions, promoting a sense of unity and common purpose.

NODIA

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

(c) **Temporary Religious Harmony :** During the revolt, leaders from both communities temporarily set aside religious differences to unite under a common cause against the British

(d) **Foundation for Nationalism :** The unity shown during the revolt laid the foundation for future nationalist movements, demonstrating the potential for Hindu-Muslim collaboration in challenging British colonial rule, despite later efforts by the British to divide them

81. 'Although the Revolt of 1857 failed, but it had important consequences for India'. In this context answer the following questions :

(i) How did the Revolt give rise to nationalism in India?

(ii) How did the end of the East India Company bring in grave economic perils in India?

(iii) How did the British Government try to pacify the feelings of Indians with regard to :

(a) Their religious practices.

(b) The princely states.

Ans : MAIN 2017

(i) (a) The revolt fostered an extraordinary sense of unity between Hindus and Muslims.

(b) The sacrifices made by prominent Indian leaders during the Revolt of 1857 sparked the rise of nationalist movements.

(c) For the first time, Indians united with a shared goal: the overthrow of British rule.

(ii) (a) **Economic Exploitation :** The end of East India Company rule led to direct British governance, where civil servants and military officers sent to India drew hefty salaries, placing a heavy burden on India's economic resources.

(b) **Agricultural Distortion and Taxation :** Indian farmers were forced to grow crops that served British industrial needs, leading to food shortages. Additionally, heavy taxes were imposed on these farmers, and British traders exploited them by purchasing raw materials at low prices and selling finished goods at high prices.

(c) **Financial Drain :** The British invested surplus capital in Indian infrastructure and industries like railways and plantations, but this investment burdened Indians with heavy interest and dividend payments, further draining India's wealth.

(iii) (a) **Religious Freedom :** The Queen's Proclamation of 1858 assured that the British government would not interfere in the religious beliefs and practices of the Indian people, guaranteeing full religious freedom.

(b) **Abandonment of the Doctrine of Lapse :** The Doctrine of Lapse was abandoned, and the right of Indian princes to adopt heirs was recognized, ensuring the continuity of their dynasties. The British government assured Indian princes that their territories would not be annexed and that all existing Treaties and Agreements would be respected and upheld.

82. Using the following points, explain the important causes which led to the Revolt of 1857 A.D. :

(i) The British policy of territorial expansion.

(ii) Economic exploitation of India.

(iii) Interference in the social and religious life of the Indians.

Ans : COMP 1985, 1991, 2002

(i) The British policy of territorial expansion.

(a) **Doctrine of Lapse :** The British denied many Indian princes the right to adopt heirs, leading to the annexation of states like Jhansi and Satara under this doctrine.

(b) **Direct Annexation Policy :** The British directly annexed territories such as Sind in 1843 and Punjab in

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

1849, expanding their control over Indian regions.

(c) **Subsidiary Alliance :** The British enforced the Subsidiary Alliance, requiring Indian rulers to maintain a large British force within their territories, often leading to the ceding of parts of their land to the British.

(d) **Annexation on Grounds of Misgovernance :** The British annexed some states, like Oudh, on the pretext of misgovernance, further extending their control over Indian territories.

(e) **Insecurity Among Indian Princes :** These expansionist policies created a sense of insecurity among Indian kings and princes, prompting some of them to join the revolutionaries in the Revolt of 1857.

(ii) Policy of economic exploitation :

(a) **Suppression of Indian Textiles :** In 1720, an Act was passed in England prohibiting the use of Indian silk and calicoes to curb the popularity of Indian textile products in the British market.

(b) **Unequal Trade Policies :** The British imposed heavy duties on Indian products while allowing British goods to be imported into India without any duties, creating an unfair trade environment that harmed Indian industries.

(c) **Impact of the Industrial Revolution :** The Industrial Revolution in Britain dealt a severe blow to Indian handicrafts, particularly cottage industries, as mass-produced British goods flooded the Indian market, leading to the decline of traditional Indian craftsmanship.

(iii)(a) In the 19th century, social reforms such as the abolition of sati, child marriage, female infanticide, and polygamy were introduced, but these changes were met with resistance by the people.

(b) The growing presence of Christian missionaries, who often employed disrespectful methods to spread Christianity, created fear and suspicion among the general population.

83. The Revolt of 1857, though unsuccessful, produced far reaching consequences. In this context, briefly explain the following :

(i) Changes introduced in the administrative set- up.

(ii) Re-organization of the Army.

(iii) Policy of Divide and Rule.

(iv) Significance of the Revolt.

Ans : SQP 2003, 2009, 2018

(i) Changes introduced in the administrative set-up :

(a) **End of Company Rule :** The Revolt of 1857 led to the end of the East India Company's rule in India, bringing the Indian empire directly under the control of the British Crown. Queen Victoria was proclaimed Empress of India.

(b) **Position of Secretary of State :** The Act of 1858 dissolved the Company's Board of Control and Court of Directors, transferring their powers to a Cabinet Minister known as the Secretary of State. He was to be advised by a Council of 15 members.

(c) **Position of Governor-General :** The title of Governor-General was changed to Viceroy, reflecting his role as the representative of the British government in India. His responsibility was to administer India on behalf of the Crown, under the supervision of the Secretary of State for India.

(d) **Civil Service Appointments :** It was established that appointments to the Civil Service would be made through open competition, following rules set by the Secretary of State in Council.

(ii) Re-organization of the Army:

(a) **Creation of a Royal Indian Army :** The armies of the Company and the Crown were merged to form the Royal

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

Indian Army, which was placed under the command of a Commander-in-Chief.

(b) **Fixed Ratio of Europeans and Indians :** The ratio of European to Indian soldiers in the army was set at 1:2 in Bengal and 2:5 in Bombay and Madras, ensuring a significant presence of European troops.

(c) **European - Only Officers :** All officer positions in the army were reserved exclusively for Europeans, barring Indians from holding higher ranks.

(d) **Strategic Deployment of European Troops :** European troops were stationed at key strategic locations to maintain control and security.

(e) **Caste and Religion-Based Recruitment :** Recruitment into the army considered the caste, creed, and religion of recruits, with regiments organized accordingly, and Indian soldiers were excluded from artillery and arsenal roles.

(iii) Policy of Divide and Rule :

(a) **Favoritism Toward Zamindars :** The British granted special privileges to zamindars, including reserved school seats and government jobs for their children, while discriminating against educated Indians who criticized the government and demanded reforms.

(b) **Hindu-Muslim Division :** The British systematically divided Hindus and Muslims by initially favoring Hindus in government services and later instigating Muslims against Hindus by offering jobs to high-class Muslims, exploiting historical tensions.

(c) **Promotion of Religious and Regional Divisions :** The British encouraged the formation of religious-based parties like the Muslim League and Hindu Maha Sabha, and also fueled regionalism and provincialism by favoring one group over another to weaken national unity.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

(d) **Division in the Army and Society :** The British applied their Divide and Rule strategy within the army by categorizing people into martial and non-martial races, and further divided Indian society by distinguishing between residents of British India and those of the Indian States.

(iv) The uprising of the Revolt was a significant event from the Indian perspective, reflecting the deep resentment towards British rule. The struggle for freedom from British imperialism began in 1857, sparking nationalistic feelings and bringing crucial issues of governance to the forefront. This revolt laid the foundation for the organized national movement that followed. Known as the First War of India's Independence, the 1857 uprising became a lasting source of inspiration for the subsequent freedom struggle. The heroic efforts of the national leaders in this fight against foreign domination became a timeless source of inspiration.

NODIA

84. The Great Revolt of 1857 was a struggle for freedom from the British rule. Describe briefly the contribution of the following prominent leaders to the revolt :

(i) Bahadur Shah II

(ii) Nana Saheb

(iii) Rani Lakshmi Bai

Ans : SQP 1991

(i) Bahadur Shah II, also known as Bahadur Shah Zafar, played a significant symbolic role in the Revolt of 1857. As the last Mughal emperor, he became a rallying figure for the rebels, who proclaimed him the emperor of India after they seized Delhi. Although he didn't wield real political or military power, his backing provided legitimacy to the rebellion, helping to unite various groups against British rule. His involvement, however, led to his capture by the British and subsequent exile to Rangoon, marking the end of the Mughal dynasty and a key moment in Indian history.

(ii) He played a pivotal role in leading the uprising in Kanpur, showcasing exceptional bravery and determination. As a skilled and resolute general, he successfully captured the Kanpur Fort and proclaimed himself the Peshwa, reviving the title and authority associated with his lineage. His actions went beyond mere personal ambition, as he demonstrated the qualities of a true national hero by acknowledging Bahadur Shah as the Emperor of India. This recognition not only symbolized unity among the rebels but also strengthened the legitimacy of the broader struggle against British rule, making his contribution to the revolt both significant and inspirational.

(iii) She was the commanding force behind the revolutionaries in Jhansi and is widely regarded as one of the bravest and most skilled military leaders among the rebels during the Revolt of 1857. Her fierce determination and unwavering courage in battle set her apart, as she fought with the spirit of a true heroine. Her exceptional military acumen and fearless leadership inspired not only her own troops but also countless others across the country. The immense sacrifice she made for her people and her unwavering commitment to the cause of independence have left an indelible mark on Indian history. Rani Lakshmi Bai's legacy of bravery and sacrifice continues to be honored and remembered by generations of Indians as a symbol of resistance and patriotism.

85. With reference to the political causes of the War of 1857, explain the following:
(i) Doctrine of Lapse and its implications.
(ii) Attitude towards Mughal Dynasty.
(iii) Annexation of Awadh.

Ans : COMP 2010

(i) Doctrine of Lapse and its implications:
(a) **Doctrine of Lapse Policy :** According to the Doctrine of Lapse, if an Indian ruler of a dependent state died without a biological son, he was not permitted to adopt a successor without the British East India Company's consent, leading to the annexation of the state.
(b) **Annexation of States :** Under Lord Dalhousie's Doctrine of Lapse, several Maratha states, including Satara, Nagpur, and Jhansi, along with other minor principalities, were annexed by the British. For instance, when the ruler of Jhansi died in 1853 without a child, the state was annexed despite the existence of an adopted son, Anand Rao, whom the British refused to recognize.
(c) **Impact on Jhansi :** The widowed Rani Lakshmibai of Jhansi was pensioned off after the annexation, as her adopted son was not recognized by the British, leading to significant resentment and anger.
(d) **Widespread Discontent :** The application of the Doctrine of Lapse caused widespread discontent and fear among the rulers and people of Indian princely states, who became increasingly alarmed by the threat of English rule and the potential loss of their sovereignty.

(ii) Attitude towards Mughal Dynasty:
(a) **Reduction of Mughal Emperor's Status :** The British sought to strip even the nominal and titular status of the Mughal Emperor, Bahadur Shah, aiming to diminish his symbolic authority.
(b) **Exile from the Red Fort :** Lord Dalhousie declared that after Bahadur Shah's death, his successors would be required to vacate the Red Fort, further undermining the Mughal dynasty's dignity.
(c) **Abolition of Regal Titles :** In 1856, Lord Canning announced that Bahadur Shah's successor would not be permitted to use the title of King, and similarly, the regal titles of the Nawabs of Carnatic and Tanjore were

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

abolished. These actions were seen as deep insults by the Indian rulers and people, fueling resentment.

(iii) Annexation of Awadh : Unjust Annexation of Oudh: On February 13, 1856, Lord Dalhousie annexed Oudh, claiming that Nawab Wajid Ali Shah's administration was inefficient. This action was seen as a display of arrogance and betrayal by the British East India Company. The Nawab was sent to Calcutta with a pension of 12 lakh rupees, and Oudh was taken over under the guise of mismanagement. This annexation left many Taluqdars, nobles, officials, and soldiers without their titles and livelihoods, leading to widespread dissatisfaction and anger towards British rule.

86. The Great Rising of 1857 is regarded as a glorious landmark which produced far/ reaching results in the history of India. Explain with reference to:

(i) The British Government's decision on the East India Company's ruler in India end.

(ii) Queen Victoria's proclamation of 1858.

(iii) The rights granted to the Indian Princes and people.

Ans : MAIN 1983

(i) The most significant outcome of the Revolt of 1857 was the termination of the East India Company's rule and the direct transfer of governance of India to the British Crown. This transition was formalized through the Government of India Act of 1858, which included the following key provisions:

(a) **Transfer of Power :** The act transferred the authority to govern India from the East India Company to the British Crown, marking the end of Company rule.

(b) **Shift in Authority :** Previously, the control over India was in the hands of the Company's Directors and the Board of Control. With the new act, this power was now vested in the Secretary of State for India, who was a member of the British Cabinet and accountable to the British Parliament. This ensured that ultimate authority over India resided with the British Parliament.

(c) **Advisory Council :** The Secretary of State was to be supported by a 15-member India Council, providing assistance in the administration of Indian affairs..

(ii) During the Revolt of 1857, Queen Victoria was the reigning monarch in England. Her proclamation, which marked the transfer of governance from the East India Company to the British Crown, was publicly announced at Allahabad on November 1, 1858, by Lord Canning, the first Viceroy of India. The proclamation outlined the following commitments by the Government of India:

(a) **Non-intervention Policy :** The government pledged to adopt a policy of non-interference in the social and religious affairs of Indians.

(b) **Equality of Subjects :** All subjects, whether Indian or European, would be treated equally, with education and ability serving as the basis for all appointments.

(c) **General Pardon :** A general pardon was granted to all participants in the rebellion, except those who were found guilty of murdering British subjects.

(d) **Promotion of Industries :** The government promised to work towards the advancement of industries in India.

(iii) In an effort to secure the loyalty of the Indian princes, the British government abandoned the Doctrine of Lapse, which had allowed the annexation of princely states without a male heir. The Indian princes were assured that their rights to their territories would be respected, and they could adopt heirs to succeed them. Additionally, the British promised to respect all existing treaties and agreements with the Indian states. For the

NODIA

general population, the proclamation and subsequent policies aimed at providing a sense of justice and equality under British rule, although these promises were not always fully realized in practice. These measures, initiated in response to the Revolt of 1857, laid the foundation for the British administration in India and significantly altered the relationship between the British government and the Indian people.

87. During the Great Revolt of 1857 some patriotic Indians played prominent role in this fight against the British. State briefly the role of each of the following :
(i) Nana Saheb
(ii) The Rani of Jhansi
(iii) Tantia Tope.

Ans : COMP 2000

(i) Nana Saheb, the adopted son of Peshwa Baji Rao II, was one of the key leaders of the revolt in Kanpur. He led the rebellion against the British forces in Kanpur and successfully captured the Kanpur Fort. Nana Saheb declared himself the Peshwa and played a crucial role in rallying support against the British. His leadership and defiance against the British rule made him a prominent figure in the uprising.

(ii) Rani Lakshmi Bai, famously known as the Rani of Jhansi, was one of the most iconic leaders of the 1857 revolt. After the British annexed Jhansi under the Doctrine of Lapse, Rani Lakshmi Bai took up arms to defend her kingdom. She led her troops with remarkable courage and military skill, fighting fiercely against the British forces. Her bravery, especially during the battles to defend Jhansi and later during the retreat to Gwalior, made her a symbol of resistance and a legendary figure in India's struggle for independence.

(iii) Tantia Tope was General of Nana Saheb. He played a significant role in several battles across Central India, including the recapture of Kanpur. Known for his guerrilla tactics, Tantia Tope led a campaign that kept the British forces on the defensive for a considerable period. Despite the eventual defeat, his leadership and relentless efforts against the British made him a key figure in the revolt and a revered patriot in Indian history.

88. Economic exploitation of the country produced discontent, resentment and resistance among the people that culminated in the Great Uprising of 1857. Examine this factor with reference to the following :
(i) The ruin of trade and handicrafts.
(ii) Impoverishment of the cultivators.
(iii) Subordination of Indian economy to British interests (Making India an Agricultural Colony of British capitalism.

Ans : MAIN 2002

(i) The East India Company, established in 1600 as a trading entity, saw Indian textiles gain immense popularity in England after 1668. This led to the passing of an Act in 1720 that banned the use of Indian silks and calicoes in England. The British deliberately undermined Indian handicrafts by:
(a) Imposing heavy tariffs on Indian silk and cotton textiles in England.
(b) Allowing British goods to be imported into India with minimal duty.
(c) Causing the extinction of the art of spinning and weaving in India.
(d) Leaving once-thriving manufacturing centers like Dhaka, Murshidabad, and Surat in a desolate state.

(ii) The cultivators were severely impoverished under the British land-revenue policies. Whether it was the Permanent Settlement in Bengal and Bihar, the Ryotwari system in Bombay, or the Mahalwari system, nearly half of the net produce was taken as land revenue. Poor monsoons often led to famines, further worsening the peasants' poverty. Unable to pay the high land-revenue demands, farmers increasingly fell into the hands of moneylenders. In

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

their desperation, what more could the impoverished farmers desire than to drive the British out of India?

(iii) The British subordinated the Indian economy to serve the interests of their own trade and industry. Indian industries began to decline as heavy taxes were imposed on Indian silk and cotton textiles. The British exported raw materials from India while flooding the Indian market with goods manufactured in England. In essence, India was reduced to an agricultural colony, with its trade and commerce increasingly controlled and dominated by the British.

89. The Great Outbreak of 1857 brought about important changes in the character of Indian administration and the future development of the country. In this context discuss.

(i) The changes introduced in the administrative set-up of the British territories in India.

(ii) The changes in the Army.

(iii) The changes in the relationship with Princely States.

Ans : COMP 2007

(i) The war brought an end to the East India Company's rule in India. The Act of 1858 transferred the governance of India from the Company to the British Crown. Additionally, the Board of Control and the Court of Directors were abolished, with their powers being handed over to the Secretary of State, who would be supported by an Indian Council comprising 15 members. The Secretary of State's salary and allowances were to be drawn from Indian revenues. Furthermore, appointments to the Civil Service were to be made through open competition. Lastly, the Governor-General was given the additional title of Viceroy, signifying his new role as the Crown's representative in India, particularly in relation to the native princes and Nawabs.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

(ii) The changes in the Army:

(a) **Reorganization of the Army's Composition :** After 1858, the strength of European troops in India was increased to 65,000, while the number of Indian troops was reduced to 140,000, maintaining this ratio until the First World War.

(b) **Strategic Positioning and Exclusion :** European troops were stationed in key geographical and military locations, and Indians were strictly excluded from the officer corps to prevent them from gaining significant power.

(c) **Control of Weapons and Ammunition :** Indian soldiers were deliberately kept away from sophisticated weapons and ammunition. Most Indian artillery units were disbanded, except for a few mountain units, to prevent any future uprisings.

(d) **Discriminatory Recruitment and Control :** The British practiced discrimination based on caste, region, and religion in army recruitment. Additionally, measures were taken to discourage nationalism, including the introduction of caste and community divisions in regiments and preventing nationalist publications from reaching Indian soldiers.

NODIA

(iii) Queen Victoria's Proclamation of 1858 stated that the British government would no longer annex Indian states. Additionally, all treaties previously made between the princes and the East India Company would be respected, and their rights of adoption and succession would be recognized. However, at the same time, the British government took measures to weaken the Indian states militarily by restricting the size of their armies.

90. Although the First War of Independence of 1857 failed it had important consequences for India. In this context, answer the following questions :

(i) How did the uprising give rise to Nationalism in India?

(ii) How did the end of the East India Company's rule bring in grave economic perils in India?

(iii) State how the British Government tried to pacify the feelings of Indians with regard to:
(a) Their religious practices.
(b) The Princely States.

Ans : MAIN 2009

(i) A profound impact of the 1857 Uprising was that the sacrifices made by Indian leaders ignited the Nationalist Movement in India. All sections of society came together in a unified struggle. Figures like Nana Sahib and Rani of Jhansi emerged as national heroes and champions of India's quest for freedom. The war became a powerful symbol of resistance against the British rule in India. Nationalism, which embodies patriotism and a strong desire to preserve one's culture, became increasingly evident in the aftermath of the First War of Independence.

(ii) End of the East India Company's rule bring in grave economic perils in India in following way :
(a) **Exploitation of Resources :** India was exploited not just by a single trading company, but by the entire British populace. The recruitment of English personnel in both private and public sectors resulted in a significant drain on India's resources.
(b) **Economic Subordination :** India was reduced to an agricultural colony, primarily exporting raw materials and importing finished goods from Britain. This economic arrangement stunted India's industrial growth and entrenched its dependency on British imports.
(c) **Poverty and Misery :** The rapid rise in peasant indebtedness led to widespread poverty and a form of economic slavery. British investments in railways, plantations, and coal mines in India benefited only the British shareholders, leaving Indians impoverished and further deepening their misery.

(iii) The First War of Independence led to several important promises being made:
(a) With Regards to their religious practices:
1. In her Proclamation of 1858, Queen Victoria assured that the British government would not interfere with the religious beliefs of the people of India.
2. The Queen pledged equal treatment for all her subjects, both Indians and Europeans.
3. It was promised that all appointments would be based on education, ability, and integrity:
4. An official pardon was granted to those who were guilty of murdering British subjects during the uprising.
(b) With Regards to the Princely States : The policies of Annexation and the Doctrine of Lapse were abandoned. Some Indian princes, who had remained loyal to the British and assisted in suppressing the rebellion, were rewarded. It was announced that their right to adopt heirs would be respected, and the integrity of their territories would be guaranteed, protecting them from future annexation.

91. There were many causes for the uprising of 1857. In this context, state the following :
(i) Policy of economic exploitation.
(ii) Racial discrimination.
(iii) Social Causes.

Ans : COMP 2010

(i) **Economic Exploitation :** The land-revenue systems introduced by the British, such as Zamindari, Ryotwari, and Mahalwari, plunged the peasants into misery and poverty. These impoverished farmers were often forced to sell their produce at low prices to satisfy the demands of moneylenders, Zamindars, and government officials. The

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

British transformed India's self-sufficient economy into an agricultural colony, reducing it from an exporter of fine cloth to an importer of finished goods from England. Indian handicrafts were severely crippled under the policy of free trade. As William Hunter once noted, 40 million Indians lived their lives on insufficient food.

(ii) **Racial Discrimination :** The British considered themselves superior to Indians and adopted a policy of disdain towards them. They labeled Muslims as cruel and untrustworthy. Some European officers mistreated and insulted Indians, leading to widespread resentment. This unjust discrimination created a deep divide between the British and the Indian populace. The segregation in railway compartments, hotels, and other public spaces reserved for "Europeans only" were clear manifestations of this racial bias.

(iii) **Social Causes :** The British introduced several social reforms in India with the intention of improving people's lives. However, these reforms were implemented without considering the sentiments of the local population. As a result, even progressive measures like the abolition of Sati in 1829 and the introduction of the Widow Remarriage Act in 1856 were met with resistance and were not widely accepted by the masses.

92. The First War of Independence was the culmination of people's dissatisfaction against the British rule. In this context enumerate the following causes :
(i) Military causes
(ii) Economic causes
(iii) Political causes

Ans : SQP 2000

(i) Military Causes :
(a) **Ill-treatment of Indian Sepoys :** Indian soldiers were treated with disdain and regarded as inferior to their English counterparts. During training, they were often abused and physically mistreated, which deeply wounded their pride and morale.
(b) **Inferior Status and Low Salaries :** Indian soldiers received wages that were insufficient to support their families and were paid significantly less than English soldiers, despite performing similar duties. They had little to no opportunity for promotion to higher ranks, leading to resentment over their harsh and unequal treatment.
(c) **General Service Enlistment Act :** The General Service Enlistment Act, introduced by Lord Canning, mandated that Indian soldiers could be sent to fight overseas, which was against their religious beliefs. This act caused widespread bitterness and opposition among the sepoys, further fueling their discontent.

(ii) Economic causes :
(a) **Exploitation of India's Economic Resources :** The British exploited India's economic resources for their own enrichment, taking control of trade and commerce. This led to the decline of Indian industries while they siphoned off India's wealth to Britain.
(b) **Discontent among Jagirdars and Zamindars :** The British policy of resuming tax-free lands and confiscating jagirs caused significant discontent among Jagirdars and Zamindars, as these actions plunged them into poverty.
(c) **Joblessness Among Educated Indians :** High-ranking positions with attractive salaries were reserved exclusively for the English, leaving educated Indians excluded from these roles. As a result, many educated Indians faced unemployment and became deeply discontented.

(iii) Political causes :
(a) **Policy of Annexation by Lord Dalhousie :** The Doctrine of Lapse,

NODIA

along with the widespread annexation of Indian states, and the abolition of titles and pensions, turned many Indian princes and rulers into staunch enemies of the British.

(b) **Disrespect Towards Bahadur Shah :** The British further humiliated the Mughal dynasty by announcing that after the death of Bahadur Shah II, the Mughals would lose their royal title, and his successors would be required to vacate the Red Fort. This deeply hurt the sentiments of Muslims and intensified Indian resentment towards British rule.

(c) **Annexation of Awadh :** Lord Dalhousie annexed Awadh into the British Empire under the guise of misgovernance. This move displaced thousands of nobles, officials, and soldiers, leaving them jobless. The British also confiscated the estates of Zamindars and Taluqdars, leading to widespread dissatisfaction among all classes in Awadh.

(d) **Disbanding of Annexed States' Armies :** In states annexed by the British, the local armies were disbanded, leaving thousands of soldiers and their families without livelihoods. These disbanded soldiers harbored deep resentment and were determined to seek revenge against the British Company.

93. Many factors led to the First War of Independence. In this context explain the following :

(i) The attitude of the British towards the people of India with regard to their religious customs.

(ii) Factors causing dissatisfaction among the Indian soldiers.

(iii) Decline of the landed aristocracy.

Ans : COMP 2001

(i) Attitude of the British towards the people of India with regard to their religious customs :

(a) **Religious Interference by the British :** The British interference in the religious and social customs of Indians created widespread discontent. The activities of Christian missionaries, who were allowed to enter India by the Charter Act of 1833, convinced many Indians that the British government aimed to convert them to Christianity.

(b) **Support for Christian Missionaries :** The East India Company provided financial support to Christian missionaries and allowed them to use company offices, hospitals, educational institutions, and jails as centers for their propagation. Missionaries often preached in temples and mosques, which intensified religious tensions.

(c) **Privileges for Converts and Resulting Fear :** Converts to Christianity were given special privileges, which heightened fears among Indians of losing their religion. This fear and perceived threat to their faith led many Indians to rally against the British, ultimately contributing to the decision to revolt.

(ii) Factors causing dissatisfaction among the Indian soldiers :

(a) **Discontent Over Pay and Treatment :** Indian sepoys were paid significantly less than their British counterparts, receiving eight times less salary. They were also considered inferior, often humiliated and insulted by their British officers, which fueled their anger and resentment.

(b) **Religious and Career Grievances :** The General Enlistment Act, which required sepoys to serve in foreign countries, was against the religious beliefs of Hindu soldiers. Additionally, there were limited opportunities for promotion, with Indian soldiers unable to rise above the rank of Subedar, further contributing to their dissatisfaction.

NODIA

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

(c) **Greased Cartridges Controversy :** The immediate trigger for the revolt was the use of greased cartridges, rumored to be coated with cow and pig fat. This deeply offended both Hindu and Muslim sepoys, as the cartridges had to be bitten before use. The execution of Mangal Pandey, who refused to use the cartridges, ignited widespread anger among the sepoys, leading to the outbreak of a large-scale revolt.

(iii) The landed aristocracy, including taluqdars and hereditary landlords, were stripped of their estates under the provisions of the Inam Commission (1852). When landlords could not provide documentation, such as title deeds, proving their ownership, around 20,000 estates were confiscated. These lands were then sold at public auctions to the highest bidders, often merchants and moneylenders who had little understanding of the tenants and exploited them harshly. This led to the impoverishment of the landed aristocracy without any real benefit to the peasantry, who continued to suffer under heavy land revenue demands. The aristocracy of Awadh, in particular, faced significant hardships after the region's annexation, as they too lost their estates.

94. Several factors led to the uprising of 1857. With reference to this, explain each of the following:
(i) Discontentment of the Sepoys.
(ii) Resentment of the rulers of the native states against the British.
(iii) Unhappiness of the Indian Artisans and Craftsmen

Ans : MAIN 2005

(i) The Indian soldiers were discontented due to their low salaries and limited opportunities for promotion, as all the high-ranking positions in the army were reserved exclusively for the British. Additionally, the distribution of troops was poorly managed, with key locations like Delhi and Allahabad lacking British forces. The officers often treated the Indian soldiers as menial servants, and widespread racial discrimination further fueled their dissatisfaction and resentment.

(ii) The last Mughal Emperor, Bahadur Shah, was subjected to a significant affront when Lord Canning declared that Bahadur Shah's successor would no longer be permitted to use the imperial title. This disrespect deeply wounded Muslim sentiments. Similarly, Dalhousie's denial of a pension to Nana Saheb, the adopted son of the ex-Peshwa Baji Rao II, was met with strong resentment, particularly among Hindus and Nana Saheb himself. Additionally, Nawab Wajid Ali Shah was deposed under the pretext that Awadh was poorly governed, leading to its annexation. This action was seen as an act of high-handedness by the British, especially given that the Nawab had been consistently loyal to the Company. The British betrayal of their promises and commitments to the ruling chiefs further fueled resentment among the Indian rulers.

(iii) The British rulers intentionally undermined Indian arts and crafts by imposing heavy tariffs on Indian silk and cotton textiles in Britain. Conversely, British goods were imported into India with minimal duties. As a result, millions of artisans and craftsmen lost their livelihoods, with no alternative sources of income available to them.

95. The uprising of 1857 was an unprecedented popular upsurge. In this context describe the effect of the following on the Indian soldiers.
(i) Discontent on account of low salary and poor prospects of promotion.
(ii) The General Service Enlistment Act.
(iii) Introduction of greased cartridges.

Ans : COMP 2007

(i) The wages of Indian soldiers were insufficient to support their families,

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

ICSC CLASS 9

Previous Year Solved Exam Question Bank

Click your Subject and Instantly get a free PDF or Order the Hard copy from Amazon.

English Language

English Literature

Physics

Chemistry

Biology

Mathematics

Geography

History and Civics

Economics

Commercial Studies

Environmental Science

Physical Education

Computer Application

Economics Application

Commercial Application

Environ. Application

Home Science

Hindi

Robotics and AI

Yoga

For Other Subject PDF of all Classes, and for NEET, JEE and CUET visit

www.pdf.tube

ICSC CLASS 10

Previous Year Solved Exam Question Bank

Click your Subject and Instantly get a free PDF or Order the Hard copy from Amazon.

English Language	English Literature	Physics	Chemistry
Biology	Mathematics	Geography	History and Civics
Economics	Commercial Studies	Environmental Science	Physical Education
Computer Application	Economics Application	Commercial Application	Environ. Application
Home Science	Hindi	Robotics and AI	Yoga

BUY IT ON amazon

DOWNLOAD FREE PDF WWW.MCQGPT.COM

For Other Subject PDF of all Classes, and for NEET, JEE and CUET visit

www.pdf.tube

ISC CLASS 11

Previous Year Solved Exam Question Bank

Click your Subject and Instantly get a free PDF or Order the Hard copy from Amazon.

English Com

Mathematics

Physics

Chemistry

Biology

Physical Education

Environmental Science

Computer Science

Accountancy

Business Studies

Economics

Commerce

Legal Studies

Mass Media

Home Science

History

Geography

Political Science

Psychology

Sociology

For Other Subject of All Clasess PDF and for NEET, JEE and CUET visit

www.pdf.tube

ISC CLASS 12

Previous Year Solved Exam Question Bank

Click your Subject and Instantly get a free PDF or Order the Hard copy from Amazon.

English Com

Mathematics

Physics

Chemistry

Biology

Physical Education

Environmental Science

Computer Science

Accountancy

Business Studies

Economics

Commerce

Legal Studies

Mass Media

Home Science

History

Geography

Political Science

Psychology

Sociology

For Other Subject of All Clasess PDF and for NEET, JEE and CUET visit

www.pdf.tube

BETTER THAN BOOK IN THE MARKET

Why students are choosing this book 👉

School teachers already use this content to set papers.

Still not sure?

- 👉 Match this PDF with your question papers
- 👉 See the similarity yourself

Why does this happen?

- ✓ Teachers have its PDF & Word files
- ✓ Easy access
- ✓ Direct copy-paste questions
- ✓ Same pattern followed

Don't miss out—get the advantage today!

as they earned less than one-eighth of what an English soldier received, despite performing similar duties. Additionally, there were no opportunities for promotion beyond the rank of Subedar for Indian soldiers, with key positions in artillery and other crucial roles reserved exclusively for the British. This discriminatory treatment deeply frustrated and angered the Indian soldiers, leading to growing resentment against the British.

(ii) Lord Canning's introduction of the General Enlistment Act sparked significant bitterness among the sepoys, as it required them to serve on overseas fronts, which conflicted with their religious beliefs. While the political, social, and economic conditions in India were ripe for a revolt, the outbreak remained unlikely as long as the Indian soldiers remained loyal to the British. However, the discontent caused by this and other military grievances eventually stirred the sepoys into action, leading them to initiate the revolt.

(iii) The cartridges used by soldiers for the Enfield Rifles were greased with cow and pig fat. Since cows are sacred to Hindus and pigs are considered unclean by Muslims, this act deeply offended both religious communities. As a result, the army's discontent posed a significant threat to British rule.

96. Numerous causes were at work in causing the Great Upsurge of 1857. Explain the following with reference to the above statement.

(i) The introduction of Railways and Telegraphs.

(ii) The introduction of Enfield Rifles.

(iii) The laws that interfered with the religious customs of the people.

Ans : MAIN 2010

(i) Introduction of Railways and Telegraphs:

(a) Telegraph poles were believed to have been installed with the intention of hanging those who opposed British rule in India.

(b) The introduction of railways caused discontent as Brahmins and untouchables were made to sit together, which they believed violated their religious practices.

(c) Modern innovations disrupted traditional social norms, causing unrest among many orthodox people in India.

(ii) Introduction of Enfield Rifles :

(a) The cartridges were greased with pig and cow fat, requiring the sepoys to bite off the greased covers before loading them into their rifles.

(b) Both Hindus and Muslims viewed this as an attempt to disrespect and undermine their religious beliefs.

(iii) The Laws that interfered with the religious customs of the people :

(a) The practice of Sati was declared illegal and punishable by law.

(b) New laws were enacted to prohibit infanticide, permit widow remarriage, and curb polygamy.

(c) The government imposed taxes on properties owned by temples and mosques.

(d) Lord Dalhousie introduced a law allowing individuals who converted to Christianity to inherit their ancestral property.

These actions sparked widespread anger among local rulers and the general population towards the British.

97. Using the following points, briefly explain the political causes of the Revolt of 1857 :

(i) Exposure of the myth of British invincibility.

(ii) Inefficient Administration.

Ans :

(i) Before the Revolt of 1857, the British were perceived as an invincible force by many Indians. However, several events leading up to the revolt, including military setbacks and administrative failures, began to expose this myth. The British suffered defeats in the Anglo-Afghan

Wars and faced strong resistance in other parts of India. These events demonstrated that the British were not as undefeatable as they were thought to be, emboldening Indian rulers, soldiers, and the general populace to challenge British authority. The realization that the British could be opposed and potentially defeated played a significant role in sparking the widespread rebellion of 1857.

(ii) The British administration in India was marked by inefficiency and insensitivity to the needs and concerns of the Indian population. The annexation policies, such as the Doctrine of Lapse implemented by Lord Dalhousie, alienated many Indian rulers by depriving them of their territories. Additionally, the British failed to address the grievances of the common people, who suffered under exploitative land revenue systems and oppressive laws. The administration's inability to manage these growing discontentments effectively contributed to the rising frustration among various sections of society. This widespread discontent with British rule fueled the flames of the Revolt of 1857, as people from different backgrounds united in their opposition to the British.

98. In the 19th century, the Britishers began to interfere with the local religious and social customs. In this context briefly describe :

(i) Fear regarding mass conversions to Christianity and loss of religion and caste.

(ii) Interference in social customs.

(iii) Policy of social discrimination.

Ans : COMP 2015

(i) Fear regarding mass conversions to Christianity and loss of religion and caste:

(a) **Compulsory Christian Education :** Christian doctrine was made a mandatory part of the curriculum in schools established by Christian missionaries.

(b) **Religious Preaching in Sacred Places :** British officials openly preached Christian teachings in mosques and temples, infringing upon the religious practices of Hindus and Muslims.

(c) **Anti-Hindu Propaganda :** The Missionary Society of America set up a press in Agra specifically to propagate against the Hindu religion and its customs.

(d) **Condemnation of Hindu and Muslim Practices :** Missionaries widely condemned Hindu scriptures, idol worship, and both Hindu and Muslim doctrines and customs, often in a public and aggressive manner.

(ii) Interference in social customs:

(a) **General Service Enlistment Act of 1856 :** This Act required new recruits to serve anywhere in India or overseas, which alarmed Indian soldiers because, according to Hindu customs, crossing the sea was against their religious beliefs.

(b) **Religious Disabilities Act (1850) :** This law allowed a person who converted from Hinduism to another religion to retain their right to inherit ancestral property. Many believed that this law was designed to encourage the conversion of Hindus to Christianity.

(c) **Widow Remarriage Act of 1856 :** The Widow Remarriage Act legalized the remarriage of widows, a move that was strongly opposed by orthodox Hindus who supported the practice of Sati.

(d) **Other Social Reforms :** The British government also banned practices such as Sati, female infanticide, and child marriage. These reforms were met with disapproval by many common people who were attached to traditional customs.

(iii) Policy of social discrimination:

(a) **Cultural Superiority and Criticism :** The British considered their culture and religion superior to those of the Indians, viewing them as scientific and humane. They aimed to convince Indians that their own culture and

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

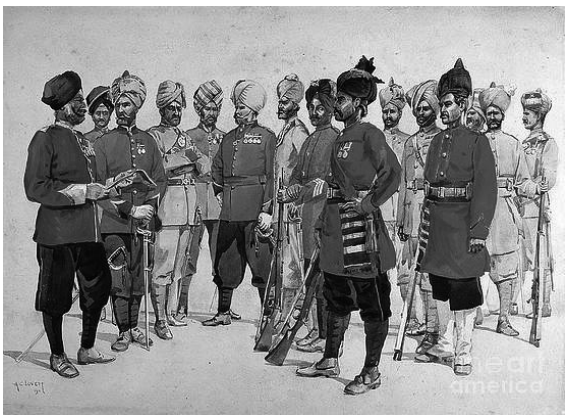
religion were the root causes of the social issues in Indian society.

(b) **Discriminatory Treatment of Indians :** Indians were often subjected to insults, indignities, and even violence by the British, who treated them with contempt. Indians were required to salute or dismount when encountering an Englishman, and even prominent figures like Raja Ram Mohan Roy were not spared from such disrespect. This degrading treatment deeply wounded the self-respect of Indians.

(c) **Discrimination in the Military :** Indian soldiers were limited to the rank of Subedar, with all higher ranks reserved for Englishmen. The British soldiers were also paid significantly more, which led to dissatisfaction and frustration among Indian troops. This inequality in pay and rank negatively impacted the morale of the Indian soldiers.

CASE BASED QUESTION

99. Study the picture and answer the following questions :



(i) Who are the persons in the picture? How were they treated by their British counterparts ?

(ii) State any three grievances they had against the British.

(iii) What changes were brought in their status after the Uprising of 1857 ?

Ans :

(i) Indian Sepoys in the British Army : The Indian sepoys in the British army were underpaid, poorly nourished, and inadequately housed. The British military authorities prohibited them from wearing caste or sectarian symbols, such as beards or turbans, showing a complete disregard for the cultural and religious sentiments of the sepoys.

(ii) Three grievances they had against the British :

(a) **Dissatisfaction Among Indian Soldiers :** Indian soldiers were discontented due to their low salaries and limited opportunities for promotion, as all high-ranking positions in the army were reserved exclusively for the British.

(b) **Improper Troop Distribution :** The distribution of troops was poorly managed, with key locations like Delhi and Allahabad lacking British forces.

(c) **Racial Discrimination and Poor Treatment :** Officers treated Indian soldiers as menial servants, and rampant racial discrimination further fueled their discontent, leading to increased resentment among the sepoys.

(iii) The wages of Indian soldiers were significantly reduced and insufficient to support their families. Despite performing similar duties, an English soldier earned more than eight times what an Indian sepoy received. Additionally, Indian soldiers had no opportunities for advancement beyond the rank of Subedar, with key positions in artillery and access to important weapons reserved exclusively for the British soldiers.

NODIA

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

100. Study the picture and answer the following questions :

(i) Identify the person in the picture and name the proclamation issued in her name.
(ii) Where and by whom was this proclamation made public ?
(iii) What assurance did this Proclamation give to the Indian people regarding
(a) religious freedom, and
(b) appointment to public offices?

Ans :

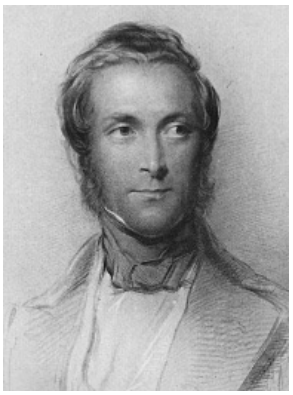
(i) The individual in the picture is Queen Victoria, and this event is referred to as the Queen's Proclamation.
(ii) On November 1, 1858, in Allahabad, Lord Canning, the first Viceroy of India, publicly announced the Queen's Proclamation, which signaled the transfer of governance from the East India Company to the British Crown.
(iii)(a) In her 1858 Proclamation, Queen Victoria pledged not to interfere with the religious beliefs of the Indian people.
(b) The Queen also assured equal treatment for all her subjects, both Indian and European, stating that all appointments would be based solely on education, ability, and integrity.

101. Look at the given picture and answer the questions that follow :
(i) Identify the person in the picture.
(ii) Why did he revolt?
(iii) What was the result of his revolt against the British?

Ans :

(i) The person is Mangal Pandey.
(ii) He revolted because the British forced him to use greased cartridges.
(ii) After a court martial at Barrackpore, he was executed. His martyrdom became an inspiration to his fellow soldiers and motivated Indians in their struggle for freedom.

102. Refer to the given picture and answer the following questions :
(i) Identify the person in the picture.
(ii) Why did he annex various states on the basis of Doctrine of Lapse?
(iii) What was the consequence of the application of this doctrine?



Ans :

(i) The person is Lord Dalhousie.
(ii) He introduced the Doctrine of Lapse to expand British territories in India, aiming to extend their rule and further exploit India's wealth.

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

(iii) This policy led to widespread discontent among Indian rulers, turning them against the British.

103. Look at the given picture and answer the questions that follow :

(i) Identify this picture. Which state did she belong to?

(ii) Why was she upset with the English?

(iii) State her contribution to the struggle for freedom from the British rule?

Ans :

(i) The picture depicts Rani Lakshmibai, the queen of the Maratha-ruled princely state of Jhansi in North India.

(ii) She was angered by the British decision to deny her the right to adopt a son, which led to the annexation of her state.

(iii) Rani Lakshmibai was a key figure in the Indian Mutiny of 1857, leading the revolt in central India with remarkable bravery. She fought valiantly on the battlefield and became a symbol of resistance against British rule in India. Her courage and military prowess inspired her fellow countrymen.

NODIA

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

www.nodia.in

CHAPTER 2

GROWTH OF NATIONALISM

SUMMARY

The chapter "Growth of Nationalism" focuses on the emergence and development of nationalist sentiments in India during the 19th and early 20th centuries. Nationalism, which is the feeling of oneness and a common identity among people, began to take root in India as a response to British colonial rule. Several factors contributed to the rise of nationalism in the country.

1. ECONOMIC EXPLOITATION

The British economic policies were designed to benefit Britain at the expense of India. The introduction of land revenue systems like the Permanent Settlement, Ryotwari and Mahalwari led to the exploitation of Indian peasants. The destruction of traditional industries and handicrafts, coupled with the imposition of heavy taxes, worsened the economic conditions of Indians. The economic exploitation created widespread discontent and contributed to the growth of nationalist feelings.

2. REPRESSIVE COLONIAL POLICIES

The British government introduced several repressive measures to suppress the voice of Indians. Acts like the Vernacular Press Act of 1878, which curbed the freedom of the press, and the Rowlatt Act of 1919, which allowed detention without trial, fueled resentment against British rule. These policies highlighted the need for unity among Indians to fight against injustice.

3. SOCIO-RELIGIOUS REFORM MOVEMENTS

The 19th century saw the rise of socio-religious reform movements led by prominent figures like Raja Rammohan Roy, Jyotiba Phule, and Swami Vivekananda. These reformers worked to eradicate social evils like Sati, child marriage, and untouchability, and promoted education, widow remarriage, and the upliftment of women. The reform movements played a crucial role in awakening a sense of national pride and unity among Indians.

4. ROLE OF THE PRESS

The Indian press played a significant role in spreading nationalist ideas and raising awareness about the injustices of British rule. Newspapers like "Kesari," "Amrita Bazar Patrika," and "The Hindu" provided a platform for expressing nationalist sentiments and mobilizing public opinion. The press became a powerful tool in the struggle for independence.

5. FORMATION OF POLITICAL ASSOCIATIONS

The second half of the 19th century witnessed the formation of several political associations, which laid the groundwork for organized nationalist movements. The Indian National Association, founded by Surendranath Banerjee, and the East India Association, founded by Dadabhai Naoroji, were among the early organizations that aimed to represent Indian interests. These associations eventually paved the way for the formation of the Indian National Congress (INC) in 1885.

6. FOUNDATION OF THE INDIAN NATIONAL CONGRESS (INC)

The Indian National Congress was established in 1885 by A.O. Hume, with the support of

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

Indian leaders like Dadabhai Naoroji and W.C. Bonnerjee. The INC aimed to promote unity among Indian nationalists, create a common political platform, and present Indian grievances to the British government. Initially, the Congress adopted a moderate approach, seeking constitutional reforms and greater representation for Indians in the government.

7. EARLY OBJECTIVES AND SESSIONS OF THE INC

The first session of the Indian National Congress was held in Bombay in December 1885, with W.C. Bonnerjee as the president. The early objectives of the Congress included promoting friendly relations between nationalist political workers, creating public opinion on national issues, and seeking redressal of grievances through peaceful and constitutional means. The second session was held in Calcutta in 1886, with Dadabhai Naoroji as the president.

8. IMPACT OF THE NATIONALIST MOVEMENT

The growth of nationalism in India led to the emergence of a strong and united national movement against British rule. The early efforts of socio-religious reformers, political associations, and the Indian National Congress laid the foundation for the larger struggle for independence. Over time, the nationalist movement gained momentum, culminating in the demand for complete independence from British rule.

MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTION

1. Tahir is preparing to give a speech about the Sati system in India. Which of the following Indian leader's contribution MUST he mention in his speech?
(a) Raja Rammohan Roy
(b) W. C. Bonerjee
(c) Bipin Chandra Pal
(d) Jyotiba Phule

Ans : MAIN 2024

Thus (a) is correct option.

2. The _____ aimed to introduce equality between British and Indian Judges.
(a) Vernacular Press Act
(b) Gagging Act
(c) Indian Universities Act
(d) Ilbert Bill

Ans : MAIN 2024

Thus (d) is correct option.

3. The East India Company's territorial power began to increased rapidly in India after which of the following Battles?
(a) The battle of Buxar
(b) The Battle Plassey
(c) The First Anglo-Mysore War
(d) The Third Anglo-Maratha War

Ans : SQP 2009

Thus (b) is correct option.

4. Nana Saheb was the adopted son of_____
(a) Bahadur Shah Zafar
(b) Tantia Tope
(c) Baji Rao I
(d) Baji Rao II

Ans : MAIN 2000

Thus (d) is correct option.

5. Where was the family seat of Nana Saheb located?
(a) Nagpur
(b) Lucknow
(c) Pune
(d) Kanpur

Ans : COMP 2005

Thus (c) is correct option.

6. Lord Dalhousie annexed a number of Indian States to the East India Company using_____
(a) The Subsidiary of Lapse
(b) The Doctrine of Lapse
(c) The government of India Act of 1858
(d) Queen Victoria's Proclamation

Ans : SQP 2018

Thus (b) is correct option.

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

7. Which of the following reforms was resented by the Indians?
(a) The Abolition of Sati
(b) The Widow Remarriage Act
(c) Opening of Girls's school
(d) Both (a) and (b)

Ans : SQP 2012

Thus (d) is correct option.

8. Jhansi was annexed by applying which of the following?
(a) Alleged Misrule
(b) Subsidiary Alliance
(c) Queen's Proclamation
(d) The Doctrine of Lapse

Ans : MAIN 2001

Thus (d) is correct option.

9. Seventy-five thousand of the company's sepoys belonged to which of the following states?
(a) Jaipur
(b) Awadh
(c) Mysore
(d) Sambalpur

Ans : SQP 2006

Thus (b) is correct option.

10. By the provisions of which of the following, 20,000 estates of the landlords were confiscated by the East India Company?
(a) The Hunter Commission
(b) Frazer Commission
(c) The Inam Commission
(d) The Woods Dispatch

Ans : SQP 2005

Thus (c) is correct option.

11. Which of the following Acts was resented by the Indian sepoys?
(a) The General Service Enlistment Act
(b) The Indian Service Rules
(c) The Government of India Act, 1858
(d) The Queen's Proclamation

Ans : COMP 2003

Thus (a) is correct option.

12. Which of the following events of the Uprising of 1857 and their leaders is not correctly matched?
(a) Lucknow – Begum Hazrat Mahal
(b) Kanpur – Nana Saheb
(c) Kalpi – Tantia Tope
(d) Bihar – Khan Bahadur

Ans : MAIN 2002

Thus (d) is correct option.

13. The First Indian State to enter into the Subsidiary Alliance with the East India Company using.....
(a) Awadh (b) Mysore
(c) Tanjore (d) Jhansi

Ans : COMP 2001

Thus (a) is correct option.

14. Which of the following was the result of the Great Uprising of 1857?
(a) End of the rule of the British Crown
(b) End of the rule of the East India Company
(c) End of the rule of the Governor-General
(d) End of the Board of Directors

Ans : SQP 2007

Thus (b) is correct option.

15. An effect of the Uprising of 1857 was that –
(a) The spirit of rebellion in India was crushed
(b) The British became totally demoralised
(c) The British abandoned their repressive policies
(d) unity was forged between the Hindus and Muslims

Ans : COMP 2009

Thus (d) is correct option.

16. Who introduced the Subsidiary Alliance in India?
(a) Lord Hastings
(b) Lord Amherst
(c) Lord Wallesley
(d) Lord Cornwallis

Ans : SQP 2001

Thus (c) is correct option.

NODIA

17. The Uprising of 1857 began from_ _ _ _ _ _ _.
(a) Meerut
(b) Plassey
(c) Buxar
(d) Delhi

Ans : COMP 2013

Thus (a) is correct option.

18. The initial success of the Uprising of 1857, the objective of the leaders of the Uprising included
(a) Restoring the former glory to the Mughal empire;
(b) Forming a federation of Indian States under the aegis of Bhadur Shah II;
(c) Eliminating foreign rule and return of the old order;
(d) Establishing his own power in his respective region by each leader.

Ans : COMP 2024

Thus (c) is correct option.

19. Under the Government of India Act 1858, who gave up the direct administration of India?
(a) The East India Company
(b) The British Crown
(c) Lord Mountbatten
(d) The Mughal Emperor

Ans : SQP 2018

Thus (a) is correct option.

20. The Uprising of 1857 was a prolonged period of armed uprising against the British in Northern and Central India. Which of the following was not a major centre of the Uprising?
(a) Delhi
(b) Awadh
(c) Mumbai
(d) The Chambal Region

Ans : COMP 2020

Thus (d) is correct option.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

ONE MARK QUESTIONS

21. Under what pretext was Oudh annexed by the British ?

Ans : MAIN 1998, 2003

Oudh was annexed to the Company's dominions on the grounds of maladministration.

22. Which is called India's First War of Independence?

Ans : SQP 1996

The Revolt of 1857

23. Mention the last Mughal emperor of India before the British Crown declared India to be its colony.

Ans : COMP 2004

Bahadur Shah Zafar.

24. Name any one policy used by Lord Dalhousie for the extension of British territories in India.

Ans : MAIN 2002

The Doctrine of Lapse.

25. Mention one reason for the unhappiness of the Indian soldiers in the British Army before 1857.

Ans : COMP 2004

The Indian soldiers were unhappy because of their low salary and poor prospects of promotion.

26. Give one change brought about by the British Government in the army after the revolt of 1857.

Ans : MAIN 2008

The proportion of the British to Indian soldiers was increased and different castes and creeds were mixed to avoid any other revolt.

27. What was Nana Saheb's grievance against the British ?

Ans : COMP 1995, 2003, 2012

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

The British had refused to recognise him as the legitimate heir to the throne of Peshwa Baji Rao II, because he was his adopted son.

28. Who became first Viceroy of India under the Act of 1858 ?

Ans : SQP 2004

Lord Canning.

29. Name the last Mughal emperor of India before the British Crown declared India to be its colony.

Ans : MAIN 2004

Bahadur Shah Zafar.

30. In which year did the First War of Independence take place?

Ans : SQP 2006

The First War of Independence took place in the year 1857.

31. Name any two states that fell victim to the Doctrine of Lapse.

Ans : COMP 2016

Satara and Jhansi.

32. Mention any two social reforms advocated by the British which affected the religious traditions of the Indian people.

Ans : SQP 2009

(i) Abolition of Sati system.
(ii) Widow remarriage.

33. Name any two Indian rulers who remained loyal to the British during national uprising in 1857.

Ans : MAIN 2009

Sindhia of Gwalior and Nizam of Hyderabad.

34. Name the Act that transferred the Government of India from the Company to the Crown. When was it passed ?

Ans : SQP 2023

Act for the Better Government of India. It was passed on August 2, 1858.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

TWO MARKS QUESTIONS

35. Mention any two repressive policies of Lord Lytton.

Ans : MAIN 2023

(i) Vernacular Press Act (1878) : This act censored vernacular newspapers, limiting freedom of the press and curbing dissent.
(ii) The Arms Act (1878) restricted Indians from owning firearms without a license, while exempting Europeans. It aimed to prevent Indians from acquiring weapons, reinforcing British control.

NODIA

36. What was General Service Enlistment Act ?

or

Mention any one provision of the 'General Service Enlistment Act of 1856'.

Ans : COMP 1999,2013,2019

The General Service Enlistment Act of 1856 mandated that all new recruits to the Bengal Army must be prepared to serve in any location, whether within India or abroad.

37. What was the General Service Enlistment Act of 1856?

Ans : SQP 2009

In 1856, Viceroy Lord Canning passed the General Service Enlistment Act, requiring every new recruit to agree to serve overseas (lands beyond the seas) if commanded.

38. Name the two ways in which the British expanded their territorial power in India ?

Ans : SQP 1999

The ways in which the British expanded their territorial power in India are :
(i) Doctrine of Lapse : This policy allowed the British to annex any princely state where the ruler died without a direct male heir.
(ii) Subsidiary Alliance : Under this system, Indian rulers were forced to accept British forces in their territories and cede control over their foreign affairs, effectively reducing them to puppet states.

39. What was the immediate cause of the revolt of 1857?

Ans : MAIN 2018

The immediate trigger was the introduction of Enfield rifles, accompanied by a rumor that the cartridges were greased with cow and pig fat. This ignited the Mutiny, leading to the uprising of all three sepoy regiments in Meerut on May 10, 1857.

40. State two announcements which adversely affected the Mughal dynasty in India.

Ans : SQP 2005

Two announcements that adversely affected the Mughal dynasty in India were :

(i) End of Titles : The British declared that Bahadur Shah Zafar's successors would lose their royal titles.

(ii) Exile : The British announced that after Bahadur Shah Zafar's death, his family would be exiled from the Red Fort.

41. Why was the "War of 1857" hailed as the First War of National Independence ?

Ans : SQP 2002

The Revolt of 1857 is regarded as the First War of National Independence because it was the first uprising where kings, soldiers, peasants, and ordinary people both Hindus and Muslims united with a shared goal of reclaiming their lost independence.

42. With reference to the British rule in India, mention two economic factors, which became the cause of the First War of Independence, 1857.

Ans : COMP 2005

(i) In 1720, an Act was enacted that banned the use of Indian silk and calicoes in England to curb the growing popularity of Indian textile products there.

(ii) High taxes were levied on Indian goods, while British products were sold without any such duties.

43. What were the apprehensions of Indians about the introduction of the railways?

Ans : MAIN 2011

The introduction of Railways played a major role as a religious factor in sparking the Revolt of 1857. It was viewed as a threat to the social order and caste system because people of all castes were required to sit together in railway compartments. This was seen as an effort to undermine traditional caste practices.

44. Why was the "War of 1857" hailed as the First War of national independence ?

Ans : COMP 2000

It involved all sections of society, regardless of caste or creed, and was not confined to a specific area. In this revolt, not only did army personnel participate, but Indian civilians also joined the struggle to end foreign rule. This uprising posed a genuine threat to the British.

45. Give the meaning of Absentee Sovereignty. Why was it resented by the Indians ?

Ans : SQP 2001

Absentee Sovereignty refers to the situation where India was governed by the British government from England, far removed from the realities and needs of the Indian people.
It was resented by Indians because they believed that their country's wealth was being drained to England, with little benefit or investment being made for the welfare and development of India itself.

46. Mention any two consequences of the annexation of Awadh.

Ans : COMP 2008

(i) The people of Awadh faced heavier land taxes and additional levies on food, houses, ferries, and legal matters.

(ii) The disbanding of the Nawab of Awadh's army and administration led to thousands of nobles, officials, and soldiers losing their jobs.

47. Explain the term : Doctrine of Lapse. Name the two States annexed by the British using the Doctrine of Lapse.

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

Ans : COMP 2000

The Doctrine of Lapse, introduced by Lord Dalhousie, stipulated that if a ruler of a dependent state died without a natural heir, the state would be annexed by the British. Using this policy, the British took control of states like Satara (1848), Jhansi (1853) and Nagpur (1854).

48. Who was Nana Sahib ? What was his main grievance against the British?

Ans : MAIN 2001

Nana Sahib was the adopted son of the last Peshwa, Baji Rao II. His main grievance against the British was their refusal to grant him the pension that was due to his adoptive father, as they did not recognize his claim as the rightful heir after the Peshwa's death. This denial of pension led to his deep resentment towards the British.

49. Which policy was used by Lord Dalhousie against Rani Laxmi Bai ? Why did Rani Laxmi Bai become a bitter enemy of the British ?

Ans : MAIN 2004

Lord Dalhousie used the Doctrine of Lapse against Rani Laxmi Bai. According to this policy, when her husband, the ruler of Jhansi, died without a natural heir, the British refused to recognize her adopted son as the successor and annexed Jhansi.

Rani Laxmi Bai became a bitter enemy of the British because they denied her the right to rule Jhansi and took away her kingdom, leading to her deep resentment and fierce resistance during the First War of Independence in 1857.

50. What was the nature of revolts against the British before the First War of Independence?

Ans : SQP 2013

The uprisings against the British before the First War of Independence did not present a major threat because they were localized, scattered, and isolated. However, these rebellions created a local tradition of resistance against British rule.

51. State any two consequences of the disbanding of the armies of the annexed States by the British.

Ans : MAIN 2010

(i) The disbanding of the Nawab of Awadh's army and administration rendered thousands of nobles, officials and soldiers jobless.

(ii) The British confiscated the estates of the taluqdars or zamindars, turning these dispossessed landowners into adversaries of British rule.

52. What was the provision of the General Service Enlistment Act which was resented by the Indian soldiers ? Why was it resented ?

Ans : MAIN 2005

The provision of the General Service Enlistment Act that was resented by Indian soldiers was the requirement for them to serve overseas if ordered. This was resented because it violated the religious beliefs of many Hindu and Muslim soldiers, who believed that crossing the sea would lead to the loss of their caste or religious identity.

53. What was the immediate cause of the First War of Independence?

Ans : MAIN 2017

The immediate cause of the First War of Independence was the introduction of the Enfield rifle, which required soldiers to use cartridges rumored to be greased with cow and pig fat. This deeply offended both Hindu and Muslim soldiers, as it violated their religious beliefs, leading to widespread anger and ultimately sparking the revolt.

54. Mention two political causes of the First War of Independence.

Ans : MAIN 1981

(i) Expansionist Policies : The British pursued aggressive policies of territorial expansion.

(ii) Disrespect towards Bahadur Shah Zafar : The British showed disrespect to Bahadur Shah Zafar, further fueling discontent.

NODIA

55. What impact did uprising of 1857 have on the Mughal Rule ?

Ans : MAIN 2016

The Mughal Empire, which had already lost its importance, was completely destroyed. The last Mughal emperor, Bahadur Shah Zafar, was put on trial for treason and sent into exile in Burma.

56. Mention any two grievances harboured by the Indian soldiers which created an atmosphere favourable to the First War of Independence.

Ans : SQP 2017

(i) All higher positions in employment were reserved for the British, and Indian soldiers were not allowed to advance beyond the rank of Subedar.
(ii) Indian soldiers were obligated to serve in distant regions without receiving extra pay or the additional foreign service allowance (Bhatta).

57. Mention any two drawbacks of the First War of Independence.

Ans : COMP 2003

(i) The movement lacked coordinated military plans and centralized leadership. The uprisings across the country were disconnected and uncoordinated.
(ii) The East India Company benefited from the expertise of exceptional leaders like Lawrence, Nicholson, Havelock, Outram and Campbell. They managed to handle the toughest battles early in the uprising and maintained control until reinforcements arrived from abroad.

58. Mention any two measures which point to the policy of social discrimination followed by the British in India.

Ans : MAIN 1999

(i) All top employment positions were reserved for the British, and Indian soldiers were not allowed to rise above the rank of Subedar.
(ii) Indian soldiers were compelled to serve in distant regions without receiving extra pay or the additional foreign service allowance (Bhatta).

59. State two effects of the defeat of the British in the first Afghan War and the Punjab Wars on the Indian soldiers.

Ans : COMP 2016

(i) Although the British managed to suppress the Santhal Uprising, the heavy losses they endured shattered the belief in their invincibility.
(ii) It also showed Indian soldiers that a determined Indian force could indeed defeat the British army.

60. Name two humanitarian measures taken by the British which invoked adverse reaction from the Indian masses.

Ans : COMP 2001

Two humanitarian measures taken by the British that provoked adverse reactions from the Indian masses were :
(i) Abolition of Sati : The British banned the practice of Sati, which was seen as interference in traditional Hindu customs.
(ii) Legalization of Widow Remarriage : The British introduced laws permitting widow remarriage, challenging long-standing religious and cultural practices in Hindu society.

61. Give any two grievances of the peasantry against the British?

Ans : SQP 2003

(i) The peasants were unhappy with the British land revenue policies, which often led to the loss of their land.
(ii) The peasantry bore the brunt of heavy taxes, which were used to fund the company's trade profits, administrative costs, and the British wars of expansion in India.

62. Give two examples to show how the British exploited resources of India.

Ans : COMP 2007

(i) India was compelled to accept British-made goods with either no duties or very

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

low duty rates, while Indian products were subjected to high import duties in England.

(ii) Following the British conquest of Bengal, they ceased bringing gold into India and began purchasing raw materials for their industries in England using the surplus revenue from Bengal and profits from duty-free inland trade.

63. What did the British do to reduce the landed aristocracy to poverty?

Ans : MAIN 2002

The British economic exploitation, decline of local industries, high taxes, wealth drain, agricultural stagnation, and the exploitation of poor peasants led to the impoverishment of the landed aristocracy.

64. What impact did the uprising of 1857 have on the Mughal rule and Peshwaship?

Ans : SQP 2015

With the death of Bahadur Shah II, who was exiled to Yangon, the Mughal dynasty came to an end. Nana Sahib, the last Peshwa, actively participated in the uprising but fled to Nepal after its failure, leading to the end of the Peshwa's office.

The First War of Indian Independence also marked the end of the East India Company's rule in India, as British leaders decided it was unwise to entrust the governance of such a vast country to a private trading company.

65. Mention any two social reforms advocated by the British which affected the religious traditions of the Indian people.

Ans : COMP 2001

Two social reforms by the British that affected Indian religious traditions were :

(i) Banning of Sati : The British outlawed the practice of Sati, interfering with Hindu customs.

(ii) Widow Remarriage : The British legalized widow remarriage, challenging traditional Hindu beliefs.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

NODIA

66. State two consequences of the First War of Indian Independence on the East India Company?

Ans : MAIN 2005

Two consequences of the First War of Indian Independence on the East India Company were :

(i) Abolition of the Company : The British government dissolved the East India Company.

(ii) Transfer of Power : Control of India was transferred to the British Crown, establishing the British Raj.

67. Although the Revolt of 1857 failed, but it had important consequences on the Princely States. Justify by giving three reasons.

Ans : SQP 2012

(i) The Doctrine of Lapse was discontinued, and the right to adoption was acknowledged.

(ii) Indian princes were guaranteed that their territories would not be annexed.

(iii) The government promised to honor all existing Treaties and Agreements.

68. Who was Mangal Pandey ? What did he do ?

Ans : COMP 2016

Mangal Pandey, a Brahmin soldier, refused to use the greased cartridges on March 29, 1857, and killed two British officers. As a consequence, he was hanged, which triggered widespread uprisings in Meerut, Delhi, Kanpur, Lucknow, and Jhansi.

69. How was the Army organized after the First War of Independence ?

Ans : MAIN 2000

After the First War of Independence, the British reorganized the Indian Army by increasing British troops, recruiting from different regions to prevent unity, disbanding rebel units, and strategically deploying troops to maintain control.

70. Mention two grievances of the Mughal Emperor against the British.

Ans : SQP 2015

(i) In 1849, Lord Dalhousie declared that Bahadur Shah Zafar's successors would no longer be allowed to use the Red Fort as their residence and would need to relocate to a place near the Qutab Minar.
(ii) In 1856, Lord Canning announced that after Bahadur Shah Zafar's death, his successors would not be permitted to use imperial titles or honors with their names.

71. State any four features of Queen Victoria's Proclamation of 1858.

Ans : MAIN 2012

(i) Equal treatment would be given to all subjects, both Indians and Europeans.
(ii) The government would take responsibility for the material and moral advancement of the people.
(iii) An official pardon was granted to all Indians, except those involved in the murder of British citizens.
(iv) All appointments would be based strictly on education and ability.

72. How did the Doctrine of Lapse become a political cause for the Great Uprising of 1857?

Ans : SQP 2019

The Doctrine of Lapse, through which the British annexed states lacking a male heir, infuriated many Indian rulers. This loss of sovereignty sparked resentment and became a significant political cause of the Great Uprising of 1857.

73. What assurance was given to the Indian princes by Queen Victoria in her Proclamation of 1858 ?

Ans : COMP 2011

In Queen Victoria's Proclamation of 1858, Indian princes were guaranteed that their territorial rights, including the right to adopt heirs, would be honored. The British vowed not to annex their states in the future, preserving their sovereignty and ensuring their loyalty.

74. What assurance did the Queen's Proclamation of 1858 give to the Indian people regarding (i) religious freedom and (ii) appointment to public offices?

Ans : MAIN 2003

(i) In her 1858 Proclamation, the Queen pledged not to interfere with the religious beliefs of the Indian people.
(ii) Concerning public appointments, she stated that they would be based solely on education, ability and integrity.

75. Using the following points, briefly explain the political causes of the Revolt of 1857 :
(i) Exposure of the myth of British invincibility.
(ii) Inefficient Administration.

Ans : MAIN 2019

(i) Before the Revolt of 1857, the British were perceived as an invincible force by many Indians. However, several events leading up to the revolt, including military setbacks and administrative failures, began to expose this myth. The British suffered defeats in the Anglo-Afghan Wars and faced strong resistance in other parts of India. These events demonstrated that the British were not as undefeatable as they were thought to be, emboldening Indian rulers, soldiers, and the general populace to challenge British authority. The realization that the British could be opposed and potentially defeated played a significant role in sparking the widespread rebellion of 1857.
(ii) The British administration in India was marked by inefficiency and insensitivity to the needs and concerns of the Indian population. The annexation policies, such as the Doctrine of Lapse implemented by Lord Dalhousie, alienated many Indian rulers by depriving them of their territories. Additionally, the British failed to address the grievances of the common people, who suffered under exploitative land revenue systems and oppressive laws. The administration's inability to manage

NODIA

these growing discontentments effectively contributed to the rising frustration among various sections of society. This widespread discontent with British rule fueled the flames of the Revolt of 1857, as people from different backgrounds united in their opposition to the British.

THREE MARKS QUESTIONS

76. The First War of Independence of 1857, was the culmination of people's dissatisfaction with the British rule. In this context enumerate the following causes.
(i) Economic causes
(ii) Military causes
(iii) Political causes

Ans : MAIN 2011

(i) Economic Causes :
  (a) A law passed in 1720 banned the use of Indian silk and calicoes in England to diminish the popularity of Indian textiles.
  (b) High taxes were placed on Indian goods, while British products were imported duty-free.
  (c) The Industrial Revolution dealt a severe blow to India's handicraft industries, mostly comprised of cottage industries.
  (d) The East India Company took control of the country's trade and commerce, monopolizing these sectors.

(ii) Military Causes :
  (a) Indian soldiers were paid low wages and were not allowed to advance beyond the rank of Subedar, leading to dissatisfaction and a sense of injustice.
  (b) They were treated as inferior and subjected to poor treatment by their British superiors, which deepened their resentment.
  (c) The General Service Enlistment Act of 1856 required Bengal Army recruits to serve anywhere, which alarmed Hindu soldiers who believed that crossing the sea violated their religious beliefs.
  (d) The introduction of greased cartridges, rumored to be coated with cow and pig fat, sparked a revolt among the soldiers, as it was seen as an affront to their religious practices.

(iii) Political Causes :
  (a) Lord Dalhousie's annexation policies, especially the Doctrine of Lapse, angered Indian rulers, with states like Satara, Jhansi, and Nagpur being particularly affected.
  (b) Lord Canning's decision to deny Bahadur Shah's successor the imperial title of "King," along with Lord Dalhousie stopping Nana Saheb's pension, heightened resentment among the Indian rulers.
  (c) The annexation of the kingdom of Oudh in 1856 due to alleged maladministration further deepened dissatisfaction among both the Indian rulers and the general population.

77. The Great Uprising of 1857 was an important event which produced far reaching results. Explain the following with reference to the Great Uprising :
(i) The changes introduced in the administrative set up of the British territory in India.
(ii) Rights granted to Indian princes.
(iii) Rise of nationalism.

Ans : MAIN 2009

(i) (a) An Act for the Better Government of India was passed, ending the rule of the East India Company in India.
  (b) The title of the Governor-General was changed; while he continued as Governor-General for the provinces, he became known as the Viceroy when interacting with the Nawabs and Rajas.

(ii) (a) All treaties made by Indian rulers with the East India Company were to

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

be respected.
(b) It was declared that the British Government would not annex Indian states.
(c) The rights of adoption and succession for Indian rulers were also recognized.

(iii)(a) The revolt fostered a remarkable sense of unity between Hindus and Muslims.
(b) The sacrifices made by Indian leaders during the 1857 revolt sparked the birth of nationalist movements.
(c) For the first time, Indians fought against the British with a shared goal ending British rule.

78. 'Numerous causes were at work in causing the great upsurge of 1857'. Explain the following with reference to the above statement.
(i) The introduction of Railways and Telegraphs.
(ii) The introduction of Enfield Rifles.
(iii) The laws that interfered with the religious customs of the people.

Ans : MAIN 2005

(i) (a) The introduction of the railway was primarily aimed at exploiting India's resources.
(b) It was perceived as a method to disrupt social order and caste rules, as people of all castes had to sit together in railway compartments.
(c) A rumor circulated that telegraph poles were being erected to hang those who opposed British rule.

(ii) (a) **Religious Offense :** The introduction of the Enfield rifle in 1857 required soldiers to bite greased cartridges, believed to be coated with cow and pig fat, which deeply offended Hindu and Muslim sepoys by violating their religious beliefs.
(b) **Widespread Resentment :** The use of these greased cartridges caused widespread anger and distrust among Indian soldiers, who perceived it as a deliberate attempt by the British to disrespect their religious practices.
(c) **Catalyst for Rebellion :** The Enfield rifle issue became a catalyst for rebellion, uniting the sepoys in their discontent and sparking the broader uprising against British rule, leading to the Great Revolt of 1857.

(iii)(a) **The Act of 1850 :** This law modified the Hindu Law of Property, allowing those who converted from Hinduism to inherit their father's property. Hindus viewed this as encouragement to abandon their religious beliefs.
(b) **Taxes :** The British administration imposed taxes on properties belonging to temples and mosques, which were previously exempt from such taxes.
(c) **The Widow Remarriage Act :** Enacted in 1856, this progressive law followed earlier bans on the Sati system and female infanticide. However, these reforms were met with resistance, as people felt their religion was under threat.

79. There were many causes for the Revolt of 1857. In this context, state the following :
(i) Policy of economic exploitation.
(ii) Unhappiness of the Indian Artisans and Craftsmen.
(iii) Discontent of the Sepoys.

Ans : MAIN 2020

(i) Policy of economic exploitation:
(a) The British implemented high land revenue systems, like the Permanent Settlement, causing widespread poverty among Indian farmers.
(b) The influx of inexpensive British goods into India severely damaged local industries, leading to the decline of traditional crafts and trades.
(c) These policies caused economic hardship and resentment among the Indian population, contributing to the discontent that led to the revolt..

(ii) Unhappiness of the Indian Artisans and Craftsmen:
(a) British policies prioritized the import of British-made goods, resulting in

the decline of India's traditional handicraft industries.

(b) High tariffs on Indian products and the lack of protection for local industries led to widespread unemployment among artisans and craftsmen.

(c) The economic difficulties experienced by these groups due to the collapse of their trades fueled their anger and involvement in the revolt.

(iii) Discontent of the Sepoys:

(a) Indian sepoys experienced discrimination, receiving lower pay and inferior treatment compared to their British counterparts

(b) The British officers' disregard for the sepoys' customs and religious beliefs caused widespread dissatisfaction among them.

(c) The introduction of the Enfield rifle, with cartridges rumored to be greased with cow and pig fat, insulted the religious beliefs of Hindu and Muslim sepoys, triggering their rebellion.

(d) Sepoys, many from traditional warrior communities, felt their honor and status were diminished by the British, who showed little respect for their traditions and military heritage, further intensifying their discontent.

80. 'Although the Revolt of 1857 failed, but it had important consequences for India'. In this context state the impact of the Revolt on :

(i) The East India Company.

(ii) The Mughal Empire.

(iii) Hindu-Muslim Unity.

Ans : MAIN 2020

(i) (a) **End of Company Rule :** The Revolt of 1857 resulted in the termination of the East India Company's control over India. The British Government enacted the Government of India Act 1858, which transferred the administration of India from the Company to the British Crown.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

(b) **Direct British Rule :** Following the transfer of power, India came under the direct governance of the British Crown, initiating the era of the British Raj. A Viceroy was appointed as the Crown's representative to manage the administration of India.

(c) **Army Reorganization :** The revolt highlighted the flaws in the Company's army, prompting its reorganization. The British increased the proportion of British soldiers relative to Indian soldiers and implemented significant changes to prevent future rebellions.

(ii) (a) **Collapse of the Mughal Dynasty :** The Revolt of 1857 resulted in the definitive end of the Mughal Empire, with Bahadur Shah II, the last emperor, being captured and exiled by the British to Rangoon.

(b) **Elimination of the Mughal Title :** The British officially abolished the Mughal Emperor's title and dissolved the Mughal court, bringing an end to the dynasty's symbolic power.

(c) **Erasure of Mughal Legacy :** The British took deliberate steps to dismantle the remaining symbols of the Mughal Empire, including seizing properties and dismantling structures linked to Mughal rule, thereby erasing its historical legacy.

(iii) (a) **Unity During the Revolt :** The Revolt of 1857 witnessed notable cooperation between Hindus and Muslims, who joined forces to resist British rule.

(b) **Joint Leadership :** Hindu and Muslim leaders, such as Rani Lakshmi Bai and Bahadur Shah II, played pivotal roles in leading the revolt in their respective regions, promoting a sense of unity and common purpose.

(c) **Temporary Religious Harmony :** During the revolt, leaders from both communities temporarily set aside religious differences to unite under a common cause against the British.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

(d) **Foundation for Nationalism :** The unity shown during the revolt laid the foundation for future nationalist movements, demonstrating the potential for Hindu-Muslim collaboration in challenging British colonial rule, despite later efforts by the British to divide them

81. Using the following points, explain the important causes which led to the Revolt of 1857 A.D. :
(i) The British policy of territorial expansion.
(ii) Economic exploitation of India.
(iii) Interference in the social and religious life of the Indians.

Ans : SQP 1985, 1991, 2002

(i) The British policy of territorial expansion.
(a) **Doctrine of Lapse :** The British denied many Indian princes the right to adopt heirs, leading to the annexation of states like Jhansi and Satara under this doctrine.
(b) **Direct Annexation Policy :** The British directly annexed territories such as Sind in 1843 and Punjab in 1849, expanding their control over Indian regions.
(c) **Subsidiary Alliance :** The British enforced the Subsidiary Alliance, requiring Indian rulers to maintain a large British force within their territories, often leading to the ceding of parts of their land to the British.
(d) **Annexation on Grounds of Misgovernance :** The British annexed some states, like Oudh, on the pretext of misgovernance, further extending their control over Indian territories.
(e) **Insecurity Among Indian Princes :** These expansionist policies created a sense of insecurity among Indian kings and princes, prompting some of them to join the revolutionaries in the Revolt of 1857.
(ii) Policy of economic exploitation :
(a) **Suppression of Indian Textiles :** In 1720, an Act was passed in England prohibiting the use of Indian silk and calicoes to curb the popularity of Indian textile products in the British market.
(b) **Unequal Trade Policies :** The British imposed heavy duties on Indian products while allowing British goods to be imported into India without any duties, creating an unfair trade environment that harmed Indian industries.
(c) **Impact of the Industrial Revolution :** The Industrial Revolution in Britain dealt a severe blow to Indian handicrafts, particularly cottage industries, as mass-produced British goods flooded the Indian market, leading to the decline of traditional Indian craftsmanship.
(iii)(a) In the 19th century, social reforms such as the abolition of sati, child marriage, female infanticide, and polygamy were introduced, but these changes were met with resistance by the people.
(b) The growing presence of Christian missionaries, who often employed disrespectful methods to spread Christianity, created fear and suspicion among the general population.

82. The Revolt of 1857, though unsuccessful, produced far reaching consequences. In this context, briefly explain the following :
(i) Changes introduced in the administrative set-up.
(ii) Reorganization of the Army.
(iii) Policy of Divide and Rule.
(iv) Significance of the Revolt.

Ans : MAIN 1991,2003

(i) Changes introduced in the administrative set-up:
(a) **End of Company Rule :** The Revolt of 1857 led to the end of the East India Company's rule in India, bringing the Indian empire directly under the control of the British Crown. Queen Victoria was proclaimed Empress of India.

NODIA

(b) **Position of Secretary of State :** The Act of 1858 dissolved the Company's Board of Control and Court of Directors, transferring their powers to a Cabinet Minister known as the Secretary of State. He was to be advised by a Council of 15 members.

(c) **Position of Governor-General :** The title of Governor-General was changed to Viceroy, reflecting his role as the representative of the British government in India. His responsibility was to administer India on behalf of the Crown, under the supervision of the Secretary of State for India.

(d) **Civil Service Appointments :** It was established that appointments to the Civil Service would be made through open competition, following rules set by the Secretary of State in Council.

(ii) Reorganization of the Army:

(a) **Creation of a Royal Indian Army :** The armies of the Company and the Crown were merged to form the Royal Indian Army, which was placed under the command of a Commander-in-Chief.

(b) **Fixed Ratio of Europeans and Indians :** The ratio of European to Indian soldiers in the army was set at 1 : 2 in Bengal and 2 : 5 in Bombay and Madras, ensuring a significant presence of European troops.

(c) **European-Only Officers :** All officer positions in the army were reserved exclusively for Europeans, barring Indians from holding higher ranks.

(d) **Strategic Deployment of European Troops :** European troops were stationed at key strategic locations to maintain control and security.

(e) **Caste and Religion-Based Recruitment :** Recruitment into the army considered the caste, creed, and religion of recruits, with regiments organized accordingly, and Indian soldiers were excluded from artillery and arsenal roles.

(iii) Policy of Divide and Rule:

(a) **Favoritism Toward Zamindars :** The British granted special privileges to zamindars, including reserved school seats and government jobs for their children, while discriminating against educated Indians who criticized the government and demanded reforms.

(b) **Hindu-Muslim Division :** The British systematically divided Hindus and Muslims by initially favoring Hindus in government services and later instigating Muslims against Hindus by offering jobs to high-class Muslims, exploiting historical tensions.

(c) **Promotion of Religious and Regional Divisions :** The British encouraged the formation of religious-based parties like the Muslim League and Hindu Maha Sabha, and also fueled regionalism and provincialism by favoring one group over another to weaken national unity.

(d) **Division in the Army and Society :** The British applied their Divide and Rule strategy within the army by categorizing people into martial and non-martial races, and further divided Indian society by distinguishing between residents of British India and those of the Indian States.

(iv) The uprising of the Revolt was a significant event from the Indian perspective, reflecting the deep resentment towards British rule. The struggle for freedom from British imperialism began in 1857, sparking nationalistic feelings and bringing crucial issues of governance to the forefront. This revolt laid the foundation for the organized national movement that followed. Known as the First War of India's Independence, the 1857 uprising became a lasting source of inspiration for the subsequent freedom struggle. The heroic efforts of the national leaders in this fight against foreign domination became a timeless source of inspiration.

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

83. 'Although the Revolt of 1857 failed, but it had important consequences for India'. In this context answer the following questions :

(i) How did the Revolt give rise to nationalism in India?

(ii) How did the end of the East India Company bring in grave economic perils in India?

(iii) How did the British Government try to pacify the feelings of Indians with regard to :

(a) Their religious practices.

(b) The princely states.

Ans : COMP 2023

(i) (a) The revolt fostered an extraordinary sense of unity between Hindus and Muslims.

(b) The sacrifices made by prominent Indian leaders during the Revolt of 1857 sparked the rise of nationalist movements.

(c) For the first time, Indians united with a shared goal the overthrow of British rule.

(ii) (a) **Economic Exploitation :** The end of East India Company rule led to direct British governance, where civil servants and military officers sent to India drew hefty salaries, placing a heavy burden on India's economic resources.

(b) **Agricultural Distortion and Taxation:** Indian farmers were forced to grow crops that served British industrial needs, leading to food shortages. Additionally, heavy taxes were imposed on these farmers, and British traders exploited them by purchasing raw materials at low prices and selling finished goods at high prices.

(c) **Financial Drain :** The British invested surplus capital in Indian infrastructure and industries like railways and plantations, but this investment burdened Indians with heavy interest and dividend payments, further draining India's wealth.

(iii) (a) **Religious Freedom :** The Queen's Proclamation of 1858 assured that the British government would not interfere in the religious beliefs and practices of the Indian people, guaranteeing full religious freedom.

(b) **Abandonment of the Doctrine of Lapse :** The Doctrine of Lapse was abandoned, and the right of Indian princes to adopt heirs was recognized, ensuring the continuity of their dynasties. The British government assured Indian princes that their territories would not be annexed and that all existing Treaties and Agreements would be respected and upheld.

84. The Great Revolt of 1857 was a struggle for freedom from the British rule. Describe briefly the contribution of the following prominent leaders to the revolt :

(i) Bahadur Shah II

(ii) Nana Saheb

(iii) Rani Lakshmi Bai

Ans : SQP 1991

(i) Bahadur Shah II, also known as Bahadur Shah Zafar, played a significant symbolic role in the Revolt of 1857. As the last Mughal emperor, he became a rallying figure for the rebels, who proclaimed him the emperor of India after they seized Delhi. Although he didn't wield real political or military power, his backing provided legitimacy to the rebellion, helping to unite various groups against British rule. His involvement, however, led to his capture by the British and subsequent exile to Rangoon, marking the end of the Mughal dynasty and a key moment in Indian history.

(ii) He played a pivotal role in leading the uprising in Kanpur, showcasing exceptional bravery and determination. As a skilled and resolute general, he successfully captured the Kanpur Fort and proclaimed himself the Peshwa, reviving the title and authority associated with

NODIA

his lineage. His actions went beyond mere personal ambition, as he demonstrated the qualities of a true national hero by acknowledging Bahadur Shah as the Emperor of India. This recognition not only symbolized unity among the rebels but also strengthened the legitimacy of the broader struggle against British rule, making his contribution to the revolt both significant and inspirational..

(iii) She was the commanding force behind the revolutionaries in Jhansi and is widely regarded as one of the bravest and most skilled military leaders among the rebels during the Revolt of 1857. Her fierce determination and unwavering courage in battle set her apart, as she fought with the spirit of a true heroine. Her exceptional military acumen and fearless leadership inspired not only her own troops but also countless others across the country. The immense sacrifice she made for her people and her unwavering commitment to the cause of independence have left an indelible mark on Indian history. Rani Lakshmi Bai's legacy of bravery and sacrifice continues to be honored and remembered by generations of Indians as a symbol of resistance and patriotism.

85. With reference to the political causes of the War of 1857, explain the following :
(i) Doctrine of Lapse and its implications.
(ii) Attitude towards Mughal Dynasty.
(iii) Annexation of Awadh.

Ans : MAIN 2010

(i) Doctrine of Lapse and its implications:
(a) **Doctrine of Lapse Policy :** According to the Doctrine of Lapse, if an Indian ruler of a dependent state died without a biological son, he was not permitted to adopt a successor without the British East India Company's consent, leading to the annexation of the state.
(b) **Annexation of States :** Under Lord Dalhousie's Doctrine of Lapse, several Maratha states, including Satara, Nagpur, and Jhansi, along with other minor principalities, were annexed by the British. For instance, when the ruler of Jhansi died in 1853 without a child, the state was annexed despite the existence of an adopted son, Anand Rao, whom the British refused to recognize.
(c) **Impact on Jhansi :** The widowed Rani Lakshmibai of Jhansi was pensioned off after the annexation, as her adopted son was not recognized by the British, leading to significant resentment and anger.
(d) **Widespread Discontent :** The application of the Doctrine of Lapse caused widespread discontent and fear among the rulers and people of Indian princely states, who became increasingly alarmed by the threat of English rule and the potential loss of their sovereignty.

(ii) Attitude towards Mughal Dynasty:
(a) **Reduction of Mughal Emperor's Status :** The British sought to strip even the nominal and titular status of the Mughal Emperor, Bahadur Shah, aiming to diminish his symbolic authority.
(b) **Exile from the Red Fort :** Lord Dalhousie declared that after Bahadur Shah's death, his successors would be required to vacate the Red Fort, further undermining the Mughal dynasty's dignity.
(c) **Abolition of Regal Titles :** In 1856, Lord Canning announced that Bahadur Shah's successor would not be permitted to use the title of King, and similarly, the regal titles of the Nawabs of Carnatic and Tanjore were abolished. These actions were seen as deep insults by the Indian rulers and people, fueling resentment.

(iii) Annexation of Awadh :
Unjust Annexation of Oudh : On February 13, 1856, Lord Dalhousie annexed Oudh, claiming that Nawab

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

Wajid Ali Shah's administration was inefficient. This action was seen as a display of arrogance and betrayal by the British East India Company. The Nawab was sent to Calcutta with a pension of 12 lakh rupees, and Oudh was taken over under the guise of mismanagement. This annexation left many Taluqdars, nobles, officials, and soldiers without their titles and livelihoods, leading to widespread dissatisfaction and anger towards British rule.

86. During the Great Revolt of 1857 some patriotic Indians played prominent role in this fight against the British. State briefly the role of each of the following :
(i) Nana Saheb
(ii) The Rani of Jhansi
(iii) Tantia Tope.

Ans : MAIN 2024

(i) Nana Saheb, the adopted son of Peshwa Baji Rao II, was one of the key leaders of the revolt in Kanpur. He led the rebellion against the British forces in Kanpur and successfully captured the Kanpur Fort. Nana Saheb declared himself the Peshwa and played a crucial role in rallying support against the British. His leadership and defiance against the British rule made him a prominent figure in the uprising.

(ii) Rani Lakshmi Bai, famously known as the Rani of Jhansi, was one of the most iconic leaders of the 1857 revolt. After the British annexed Jhansi under the Doctrine of Lapse, Rani Lakshmi Bai took up arms to defend her kingdom. She led her troops with remarkable courage and military skill, fighting fiercely against the British forces. Her bravery, especially during the battles to defend Jhansi and later during the retreat to Gwalior, made her a symbol of resistance and a legendary figure in India's struggle for independence.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

(iii) Tantia Tope was General of Nana Saheb. He played a significant role in several battles across Central India, including the recapture of Kanpur. Known for his guerrilla tactics, Tantia Tope led a campaign that kept the British forces on the defensive for a considerable period. Despite the eventual defeat, his leadership and relentless efforts against the British made him a key figure in the revolt and a revered patriot in Indian history.

87. The Great Rising of 1857 is regarded as a glorious landmark which produced far/ reaching results in the history of India. Explain with reference to :
(i) The British Government's decision on the East India Company's ruler in India end.
(ii) Queen Victoria's proclamation of 1858.
(iii) The rights granted to the Indian Princes and people.

Ans : COMP 1983

(i) The most significant outcome of the Revolt of 1857 was the termination of the East India Company's rule and the direct transfer of governance of India to the British Crown. This transition was formalized through the Government of India Act of 1858, which included the following key provisions :
(a) **Transfer of Power :** The act transferred the authority to govern India from the East India Company to the British Crown, marking the end of Company rule.
(b) **Shift in Authority :** Previously, the control over India was in the hands of the Company's Directors and the Board of Control. With the new act, this power was now vested in the Secretary of State for India, who was a member of the British Cabinet and accountable to the British Parliament. This ensured that ultimate authority over India resided with the British Parliament.
(c) **Advisory Council :** The Secretary of State was to be supported by a

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

15-member India Council, providing assistance in the administration of Indian affairs..

(ii) During the Revolt of 1857, Queen Victoria was the reigning monarch in England. Her proclamation, which marked the transfer of governance from the East India Company to the British Crown, was publicly announced at Allahabad on November 1, 1858, by Lord Canning, the first Viceroy of India. The proclamation outlined the following commitments by the Government of India :

(a) **Non-intervention Policy :** The government pledged to adopt a policy of non-interference in the social and religious affairs of Indians.

(b) **Equality of Subjects :** All subjects, whether Indian or European, would be treated equally, with education and ability serving as the basis for all appointments.

(c) **General Pardon :** A general pardon was granted to all participants in the rebellion, except those who were found guilty of murdering British subjects.

(d) **Promotion of Industries :** The government promised to work towards the advancement of industries in India.

(iii) In an effort to secure the loyalty of the Indian princes, the British government abandoned the Doctrine of Lapse, which had allowed the annexation of princely states without a male heir. The Indian princes were assured that their rights to their territories would be respected, and they could adopt heirs to succeed them. Additionally, the British promised to respect all existing treaties and agreements with the Indian states. For the general population, the proclamation and subsequent policies aimed at providing a sense of justice and equality under British rule, although these promises were not always fully realized in practice.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

These measures, initiated in response to the Revolt of 1857, laid the foundation for the British administration in India and significantly altered the relationship between the British government and the Indian people.

88. Economic exploitation of the country produced discontent, resentment and resistance among the people that culminated in the Great Uprising of 1857. Examine this factor with reference to the following :

(i) The ruin of trade and handicrafts.

(ii) Impoverishment of the cultivators.

(iii) Subordination of Indian economy to British interests (Making India an Agricultural Colony of British capitalism.

Ans : SQP 2023

NODIA

(i) The East India Company, established in 1600 as a trading entity, saw Indian textiles gain immense popularity in England after 1668. This led to the passing of an Act in 1720 that banned the use of Indian silks and calicoes in England. The British deliberately undermined Indian handicrafts by :

(a) Imposing heavy tariffs on Indian silk and cotton textiles in England.

(b) Allowing British goods to be imported into India with minimal duty.

(c) Causing the extinction of the art of spinning and weaving in India.

(d) Leaving once-thriving manufacturing centers like Dhaka, Murshidabad, and Surat in a desolate state.

These dire economic conditions contributed to the mounting discontent that eventually led to the Revolt of 1857.

(ii) The cultivators were severely impoverished under the British land-revenue policies. Whether it was the Permanent Settlement in Bengal and Bihar, the Ryotwari system in Bombay, or the Mahalwari system, nearly half of the net produce was taken as land revenue. Poor monsoons often led to famines, further worsening the peasants' poverty. Unable to pay the high land-revenue demands, farmers increasingly

fell into the hands of moneylenders. In their desperation, what more could the impoverished farmers desire than to drive the British out of India?

(iii) The British subordinated the Indian economy to serve the interests of their own trade and industry. Indian industries began to decline as heavy taxes were imposed on Indian silk and cotton textiles. The British exported raw materials from India while flooding the Indian market with goods manufactured in England. In essence, India was reduced to an agricultural colony, with its trade and commerce increasingly controlled and dominated by the British.

89. There were many causes for the uprising of 1857. In this context, state the following :
(i) Policy of economic exploitation.
(ii) Racial discrimination.
(iii) Social Causes.

Ans : COMP 2023

(i) **Economic Exploitation :** The land-revenue systems introduced by the British, such as Zamindari, Ryotwari and Mahalwari, plunged the peasants into misery and poverty. These impoverished farmers were often forced to sell their produce at low prices to satisfy the demands of moneylenders, Zamindars and government officials. The British transformed India's self-sufficient economy into an agricultural colony, reducing it from an exporter of fine cloth to an importer of finished goods from England. Indian handicrafts were severely crippled under the policy of free trade. As William Hunter once noted, 40 million Indians lived their lives on insufficient food.

(ii) **Racial Discrimination :** The British considered themselves superior to Indians and adopted a policy of disdain towards them. They labeled Muslims as cruel and untrustworthy. Some European officers mistreated and insulted Indians, leading to widespread resentment. This unjust discrimination created a deep divide between the British and the Indian populace. The segregation in railway compartments, hotels, and other public spaces reserved for "Europeans only" were clear manifestations of this racial bias.

(iii) **Social Causes :** The British introduced several social reforms in India with the intention of improving people's lives. However, these reforms were implemented without considering the sentiments of the local population. As a result, even progressive measures like the abolition of Sati in 1829 and the introduction of the Widow Remarriage Act in 1856 were met with resistance and were not widely accepted by the masses.

90. The Great Outbreak of 1857 brought about important changes in the character of Indian administration and the future development of the country. In this context discuss.
(i) The changes introduced in the administrative set-up of the British territories in India.
(ii) The changes in the Army.
(iii) The changes in the relationship with Princely States.

Ans :

(i) The war brought an end to the East India Company's rule in India. The Act of 1858 transferred the governance of India from the Company to the British Crown. Additionally, the Board of Control and the Court of Directors were abolished, with their powers being handed over to the Secretary of State, who would be supported by an Indian Council comprising 15 members. The Secretary of State's salary and allowances were to be drawn from Indian revenues. Furthermore, appointments to the Civil Service were to be made through open competition. Lastly, the Governor-General was given the additional title of Viceroy, signifying his new role as the Crown's representative in India, particularly in relation to the native princes and Nawabs.

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

BETTER THAN BOOK IN THE MARKET

Why students are choosing this book 👉

School teachers already use this content to set papers.

Still not sure?

- 👉 Match this PDF with your question papers
- 👉 See the similarity yourself

Why does this happen?

- ✓ Teachers have its PDF & Word files
- ✓ Easy access
- ✓ Direct copy-paste questions
- ✓ Same pattern followed

Don't miss out—get the advantage today!

(ii) The changes in the Army:
   (a) **Reorganization of the Army's Composition :** After 1858, the strength of European troops in India was increased to 65,000, while the number of Indian troops was reduced to 140,000 maintaining this ratio until the First World War.
   (b) **Strategic Positioning and Exclusion :** European troops were stationed in key geographical and military locations, and Indians were strictly excluded from the officer corps to prevent them from gaining significant power.
   (c) **Control of Weapons and Ammunition :** Indian soldiers were deliberately kept away from sophisticated weapons and ammunition. Most Indian artillery units were disbanded, except for a few mountain units, to prevent any future uprisings.
   (d) **Discriminatory Recruitment and Control :** The British practiced discrimination based on caste, region, and religion in army recruitment. Additionally, measures were taken to discourage nationalism, including the introduction of caste and community divisions in regiments and preventing nationalist publications from reaching Indian soldiers.

(iii) Queen Victoria's Proclamation of 1858 stated that the British government would no longer annex Indian states. Additionally, all treaties previously made between the princes and the East India Company would be respected, and their rights of adoption and succession would be recognized. However, at the same time, the British government took measures to weaken the Indian states militarily by restricting the size of their armies.

91. The First War of Independence was the culmination of people's dissatisfaction against the British rule. In this context enumerate the following causes :
(i) Military causes
(ii) Economic causes
(iii) Political causes

Ans : SQP 2009

(i) Military Causes :
   (a) **Ill-treatment of Indian Sepoys :** Indian soldiers were treated with disdain and regarded as inferior to their English counterparts. During training, they were often abused and physically mistreated, which deeply wounded their pride and morale.
   (b) **Inferior Status and Low Salaries :** Indian soldiers received wages that were insufficient to support their families and were paid significantly less than English soldiers, despite performing similar duties. They had little to no opportunity for promotion to higher ranks, leading to resentment over their harsh and unequal treatment.
   (c) **General Service Enlistment Act:** The General Service Enlistment Act, introduced by Lord Canning, mandated that Indian soldiers could be sent to fight overseas, which was against their religious beliefs. This act caused widespread bitterness and opposition among the sepoys, further fueling their discontent.

(ii) Economic Causes :
   (a) **Exploitation of India's Economic Resources :** The British exploited India's economic resources for their own enrichment, taking control of trade and commerce. This led to the decline of Indian industries while they siphoned off India's wealth to Britain.
   (b) **Discontent among Jagirdars and Zamindars :** The British policy of resuming tax-free lands and confiscating jagirs caused significant discontent among Jagirdars and Zamindars, as these actions plunged them into poverty.
   (c) **Joblessness Among Educated Indians :** High-ranking positions with attractive salaries were reserved exclusively for the English, leaving

NODIA

educated Indians excluded from these roles. As a result, many educated Indians faced unemployment and became deeply discontented.

(iii) Political Causes :

(a) **Policy of Annexation by Lord Dalhousie :** The Doctrine of Lapse, along with the widespread annexation of Indian states, and the abolition of titles and pensions, turned many Indian princes and rulers into staunch enemies of the British.

(b) **Disrespect Towards Bahadur Shah:** The British further humiliated the Mughal dynasty by announcing that after the death of Bahadur Shah II, the Mughals would lose their royal title, and his successors would be required to vacate the Red Fort. This deeply hurt the sentiments of Muslims and intensified Indian resentment towards British rule.

(c) **Annexation of Awadh :** Lord Dalhousie annexed Awadh into the British Empire under the guise of misgovernance. This move displaced thousands of nobles, officials, and soldiers, leaving them jobless. The British also confiscated the estates of Zamindars and Taluqdars, leading to widespread dissatisfaction among all classes in Awadh.

(d) **Disbanding of Annexed States' Armies :** In states annexed by the British, the local armies were disbanded, leaving thousands of soldiers and their families without livelihoods. These disbanded soldiers harbored deep resentment and were determined to seek revenge against the British Company.

92. Many factors led to the First War of Independence. In this context explain the following :

(i) The attitude of the British towards the people of India with regard to their religious customs.

(ii) Factors causing dissatisfaction among the Indian soldiers.

(iii) Decline of the landed aristocracy.

Ans : COMP 2010

(i) Attitude of the British towards the people of India with regard to their religious customs.

(a) **Religious Interference by the British :** The British interference in the religious and social customs of Indians created widespread discontent. The activities of Christian missionaries, who were allowed to enter India by the Charter Act of 1833, convinced many Indians that the British government aimed to convert them to Christianity.

(b) **Support for Christian Missionaries :** The East India Company provided financial support to Christian missionaries and allowed them to use company offices, hospitals, educational institutions, and jails as centers for their propagation. Missionaries often preached in temples and mosques, which intensified religious tensions.

(c) **Privileges for Converts and Resulting Fear :** Converts to Christianity were given special privileges, which heightened fears among Indians of losing their religion. This fear and perceived threat to their faith led many Indians to rally against the British, ultimately contributing to the decision to revolt.

(ii) Factors causing dissatisfaction among the Indian soldiers.

(a) **Discontent Over Pay and Treatment :** Indian sepoys were paid significantly less than their British counterparts, receiving eight times less salary. They were also considered inferior, often humiliated and insulted by their British officers, which fueled their anger and resentment.

(b) **Religious and Career Grievances :** The General Enlistment Act, which required sepoys to serve in foreign

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

countries, was against the religious beliefs of Hindu soldiers. Additionally, there were limited opportunities for promotion, with Indian soldiers unable to rise above the rank of Subedar, further contributing to their dissatisfaction.

(c) **Greased Cartridges Controversy :** The immediate trigger for the revolt was the use of greased cartridges, rumored to be coated with cow and pig fat. This deeply offended both Hindu and Muslim sepoys, as the cartridges had to be bitten before use. The execution of Mangal Pandey, who refused to use the cartridges, ignited widespread anger among the sepoys, leading to the outbreak of a large-scale revolt.

(iii) The landed aristocracy, including taluqdars and hereditary landlords, were stripped of their estates under the provisions of the Inam Commission (1852). When landlords could not provide documentation, such as title deeds, proving their ownership, around 20,000 estates were confiscated. These lands were then sold at public auctions to the highest bidders, often merchants and moneylenders who had little understanding of the tenants and exploited them harshly. This led to the impoverishment of the landed aristocracy without any real benefit to the peasantry, who continued to suffer under heavy land revenue demands. The aristocracy of Awadh, in particular, faced significant hardships after the region's annexation, as they too lost their estates.

93. Several factors led to the uprising of 1857. With reference to this, explain each of the following :
(i) Discontentment of the Sepoys.
(ii) Resentment of the rulers of the native states against the British.
(iii) Unhappiness of the Indian Artisans and Craftsmen

Ans : SQP 2011

(i) The Indian soldiers were discontented due to their low salaries and limited opportunities for promotion, as all the high-ranking positions in the army were reserved exclusively for the British. Additionally, the distribution of troops was poorly managed, with key locations like Delhi and Allahabad lacking British forces. The officers often treated the Indian soldiers as menial servants, and widespread racial discrimination further fueled their dissatisfaction and resentment.

(ii) The last Mughal Emperor, Bahadur Shah, was subjected to a significant affront when Lord Canning declared that Bahadur Shah's successor would no longer be permitted to use the imperial title. This disrespect deeply wounded Muslim sentiments. Similarly, Dalhousie's denial of a pension to Nana Saheb, the adopted son of the ex-Peshwa Baji Rao II, was met with strong resentment, particularly among Hindus and Nana Saheb himself. Additionally, Nawab Wajid Ali Shah was deposed under the pretext that Awadh was poorly governed, leading to its annexation. This action was seen as an act of high-handedness by the British, especially given that the Nawab had been consistently loyal to the Company. The British betrayal of their promises and commitments to the ruling chiefs further fueled resentment among the Indian rulers.

(iii) The British rulers intentionally undermined Indian arts and crafts by imposing heavy tariffs on Indian silk and cotton textiles in Britain. Conversely, British goods were imported into India with minimal duties. As a result, millions of artisans and craftsmen lost their livelihoods, with no alternative sources of income available to them.

NODIA
Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

94. The uprising of 1857 was an unprecedented popular upsurge. In this context describe the effect of the following on the Indian soldiers.

(i) Discontent on account of low salary and poor prospects of promotion.

(ii) The General Service Enlistment Act.

(iii) Introduction of greased cartridges.

Ans : COMP 2012

(i) The wages of Indian soldiers were insufficient to support their families, as they earned less than one-eighth of what an English soldier received, despite performing similar duties. Additionally, there were no opportunities for promotion beyond the rank of Subedar for Indian soldiers, with key positions in artillery and other crucial roles reserved exclusively for the British. This discriminatory treatment deeply frustrated and angered the Indian soldiers, leading to growing resentment against the British.

(ii) Lord Canning's introduction of the General Enlistment Act sparked significant bitterness among the sepoys, as it required them to serve on overseas fronts, which conflicted with their religious beliefs. While the political, social, and economic conditions in India were ripe for a revolt, the outbreak remained unlikely as long as the Indian soldiers remained loyal to the British. However, the discontent caused by this and other military grievances eventually stirred the sepoys into action, leading them to initiate the revolt.

(iii) The cartridges used by soldiers for the Enfield Rifles were greased with cow and pig fat. Since cows are sacred to Hindus and pigs are considered unclean by Muslims, this act deeply offended both religious communities. As a result, the army's discontent posed a significant threat to British rule.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

95. Numerous causes were at work in causing the Great Upsurge of 1857. Explain the following with reference to the above statement.

(i) The introduction of Railways and Telegraphs.

(ii) The introduction of Enfield Rifles.

(iii) The laws that interfered with the religious customs of the people.

Ans : SQP 2018

(i) Introduction of Railways and Telegraphs:

(a) Telegraph poles were believed to have been installed with the intention of hanging those who opposed British rule in India.

(b) The introduction of railways caused discontent as Brahmins and untouchables were made to sit together, which they believed violated their religious practices.

(c) Modern innovations disrupted traditional social norms, causing unrest among many orthodox people in India.

(ii) Introduction of Enfield Rifles :

(a) The cartridges were greased with pig and cow fat, requiring the sepoys to bite off the greased covers before loading them into their rifles.

(b) Both Hindus and Muslims viewed this as an attempt to disrespect and undermine their religious beliefs.

(iii) The Laws that interfered with the religious customs of the people :

(a) The practice of Sati was declared illegal and punishable by law.

(b) New laws were enacted to prohibit infanticide, permit widow remarriage, and curb polygamy.

(c) The government imposed taxes on properties owned by temples and mosques.

(d) Lord Dalhousie introduced a law allowing individuals who converted to Christianity to inherit their ancestral property.

These actions sparked widespread anger among local rulers and the general population towards the British.

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

96. In the 19th century, the Britishers began to interfere with the local religious and social customs. In this context briefly describe :

(i) Fear regarding mass conversions to Christianity and loss of religion and caste.

(ii) Interference in social customs.

(iii) Policy of social discrimination.

Ans : SQP 2020

(i) Fear regarding mass conversions to Christianity and loss of religion and caste:

(a) **Compulsory Christian Education :** Christian doctrine was made a mandatory part of the curriculum in schools established by Christian missionaries.

(b) **Religious Preaching in Sacred Places :** British officials openly preached Christian teachings in mosques and temples, infringing upon the religious practices of Hindus and Muslims.

(c) **Anti-Hindu Propaganda :** The Missionary Society of America set up a press in Agra specifically to propagate against the Hindu religion and its customs.

(d) **Condemnation of Hindu and Muslim Practices :** Missionaries widely condemned Hindu scriptures, idol worship, and both Hindu and Muslim doctrines and customs, often in a public and aggressive manner.

(ii) Interference in social customs:

(a) **General Service Enlistment Act of 1856 :** This Act required new recruits to serve anywhere in India or overseas, which alarmed Indian soldiers because, according to Hindu customs, crossing the sea was against their religious beliefs.

(b) **Religious Disabilities Act (1850) :** This law allowed a person who converted from Hinduism to another religion to retain their right to inherit ancestral property. Many believed that this law was designed to encourage the conversion of Hindus to Christianity.

(c) **Widow Remarriage Act of 1856 :** The Widow Remarriage Act legalized the remarriage of widows, a move that was strongly opposed by orthodox Hindus who supported the practice of Sati.

(d) **Other Social Reforms :** The British government also banned practices such as Sati, female infanticide, and child marriage. These reforms were met with disapproval by many common people who were attached to traditional customs.

(iii) Policy of social discrimination:

(a) **Cultural Superiority and Criticism :** The British considered their culture and religion superior to those of the Indians, viewing them as scientific and humane. They aimed to convince Indians that their own culture and religion were the root causes of the social issues in Indian society.

(b) **Discriminatory Treatment of Indians :** Indians were often subjected to insults, indignities, and even violence by the British, who treated them with contempt. Indians were required to salute or dismount when encountering an Englishman, and even prominent figures like Raja Ram Mohan Roy were not spared from such disrespect. This degrading treatment deeply wounded the self-respect of Indians.

(c) **Discrimination in the Military :** Indian soldiers were limited to the rank of Subedar, with all higher ranks reserved for Englishmen. The British soldiers were also paid significantly more, which led to dissatisfaction and frustration among Indian troops. This inequality in pay and rank negatively impacted the morale of the Indian soldiers.

NODIA

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

CASE BASED QUESTION

97. (i) Identify the person in the given picture. Name the organization formed by him. State any two beliefs of this organization with regard to religion.

(ii) Mention his contribution to the growth of Indian National movement.

(iii) How did the socio-religious reform movements of the 19th century act as pioneers of Indian Nationalism ?

Ans :

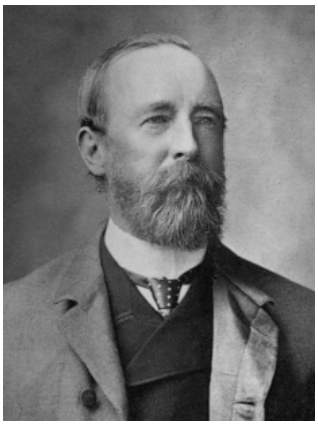
(i) Raja Ram Mohan Roy, He founded the 'Brahmo Samaj'.
The Brahmo Samaj believed in Monotheism of worship of one God. It condemned idol worship and laid emphasis on prayer, mediation, charity, morality and strengthening the bonds of unity between men of all religions and creeds.

(ii) Raja Ram Mohan Roy started a campaign for the abolition of Sati and purdah system, condemned polygamy, discouraged child marriages and advocated the right of windows to remarry. It was because of his efforts that William Bentick, the governor-general of India, passed a law in 1821 making the practice of Sati illegal and punishable by law.

(iii) The 19th century witnessed a series of religion and social reform movements, which went a long way in arousing nationalistic passion against foreign domination. In the first place, the reformer denounced untouchability and the rigidities of the caste system. Hence, the ideas of brotherhood and equally attracted the lower castes, who felt that they were entering the national main stream. Secondly, at the time when nation was gripped with despair, Swami Dayananda and Swami Vivekanand rose to the occasion to preach the gospel of strength and self-reliance. Thirdly, they firmly believed in the upliftment of women. Lastly, they made a clarion call to protest against the domination of British rule.

98. Refer to the given picture and answer the questions that follow:

(i) Identify the person in the picture.



(ii) What was his contributions to the formation of the Indian National Congress?

Ans :

(i) The person in the given picture is Allan Octavian Hume.

(ii) He played a major role in the formation of Indian National. Congress in following way:

(a) He professed to help the Indians to develop themselves intellectually, socially and politically.

(b) He helped in political training of the Indians to present their demands before the British rulers in a democratic and peaceful manner.

(c) He wrote an open letter to the graduates of the Calcutta University asking them to dedicate themselves to the service of the nation and to form a union or organization

(d) In 1884, Hume, along with the Indian leaders, laid the foundation of the Indian National Union which was converted to the Indian National Congress.

99. Look at the given picture and answer the following questions:

(i) Identify the person in the given picture.

(ii) Why is he called the Father of Indian Renaissance?

(iii) Describe his efforts in the fields of social reforms and spread of western education in India.

Ans :

(i) The person in the given picture is Raja Rammohan Roy.

(ii) He is called as father of Indian Renaissance because he started the religious and social reformation in modern India.

(iii) His efforts in the fields, of social reforms are as follows:

(a) He raised his voice against the Sati system and with the help of Lord William Bentinck this evil practice was abolished in 1829.

(b) He advocated the cause of women education.

(c) He opposed female infanticide, child marriage and polygamy.

(d) He took up the issue of widow remarriage and also favoured inter-caste marriages.

His efforts in the spread of western education are as follows:

(a) He advocated for the spread of education of modern subjects, as well as English language in the schools so that Indian students could also gain western knowledge.

(b) He laid the foundation of an English school, the Hindu College and the Vedanta College.

(c) He believed that with the spread of western education, the Indians came into contact with the western thought and imbibed a modern, rational and secular outlook.

www.nodia.in

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

CHAPTER 3

FIRST PHASE OF THE INDIAN NATIONAL MOVEMENT

SUMMARY

The First Phase of the Indian National Movement (1885-1907) was marked by the emergence of the Early Nationalists, also known as Moderates, who laid the groundwork for India's struggle for independence. Their primary objectives were to achieve political and economic reforms within the framework of British rule through constitutional and peaceful means. They aimed to foster national unity, promote political awareness, and advocate for greater Indian participation in governance.

1. OBJECTIVES OF THE EARLY NATIONALISTS

1. **National Unity :** The Early Nationalists sought to bring together Indians from various regions, religions, and social backgrounds, fostering a sense of national identity and unity.
2. **Political Awareness :** They aimed to educate Indians about their rights and the importance of self-governance, promoting ideas of democracy, representative institutions, and civil liberties.
3. **Constitutional Reforms :** The Early Nationalists focused on achieving reforms through petitions, resolutions, and dialogue with the British authorities, seeking greater Indian representation in the legislative councils and other administrative bodies.
4. **Economic Reforms :** They advocated for economic policies that would alleviate poverty and address the exploitation of India's resources by the British.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

1.1 Methods of Struggle

The Early Nationalists employed peaceful and constitutional methods to achieve their goals. They used the three P's - Petitions, Prayers, and Protests - to convey their demands to the British Government. They also organized public meetings, submitted memorandums, and utilized the press to raise awareness and build public opinion. They believed in gradual reforms and were convinced that the British Government could be persuaded to grant these through dialogue and reasoned arguments.

NODIA

2. CONTRIBUTIONS OF KEY LEADERS

2.1 Dadabhai Naoroji

Drain Theory : Naoroji's Drain Theory highlighted the economic exploitation of India by the British, arguing that India's wealth was being systematically drained to England, causing widespread poverty.

Unofficial Ambassador : As one of the founders of the Indian National Congress, Naoroji played a crucial role in representing Indian interests in England, earning the title "Unofficial Ambassador of India."

2.2 Surendranath Banerjee

Political Mobilization : Banerjee was a key figure in organizing political activities and raising political consciousness across India. He founded the Indian Association in 1876, which became an important platform for voicing Indian grievances.

Advocacy for Inclusivity : He was a strong advocate for including the masses in the national movement and promoting Hindu-Muslim unity to strengthen the fight against British rule.

2.3 Gopal Krishna Gokhale

Social Reforms : Gokhale founded the Servants of India Society in 1905 to promote social welfare, education, and upliftment of the depressed classes. He also emphasized the importance of public health and sanitation.
Moderation and Dialogue : Gokhale was known for his moderate approach, advocating for gradual reforms through cooperation with the British Government. He believed in modernization and the use of constitutional means to achieve India's political goals.

Overall, the Early Nationalists were instrumental in laying the foundation for the broader national movement that would eventually lead to India's independence. Their efforts in fostering unity, raising political awareness, and advocating for reforms set the stage for the more assertive and widespread movements that followed.

MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTION

1. Tina is inspired by the methods of the Early Nationalists and wants to follow them. She notices that the road leading to her school is damaged and has many potholes. Which of the following methods is she MOST LIKELY to follow, to solve this problem?
(a) Boycott the civic authorities
(b) Gather a group of students and protest
(c) Write a petition to the authorities highlighting the problem
(d) Block the entrance to the road

Ans : MAIN 2024

Thus (c) is correct option.

2. Dadabhai Naoroji presented which famous theory in his paper -'Poverty and Un-British Rule in India?'
(a) Deficit Theory
(b) Drain Theory
(c) Deprivation Theory
(d) Detriment Theory

Ans : COMP 2024

Thus (b) is correct option.

3. Methods used by Early Nationalists were.
(a) Assertive in their approach
(b) Constitutional within the framework of law.
(c) Non-violent but uncooperative to authority.
(d) Assertive in approach but within the framework of law.

Ans : MAIN 2002

Thus (d) is correct option.

4. Which of the following statement(s) is/are related to the aims of the Indian National Congress in the early phases?
(i) Eradication of all possible race, creed or provincial prejudices among Indians.
(ii) Organizing public opinion against the British.
(iii) Formulation of population demands.
(iv) Organization of a violent struggle for the political emancipation of India.
(a) (i), (ii) and (iii)
(b) (i), (ii) and (iv)
(c) (iii) and (iv)
(d) (ii) and (iii)

Ans : MAIN 2016

Thus (d) is correct option.

5. What were the 3P's of the Early Nationalists?
(a) Petition, Protests and Passion
(b) Purpose, Persistence and Prayers
(c) Petition, Prayers and Protests
(d) Protests, Petition and Process

Ans : COMP 2011

Thus (c) is correct option.

6. Which of the following was the aim of the Early Nationalists?
(a) Eradication of British rule in India
(b) Promotion of equality among the workers for the cause of India
(c) Formulation of popular demands to be presented before the government.
(d) Organization of a violent struggle for the political emancipation of India.

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

Ans : SQP 2010

Thus (c) is correct option.

7. Early Nationalists demanded which of the following Civil rights?
(a) Restoration of Right to assemble and form associations
(b) Restoration of Home Rule
(c) Restoration of National Education
(d) None of the above

Ans : COMP 2020

Thus (a) is correct option.

8. Which of the following was a demand of the Early Nationalists?
(a) Reduction in taxes and increase in government expenditure
(b) A large share of Indians in the governance of the country
(c) Complete fusion of legislature and executive
(d) Employment of Indians at all posts in the administrative services

Ans : SQP 2010

Thus (b) is correct option.

9. Which of the following administrative demands were made by the Early Nationalists?
(a) Increase in the powers of local bodies
(b) Increase in official control over local bodies
(c) Increase in the British officers in the civil services
(d) Transfer of police service to local bodies.

Ans : COMP 2015

Thus (a) is correct option.

10. Which of the following reforms was a result of the efforts made by Early Nationalists?
(a) Withdrawal of the Partition of Bengal
(b) Simultaneous ICS exams in India and England
(c) Appointment of Lord Curzon as Viceroy
(d) Irish Home Rule Agitation

Ans : SQP 2021

Thus (b) is correct option.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

11. Which of the following was an achievement of the Early Nationalists?
(a) Withdrawal of the Partition of Bengal
(b) Promotion of self-reliance
(c) Arousal of the feeling of one national among the Indians.
(d) None of the above

Ans : MAIN 2020

Thus (d) is correct option.

12. Identify the Early Nationalist leader.
(a) Gopal Krishna Gokhale
(b) Bipin Chandra Pal
(c) Jyotiba Phule
(d) Bal Gangadhar Tilak

Ans : SQP 2023

Thus (a) is correct option.

13. Dadabhai Naoroji is also known as_____.
(a) Father of Indian Nationalism
(b) Father of Moderates
(c) Grand Old Man of India
(d) Father of the Congress

Ans : SQP 2000

Thus (c) is correct option.

14. Which of the following was achieved by Gopal Krishna Gokhale, as a Member of the Imperial Legislative Council?
(a) Reduction in land revenue
(b) Abolition of salt tax
(c) Primary education made compulsory
(d) Reduction in toll tax

Ans : SQP 2017

Thus (d) is correct option.

NODIA

15. The Early Nationalists initially believed that the British wanted to be just to India but were unaware of the real state of affairs. In this context which of the following statements are true?
(i) They believed that the British rule had many benefits.
(ii) They believed that the main obstacle in India's progress was not the British Colonial rule but India's own social and economic backwardness.

(iii) They provided elaborate statistical data to prove that the British rule was responsible for India's poverty.

(a) (i) and (ii)
(b) (ii) and (iii)
(c) (i) and (iii)
(d) (i), (ii) and (iii)

Ans : MAIN 2010

Thus (a) is correct option.

ONE MARK QUESTIONS

16. Who was called "The Grand Old Man of India ?

Ans : MAIN 2001

Dadabhai Naoroji.

17. Who was known as "India's un-official Ambassador to England" ?

Ans : SQP 2011

Dadabhai Naoroji.

18. Name the Moderate Leader who explained the economic drain theory during colonial time.

Ans : MAIN 2010

Dadabhai Naoroji.

19. Name the Moderate/Early Nationalist leader who was elected to the British House of Commons in 1892.

Ans : SQP 2015

Dadabhai Naoroji.

20. Name the two books that Dadabhai Naoroji authored explaining the 'Drain of India's Wealth'.

Ans : COMP 2021

(i) Poverty and un-British rule in India.
(ii) Magazine-Dharma Marg Darshak.

21. Against which two Acts did Surendranath Banerjee start an agitation?

Ans : SQP 2001

Surendranath Banerjee started, agitation against the License Act, the Arms Act.

22. Who was called the 'Father of the Nationalist Movement in India' ?

Ans : COMP 1999

Surendranath Banerjee.

23. Who founded the Servants of India Society ?

Ans : MAIN 2015

Gopal Krishna Gokhale.

24. Name the leader who was known as the 'Grand Old Man of India."

Ans : COMP 2010

Dadabhai Naoroji, one of the pioneer statesmen, came to be known as 'Grand Old Man of India

25. Name the Moderate leader who was the first to go to jail for his journalistic duties.

Ans : MAIN 2003

Surendranath Banerjee.

26. Who exposed the economic exploitation of India through his book 'Poverty and Un-British Rule in India ?

Ans : COMP 2000

Dadabhai Naoroji.

27. Who presided over the First Session of the Indian National Congress in 1906 ?

Ans : MAIN 2005

Dadabhai Naoroji.

28. Name the Moderate leader who was the first Indian to pass Indian Civil Service Examination.

Ans : COMP 2005

Surendranath Banerjee.

29. About whom did Bal Gangadhar Tilak utter these words, "He was the diamond of India, the jewel of Maharashtra and the Prince of workers" ?

Ans : MAIN 2010

Gopal Krishna Gokhale.

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

30. Who edited the journal of the Poona Sarvajanik Sabha ?

Ans : COMP 2011

Gopal Krishna Gokhale.

31. Which period of India's freedom struggle is known as 'Moderate Phase' or the First Phase of the Indian National Movement?

Ans :

The period from 1885-1907.

32. Who authored 'A Nation in Making'?

Ans : SQP 2001

Surendranath Banerjee.

33. Name any three Congress leaders who are known as 'Moderates'/Early Nationalist.

Ans : SQP 2000

Dadabhai Naoroji, S.N. Banerjee and Gopal Krishna Gokhale.

34. Who is the author of 'Poverty and Un-British rule in India' ?

Ans : COMP 2005

Dadabhai Naoroji.

35. Who founded the East India Association in London?

Ans : SQP 2003

Dadabhai Naoroji.

36. Against which two Acts did Surendranath Banerjee start agitations?

Ans : MAIN 2006

Arms Act and Vernacular Press Act.

37. Who said these words, "Opposition where necessary, cooperation where possible"?

Ans : SQP 2010

Surendranath Banerjee.

38. Whom did Gandhiji acknowledge his political Guru?

Ans : MAIN 2005

Gopal Krishna Gokhale.

39. What was the slogan raised by the Moderates to demand more representation by the Indians in the Councils ?

Ans : COMP 2001

"No taxation without representation".

40. Which policy of Lord Curzon did Gokhale oppose ?

Ans : SQP 2018

The Partition of Bengal.

TWO MARKS QUESTIONS

41. Mention two reasons for the Early Nationalists' faith in the British sense of justice.

Ans : MAIN 2000

(i) The Early Nationalists believed that being loyal to the British government was synonymous with being loyal to their own people and country.

(ii) They believed that maintaining the British connection with India was beneficial for both England and India.

42. Mention two contributions of Dadabhai Naoroji to the National Movement.

Ans : SQP 2006

(i) He was among the first Indian leaders to assert that the poverty of the Indian people was due to British exploitation and the drain of India's wealth to Britain.

(ii) He initiated movements opposing the Vernacular Press Act and condemned the harsh treatment of peasants by the zamindars.

43. What was the belief of the Early Nationalists regarding the British rule in India ?

Ans : COMP 2009

The Early Nationalists were a group of loyalists who took pride in their British connections and had faith in the British sense of justice and fair play. The first session of the Congress concluded with "three cheers"

NODIA

for Hume, to which Hume responded with "three cheers" for Her Majesty, "the Queen Empress." They believed that the English would grant 'Home Rule' to the Indians once they understood their desires. They placed their trust in the solemn promises made by the British Government over time. Even their criticism of the government was marked by dignity and moderation.

44. Mention two reasons for Moderate's faith in the British sense of Justice.

Ans : COMP 2012

The reasons for the Moderates' faith in the British sense of justice are as follows :

(i) They regarded the English as a just and freedom-loving people, holding a strong belief in British fairness and justice, and they maintained loyalty to the British Crown.

(ii) They believed that by merely presenting and advocating their case before the British Parliament and the British public, justice would be served, and their grievances would be addressed.

45. Mention two achievements of the Moderates.

Ans : MAIN (2002,2011)

The achievements of the Moderates include :

(i) They effectively sparked political awareness and a sense of national consciousness among Indians.

(ii) They succeeded in bringing together a majority of Indians in pursuit of a shared cause.

46. Mention any two shortcomings of the Early Nationalists.

Ans : SQP 2015

(i) Beggarly Methods : They relied on prayer and petitions, which were ineffective.

(ii) Lack of Awareness : They failed to recognize the conflict of interests between Indians and the British.

47. What according to the Early Nationalists was an obstacle in India's progress ? What kind of self government did the Early Nationalists demand ?

Ans : COMP 2010

The Early Nationalists believed that the primary barrier to India's progress was the social and economic backwardness of its people. They sought a greater role in the governance of their country, India, and their demands for constitutional reforms were partially met in 1892 with the enactment of the Indian Councils Act. They envisioned that India would ultimately progress toward democratic self-government.

48. State any two issues opposed by the Early Nationalists in the field of civil liberties.

Ans : MAIN 2015

The Early Nationalists opposed :

(i) The Vernacular Press Act (1878) : This Act restricted the freedom of the Indian press, particularly in regional languages, curbing freedom of expression.

(ii) Restrictions on Free Speech : They opposed laws limiting public gatherings and free speech, advocating for greater civil liberties.

49. Mention any two achievements of the Early Nationalists.

Ans : COMP 2010

(i) The Early Nationalists instilled a sense of national consciousness across different segments of society.

(ii) They promoted the concepts of democracy, civil liberties, and representative institutions.

50. Name any two economic issues raised by the Early Nationalists.

Ans : MAIN 2015

(i) A reduction in land revenue and safeguards for peasants against unfair demands by the Zamindars.

(ii) A decrease in military spending, with the funds saved redirected towards welfare initiatives such as health and education.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

51. What were the two methods adopted by the Early Nationalists in the freedom struggle ?

Ans : SQP 2000

The Early Nationalists conducted their agitation through constitutional means by :
(i) Submitting petitions to senior government officials.
(ii) Passing resolutions.

52. Which period of the national movement is known as the period of the 'Early Nationalists' ? Name any three leaders of the Congress who are known as 'Early Nationalists'.

Ans : SQP 2000

The period from 1885 to 1907 in the Indian National Movement is known as the period of the 'Early Nationalists'. Three prominent leaders of the Congress who are known as 'Early Nationalists' are :
(i) Dadabhai Naoroji
(ii) Gopal Krishna Gokhale
(iii) Surendranath Banerjee

53. Mention any two demands of the Early Nationalists that aimed at improving the lot of the peasants.

Ans : SQP 2000

Two demands of the Early Nationalists for improving the condition of peasants were :
(i) Reduction of Land Revenue : They sought lower land taxes to alleviate peasant distress.
(ii) Abolition of the Zamindari System : They pushed for the removal of the exploitative Zamindari system.

54. What was the Drain Theory referred to by Dadabhai Naoroji?

Ans : COMP 2011

The Drain Theory, as referred to by Dadabhai Naoroji, was the concept that the British were systematically draining India's wealth and resources to England, leaving the country impoverished. He argued that a significant portion of India's revenue was being transferred to Britain in the form of profits, salaries, and pensions, without any adequate return to the Indian economy. This, according to Naoroji, was a primary reason for India's economic stagnation under British rule.

55. What did the Early Nationalists demand for the industrial growth of India ?

Ans : SQP 2005

They called for industrial growth by advocating for trade protection. This included imposing heavy taxes on imported goods and urging the government to provide loans for developing industries like iron, coal, paper, and sugar in India.

56. Who is known as India's unofficial ambassador and why ?

Ans : SQP 2011

Dadabhai Naoroji is known as India's unofficial ambassador in England due to his tireless advocacy for Indian rights. As one of the founders of the Indian National Congress, he presided over its sessions in 1886, 1893, and 1906. His 1906 presidency was a significant effort to restore the Congress's prestige after the 1905 Bengal partition. Even the Extremists, who preferred Tilak for the presidency, supported Naoroji because of his established reputation.

57. List briefly any two causes that Gopal Krishna Gokhale supported.

Ans : MAIN 2015

(i) He advocated for the separation of the judiciary from the executive and pushed for reforms in the Legislative Council.
(ii) He was instrumental in the passage of the Minto-Morley Reforms.

58. State briefly the achievements of the East India Association.

Ans : COMP 2018

In England, Dadabhai Naoroji became involved with several learned societies and associations. He established the East India Association on December 1, 1866. He also successfully advocated for a resolution in

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

the British Parliament to hold preliminary examinations for the ICS simultaneously in India and England.

59. Name Dadabhai Naoroji's work which exposed the economic exploitation of India by the British.

Ans : MAIN 2000

Poverty and Un-British Rule in India exposed the economic exploitation of India by the British. Dadabhai Naoroji's famous Drain Theory highlighted how India's wealth was being siphoned off to England through various means.

60. The methods of the Early Nationalists were criticized as inadequate and half-hearted. In this context briefly describe the following :
(i) Nature of their methods.
(ii) The final outcome of their, efforts.

Ans : COMP 2013

(i) **Nature of Their Methods :** The Early Nationalists focused on constitutional and peaceful methods, avoiding violence and confrontation. They relied on the three P's - Petitions, Prayers, and Protests - believing that reforms could be achieved through dialogue, moral appeals, and non-violent public demonstrations. This approach reflected their belief in gradual, lawful progress toward self-governance.

(ii) Despite their drawbacks, the Early Nationalists achieved several significant objectives :

(a) **National consciosness :** Under the leadership of the Early Nationalists, the Congress played a crucial role in fostering a spirit of common brotherhood, transcending religious and regional differences. They instilled a sense of belonging to a unified nation among Indians.

(b) **Political education in India :** The Early Nationalists worked tirelessly to spread the ideals of democracy, representative institutions, and civil liberties. In the first session of Congress, W.C. Bonnerjee emphasized that Indians desired to be governed by the same principles of government prevalent in Europe.

(c) **Exposing the true nature of british rule :** In the 19th century, the Early Nationalists were the first to reveal how Indians were being exploited under British rule. Dadabhai Naoroji, in particular, exposed the true nature of British imperialism through his Economic Drain theory.

(d) **Acts of 1892 :** The Government of India Act of 1892, which expanded the Legislative Councils, was a result of the Early Nationalists' persistent demands. Although the Act did not fully satisfy them, it was an improvement over the Government of India Act of 1861.

(e) **Social reforms :** Early Nationalists like Ranade and Gokhale were strong advocates for social reform in India. They raised their voices against child marriage and the hardships imposed on widows. They also supported the Age of Consent Bill of 1891.

NODIA

61. Mention any two constitutional demands made by the Early Nationalists.

Ans : COMP 2010

The Early Nationalists made the following constitutional demands :
(i) The establishment of self-government with elected representatives at both the central and provincial levels.
(ii) The enlargement of the Legislative Councils that were established by the Act of 1861.

62. Who is the author of 'Poverty and Un-British Rule in India'? Name the first Indian who passed the Indian Civil Service Examination.

Ans : COMP 2013

The author of 'Poverty and Un-British Rule in India' is Dadabhai Naoroji. The first Indian to pass the Indian Civil Service Examination was Satyendranath Tagore.

63. Mention two contributions of Dadabhai Naoroji to the National Movement.

Ans : SQP 2003

(a) Dadabhai Naoroji established the East India Association in London with the primary goal of promoting the interests and well-being of Indians.

(b) Dadabhai Naoroji is regarded as one of the founders of the Indian National Congress. He served as its President three times, in 1886, 1893, and 1906, earning the title 'Grand Old Man of India.'

64. Write any two administrative demands of the Moderates/Early Nationalist.

Ans : COMP 2015

(i) Higher Positions for Indians in the Army : They sought higher-ranking jobs for Indians within the army.

(ii) Increased Autonomy for Local Bodies : They called for greater powers for local bodies with reduced government control over them.

THREE MARKS QUESTIONS

65. The final act of the long-drawn-out negotiations took place at Versailles on Saturday afternoon, and to-day Germany and the Allies – always with the exception of America – are at peace. Peace is a blessed word, and both the word and the fact are welcome to-day. So far as Germany is concerned there is for the present an end of strife, and at least a formal return to the decent relations of civilised states.
Editorial : Peace in force (12 January 1920) The Guardian

(i) Mention any three causes of the World War which ended with the signing of the treaty being discussed in the passage above.

(ii) Name the organization which was established in 1920 to maintain peace after this war. Mention any two of its objectives.

(iii) Mention any four clauses of the Treaty which affected Germany.

Ans : MAIN 2024

(i) Three causes of the World War which ended with the signing of the treaty :

(a) **Militarism :** The European powers engaged in an arms race, building large militaries that created tension and a sense of impending conflict.

(b) **Alliances :** The formation of complex alliances, such as the Triple Alliance (Germany, Austria-Hungary, and Italy) and the Triple Entente (France, Russia, and Britain), dragged multiple countries into the conflict.

(c) **Nationalism :** Intense national pride and competition among European nations, particularly between Germany and France, created an environment ripe for conflict, especially over territorial disputes like Alsace-Lorraine.

(ii) The League of Nations was established in 1920 to maintain peace and prevent future conflicts. It was the first international organization of its kind, formed with the goal of fostering cooperation among nations. Two objectives of the League of Nations :

(a) **Prevent future wars :** The primary objective of the League was to provide a forum for nations to resolve international disputes peacefully through diplomacy and negotiations, in order to avoid the outbreak of another war.

(b) **Promote disarmament :** Another key objective was to encourage nations to reduce their military capabilities and armaments, thereby decreasing the likelihood of military aggression and ensuring long-term global peace.

(iii) Four clauses of the Treaty which affected Germany :

(a) **Loss of territory :** Germany had to cede several important territories. Alsace-Lorraine was returned to

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

France, parts of eastern Germany were given to Poland (including the creation of the Polish Corridor), and Germany lost all its overseas colonies, which were distributed among the Allies as mandates under the League of Nations.

(b) **Military restrictions :** Germany's military was drastically reduced. The Treaty limited the German army to 100,000 soldiers, banned conscription, and prohibited the development of an air force, tanks, and submarines. Additionally, the Rhineland was to be demilitarized.

(c) **Reparations :** Germany was required to pay substantial reparations to the Allied powers, totaling 132 billion gold marks, to compensate for the extensive damage caused by the war, especially in France and Belgium.

(d) **War guilt clause :** Article 231, known as the war guilt clause, held Germany responsible for starting the war. This caused great humiliation and resentment in Germany, which fueled anger and contributed to future instability in Europe.

66. The period from 1885 to 1907 is called the period of the Moderates. In this context explain the following :

(i) Why was this period called the period of the Moderates ?

(ii) Demands of the Moderates.

(iii) Methods of the Moderates.

Ans : COMP (1992 , 2000 , 2020)

(i) Period of the Moderates :

(a) The period from 1885 to 1907 is known as the Moderate phase because the movement was led by a small group of educated middle-class individuals influenced by Western education and liberal thinkers.

(b) The demands of the Congress during this time were moderate in nature.

(c) The methods of struggle were also moderate, with leaders pursuing their cause through petitions and resolutions.

(ii) Demands of the Moderates :

(a) **Political Demands :** The Moderates sought constitutional reforms, including the expansion and greater representation in the Legislative Councils, the abolition of the Indian Council, and the complete separation of executive and judicial functions. They also emphasized the need for a 'Colonial form of self-government' similar to that in Canada and Australia.

(b) **Administrative Reforms :** They advocated for wider employment of Indians in higher services, Indenization of services through simultaneous ICS exams in India and England, repeal of the Arms Act, and more jobs for Indians in the army, along with increased powers for local bodies with reduced official control.

(c) **Economic Reforms :** The Moderates demanded economic reforms such as more funds for technical education, abolition of the salt tax, reduction in land revenue and military expenditure, and an inquiry into India's growing poverty and famines. They also called for the improvement of working conditions for plantation workers and the elimination of unfair tariffs and excise duties.

(d) **Defence of Civil Rights :** The Moderates strongly opposed the restrictions on freedom of speech, press, and association imposed by the British Government. They demanded the repeal of the Preventive Detention Act and the restoration of individual liberties.

(iii) Methods of the Moderates :

(a) The Moderates were not anti-British in their approach. They believed that the British Government could

NODIA

be convinced of the fairness of their demands and would eventually grant them.

(b) To achieve their goals, they passed resolutions and drafted petitions, which they submitted to the Government for consideration.

(c) Leaders like Dadabhai Naoroji worked to popularize the Congress's demands in England and sought the support of the British public.

67. Mention any four basic beliefs of Early Nationalists.

Ans : MAIN 2014

(i) The Moderates viewed the English as just and freedom-loving people, placing strong faith in the British sense of justice and fairness while remaining loyal to the British crown.

(ii) They believed that by simply presenting and advocating their case before the British Parliament and the British public, justice would prevail, and their grievances would be addressed.

(iii) The Congress took pride in its connections with Britain and looked to England for inspiration and guidance.

(iv) They acknowledged the benefits of British rule, particularly the English language and modern infrastructure like transport and communication. They also sought to reform society by addressing social evils such as sati, child marriage, and untouchability.

68. The Early Nationalists were practical and wanted to win freedom by a gradual process. In this context, answer the following :

(i) How did they expose the true nature of British rule in India?

(ii) What was the attitude of the Early Nationalists towards the British? Why did they develop such an attitude?

(iii) What were the reasons for the partial failure of their methods.

Ans : MAIN 2010

(i) The Early Nationalists were instrumental in revealing the true nature of British rule in India. Through their efforts, they brought to light the economic exploitation and injustice embedded within British imperialism. By educating the Indian populace about how British policies were systematically draining India's wealth and resources, they sparked a growing awareness of the detrimental impact of colonial rule. This understanding gradually weakened the very foundations upon which British authority in India was built, as more and more Indians began to question and resist the legitimacy of foreign domination. Their pioneering work laid the groundwork for a broader national movement that would eventually lead to India's struggle for independence.

(ii) Attitude of the Early Nationalists towards the British and Reason :

(a) **Faith in British Justice :** The Early Nationalists believed in the integrity, justice, and fairness of the British, trusting that the British Government would eventually grant 'Home Rule' to Indians based on their solemn promises.

(b) **Perceived Benefits of British Rule:** They acknowledged the benefits of British rule, such as efforts to eliminate social ills like Sati, untouchability, and child marriage, and believed that British guidance would help Indians govern themselves by Western standards.

(c) **Commitment to Peaceful Methods:** The Early Nationalists preferred constitutional and peaceful methods to achieve their goals, believing in patience and gradual reform rather than resorting to violence or confrontation. They thought that maintaining the British connection was mutually beneficial for both England and India.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

(iii) Reasons for the partial failure of their methods :

(a) **Lack of Mass Connection :** The Early Nationalists, often businessmen, had little contact with the broader masses, limiting their ability to mobilize popular support.

(b) **Praise for British Rule :** Despite the growing poverty and unemployment under British rule, these leaders praised the British presence in India, which led to a loss of faith among the masses who were increasingly dissatisfied with colonial rule.

(c) **Ineffective Petitions :** The Early Nationalists relied on petitions to the British Government, hoping for reforms, but the government largely ignored these efforts and acted arbitrarily, making it difficult for the leaders to maintain popular support.

(d) **Failure to Mobilize Religious Sentiment :** In a country where religion holds significant influence, the Early Nationalists failed to harness religious sentiments in the national struggle, missing an opportunity to unite and mobilize the masses effectively.

69. The period from 1885 to 1905 was dominated by the Early Nationalists. In this context, answer the following questions :

(i) To which section of society they belonged? What were their demands?

(ii) What methods did they adopt?

(iii) How did the Early Nationalists help in the growth of nationalism in India ?

Ans : SQP 2010

(i) The Early Nationalists, drawn from the educated middle class, including professionals like lawyers, teachers, and officials, demanded following :

(a) They called for the Indenization of higher grades in Indian Services.

(b) The separation of executive and judicial functions, and greater Indian representation in the Executive Council of the Viceroy and Governors.

(c) They sought the reduction of land revenue, abolition of the salt tax, promotion of industrial growth through tariff protection, and a reduction in military expenditure to fund social services like health and education.

(d) They strongly opposed restrictions on freedom of speech and press imposed by the British Government and demanded the right to assemble and form associations.

(e) Opposed the restrictions imposed by the British Government on the freedom of speech and press.

(ii) The Early Nationalists believed that constitutional agitation was the key to achieving political and economic reforms. Therefore, they pursued their goals through :

(a) Submitting petitions to high government officials.

(b) Holding meetings in towns, cities, and rural areas.

(c) Distributing leaflets and pamphlets.

(d) Preparing memorandums for government committees.

(e) Sending delegations of prominent politicians to England, usually directed at the British Government.

(f) Taking steps to influence public opinion in England. Additionally, they used the press to criticize government policies.

(iii) The Early Nationalists laid a strong foundation for the National Movement, uniting Indians into a single force ready for any sacrifice to achieve freedom. They awakened political consciousness among the people and prevented potential bloodshed by the British through their commitment to peaceful, constitutional methods of agitation. Dadabhai Naoroji, who dedicated his life, wealth, and career to the nation, inspired many with his selfless service. Gokhale praised him, saying, "If there is the divine in man, it is in Dadabhai Naoroji." In 1906, from the

NODIA

Congress platform in Calcutta, Naoroji boldly demanded Swaraj. He was also the first Indian to become a member of the British Parliament.

Gopal Krishna Gokhale founded the Servants of India Society, which fostered national unity and trained the masses to work for the country's cause. He criticized the policy of taxing the poor and advocated for their welfare. S. N. Banerjee, a patriotic speaker, journalist, and educator, was deeply influenced by British rule. His Indian Association, established in 1876, played a key role in raising political awareness and unity among the people. He also championed the protection of poor farmers against exploitation by zamindars.

70. Surendranath Banerjee is popularly known as the 'Father of the Indian Nationalism'. In this context, answer the following :

(i) Trace his contribution towards the formation of the Indian National Congress.

(ii) What was India's political goal according to Surendranath Banerjee ? What were the method he advocated to attain it ?

(iii) What was his contribution to India's freedom struggle?

Ans : SQP 2020

(i) Surendranath Banerjee played a significant role in laying the groundwork for the formation of the Indian National Congress. He was a prominent leader who actively organized political activities across India, fostering a sense of unity and national consciousness. In 1876, he founded the Indian Association, which became a powerful platform for voicing Indian grievances and mobilizing public opinion. His efforts in promoting political awareness and organizing meetings and conferences were instrumental in creating the conditions that eventually led to the establishment of the Indian National Congress in 1885.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

(ii) Surendranath Banerjee, like other Early Nationalists, called for reforms in the British administration, believing that such changes would earn the gratitude of the Indian people. His ultimate goal was self-government, grounded in the belief that Indians had the right to shape their own destiny. A true advocate of freedom, he supported the idea of complete independence from foreign rule.

Banerjee had strong faith in the honesty, integrity, and justice of the British, which led him to endorse constitutional means to achieve his political objectives. He also encouraged Indians to boycott foreign goods and was a strong supporter of the Swadeshi Movement.

(iii) In 1876, Surendranath Banerjee founded the Indian Association to advocate for political reforms in India. He embarked on an extensive tour across the country, raising national awareness and opposition to the reduction of the maximum age limit for the Indian Civil Services (ICS). Additionally, he boldly criticized the Arms Act and the Vernacular Press Act. Through these efforts, Banerjee worked tirelessly to unite people from different regions of India in expressing their grievances against the colonial regime.

71. Describe the achievements of Moderates Early Nationalist.

Ans : SQP 1992, 1993, 2005

(i) **Foundation of a Secular and Democratic National Movement :** The early nationalist leaders established a movement that included people of all religions, castes, creeds, regions, and colors. They successfully fostered a spirit of common brotherhood that transcended religious and regional differences.

(ii) **Political Education of Indians :** They played a significant role in awakening political awareness and national consciousness among Indians. They also popularized the ideas of democracy and civil liberties across the country.

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

(iii) **Revealing the True Nature of British Rule :** These leaders were the first in the 19th century to develop an economic critique of colonialism, effectively exposing the exploitative nature of British imperialism in India and educating the public on how the British were draining the Indian economy.

(iv) **Promotion of New Ideas :** They actively worked to popularize the concepts of democracy, civil liberties, and representative institutions among the Indian populace.

(v) **Social Reforms :** Moderates like Govind Ranade and Gopal Krishna Gokhale were strong advocates for social reforms in India, raising their voices against social evils such as child marriage and the sati system.

(vi) **Notable Achievements :** Their efforts led to significant milestones, including the appointment of a Public Service Commission in 1886, the House of Commons resolution in 1893 for simultaneous ICS examinations in London and India, and the establishment of the Welby Commission on Indian Expenditure in 1895.

72. State Dadabhai Naoroji's contribution to India's freedom struggle under the following heads.

(i) His views about the nature of British imperialism.

(ii) His achievement in strengthening Indian nationalism.

(iii) His views on the cause of poverty in India.

Ans : SQP 2012

(i) Dadabhai Naoroji, while recognizing the benefits of Western education and the construction of railways, was openly critical of British rule for its negative impact on the Indian economy. He highlighted how Indian handicrafts and textiles had been devastated under British policies. Naoroji edited Rast Goftar (Speaker of Truth) and also launched a magazine called Dharma Marg Darshak, both of which addressed the detrimental effects of British imperialism on India.

(ii) Dadabhai Naoroji, one of the founders of the Indian National Congress, served as the Congress President in 1886, 1893, and 1906. His 1906 presidency was a strategic effort to restore the Congress's lost prestige following the Partition of Bengal in 1905. Although the Extremists preferred Tilak for the presidency, they conceded to Naoroji due to his well-established reputation and significant contributions to the national movement.

(iii) Dadabhai Naoroji's seminal work, Poverty and Un-British Rule in India, introduces his well-known Drain Theory. This theory outlines how India's wealth was being drained to England through various channels, including :

(a) Salaries paid to members of the Indian Councils.

(b) Pensions for British officers.

(c) Payments made to the War Office for maintaining British troops in India.

(d) Profits earned by British trading agencies.

NODIA

73. Early Nationalists were practical and wanted to win freedom by a gradual process. Critically examine the contribution of Early Nationalists using the following points :

(i) Exposing the true nature of British rule.

(ii) Arousing political consciousness among the people.

(iii) Laying the foundation of the national movement.

Ans : SQP 2000

(i) The Early Nationalists were instrumental in revealing the true nature of British rule in India. Through their efforts, they brought to light the economic exploitation and injustice embedded within British imperialism. By educating the Indian populace about how British policies were systematically draining India's wealth and resources, they sparked a growing awareness of the detrimental impact of colonial rule. This understanding

gradually weakened the very foundations upon which British authority in India was built, as more and more Indians began to question and resist the legitimacy of foreign domination. Their pioneering work laid the groundwork for a broader national movement that would eventually lead to India's struggle for independence.

(ii) The Early Nationalists were instrumental in awakening political consciousness across the country. They educated the Indian populace about democratic principles, civil liberties, and the importance of self-governance. Through public meetings, speeches, and publications, leaders like Surendranath Banerjee and Gopal Krishna Gokhale spread the ideas of political rights and representative government. They made Indians aware of their rights and the need to demand reforms from the British. This growing political awareness among the educated middle class gradually spread to the broader population, laying the groundwork for a more inclusive and widespread national movement.

(iii) The Early Nationalists laid a strong foundation for the National Movement, uniting Indians into a single, cohesive body ready for any sacrifice in the fight for freedom. They ignited political consciousness across the nation. By adopting peaceful means of agitation within constitutional limits, they prevented widespread violence that could have resulted in mass slaughter by the British. Dadabhai Naoroji, who sacrificed his life, wealth, and career for the country, inspired countless Indians with his selfless dedication. As Gokhale once said, "If there is the divine in man, it is in Dadabhai Naoroji." In 1906, Naoroji boldly demanded Swaraj from the Congress platform in Calcutta and became the first Indian to serve as a member of the British Parliament.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

NODIA

Gopal Krishna Gokhale established the Servants of India Society, which fostered national unity and trained the masses to work for the motherland. He also criticized the British policy of taxing the poor in India. S.N. Banerjee, a patriotic speaker, journalist, and educator, was deeply influenced by British rule. His Indian Association, founded in 1876, played a crucial role in raising political consciousness and promoting unity among the people. Banerjee also championed the cause of protecting poor farmers from exploitation by zamindars.

14. Critically examine the Moderates/Early Nationalist under the following :

(i) Criticism of their achievements.

(ii) They did whatever they could do under the circumstances.

Ans : MAIN 2007

(i) The Early Nationalists, often referred to as Moderates, have been criticized for their limited achievements during the early phase of the Indian National Movement. One major criticism is that their methods - relying heavily on petitions, resolutions, and appeals to the British sense of justice - were too mild and ineffective. They focused on constitutional and peaceful means, which many felt did not put enough pressure on the British authorities to enact significant reforms. Their approach largely catered to the educated elite, failing to engage the broader masses, especially the rural population. As a result, their efforts often did not lead to substantial changes, and many of their demands were either ignored or only partially addressed by the British Government. Critics argue that the Moderates underestimated the extent of British resistance to granting real power to Indians and that their faith in British fairness was misplaced.

(ii) However, it's important to recognize that the Early Nationalists did what they could within the constraints of

their time. Operating in a period when the British colonial regime had tight control over political activities, their options were limited. The constitutional and peaceful methods they employed were a pragmatic choice in an era where more confrontational approaches could have led to harsh repression and further restrictions on political expression. Additionally, they played a crucial role in raising political awareness and educating Indians about their rights. Figures like Dadabhai Naoroji, Surendranath Banerjee, and Gopal Krishna Gokhale laid the foundation for Indian nationalism, fostering unity and laying the groundwork for future movements. Despite the criticisms, their efforts were instrumental in the gradual awakening of a national consciousness that would eventually lead to India's independence.

75. Gopal Krishna Gokhale, the political mentor of Gandhiji, was one of the most popular Early Nationalists leaders. In this context, answer the following :

(i) State three policies of the imperial regime which were opposed by Gokhale.

(ii) What role did he play as a member of Imperial Legislative Council ?

(iii) How did he try to arouse national awakening?

Ans : COMP 2011

(i) Gokhale opposed British Government policies when necessary, criticizing them for :

(a) The excessive spending on the English army.

(b) The policy of racial discrimination in appointments to high positions.

(c) The imposition of a production tax on cotton.

(ii) Role played by Gokhale as a Member of the Imperial Legislative Council :

(a) **Success in Reducing Toll Tax :** His persistent efforts resulted in a reduction of the toll tax.

(b) **Primary Education Bill :** Gokhale attempted to introduce a bill aimed at making primary education compulsory, though he faced limited success in this effort.

(c) **Fiscal Policy Reforms :** As an economist, he pushed for significant changes in the fiscal policy and sought better job opportunities for the educated middle class.

(d) **Reduction of Land Revenue :** He urged the government to lower the land revenue, aiming to ease the burden on the agricultural community.

(iii) The Servants of India Society, founded in 1905, aimed to train individuals to dedicate their lives to serving the nation. Additionally, its members were tasked with fostering a deep and passionate love for the motherland among the people. The Society also focused on promoting women's education and uplifting the depressed classes.

CASE BASED QUESTION

76. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follow :

The Indians who actively worked for the creation of an all-India political organization represented new social forces that were increasingly opposed to the exploitation of India for British interests. They needed an organization that would fight for India's political and economic advancement."

From 'Freedom Struggle'

(i) In the context of the above, identify the two individuals in Pictures 1 and 2, who were the early leaders of the organization to be formed.

(ii) How did the person in Picture 1 explain the economic exploitation of India for British interests ?

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

Picture 1 Picture 2

(iii) Name the organization which was to be formed. What were the objectives behind the formation of this political body ?

(iv) Explain the major ideological differences which emerged amongst the leaders within the first twenty years of the foundation of this organization.

Ans : SQP 2018

(i) Dadabhai Naoroji and Gopal Krishna Gokhale.

(ii) Through his renowned book, Poverty and Un-British Rule in India, Dadabhai Naoroji introduced his "Drain Theory," which explained how the continuous outflow of India's wealth to England was the primary cause of India's poverty.

(iii) Indian National Congress.

Objectives :

(a) To bring together national workers from different parts of India, fostering personal connections among them.

(b) To eliminate racial, religious, and provincial biases, and to cultivate a sense of national unity among all patriots, while also promoting friendly relations between Hindus and Muslims.

(c) To shape public opinion on critical Indian issues and present these concerns to the government.

(iv) Major Ideological Differences :

(a) The Moderates had complete faith in the British sense of justice, while the Radicals distrusted the British and lacked confidence in their goodwill.

(b) The Moderates admired the superiority of European culture, whereas the Radicals emphasized the greatness of Indian culture.

(c) The Moderates advocated for petitions, prayers, and passive resistance, in contrast to the Radicals, who supported more revolutionary methods.

(d) The Moderates believed that Indians were not yet ready for self-rule, whereas the Radicals were convinced that Indians were fully capable of governing themselves.

11. (i) Identify the person in the given picture. What was he known for and why?

(ii) Name any one Society which was formed by him. What were the objectives of the society ?

(iii) His efforts to arouse national awakening.

(iv) His economic ideas.

Ans : MAIN 2015

(i) The person in the picture is Gopal Krishna Gokhale. He was known as the Political Guru of Mahatma Gandhi. In 1912, Gokhale traveled to South Africa, where he assisted Mahatma Gandhi in his struggle against racial discrimination. Gokhale is also credited with persuading Gandhi to return to India and participate in Indian public life.

(ii) He founded The Servants of India Society in 1905. The objective of the society are as follows :

NODIA

(a) The Society trained individuals to dedicate their lives to the service of the nation.
(b) It supported educational movements, particularly those focused on women's education.
(c) The Society also worked for the upliftment of the depressed classes.

(iii) His efforts to arouse national awakening :
(a) Gokhale opposed British Government policies whenever necessary. He was critical of the toll tax and condemned the government for excessive military spending on the English army, racial discrimination, and neglecting elementary education.
(b) In 1910 and 1912, he introduced resolutions in the Imperial Legislative Council advocating for relief for Indian bonded laborers in Natal.
(c) His political moderation and cooperation with the government played a significant role in making the British recognize the Congress as a responsible voice for Indian public opinion.
(d) Gokhale believed in addressing the immediate needs of his countrymen, such as public health and sanitation, advanced technology skills, communal harmony, social equality, democratic agitation methods, and basic literacy.

(iv) His economic ideas :
(a) Gokhale was deeply troubled by the worsening conditions of the peasantry and advocated for the reduction of land revenue.
(b) He emphasized the importance of promoting industry and appointing Indians to high-ranking positions so that the money saved could be used for public welfare.
(c) Gokhale supported state protection for fledgling Indian industries.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

78. (i) Identify the person in the given picture :

(ii) Name the Moderate leader who was known as "The Indian Burke" ?
(iii) Mention his efforts to arouse national awakening or in strengthening national movement.

Ans : COMP 1994

(i) The person in the picture is Surendranath Banarjee.
(ii) Surendranath Banerjee is often referred to as "The Indian Burke."
(iii) (a) Surendranath Banerjee was deeply involved in India's freedom movement. He was a passionate patriot, an eloquent speaker, a journalist, an educationist, an organizer, and a political agitator.
(b) In 1876, he founded the Indian Association, which played a crucial role in educating the public, raising political awareness, and fostering unity among the people.
(c) He believed that the general public, or masses, should be actively involved in the national movement.
(d) Banerjee organized popular demonstrations and led agitations against the Licence Act, Arms Act, Vernacular Press Act, and the reduction of the age limit for the ICS examination from 21 to 19 years.
(e) He strongly advocated for Hindu-Muslim unity, believing that disunity between these communities would hinder the growth of the national movement.

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

BETTER THAN BOOK IN THE MARKET

Why students are choosing this book 👉

School teachers already use this content to set papers.

Still not sure?

- 👉 Match this PDF with your question papers
- 👉 See the similarity yourself

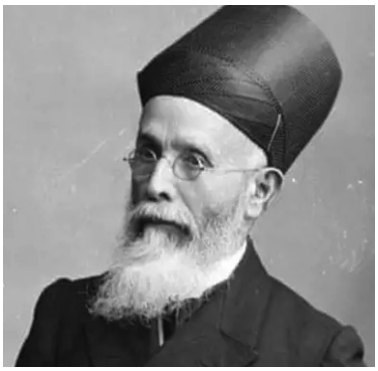
Why does this happen?

- ✓ Teachers have its PDF & Word files
- ✓ Easy access
- ✓ Direct copy-paste questions
- ✓ Same pattern followed

Don't miss out—get the advantage today!

(f) He opposed the Minto-Morley Reforms of 1909, which introduced separate electorates for Hindus and Muslims, and also stood against the partition of Bengal.

79. (i) Identify the person in the given picture :



(ii) Who was known as India's Unofficial Ambassador to England ?

(iii) What were his views on the cause of poverty in India?

(iv) Mention his achievements in strengthening India's nationalism.

Ans : SQP (2000, 2002, 2015)

(i) The person in the picture is Dadabhai Naoroji

(ii) Dadabhai Naoroji, often referred to as the Grand Old Man of India, was recognized as the Unofficial Ambassador of India to England.

(iii) A profound economic thinker, Dadabhai Naoroji's views on the Indian economy are well articulated in his seminal work, Poverty and Un-British Rule in India. Through his famous Drain Theory, he detailed how India's wealth was being siphoned off to England in various forms, including : (a) Salaries paid to members of the Indian Council, (b) Savings sent back to England by British personnel stationed in India, (c) Pensions for British officers, (d) Payments to the War Office for maintaining British troops in India, and (e) Profits earned by British trading agencies.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

NODIA

(iv) His achievements

(a) Naoroji was a leading figure in the Indian National Congress for over two decades and presided over its sessions three times.

(b) He was one of the earliest Indian leaders to argue that the poverty in India was a direct result of British exploitation and the drain of India's wealth to Britain.

(c) He also initiated movements against the Vernacular Press Act and the harsh treatment of poor peasants by zamindars.

(d) The distinction of demanding Swaraj from the Congress platform in 1906 belongs to Dadabhai Naoroji.

(e) Under his leadership as Congress President, the movement gained momentum, as four key resolutions on self-government, boycott, Swadeshi, and national education were passed.

www.nodia.in

CHAPTER 4

SECOND PHASE OF INDIAN NATIONAL MOVEMENT

SUMMARY

The Second Phase of the Indian National Movement (1905-1916) was a transformative period in India's struggle for independence. This phase witnessed the rise of assertive nationalism, significant political developments and growing communal consciousness. The era is marked by key events such as the Partition of Bengal, the Surat Split, the emergence of the Radicals, the formation of the Muslim League, and the historic Lucknow Pact.

1. PARTITION OF BENGAL (1905)

The Partition of Bengal, implemented by Lord Curzon, divided the province into two parts - East Bengal (predominantly Muslim) and West Bengal (predominantly Hindu). The official justification was administrative efficiency; however, nationalists saw it as a deliberate attempt to divide Hindus and Muslims and weaken the growing nationalist movement. The Partition sparked widespread outrage, leading to protests, boycotts of British goods, and the Swadeshi Movement. Indians promoted indigenous industries and goods, emphasizing self-reliance. Cultural events and festivals became platforms for promoting nationalism. The protests eventually forced the British to annul the Partition in 1911, marking an early victory for the nationalist movement.

2. SURAT SPLIT (1907)

A key event in this period was the Surat Split, where the Indian National Congress divided into two factions : the Moderates and the Radicals (or Extremists). The Moderates, led by leaders like Gopal Krishna Gokhale, sought gradual reforms through dialogue with the British. On the other hand, the Radicals, led by Bal Gangadhar Tilak, Bipin Chandra Pal and Lala Lajpat Rai, believed in a more aggressive approach, demanding immediate self-rule (Swaraj). The split weakened the Congress temporarily but reflected the growing impatience among Indians with the slow pace of reforms.

3. RADICALS AND THEIR CONTRIBUTIONS

The Radicals, often called the "Lal-Bal-Pal" trio, infused energy into the nationalist struggle through their fiery speeches, writings, and grassroots mobilization. Their methods included public demonstrations, boycotts of British goods, and the promotion of Swadeshi. They believed in the active participation of the masses and criticized the Moderates for relying on petitions and reforms.

Bal Gangadhar Tilak : Known as the "Father of Indian Unrest," Tilak was a staunch advocate of Swaraj (self-rule). He popularized the slogan, "Swaraj is my birthright, and I shall have it." Tilak also used cultural festivals, such as Ganesh Chaturthi and Shivaji Utsav, to unite people and foster a spirit of nationalism. His newspapers, Kesari (in Marathi) and Maratha (in English), became powerful tools to spread nationalist ideas.

Bipin Chandra Pal : Pal was a fierce orator and writer who propagated Swadeshi and boycott movements. He emphasized self-reliance in all aspects, from education to industry, and inspired youth to join the struggle through his powerful speeches and writings.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

Lala Lajpat Rai : Known as the "Lion of Punjab," Lala Lajpat Rai was a staunch nationalist and social reformer. He worked to promote education, established institutions, and led mass protests against oppressive British policies. His fearless leadership and sacrifices earned him widespread respect.

4. FORMATION OF THE MUSLIM LEAGUE (1906)

The All-India Muslim League was formed in Dhaka to protect the political and social interests of Muslims, which some leaders felt were being overshadowed in the Congress. Factors leading to its formation included the British policy of divide and rule, the perception of Congress as Hindu-dominated, and rising communal tensions. The League aimed to represent Muslim aspirations, safeguard their rights, and secure their fair share in administrative reforms. While initially supportive of British rule, the League later played a pivotal role in shaping communal politics in India.

5. LUCKNOW PACT (1916)

The Lucknow Pact was a significant milestone in fostering Hindu-Muslim unity and cooperation. Under this agreement, the Congress and the Muslim League resolved to work together to demand self-governance from the British. They agreed to safeguard minority rights and ensure adequate representation for all communities. The Pact marked a brief phase of communal harmony and strengthened the Indian nationalist movement by uniting diverse sections of society.

6. SIGNIFICANCE OF THE PERIOD

The Second Phase of the Indian National Movement is crucial for understanding the evolution of nationalist strategies and the complexities of communal politics. While the Moderates laid the groundwork with their constitutional approach, the Radicals infused the movement with a sense of urgency and mass involvement. The formation of the Muslim League indicated the rise of communal identities, which would later have profound implications for India's history. The annulment of the Partition of Bengal and the success of the Lucknow Pact demonstrated that organized, united efforts could achieve significant political outcomes.

This period served as a bridge between the early years of the movement and the more organized, large-scale struggles that followed. It highlighted the need for unity, mass participation and innovative strategies in the fight for independence.

NODIA

MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTION

1. The plan of Partition of Bengal was proposed by _____.
(a) Lord Canning
(b) Lord Dalhousie
(c) Lord Curzon
(d) Lord Ripon

Ans : COMP 2023

Thus (c) is correct option.

2. The Lucknow Pact was signed between _____.
(a) The British and the Congress
(b) The Congress and the Muslim League
(c) The Early and the Assertive Nationalists
(d) The Muslim League and the British

Ans : SQP 2023

Thus (c) is correct option.

3. What measure did Lord Curzon take to reduce the 'influence of Bengal'?
(a) Partition of Bengal
(b) Swadeshi Movement
(c) Boycott Movement
(d) Bengal Land Act

Ans : MAIN 2014

Thus (a) is correct option.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

4. What justification did Lord Curzon give to the Indians for the Partition of Bengal?
(a) Bengal was too big to be efficiently administered by a single provisional government
(b) It would cause a hindrance to the national movement.
(c) It would place Bengalis under two administrative units making them a minority in Bengal.
(d) It would lead to division between Hindu and Muslim Nationalists

Ans : SQP 2021

Thus (a) is correct option.

5. The Partition of Bengal was annuled and a new scheme was implemented on which grounds?
(a) Religious
(b) Linguistic
(c) Cultural
(d) Traditional

Ans : COMP 2020

Thus (b) is correct option.

6. Both, Early Nationalists and Assertive Nationalists spoke, wrote, and edited newspapers. Which section had a wider reach and why?
(a) Early Nationalists because they were well educated.
(b) Early Nationalists because they held official positions.
(c) Assertive Nationalists because they used Vernacular press as a medium.
(d) Assertive Nationalists because they used English language as a medium.

Ans : SQP 2010

Thus (c) is correct option.

7. Assertive Nationalists adopted the policy of _____to oppose the unjust acts of the British
(a) Entreat and beseech
(b) Non-cooperation
(c) Passive redressal
(d) Prayers and petitions

Ans : MAIN 2005

Thus (b) is correct option.

8. Which of the following was an achivement of Assertive Nationalists?
(a) Annulment of Partition of Bengal
(b) Annulment of Ilbert Bill
(c) Annulment of Arms Act
(d) Annulment of Indian Universities Act.

Ans : SQP 2003

Thus (a) is correct option.

9. Why did Swadeshi become a watchword of the National Movement?
(a) It would make India self-sufficient.
(b) It would make Indian goods attractive for export.
(c) It would encourage trade.
(d) It would encourage British to buy Indian goods.

Ans : SQP 2008

Thus (a) is correct option.

10. Formation of Congress : 1885 : : Formation of Muslim League : _____
(a) 1905 (b) 1906
(c) 1907 (d) 1908

Ans : MAIN 2023

Thus (b) is correct option.

11. Which of the following international events led to the rise of Assertive Nationalism?
(a) Victory of Japan over Russia
(b) Defeat of Britain in the Anglo -Afghan Wars
(c) Defeat of France in Ethiopia
(d) Defeat of Germany in South Africa

Ans : SQP 2001

Thus (a) is correct option.

12. Early Nationalists : Educated middle class : : Assertive Nationalists :.... ?
(a) Youth and women
(b) The British nationals in India
(c) The masses
(d) The Civil servants

Ans : COMP 2007

Thus (b) is correct option.

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

13. Who among the following was NOT an Assertive Nationalist leader?
(a) Bal Gangadhar Tilak
(b) Lala Lajpat Rai
(c) Bipin Chandra Pal
(d) Dadabhai Naoroji

Ans : MAIN 2009

Thus (d) is correct option.

14. The split in the Congress occurred due to differences between the Early Nationalists and Assertive Nationalists. Which of the following was NOT an issue?
(a) Extension of Swadeshi and Boycott to the whole country
(b) Open support to boycott of foreign goods
(c) Candidature for Congress Presidents hip
(d) Indenization of Civil Services

Ans : COMP 2019

Thus (d) is correct option.

ONE MARK QUESTIONS

15. Who was the chief architect of Partition of Bengal?

Ans : MAIN 2011

Lord Curzon

16. When was the decision regarding the Partition of Bengal officially announced ?

Ans : SQP 2000, 2011

On 19th July, 1905.

17. What was Lord Curzon's argument in favour of the Partition of Bengal ?

Ans : COMP 2010

Lord Curzon said that Partition of Bengal was "a mere readjustment of administrative boundaries." In other words, it would improve the administration of the two provinces.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

18. Which action taken by the Viceroy sparked off the Swadeshi Movement in 1905 ?
Mention one important anti-India policy adopted by Lord Curzon which brought about aggressive nationalism in India.

Ans : MAIN 2003

The Partition of Bengal by Lord Curzon sparked off the Swadeshi Movement in 1905.

19. Name the leaders who constituted the radicals in the early years of the 20th century.

or

Mention three prominent leaders advocating radicals Nationalism.

Ans : MAIN 2004

Lal-Bal-Pal namely, Lala Lajpat Rai, Bal Gangadhar Tilak and Bipin Chandra Pal.

20. Who said "Swaraj is my birth right and I shall have it ?

Ans : COMP 1996,2000,2001,2007,2018

Lokmanya Tilak. He started Home Rule League.

21. Name any two causes of the rise of extremism in the 20th century.

Ans : MAIN 2015

(i) Failure of the Moderates.
(ii) Partition of Bengal.

22. When and by whom was Bengal partitioned into two parts ?

Ans : SQP 2011

In 1905, by Lord Curzon.

23. Name two papers started by Bal Gangadhar Tilak in order to spread the ideals of nationalism.

Ans : COMP 1998

The Mahratta and The Kesari.

24. Mention any one reason for the rise of aggressive nationalism in India.

Ans : MAIN 2002

The worsening of the economic conditions of the masses and exploitation of Indian resources.

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

25. Name the Congress leader who died after assaulted by the British in his demonstration against th e Simon Commission. Mention one consequence of the protest against the Simon Commission's recommendation.

Ans : SQP 2008

Lala Lajpat Rai.
This led to the launching of Civil Disobedience Movement.

26. What efforts did Tilak make to instil the spirit of nationalism in Indians?

Ans : COMP 2018

Tilak organized many akharas and lathi clubs where physical training was imparted.

27. Name one weekly through which Tilak spread the message of liberty and justice.

Ans : MAIN 2006

The Mahratta (English) and the Kesari (Marathi).

28. State the significance of the Congress Session at Surat.

Ans : COMP 2015

In the Surat of the Congress in 1907 there was a split in the congress.

29. What was the attitude of the British towards Lala Lajpat Rai?

Ans : SQP 2011

The British followed the policy of repression against the actions of Lala Lajpat Rai.

30. What classes of people were brought into the Congress by the Assertive Nationalists?

Ans : MAIN 2015

The Aggressive Nationalists attempted to bring the mass of the population i.e., the workers, peasants and youth into the fold of the Congress.

31. Who set up the Home Rule League and why?

Ans : COMP 2000

Bal Gangadhar Tilak set up the Home Rule League at Pune in 1916 to attain self-government within the British Empire by constitutional means.

32. Describe the role of Lala Lajpat Rai in the field of education.

Ans : MAIN 2005

Lala Lajpat Rai wrote a book on National Education that called for reform of prevalent educational system.

33. Name the Viceroy responsible for the partition of Bengal.

Ans : SQP 2013

Lord Curzon who was the Viceroy of India was responsible for the partition of Bengal.

TWO MARKS QUESTIONS

34. In which year did the Surat Split happen? What was the result of this split?

Ans : MAIN 2024

The Surat Split occurred in 1907 due to differences between the moderates and extremists in the Indian National Congress. The moderates, led by leaders like Gokhale and Naoroji, favored gradual reforms, while the extremists, led by Tilak, pushed for more radical action. The split divided the Congress into two factions, weakening it temporarily but setting the stage for future independence movements.

35. State any two objectives of the Muslim League.

Ans : MAIN 2023

(i) Representation of Muslims : The Muslim League aimed to ensure adequate political representation for Muslims in India, advocating for their rights and interests.
(ii) Promotion of Muslim Identity : The League sought to promote and protect the cultural, religious, and educational rights of Muslims, emphasizing their distinct identity within Indian society.

NODIA
Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

36. What were Curzon's real motive behind the Partition of Bengal.

Ans : SQP 2009

(i) The British Government aimed to undermine the powerful nationalist movement that had taken root in Bengal.
(ii) To create divisions and discord between the Hindu and Muslim communities.

37. Who started the paper 'Young India' ? Why?

Ans : COMP 1995,2000,2003

Lala Lajpat Rai launched the newspaper 'Young India' in the United States to raise awareness about the aspirations of the Indian people among the American public.

38. State any two repressive policies of Lord Curzon which prepared the ground for militant nationalism in India.

Ans : MAIN 1999, 2012

(i) He enacted the Prevention of Seditious Meetings Act in 1907, which prohibited political gatherings.
(ii) His most notorious action was the partition of Bengal.

39. Why is October, 16, 1905 regarded as an important day in the history of the Indian National Movement?

Ans : COMP 2020

October 16, 1905, marks the implementation of the Partition of Bengal, sparking the Swadeshi Movement and a rise in militant nationalism, making it a key moment in the Indian National Movement.

40. Who composed the Bande Mataram? State the reaction of the masses to the proclamation of the Partition of Bengal.

Ans : MAIN 2023

Bande Mataram was composed by Bankim Chandra Chattopadhyay.
Reaction to the Partition of Bengal : The Partition of Bengal in 1905 led to widespread protests, the launch of the Swadeshi Movement, and a strong surge in anti-British sentiments, uniting the masses against the colonial rule.

41. Name any two prominent leaders of Anti-Partition agitation of Bengal. Name the song composed by Rabindranath Tagore during the Anti-partition agitation.

Ans : SQP 2015

K. K. Mitra and Rabindranath Tagore were prominent Bengali leaders of the Anti-Partition agitation. During this movement, Rabindranath Tagore composed the national song, "Amar Sonar Bangla" ("My Golden Bengal").

42. Who were Assertive Nationalists? Who were they so called?

Ans : COMP 2013

The period from 1905 to 1918 saw the rise of a new group of leaders within the Congress, known as the Assertive Nationalists. They demanded complete Swaraj and promoted aggressive political methods, such as the boycott of British goods, government services, and titles, to achieve their goals. They earned the name "Assertive" due to their determined stance, advocating active resistance against British imperialism.

43. Name three prominent Assertive Nationalist leaders. What was the aim of the Assertive Nationalists as far as the national movement was concerned?

Ans : MAIN 2014

(i) Bal Gangadhar Tilak,
(ii) Bipin Chandra Pal
(iii)Lala Lajpat Rai.
The primary goal of the Assertive Nationalists was to secure greater participation for Indians in the administration of their country and to put an end to Britain's economic exploitation of India.

44. How did the Assertive Nationalists expand the social base of the national movement ?

Ans : SQP 2000

The Assertive Nationalists believed that their objectives could not be achieved without

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

applying pressure and taking direct action. Therefore, they embraced a policy of non-cooperation, employing methods such as Swadeshi and Boycott.

45. Mention any one reason for the rise of Assertive Nationalism. Why the educated Indians turned against the British.

Ans : COMP 2001

One reason for the rise of Assertive Nationalism was the failure of Moderate leaders to achieve significant reforms through petitions and dialogues.
Educated Indians turned against the British due to the realization that British rule primarily served British interests, leading to economic exploitation and political marginalization of Indians.

46. List any two international events that shattered the myth of European superiority.

Ans : MAIN 2003

Two international events that shattered the myth of European superiority are :
(i) Japan's victory over Russia in the Russo-Japanese War (1904-1905).
(ii) Nationalist movements in Egypt and Turkey against European domination.

47. Mention any two measures that show that Lord Curzon's policies were repressive.

Ans : COMP 2015

(i) The Calcutta Corporation Act of 1899
(ii) The Universities Act of 1904

48. Name the two books written by Bal Gangadhar Tilak.

Ans : SQP 2000

(i) Gita Rahasya
(ii) Arctic home in the Vedas

49. When and why did Tilak leave the Indian National Congress in India ?

Ans : COMP 2000

Bal Gangadhar Tilak left the Indian National Congress in 1907 due to the Surat Split.The split was caused by ideological differences between the Moderates, who favored gradual reforms, and the Assertive Nationalists, led by Tilak, who advocated for more direct action and Swaraj (self-rule).

50. Why did Tilak revive Ganapati and Shivaji festivals?

Ans : MAIN 2015

In 1893, Tilak began using the traditional Ganapati festival to promote nationalist ideas through songs and speeches. In 1895, he revived the Shivaji festival to inspire young Maharashtrians.

51. Who is known as the 'Father of Assertive Nationalism ? To which state did he belong ?

Ans : COMP 2012

Bal Gangadhar Tilak is known as the 'Father of Assertive Nationalism'. He belonged to the state of Maharashtra.

52. Mention any two achievements of the Assertive Nationalists.

Ans : SQP 2001

Two achievements of the Assertive Nationalists are :
(i) Wider Spread of Nationalism : They broadened the reach of nationalist sentiments across India.
(ii) Swadeshi and Boycott Movements : They led the Swadeshi and Boycott Movements, promoting the use of Indian goods and rejecting British products.

THREE MARKS QUESTIONS

53. The Indian National Movement is divided into three phases. With reference to the Second Phase of the Indian National Movement, answer the following questions :
(i) Who partitioned Bengal? Mention any two points to explain the perspective of the Nationalists regarding the actual motive behind the decision of Partition.

NODIA
Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

(ii) What was the objective of the Assertive Nationalists? Mention any two contributions of Bal Gangadhar Tilak.

(iii) In which year was the Muslim League formed? Mention any three objectives of the Muslim League.

Ans : MAIN 2024

(i) Lord Curzon, the Viceroy of India, partitioned Bengal in 1905.

(a) **Divide and Rule :** The Nationalists believed that the real motive behind the partition was to weaken the growing unity among Hindus and Muslims in Bengal by dividing the province along communal lines—into Hindu-majority West Bengal and Muslim-majority East Bengal.

(b) **Suppressing Nationalism :** They saw it as an attempt to curb the rising nationalist sentiments in Bengal, which was the center of anti-colonial activities. By dividing the region, the British hoped to reduce the influence of Bengal's political leaders on the national movement.

(ii) The objective of the Assertive Nationalists (or Extremists) was to achieve Swaraj (self-rule) through more radical methods such as protests, boycotts, and the rejection of British authority, unlike the Moderates, who sought reforms through dialogue.

Two contributions of Bal Gangadhar Tilak :

(a) **Slogan of Swaraj :** Tilak popularized the slogan "Swaraj is my birthright, and I shall have it," which inspired a generation of freedom fighters to actively participate in the struggle for independence.

(b) **Revival of Indian Festivals :** Tilak revived cultural festivals like Ganesh Chaturthi and Shivaji Jayanti to unite people and inspire them with nationalist pride, using these events to spread the message of independence.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

(iii) The Muslim League was formed in 1906. Three objectives of the Muslim League :

(a) **Protect Muslim interests :** The Muslim League aimed to protect the political and social rights of Muslims and ensure they had a voice in the governance of India.

(b) **Promote loyalty to the British :** Initially, the League sought to foster loyalty among Muslims towards the British government and prevent Muslims from joining the nationalist movement, which was largely led by the Indian National Congress.

(c) **Safeguard Muslim representation :** The League worked to secure adequate representation for Muslims in government services and legislative bodies, ensuring their political rights were protected.

54. The Partition of Bengal in 1905 was intended to check the rising tide of Indian Nationalism and to break the Hindu-Muslim unity in Bengal. In this context, state the following :

(i) Reaction of the Nationalists to the Partition of Bengal.

(ii) Reaction of the British against the agitators.

Ans : MAIN 2002

(i) Reaction of the Nationalists to the Partition of Bengal:

(a) **Day of Mourning :** The Partition of Bengal, effective from October 16, 1905, was declared "a Day of Mourning" by the Nationalists. Surendranath Banerjee launched the 'Wang-Bang' Movement, and people tied 'Rakhis' to demonstrate unity.

(b) **Foundation of Federation Hall :** Anand Mohan Bose laid the foundation of Federation Hall in Calcutta as a symbol of Bengal's unity in response to the Partition.

(c) **Swadeshi and Boycott Movements :** The Partition led to the adoption of the Swadeshi and Boycott Movements,

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

advocating the use of indigenous goods and the boycott of foreign products, along with renouncing English speech, government posts, and socially boycotting those who purchased foreign goods.

(d) **Cultural and Literary Stimulus :** The Swadeshi spirit was bolstered by cultural and literary activities, with songs, poems, and dramas. Tagore's "Amar Sonar Bangla" became a rallying cry for nationalists.

(e) **Congress Support and Rise of Extremism :** The Indian National Congress fully supported the Swadeshi and Boycott Movements, with Dadabhai Naoroji declaring Swaraj as the Congress's goal. Some leaders, dissatisfied with these movements, turned to terrorism, with figures like Khudi Ram Bose and Ram Prasad Bismil sacrificing their lives against British rule.

(ii) Reaction of the British against the agitators:

(a) **Policy of Repression :** The government responded to the movement with severe repression, including police brutality against people and local leaders.

(b) **Arrest of National Leaders :** Many national leaders, such as Lala Lajpat Rai and Ajit Singh, were arrested and deported. In 1908, Tilak was sentenced to six years of imprisonment.

(c) **Suppression of the Press :** Numerous newspapers were banned, and their editors, like V.O. Chidambaram Pillai, were jailed.

(d) **Educational Repression :** Students were expelled from schools and colleges, and grant-in-aid to educational institutions was halted. The government enacted repressive laws, including the Prevention of Seditious Meetings Act (1907) and the Newspaper Act (1908).

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

55. With reference to the Partition of Bengal in 1905, answer the following questions :

(i) Why was Bengal partitioned ?

(ii) How did the Partition of Bengal effect the National Movement ?

(iii) What was the reaction of the people to the partition ?

Ans : SQP 1995,2002,2012

(i) The official reason for Bengal's partition was its size, making it difficult to govern, hence the need for division. But real motives were as follows :

(a) **Weaken the National Movement :** Bengal, as a stronghold of Indian nationalism, was targeted by the British to crush the growing nationalist movement.

(b) **Divide Hindus and Muslims :** The partition aimed to create divisions between Hindus and Muslims, with East Bengal intended as a Muslim-majority province.

(c) **Assert British Authority :** Despite public opposition, Lord Curzon sought to demonstrate the power of the British Raj by proceeding with the partition, ignoring public sentiment.

(ii) Effect of Partition of Bengal effect on the National Movement :

(a) **Mass Movement :** The Partition of Bengal sparked the first mass movement involving all classes of society, including landlords, merchants, workers, students, and women, broadening the base of the National Movement.

(b) **Swadeshi and Boycott :** The movement gave rise to the Swadeshi and Boycott campaigns, which had a positive impact on Indian handicrafts and drew active participation from workers.

(c) **Impact on Congress :** The Partition led to a significant shift in the Indian National Congress, which moved from demanding reforms to advocating for self-government (Swaraj) and supporting the Swadeshi and Boycott Movements.

NODIA

(d) **Impact on Revolutionary Organizations :** The government's repressive measures led to the rise of revolutionary organizations that adopted a policy of violent resistance, marking a shift towards more radical actions against British officials.

(iii) The reaction to the partition was one of widespread outrage and opposition. The people of Bengal, along with national leaders, organized mass protests, demonstrations, and public meetings. The day the partition took effect, October 16, 1905, was observed as a Day of Mourning, with people tying rakhis to symbolize unity. The Swadeshi and Boycott Movements gained momentum, and there was a significant cultural and literary revival as a form of resistance. The Indian National Congress fully supported these movements, and the partition ultimately led to the strengthening of the nationalist movement across India.

56. The agitation against the partition of Bengal gave birth to the Swadeshi and Boycott movement which marked one of the turning points in the history of Indian Nationalism. With reference to the above answer the following questions.

(i) Explain the aims and programmes of the Swadeshi and Boycott movement.

(ii) What were the effects of the movement on Indian Industries?

Ans : COMP 2012, 2016

(i) The Swadeshi and Boycott movements emerged as a direct response to the Partition of Bengal in 1905. The primary aim of the Swadeshi movement was to promote the use of indigenous goods and support Indian industries, thereby reducing dependency on British products and weakening the British economy in India. The movement encouraged people to embrace goods made within the country and reject foreign, especially British, goods. The programs associated with the Swadeshi and Boycott movements included :

(a) **Promotion of Indigenous Industries :** Encouraging the use and production of Indian-made goods, such as textiles and handicrafts.

(b) **Boycott of Foreign Goods :** Refusing to purchase or use British goods, including cloth, salt, and sugar.

(c) **Social Boycott :** Shunning those who continued to use foreign goods or supported British interests.

(d) **Rejection of Government Services :** Renouncing jobs in the British administration and seats in the Legislative Councils.

(e) **Cultural Renaissance :** The movement also sparked a revival of Indian culture and literature, with the creation of patriotic songs, poems, and dramas that inspired the masses to join the nationalist cause.

(ii) Effect on the Indian Industries :

(a) The Swadeshi and Boycott movements had a significant positive impact on Indian industries. As people began boycotting British goods, there was a surge in demand for domestically produced products, particularly textiles and other handicrafts. This led to the growth and revitalization of traditional Indian industries, which had been severely affected by the influx of cheap British imports.

(b) Small-scale industries and cottage industries flourished as Indians increasingly relied on locally made goods. The movement also encouraged the establishment of new industries, driven by the desire for self-reliance and economic independence from British control. Overall, the Swadeshi and Boycott movements played a crucial role in laying the foundation for the industrial and economic self-sufficiency of India, strengthening the country's economic backbone as part of the broader struggle for independence.

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

57. Bengal was partitioned in the year 1905, by Lord Curzon. In the light of this, describe briefly :

(i) The motives of Lord Curzon behind the Partition.

(ii) The reasons given by the British to justify the Partition of Bengal.

(iii) The measures taken by the British to crush the anti-partition movement.

Ans : MAIN 2004

(i) The motives of Lord Curzon behind the Partition :

(a) **Reason of Administrative Efficiency :** Lord Curzon justified the Partition of Bengal by claiming that the province was too large, with a population of 8 crores and an area of 1,90,000 square miles, making it difficult to govern efficiently under a single provincial government.

(b) **Nationalists' Interpretation :** The Nationalists viewed the partition as a deliberate attempt by the British to curb the growing Nationalist Movement and demonstrate their power, rather than purely for administrative reasons.

(c) **Divide and Rule Policy :** The British used the partition to implement their "divide and rule" strategy, creating divisions between Hindus and Muslims to weaken the National Movement, especially in Bengal, which was the epicenter of nationalist activity.

(ii) The British government, under Lord Curzon, justified the Partition of Bengal in 1905 by citing the following reasons :

(a) **Administrative Efficiency :** The British argued that Bengal was too large to be governed effectively as a single province. With a population of about 78 million, they claimed that dividing Bengal into two provinces would make administration more manageable.

(b) **Improvement of Governance :** The division was presented as a measure to improve the governance and development of the eastern region, which was perceived as lagging in terms of economic and infra structural progress.

(c) **Better Focus on Eastern Bengal :** Eastern Bengal was largely rural and economically underdeveloped compared to western Bengal. The British claimed that creating a separate province would enable them to pay greater attention to the needs of this region.

(d) **Ease of Law and Order Maintenance :** The British contended that a smaller province would help in maintaining law and order more effectively, given the growing nationalist sentiments in Bengal.

(iii) The measures taken by the British to crush the anti-partition movement :

(a) **Repressive Legislation :** The government implemented repressive measures such as the Prevention of Seditious Meetings Act (1907), the Explosive Substances Act (1908), and the Newspaper Act (1908) to suppress nationalist activities.

(b) **Police Brutality :** Swadeshi volunteers were subjected to merciless beatings by the police as part of the government's effort to quell the movement.

(c) **Suppression of Nationalist Symbols :** The cry of "Vande Mataram" was banned in the streets of Bengal, reflecting the government's attempt to stifle nationalist expressions.

(d) **Punitive Actions Against Supporters :** Educational institutions faced grant withdrawal if students joined the Boycott movement, and government employees were expelled for supporting Swadeshi and Boycott activities. Leaders like Tilak, Lala Lajpat Rai, and Sardar Ajit Singh were also deported for their nationalist efforts.

NODIA

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

58. Describe briefly the important factors which led to the formation of the Muslim League with reference to the following :
(i) The British policy of Divide and Rule.
(ii) The Partition of Bengal.
(iii) The efforts of Sir Syed Ahmed Khan.

Ans : COMP 1991

(i) The British policy of Divide and Rule :
(a) **Divide and Rule Policy :** The British followed a policy of Divide and Rule, aiming to create disunity between Hindus and Muslims in order to maintain control over India.
(b) **Favoring Muslims After 1857 :** Initially, the British discriminated against Muslims after the Revolt of 1857, viewing them as their main enemies. However, as the nationalist movement gained momentum, they began favoring upper-class Muslims to divert them from the nationalist cause.
(c) **Encouragement of Separate Muslim Organization :** The British encouraged Muslims to form a separate organization, fostering the belief that their rights would not be protected in a Hindu-dominated society.
(d) **Partition of Bengal and Communal Electorates :** The Partition of Bengal was carried out to appease Muslims, with Lord Curzon openly stating the creation of a Muslim-majority province as an objective. Additionally, the introduction of separate communal electorates further deepened communal divisions and sowed the seeds of communalism.

(ii) The Partition of Bengal in 1905 by Lord Curzon further deepened the divide between Hindus and Muslims. The partition was seen by many as an attempt to curb the nationalist movement by creating a Muslim-majority province in East Bengal, thereby weakening Hindu-Muslim unity. The partition fueled communal sentiments, and the Muslims, feeling a sense of identity and security in the newly created province, were more inclined to support the British. This growing communal consciousness contributed to the establishment of the Muslim League in 1906 to represent Muslim interests.

(iii) Sir Syed Ahmed Khan was a prominent Muslim leader who played a crucial role in shaping the political and social outlook of Muslims in India. He worked to improve relations between Muslims and the British rulers, striving to remove the hostility that had developed after the Revolt of 1857. Sir Syed opposed the Indian National Congress, advising Muslims not to join it, believing it did not represent their interests. He founded the Mohammedan Anglo-Oriental College, which later became the center of the Aligarh Movement, promoting loyalty to the British crown and modern education among Muslims. Additionally, he established the United Indian Patriotic Association in 1888 to counter Congress propaganda and the Mohammedan Anglo-Oriental Defence Association to combat the growing influence of the Congress.

59. How did the following causes lead to the rise of radicals in the early 20th century :
(i) Failure of the Moderates.
(ii) The worsening of the Economic Conditions.
(iii) Repressive policy of Lord Curzon.

Ans : SQP 2010

(i) The Moderates, who led the Indian National Congress in its early years, primarily relied on petitions, speeches, and dialogues with the British government to seek reforms. However, their methods yielded little success, as the British largely ignored their demands for greater political representation and economic reforms. This failure to achieve tangible results led to growing frustration among the younger generation of nationalists, who began to lose faith in the Moderate leaders' approach. This disillusionment

NODIA

paved the way for the rise of Radicals, who believed that more assertive and confrontational methods were necessary to challenge British rule effectively.

(ii) The worsening of the Economic Conditions.
   (a) The British Government's policies were anti-India, prioritizing their own interests in any economic changes they implemented.
   (b) The poor state of industries led to limited employment opportunities, prompting younger leaders to take bold actions against the British. The spread of English education increased the number of educated Indians, but many remained unemployed and were ineligible for higher positions, leading to frustration and fueling the rise of extreme nationalism.
   (c) The heavy cost of maintaining British rule in India was borne by the Indian people. The British waged wars against other countries at India's expense, leading to greater exploitation. High taxes were imposed, yet the revenue collected was never used to address basic needs.

(iii) Lord Curzon adopted a repressive policy towards Indians, showing no sympathy for their aspirations, leading to widespread disillusionment regarding political and economic progress. He passed the following Acts against the Indians :
   (a) **Calcutta Corporation Act of 1899 :** This Act reduced the number of elected members in the Calcutta Corporation by half, diminishing Indian representation.
   (b) **Universities Act of 1904 :** This Act restructured the governing bodies of universities, increasing British control over Indian education.
   (c) **Act of 1898 :** This Act made it an offense to incite people against the British, further restricting freedom of expression.
   (d) **Official Secrets Act and Partition of Bengal :** The Official Secrets Act of 1904 made even minor information leaks illegal, while Curzon's most unpopular decision, the Partition of Bengal, announced in 1903 and implemented in 1905, deepened divisions and unrest in India.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

60. With reference to the various factors which led to the growth of radicals, examine the role of each of the following :
(i) Famines and Plague.
(ii) International events.
(iii) Partition of Bengal.

Ans : COMP 2010

(i) Famines and Plague :
   (a) **Frequent Famines and Government Neglect :** Between 1860-1908, frequent famines devastated India, largely due to the reliance on monsoons for agriculture. The government failed to provide adequate irrigation facilities, leading to widespread starvation and millions of deaths.
   (b) **Government's Indifference :** The government's indifferent attitude during these crises, such as spending on Queen Victoria's Silver Jubilee celebrations while people starved, exacerbated public anger and resentment.
   (c) **Apathy During Plague and Repression of Dissent :** The government's apathy during the plague in Poona further fueled public anger. The situation worsened when Tilak was sentenced to 18 months of rigorous imprisonment for criticizing the government's handling of the crisis in his newspapers, Kesari and Mahratta.

(ii) International events :
   (a) The early 20th century saw revolutions against oppressive regimes in various parts of the world, including Iran, China, and Turkey. These uprisings inspired the people of India, particularly the educated class.

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

(b) The defeat of Italy by Ethiopia, a small African nation, in 1896, and Russia's loss to Japan, a relatively small Asian country, instilled a new sense of self-confidence among the people of Asia, including Indians.

(iii) Partition of Bengal :

(a) **Impact of Partition on Nationalism :** The Partition of Bengal in 1905 by Lord Curzon significantly altered the aims and methods of the nationalist movement, marking a turning point in India's struggle for independence.

(b) **Official Justification vs. Real Motive:** While the official reason for the partition was administrative efficiency, the real motive was to weaken the strong nationalist movement in West Bengal and create disunity between Hindus and Muslims.

(c) **Revolutionary Response :** The partition triggered widespread agitation and revolutionized the political landscape in Bengal, with slogans like "Vande Mataram" and "Unity is Strength" becoming symbols of patriotism and unity.

(d) **Rise of Swadeshi and Boycott Movements :** The Swadeshi and Boycott movements, initially aimed at reversing the partition, quickly evolved into powerful tools in the freedom struggle, demonstrating that petitions and appeals were ineffective against British rule and strengthening the militant nationalist faction.

61. The period between 1905 and 1914 saw the rise of radicals (extremism) in the freedom struggle. In this context :

(i) Mention three prominent leaders advocating radicals. State the contribution of any one of them.

(ii) State the most important aim of the radicals and explain how their methods were different from those of the moderates.

Ans : MAIN 2004

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

NODIA

(i) (a) Bal Gangandhar Tilak

(b) Bipin Chandra Pal

(c) Lala Lajpat Rai.

Contribution of Bal Gangadhar Tilak :

(a) **Promotion of Self-Reliance and National Pride :** Tilak was a leading extremist leader who inspired people to rely on their own strength, instilling a deep sense of love and pride for the country. He was known as an agitator and a true fighter for freedom.

(b) **Cultural Revival for National Mobilization :** In 1895, Tilak revived the Shivaji festival and organized 'Lathi Clubs' and 'Akharas' to spread the national movement in rural areas, using cultural events to mobilize the masses.

(c) **Transformation of the Anti-Partition Movement :** Along with Bipin Chandra Pal and Lala Lajpat Rai, Tilak played a pivotal role in turning the anti-partition movement into a broader struggle for Swaraj (self-rule).

(d) **Leadership in the Home Rule Movement :** Tilak launched the Home Rule Movement in 1916, infusing new energy into the national movement and transforming it into a mass agitation, thereby broadening the base of the freedom struggle and giving it new direction.

(ii) Swaraj, or complete independence, was the primary goal of the Aggressive Nationalists.

(a) The Moderates advocated for peaceful methods such as petitions, constitutionalism, prayers, passive resistance, resolutions, and meetings. In contrast, the Aggressive Nationalists embraced revolutionary methods, engaging in vigorous political agitations, promoting self-reliance, and awakening national consciousness.

(b) The Moderates had full faith in the British Government and preferred a

policy of cooperation. Although they supported the Swadeshi and Boycott movements during the agitation against the Partition of Bengal, they intended to limit these actions to specific situations. On the other hand, the Aggressive Nationalists believed in non-cooperation and championed the boycott of foreign goods, the promotion of Swadeshi, and the establishment of a national education system, insisting on expanding the scope of the boycott to achieve their goals.

62. There were some striking differences between the Moderate and the radical wings of the Indian National Congress. In this context, explain the differences regarding :
(i) The basic beliefs and objectives.
(ii) Their method of struggle.
(iii) Their ultimate objective.

Ans : MAIN 2009,2010,1993,2008

(i) The basic beliefs and objectives :
(a) **Differing Views on British Rule :** Moderates like Gokhale, Ranade, and Naoroji had faith in British benevolence and did not adopt an anti-British stance. In contrast, Aggressive Nationalists recognized the clash of interests between British rulers and Indian national interests, distrusting British intentions.
(b) **Cultural Perspectives :** Moderates believed in the superiority of European culture and thought Indians needed European help for development. On the other hand, Aggressive Nationalists emphasized the supremacy of Indian culture and traditions.
(c) **Attitudes Toward Self-Government and Sacrifice :** Moderates doubted India's readiness for self-government and lacked a spirit of self-sacrifice. In contrast, Aggressive Nationalists believed Indians were capable of self-rule and emphasized self-reliance, self-sacrifice, and enduring hardships to achieve their goals.
(ii) Their method of struggle :
(a) The Moderates believed in using peaceful methods such as petitions, constitutionalism, prayers, passive resistance, resolutions and meetings. In contrast, the Aggressive Nationalists supported revolutionary methods, launching vigorous political agitations, promoting self-reliance, and awakening national consciousness.
(b) The Moderates had faith in the British Government and advocated for cooperation. Although they supported the Swadeshi and Boycott movements during the agitation against the Partition of Bengal, they wanted these actions to be limited to specific circumstances. On the other hand, the Aggressive Nationalists believed in non-cooperation, advocating for a broader boycott of foreign goods, the promotion of Swadeshi, and the establishment of a national education system. They sought to expand the scope of the boycott to achieve their goals.
(iii) Their ultimate objective :
(a) The Moderates aimed for constitutional reforms and self-governance within the framework of the British Empire. In contrast, The Radicals sought Swaraj (complete independence) from British rule.
(b) The ultimate goal of moderate was to achieve a Dominion Status, where India would have autonomy in internal affairs but remain loyal to the British Crown. Whereas radical wanted to end British control entirely and establish an independent and self-reliant India.

63. One of the Lord Curzon's administrative measures that resulted in a strong resentment from the masses was the Partition of Bengal in 1905. In this context, answer the following questions :

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

(i) What was Lord Curzon's argument in favour of the Partition of Bengal ? How did the Nationalists interpret Lord Curzon's motives?
(ii) How did the people react to the Partition of Bengal ?
(iii) What was the impact of the Anti-Partition Movement ?

Ans : SQP 2000

(i) The British government, under Lord Curzon, justified the Partition of Bengal in 1905 by citing the following reasons :
   (a) **Administrative Efficiency :** The British argued that Bengal was too large to be governed effectively as a single province. With a population of about 78 million, they claimed that dividing Bengal into two provinces would make administration more manageable.
   (b) **Improvement of Governance :** The division was presented as a measure to improve the governance and development of the eastern region, which was perceived as lagging in terms of economic and infra structural progress.
   (c) **Better Focus on Eastern Bengal :** Eastern Bengal was largely rural and economically underdeveloped compared to western Bengal. The British claimed that creating a separate province would enable them to pay greater attention to the needs of this region.
   (d) **Ease of Law and Order Maintenance :** The British contended that a smaller province would help in maintaining law and order more effectively, given the growing nationalist sentiments in Bengal.

(ii) As soon as the proposal was announced, it sparked widespread outrage and a wave of protests. The Partition of Bengal was implemented on 16th October 1905, and the people quickly began a strong movement against it. The 16th of October was observed as a Day of Mourning in Bengal, with the cry of "Bande Mataram" echoing across the province. On that day alone, around 2000 demonstrations took place. This movement soon evolved into the Swadeshi and Boycott Movement.

(iii) Impact of the Anti-Partition Movement ?
   (a) **Acceleration of the Nationalist Movement :** The Partition of Bengal and the subsequent Anti-Partition Movement significantly accelerated the Nationalist Movement, uniting people across the region in a common cause to resist, suffer, and sacrifice for their rights.
   (b) **Rise of Swadeshi and Boycott :** The concepts of Swadeshi and Boycott, which emerged in 1905, became integral to the movement. Recognizing that these two strategies were complementary, they were used as powerful tools for political agitation and fostering self-sufficiency with the ultimate goal of attaining Swaraj. The spirit of Swadeshi permeated various aspects of life, including industries, education, culture, and literature, leading to public acts of resistance, such as burning British goods and picketing shops that sold them.
   (c) **Loss of Faith in British Justice :** The refusal of Lord Curzon to annul the partition, despite widespread opposition, led the people to lose faith in the fairness and justice of British rule. Curzon's firm stance, declaring that "Partition of Bengal is a settled fact and what is settled cannot be unsettled," further alienated the Indian populace and deepened their resolve against colonial rule.

64. With reference to the Surat split of 1907, answer the following questions :
(i) What were the issues on which the two wings of the Congress had differences of opinion ? How did the British exploit the differences between the Early Nationalists and the Assertive Nationalists?

NODIA

(ii) What was the effect of the split between the two wings of the Congress on the National Movement ?

(iii) Why did the Assertive Nationalists adopt the policy of non-cooperation with the British Government ? Name the assertive nationalist leader who organized akharas and lathi clubs. Why were these organized?

Ans : COMP 2000

(i) The Assertive Nationalists nominated Lala Lajpat Rai as their candidate for the presidency of the Surat Session, while the Early Nationalists put forward Rashbehari Ghosh. When the session began in December 1907, chaos ensued, leading to a split in the Congress. As a result, the Assertive Nationalist leaders were expelled for nine years.

This split in the Congress was unfortunate, as it provided the British with an opportunity to exploit the situation to their advantage. The British implemented a strategy of "concession and repression"- offering concessions to the Early Nationalists and Muslims while using repression against the Assertive Nationalists.

(ii) The split between the Early Nationalists and the Assertive Nationalists at the Surat session in 1907 had a detrimental effect on the National Movement. The division weakened the Indian National Congress, leading to a temporary decline in the momentum of the struggle for independence. The split also allowed the British to implement their "divide and rule" policy more effectively, as the Congress was no longer a unified force. The Moderates continued to work within the framework of the British administration, while the Assertive Nationalists pursued their own strategies outside the Congress, leading to a fragmented and less coordinated effort against British rule.

(ii) The Assertive Nationalists adopted the policy of non-cooperation with the British government because they believed that cooperation and constitutional methods were ineffective in achieving Indian self-rule. They viewed the British government as fundamentally opposed to Indian interests and believed that more radical and confrontational methods were necessary to challenge British authority and achieve Swaraj.

Bal Gangadhar Tilak was the Assertive Nationalist leader who organized akharas and lathi clubs. These were organized to promote physical fitness and martial skills among the youth, preparing them for the struggle against British rule. The akharas and lathi clubs also served as platforms for spreading nationalist ideas and fostering a sense of unity and self-reliance among the people. Through these activities, Tilak aimed to create a disciplined and determined cadre of young nationalists who could actively participate in the freedom movement.

65. In the second phase of the National Movement, there emerged a new younger group of leaders within the Congress who did not agree with the old leadership. In this context, answer the following questions :

(i) Differentiate between the Early Nationalists and the Assertive Nationalists in their objectives and achievements, stating one objective and two achievements of each wing of the Congress.

(ii) Name the Assertive leader known as the forerunner of Gandhiji. Why is the person known as the forerunner of Gandhiji?

(iii) Explain how the repressive policies of Lord Curzon and the influence of International events led to Assertive Nationalism.

Ans : MAIN 2024

(i) The Early Nationalists focused on securing administrative and economic reforms, aiming to give Indians some influence in governance. It wasn't until 1906, under pressure from Assertive Nationalists, that they began to advocate for 'Swaraj,' though they envisioned it as a government similar to British self-

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

governing colonies. In contrast, the Assertive Nationalists demanded 'Purna Swaraj'- complete self-government, like that in the United Kingdom.

Achievements of Assertive Nationalists :

(a) **Self-Confidence :** They boosted Indian morale, instilling self-confidence and self-reliance, believing that independence could only be achieved through strength.

(b) **Revival of Handicrafts :** By promoting Boycott and Swadeshi, they revived Indian handicrafts and cottage industries, fostering economic self-sufficiency.

Achievements of Early Nationalists :

(a) **Secular and Democratic Movement :** They established a national movement inclusive of all religions, castes, and regions, fostering unity.

(b) **Political Education :** They raised political awareness and national consciousness, popularizing democracy and civil liberties among Indians.

(ii) Bal Gangadhar Tilak is considered the forerunner of Gandhiji for several reasons:

(a) **Influence on Gandhiji's Ideals :** Gandhiji's ideals were significantly shaped by Tilak's teachings. The emphasis Gandhiji placed on prohibition, Swadeshi, and Boycott were principles that Tilak had championed and practiced long before Gandhiji adopted them.

(b) **Shared Vision of Independence :** Gandhiji's vision of complete independence closely aligned with Tilak's concept of Swaraj, reflecting the strong influence Tilak had on Gandhiji's approach to the freedom struggle.

(iii) Lord Curzon implemented a repressive policy toward Indians, showing little sympathy for their aspirations. His anti-Indian stance led the people to lose hope in achieving political and economic progress. Curzon passed several Acts that were detrimental to Indian interests :

(a) **Calcutta Corporation Act of 1899 :** This Act reduced the number of elected members in the corporation by half.

(b) **Universities Act of 1904 :** This Act restructured the governing bodies of universities to increase British control.

(c) **Act of 1898 :** This Act made it a crime to incite people against the British government.

(d) **Official Secrets Act of 1904 :** This Act made it illegal to disclose even ordinary information related to civil administration.

(e) **Partition of Bengal :** Curzon's most unpopular decision was the Partition of Bengal, which he announced in 1903 and implemented in 1905.

66. Bipin Chandra Pal was said to be "One of the mightiest prophets of nationalism." In this context :

(i) Mention his political aims.

(ii) State his ideas on National Education.

(iii) What remedies did he propose to eradicate India's poverty and unemployment?

Ans : COMP 2023

(i) Bipin Chandra Pal, widely regarded as the Father of Revolutionary Thought in India, played a crucial role in awakening national consciousness. He joined the Congress in 1887 and, through his powerful speeches, strongly advocated for the repeal of the Arms Act. In 1890, he traveled to England, France, and the United States, where he rallied public support for granting political rights to Indians. Upon returning to India, he actively participated in several Congress sessions, significantly contributing to the growth of national awareness.

(ii) Bipin Chandra Pal advocated for education to be structured along nationalistic lines, aiming to inspire a strong sense of nationalism and resistance against foreign rule. Additionally, he believed that such an education system would serve as a powerful tool for social

progress. Pal was critical of educated Indians who aligned themselves with the ruling class and looked down upon the common people.

(iii) Bipin Chandra Pal, one of the most powerful voices of nationalism, not only galvanized public support for granting political rights to India but also proposed several remedies to address the issues of poverty and unemployment in the country.

(a) **Promotion of Industrial Development :** Bipin Chandra Pal advocated for the development of industries in India to achieve self-sufficiency both politically and economically.

(b) **Progressive Taxation and Social Spending :** He proposed high taxation on the wealthy to fund education and healthcare, aiming to improve the overall well-being of the population.

(c) **Swadeshi and Economic Reforms :** Pal strongly promoted Swadeshi and the boycott of foreign goods as strategies to combat poverty and unemployment, as well as to enhance the economic conditions of the Indian people.

67. With reference to the growth of Nationalism :

(i) Mention two associations which served as the forerunners (precursors) of the India National Congress. Who were the founders of the two associations ?

(ii) Differentiate between the methods adopted by the Early Nationalists and the Assertive Nationalists.

(iii) State two contributions each of Gopal Krishna Gokhale and Lala Lajpat Rai.

Ans : SQP 2004

(i) Two prominent associations that acted as precursors to the Indian National Congress are as follows :

(a) The Indian Association, established in 1876 :
Founder : Surendranath Banerjee

(b) The East India Association, founded in 1866 :
Founder : Dadabhai Naoroji

(ii) Early Nationalists :

(a) **Constitutional Methods :** Focused on petitions, resolutions, and meetings within legal frameworks.

(b) **Moderate Demands :** Sought gradual reforms like increased representation and administrative changes.

(c) **Faith in British Justice :** Believed in the fairness and eventual goodwill of the British rulers.

Assertive Nationalists :

1. **Direct Action :** Emphasized boycotts, protests, and mass mobilization to challenge British authority.
2. **Radical Demands :** Advocated for complete independence and immediate self-rule.
3. **Distrust in British Authority :** Rejected the idea that the British would willingly grant reforms, believing instead in the necessity of forceful measures.

(iii) Contributions of Gopal Krishna Gokhale:

(a) **Role in Legislative Reforms :** Gokhale was instrumental in pushing for legislative reforms, particularly through his work in the Imperial Legislative Council, where he advocated for free and compulsory primary education and worked to reduce land revenue assessments.

(b) **Establishment of the Servants of India Society :** In 1905, Gokhale founded the Servants of India Society, aiming to train Indians for public service and to promote education and social reforms, thereby fostering a sense of duty towards the nation.

Contributions of Lala Lajpat Rai :

(a) **Leadership in the Swadeshi Movement :** Lala Lajpat Rai played a key role in the Swadeshi Movement, promoting the use of Indian goods and boycotting British products as a form of economic resistance against

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

British rule.

(b) **Advocacy for Education and Social Reforms :** Rai established several educational institutions, including the National College in Lahore, to promote national education. He also worked to uplift the status of women and eradicate social evils like child marriage.

68. Tilak said 'Swaraj is my birthright and I shall have it.' In this context, describe :

(i) His political beliefs.

(ii) Means he employed to arouse Nationalistic passions.

(iii) Ways in which he was the forerunner of Gandhi.

Ans : COMP 2003

(i) Bal Gangadhar Tilak, often regarded as the "Father of Indian Unrest," was a staunch advocate of Swaraj or complete self-rule for India. He believed that Indians had the right to govern themselves and that Swaraj was a birthright that could not be compromised. Tilak rejected the gradual and constitutional approach of the Early Nationalists, advocating instead for immediate independence from British rule. He was a strong proponent of using mass mobilization, direct action, and the empowerment of the Indian people to achieve this goal. Tilak's political beliefs centered on the idea that only through self-reliance and active resistance could Indians secure their freedom.

(ii) Tilak employed various strategies to ignite nationalistic fervor among the people. In 1893, he initiated the Ganapati festival in Maharashtra and later revived the Shivaji festival in 1895, with the aim of instilling discipline and patriotism among the masses. Additionally, he organized Akharas (wrestling arenas) and Lathi Clubs in Maharashtra to prepare the youth to bravely resist British rule. In 1896, he also led a no-rent campaign to highlight the injustices and misrule of the British government.

(iii) Tilak is often regarded as the forerunner of Mahatma Gandhi because many of the strategies Gandhi later used were first popularized by Tilak :

(a) **Swadeshi Movement :** Tilak promoted the use of indigenous goods and the boycott of British products, which Gandhi later adopted to achieve self-reliance and challenge British economic control.

(b) **Mass Mobilization :** Tilak's efforts to involve the masses in the independence struggle through cultural festivals and economic boycotts laid the foundation for Gandhi's Non-Cooperation and Civil Disobedience movements.

(c) **Swaraj :** Tilak's idea of Swaraj as a non-negotiable right strongly influenced Gandhi's vision of complete independence, culminating in Gandhi's call for Purna Swaraj in 1930.

69. The period between 1905 to 1918 is known as the period of Assertive Nationalism. In this context, state how the following causes led to the rise of Assertive Nationalism :

(i) Failure of the Early Nationalists.

(ii) Repressive policies of Lord Curzon.

(iii) International Events

Ans : COMP 2005

(i) The younger members of the Congress grew increasingly dissatisfied with the limited achievements of the Early Nationalists and strongly criticized their reliance on peaceful constitutional methods. In contrast, the Assertive Nationalists called for the adoption of European-style revolutionary tactics to confront British imperialism. While the Early Nationalists remained loyal to the British Crown and focused on improving their chances of securing positions in the Central and Provincial legislatures or judicial services, the Assertive Nationalists accused them of restricting their efforts to the middle class. The inability of the

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

Early Nationalists to secure significant concessions from the British government fueled the demand for more vigorous and radical political action.

(ii) Lord Curzon's seven-year rule in India, marked by numerous "missions, omissions, and commissions," provoked a strong reaction among Indians. The Delhi Durbar of 1903 was held at a time when the country was still reeling from the devastating famine of 1899-1900. The Calcutta Corporation Act of 1899 halved the number of elected members in the corporation, while the Universities Act of 1904 restructured university governance, significantly reducing their autonomy. The Sedition Act and Official Secrets Act further restricted the liberties of all sections of society. As a staunch imperialist, Lord Curzon was vehemently opposed to Indian nationalism. His repressive policies, therefore, played a significant role in the rise of extremism within the Indian nationalist movement.

(iii) The early 20th century witnessed a wave of revolutions against oppressive regimes worldwide. The Boers in South Africa fought against the powerful British rule, while Ireland was engulfed in a full-scale Home Rule agitation. Revolutionary movements were also unfolding in China, Egypt, Russia, Turkey, and Iran. These international events instilled courage and inspiration in the minds of Indians. Moreover, Italy's defeat in Ethiopia (1896) and Japan's victory over Russia (1905) dispelled the myth of European superiority, motivating Indians to intensify their struggle against British rule.

70. With reference to the Assertive Nationalism, write briefly about the following :
(i) Aims of the Assertive Nationalists.
(ii) Methods used by them.
(iii) Achievements of the Assertive Nationalists.

Ans : SQP 2013

(i) Aims of the Assertive Nationalists:
(a) **Establishment of Self-Government :** The Assertive Nationalists aimed to drive the British out of India and restore the supremacy of Indian civilization and culture.
(b) **Promotion of Swadeshi :** They advocated for the use of Swadeshi goods in place of foreign manufactured goods, as a means to weaken British economic control over India.
(c) **Demand for Immediate Swaraj :** The Assertive Nationalists believed that freedom could not be achieved through petitions and requests. They emphasized that the British, who had made India a market for their goods, would not willingly grant independence. Therefore, their goal was the immediate attainment of Swaraj or complete independence, not just self-government like that in British colonies such as Australia and New Zealand.

(ii) The Assertive Nationalists focused on four key elements in their program : Revivalism, Swadeshi, Boycott, and National Education.
(a) **Revivalism :** The extremists aimed to build the national movement on the foundation of the people's religious beliefs. Tilak, for instance, revived the Shivaji festival in 1895, promoting figures like Rana Pratap and Shivaji as national heroes.
(b) **Swadeshi :** The Swadeshi concept emphasized the use of homemade products to support Indian industries, thereby creating more job opportunities and fostering economic self-reliance.
(c) **Boycott :** Boycott involved not only rejecting British goods but also renouncing government services, honors, and titles offered by the British.
(d) **National Education :** This aspect focused on establishing new

educational institutions to provide both religious and political education. It also included secular, moral, and vocational training to develop a well-rounded national education system.

(iii) The Assertive Nationalists focused on four key elements in their program : Revivalism, Swadeshi, Boycott and National Education.

(a) **Revivalism :** The extremists aimed to build the national movement on the foundation of the people's religious beliefs. Tilak, for instance, revived the Shivaji festival in 1895, promoting figures like Rana Pratap and Shivaji as national heroes.

(b) **Swadeshi :** The Swadeshi concept emphasized the use of homemade products to support Indian industries, thereby creating more job opportunities and fostering economic self-reliance.

(c) **Boycott :** Boycott involved not only rejecting British goods but also renouncing government services, honors, and titles offered by the British.

(d) **National Education :**This aspect focused on establishing new educational institutions to provide both religious and political education. It also included secular, moral, and vocational training to develop a well-rounded national education system.

11. Lala Lajpat Rai lived and died for the cause of Swaraj. In this context, answer the following questions :

(i) Briefly mention his ideas.

(ii) Give evidence to show that he was a true patriot.

(iii) State his contribution to the freedom movement.

Ans : MAIN 2006

(i) Lala Lajpat Rai was an influential Indian author and politician, best known for his leadership in the struggle for India's independence from British rule. He firmly believed that Hinduism, more than nationality, should be the foundation of Indian life. According to Rai, Hinduism promoted peace and humanity, and when combined with nationalist ideals, it could lead to the creation of a non-secular nation. He was deeply involved in direct action and protests against British colonialism, leading significant movements such as the Punjab protests against the Amritsar Massacre in 1919, the Non-Cooperation Movement (1919-1922), and the "Simon Go Back" demonstrations against the Simon Commission in 1928. Rai believed that India's survival against foreign domination had been sustained by the recurring rise of nationalism. However, he cautioned that this spirit of nationalism needed to evolve and express itself authentically to ensure lasting freedom.

(ii) In 1928, while leading a procession in Lahore against the Simon Commission, Lala Lajpat Rai was injured during a lathi charge. He succumbed to his injuries a month later, on November 17, 1928. On the day he was wounded, he declared, "The lathi blows inflicted on me will one day become nails in the coffin of the British Empire." His words were prophetic, as they were realized on August 15, 1947, when India gained independence.

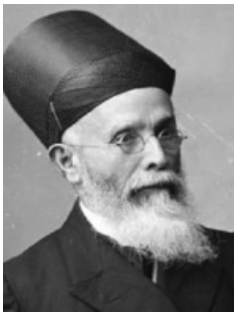
(iii) Contribution to the freedom movement : Lala Lajpat Rai made significant contributions to India's struggle for independence, ultimately sacrificing his life for his country and becoming a martyr. He played a crucial role in awakening political consciousness and intensifying the Swadeshi and Boycott movements. Through his newspaper, Young India, he advocated for radical nationalism and inspired many with his fearless love for his country. A follower of Tilak, he supported Gandhiji's Non-Cooperation Movement with courage and conviction. Rai opposed the policy of moderation and his death sparked immense resentment

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

among revolutionaries, leading them to intensify their activities against the British government.

CASE BASED QUESTION

12. Study the pictures given below and answer the questions that follow :



(A)

(B)

(i) Identify the persons 'A' and 'B' given above. To which section of the Congress did each belong and what were their ultimate objectives ?

(ii) Highlight three different methods of struggle adopted by each section of the Congress.

(iii) State two contributions of persons 'A' and 'B' to the freedom struggle.

Ans : SQP 2001

(i) Person A is Dadabhai Naoroji, who belonged to the Early Nationalists (Moderates), and Person B is Bal Gangadhar Tilak, a leader of the Assertive Nationalists (Extremists). The Early Nationalists aimed to achieve self-government, seeking autonomy within the British Empire rather than full independence. In contrast, the primary goal of the Assertive Nationalists was the immediate attainment of Swaraj complete independence, not merely self-government like that in British colonies such as Australia and New Zealand.

(ii) Methods of struggle adopted by each section of the Congress.

	Early Nationalists	**Assertive Nationalists**
1.	The Early Nationalists aimed to achieve self-government, pursuing autonomy within the British Empire rather than complete independence.	The Assertive Nationalists sought nothing less than Swaraj, comparable to the self-governance that existed in the United Kingdom..
2.	They adhered to constitutional methods and operated within the bounds of the law.	They were assertive in their approach.
3.	They held prominent positions under British rule.	They condemned British rule and openly defied it.
4.	They trusted in the British sense of justice and fairness.	They rejected British rule and held it responsible for the poverty of the Indian people.
5.	They drew their support from the intelligentsia.	They garnered their support from the masses.

(iii) Contributions of persons 'A' and 'B' to the freedom struggle.

Contributions of Dadabhai Naoroji :

(a) **Founding the East India Association :** Dadabhai Naoroji established the East India Association in London with the primary aim of promoting the interests and welfare of Indians.

(b) **Leadership in the Indian National Congress :** Naoroji is regarded as a founding figure of the Indian National Congress and served as its President three times, in 1886, 1893, and 1906. He earned the title "Grand Old Man of India" for his contributions.

Contributions of Bal Gangadhar Tilak :

(a) **Demand for Swaraj :** Tilak was the first to boldly declare the demand for Swaraj, asserting that "Swaraj is my

birthright, and I shall have it." He believed that political rights could be secured through aggressive demands.

(b) **Promotion of Physical and Nationalist Training :** To instill courage, self-defense, and patriotism, Tilak organized akharas and lathi clubs, where physical training was provided. Additionally, he started two influential newspapers, Mahratta (in English) and Kesari (in Marathi), to spread nationalist ideas.

73. "_____The Indians who actively worked for the creation of an all-India political organization represented new social forces that were increasingly opposed to the exploitation of India for British interests. They needed an organization that would fight for India's political and economic advancement."

(A)

(B)

(i) In the context of the above, identify the two individuals in Pictures A and B, who were the early leaders of the organization to be formed.

(ii) How did the person in Picture B explain the economic exploitation of India for British interest ?

(iii) Name the organization which was to be formed. What were the objectives behind the formation of this political body ?

(iv) Explain the major ideological differences which emerged amongst the leaders within the first twenty years of the foundation of this organization.

Ans : MAIN 2003

(i) (A) Gopal Krishna Gokhale.
(B) Dadabhai Naoroji.

(ii) Dadabhai Naoroji, through his renowned 'Drain Theory,' explained how India's wealth was exploited for British interests in various ways, including :

(a) Salaries paid to members of the India Council.

(b) Remittances of savings to England by British personnel stationed in India.

(c) Pensions provided to British officers.

(d) Payments made to the War Office for the maintenance of British troops in India.

(iii) The organization to be formed was the Indian National Congress (INC).

The objective were as follows :

1. To allow national workers from across India to meet and get to know each other personally.
2. To eliminate racial, religious, and regional biases, fostering a sense of national unity among all who love the country.
3. To formulate and present popular demands on crucial Indian issues to the government.
4. To cultivate and organize public opinion throughout the country.

(iv) Within the first twenty years of the Indian National Congress (INC), two distinct groups emerged : the Moderates and the Extremists (Assertive Nationalists).

1. **Moderates :** Leaders like Dadabhai Naoroji, Gopal Krishna Gokhale, and Pherozeshah Mehta were Moderates. They believed in gradual reforms and aimed to achieve their goals through constitutional means, such as petitions and peaceful negotiations

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

BETTER THAN BOOK IN THE MARKET

Why students are choosing this book 👉

School teachers already use this content to set papers.

Still not sure?

- 👉 Match this PDF with your question papers
- 👉 See the similarity yourself

Why does this happen?

- ✓ Teachers have its PDF & Word files
- ✓ Easy access
- ✓ Direct copy-paste questions
- ✓ Same pattern followed

Don't miss out—get the advantage today!

with the British government. The Moderates were loyal to the British Crown and sought self-government within the British Empire rather than complete independence.

2. **Extremists (Assertive Nationalists) :** Leaders like Bal Gangadhar Tilak, Bipin Chandra Pal and Lala Lajpat Rai were Extremists. Dissatisfied with the slow pace of reforms, they advocated for more radical measures, including mass mobilization, Swadeshi, Boycott and direct confrontation with British authorities. The Extremists aimed for Purna Swaraj (complete independence) and were willing to adopt aggressive tactics to achieve this goal.

14. Study the picture given here and answer the following questions :

(i) Name the leader. State any three of his political beliefs.
(ii) State the means he employed to arouse nationalistic passions.
(iii) In what ways was he the forerunner of Gandhiji?

Ans : COMP 2002

(i) The leader in the picture is Bal Gangadhar Tilak. His poltitical beliefs are as follows :
(a) **Swaraj as a Birthright :** Tilak believed that self-rule was every Indian's inherent right, famously stating, "Swaraj is my birthright, and I shall have it."
(b) **Aggressive Nationalism :** He promoted a more assertive approach, advocating for direct action and mass mobilization instead of just petitions.
(c) **Swadeshi and Boycott :** Tilak emphasized the importance of using Swadeshi goods and boycotting British products to weaken British economic control and promote Indian self-reliance.

(ii) In 1893, Tilak began using the traditional Ganapati festival to spread nationalist ideas through songs and speeches. In 1895, he celebrated and honored Chhatrapati Shivaji by initiating the Shivaji festival to inspire young Maharashtrians. Tilak also launched two newspapers, Mahratta (in English) and Kesari (in Marathi), which quickly became the platforms for his views. Through these publications, he promoted nationalism and encouraged people to be courageous and self-reliant.

(iii) Forerunner of Gandhiji?
(a) **Advocate of Swaraj :** Tilak's concept of Swaraj was similar to Mahatma Gandhi's vision of complete independence.
(b) **Close Contact with the Masses :** Like Gandhi, Tilak emphasized the importance of connecting closely with the masses.
(c) **Promotion of Swadeshi and Boycott :** Tilak was a strong proponent of Swadeshi and Boycott, strategies later embraced by Mahatma Gandhi.
(d) **Endurance of Imprisonment :** Tilak endured several terms of imprisonment for his nationalist activities, setting a precedent followed by Gandhi and other leaders.
(e) **Influence on Gandhi :** Tilak's actions and ideas significantly influenced Mahatma Gandhi's approach to the freedom struggle.

NODIA
Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

15. (i) Name the person represented in the picture given below. Write about his contribution to the National Movement.

(ii) What were the political views of Bal Gangadhar Tilak?

(iii) Why is he known as the forerunner of Mahatma Gandhi ?

Ans : MAIN 2001,2010

(i) The person in the picture is Bal Gangadhar Tilak. Bal Gangadhar Tilak was a prominent leader in the Indian National Movement and is often referred to as the "Father of Indian Unrest." He was the first to demand Swaraj (self-rule) as a birthright, asserting that independence could only be achieved through assertive and direct action. Tilak played a crucial role in mobilizing the masses and fostering a sense of nationalism through the revival of cultural festivals like Ganesh Chaturthi and Shivaji Jayanti. He also founded two influential newspapers, Kesari (Marathi) and Mahratta (English), which became platforms for spreading nationalist ideas and encouraging resistance to British rule. His emphasis on Swadeshi (use of indigenous goods) and the boycott of British products laid the foundation for the later mass movements led by Mahatma Gandhi.

(ii) (a) **Promotion of Swaraj :** Tilak was the first to openly declare that Swaraj (self-rule) was the birthright of every Indian, inspiring a strong sense of nationalism.

(b) **Revival of Cultural Festivals :** He revived traditional festivals like Ganesh Chaturthi and Shivaji Jayanti, using them as platforms to unite people and instill a sense of pride in Indian culture and history.

(c) **Journalism and Public Mobilization :** Through his newspapers, Kesari and Mahratta, Tilak spread nationalist ideas, criticized British policies, and rallied support for the independence movement.

(d) **Advocacy of Swadeshi and Boycott :** Tilak promoted the use of Swadeshi goods and the boycott of British products, which became key strategies in the nationalist struggle.

(iii) Bal Gangadhar Tilak is considered the forerunner of Mahatma Gandhi because many of the strategies and ideas that Gandhi later employed were first popularized by Tilak. Tilak's advocacy of Swaraj as a birthright, his emphasis on Swadeshi and the boycott of British goods, and his focus on mass mobilization and direct action laid the groundwork for Gandhi's later campaigns, such as the Non-Cooperation and Civil Disobedience movements. Additionally, Tilak's efforts to connect with the masses and his willingness to endure imprisonment for the cause of independence set a precedent that Gandhi and other nationalist leaders followed.

76. Identify the person in the picture and answer the following question :

(i) His views on national education.

(ii) His beliefs about social evils

(iii) His suggestions for eradicating poverty and unemployment in India.

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

(i) This person is Bipin Chandra Pal. He believed that education should be structured along nationalistic lines. He argued that education should not glorify or idealize British rule. Instead, he viewed education as a powerful tool for driving social progress and saw it as the key to unlocking the rich treasures of Indian philosophy.

(ii) Bipin Chandra Pal was deeply concerned about social evils such as caste discrimination, child marriage, and the subjugation of women. He believed that these social issues weakened the nation and hindered India's progress. Pal advocated for social reforms that would promote equality, justice, and the upliftment of all sections of society. He emphasized that eradicating these social evils was essential for building a strong and united India capable of resisting British rule.

(iii) Bipin Chandra Pal proposed several measures to combat poverty and unemployment in India. He strongly advocated for the promotion of Swadeshi industries and the boycott of British goods as a means to develop local industries and create jobs. Pal also emphasized the revival of traditional Indian handicrafts and cottage industries, which had been devastated by British economic policies. He believed that by encouraging the use of indigenous products and reducing dependence on foreign goods, India could achieve economic self-reliance and significantly reduce poverty and unemployment. Additionally, Pal called for agricultural reforms, including better irrigation and fair prices for crops, to improve the living conditions of farmers and alleviate rural poverty.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

11. (i) Name the person represented in the picture given below. Write about his contribution to the National Movement.

(ii) (a) Name that militant nationalist who was known as 'Sher-e-Punjab'
(b) His contribution as an educationist and a forceful writer.
(c) His militant ideas.
(d) His contribution to the growth of National consciousness in India.

Ans : SQP 2014, 2019

(i) The person in the picture is Lala Lajpat Rai. Lala Lajpat Rai, known as "Sher-e-Punjab" or "The Lion of Punjab," was a key figure in the Indian National Movement. He played a significant role in the anti-partition agitation against the Partition of Bengal in 1905 and was a leader in the Swadeshi and Boycott movements. Rai was a strong advocate for self-reliance and was instrumental in promoting the cause of education, founding institutions like the Dayanand Anglo-Vedic (DAV) College. His writings and speeches inspired many to join the struggle for independence. Lala Lajpat Rai's participation in the protests against the Simon Commission in 1928, where he was brutally beaten by the police, ultimately led to his death. His martyrdom became a symbol of resistance against British rule and inspired many revolutionaries.

(ii) (a) The militant nationalist known as "Sher-e-Punjab" is Lala Lajpat Rai.
(b) 1. Promotion of Education : Lala Lajpat Rai emphasized the importance of education in shaping people's character and was

NODIA

instrumental in founding D.A.V. College, Lahore, along with other educational institutions.

2. Advocacy in the U.S.A. : In the United States, he launched the monthly magazine Young India to promote the idea of Swaraj for Indians.
3. Influential Writings : He authored several books, including The Call to Young India and England's Debt to India, which inspired Indian youth to fight for independence.

(c) Militant ideas :

1. He was a fearless, bold, and passionate patriot dedicated to India.
2. He opposed the policies and programs of the Moderates.
3. During the Anti-Partition agitation, he urged men and women to resist repression with all their strength.
4. He led the boycott protest against the Simon Commission, where he was brutally injured in a lathi charge and ultimately sacrificed his life for the country. Before his death, he proclaimed, "The lathi blows inflicted on me will one day be the nails in the coffin of the British Empire."

(d) Contribution to the growth of National consciousness in India :

1. **Promotion of Radical Nationalism :** Through his writings, he preached radical nationalism, inspiring Indian youth and igniting a strong sense of patriotism.
2. **Mass Mobilization :** He transformed the freedom struggle into a mass movement, broadening its base and accelerating its pace through powerful speeches and writings.
3. **Involvement with the Ghadar Party :** During his stay in America in 1914, he joined the Ghadar Party and successfully garnered support for Indian nationalism and the freedom struggle.
4. **Ultimate Sacrifice and Its Impact :** He sacrificed his life while protesting against the Simon Commission, and his death in 1928 sparked widespread anger and fueled revolutionary activities, leading to the assassination of Saunders by revolutionaries.

NODIA

78. (i) Name the person represented in the picture given below. Write about his contribution to the National Movement.

(ii) Bipin Chandra Pal was the prophet of a bold, self-reliant nationalism in India. In this context describe :

(a) His contribution to the growth of national consciousness in India.
(b) His ideas on national education.
(c) Remedies he proposed to eradicate poverty and unemployment.

Ans : SQP 2020

(i) The person in the picture is Bipin Chandra Pal. Bipin Chandra Pal, a key member of the "Lal-Bal-Pal" trio alongside Lala Lajpat Rai and Bal Gangadhar Tilak, was a prominent leader in the Indian National Movement. He strongly advocated for the Swadeshi movement, promoting the boycott of British goods and the support of local industries. As a fierce critic of British rule, Pal used his speeches and writings to inspire nationalism and self-

reliance among Indians. His push for radical reforms and self-rule made him a pivotal figure in the independence struggle. Additionally, his efforts in promoting national education and engaging in social reforms significantly advanced national consciousness in India.

(ii) (a) Contribution to the growth of national consciousness in India :

1. Bipin Chandra Pal, often referred to as the "father of revolutionary thought in India," initially supported the Moderates but joined the Aggressives after the Partition of Bengal.
2. During the Anti-Partition agitation, he traveled across the country, spreading the message of Boycott and Swadeshi wherever he went.
3. He urged people to value their own culture and draw strength and unity from it.
4. Along with Lala Lajpat Rai and Tilak, Pal led a new era of militant nationalism, believing that great hardship and suffering were necessary prices to pay for freedom.
5. In his book The Spirit of Indian Nationalism, he emphasized the importance of nationalism..

(b) Bipin Chandra Pal believed that education should be organized along nationalistic lines, free from British influence. He argued that education should not glorify British rule but should instead promote Indian values, culture, and history. Pal saw education as a vital tool for social progress and believed it should be accessible to all, fostering a sense of pride and self-reliance among Indians. He also emphasized the importance of moral and vocational training to prepare Indians for active participation in nation-building.

(c) In his book, The New Economic Menace to India, Bipin Chandra Pal proposed several methods to alleviate poverty and unemployment :

1. He advocated for the development of numerous industries to address poverty and unemployment.
2. He suggested that the wealthy should be taxed more heavily than the poor.
3. He emphasized the need for increased spending on education and healthcare.
4. He recommended a workweek of forty-eight hours with higher wages.
5. He believed that practicing Swadeshi and Boycott should be central to the national freedom movement, enabling the growth of Indian industries.

www.nodia.in

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

CHAPTER 5

GANDHIAN ERA AND THE STRUGGLE FOR INDEPENDENCE

SUMMARY

This chapter delves into Mahatma Gandhi's leadership during critical phases of India's struggle for independence, focusing on three landmark movements: the Non-Cooperation Movement, the Civil Disobedience Movement, and the Quit India Movement. Each of these movements played a significant role in mobilizing the Indian populace against British colonial rule, shaping the course of the independence movement.

1. NON-COOPERATION MOVEMENT (1920-1922)

1.1 Causes

The Non-Cooperation Movement was initiated in response to a series of events that outraged Indian society. The Khilafat Movement, aimed at protecting the Ottoman Caliphate after World War I, resonated deeply with Indian Muslims and became a symbol of broader opposition to British rule. The Rowlatt Act of 1919 further fueled discontent, as it allowed the British government to imprison individuals suspected of sedition without trial, leading to widespread unrest. The Jallianwala Bagh massacre, where British troops killed hundreds of unarmed civilians during a peaceful protest, was the final straw that galvanized Indians across the nation to reject British authority.

1.2 Programme

Gandhi called for a complete boycott of British goods, institutions, and services. This included withdrawing from government jobs, returning British titles and honors, boycotting British schools and courts, and promoting the use of Indian-made goods (Swadeshi). The movement sought to undermine the British economy and administrative control by encouraging self-reliance and non-violent resistance among Indians.

NODIA

1.3 Suspension

The movement's momentum was abruptly halted by the Chauri Chaura incident in February 1922, where a violent clash between protesters and the police led to the deaths of 22 policemen. Gandhi, deeply committed to non-violence (ahimsa), was dismayed by the turn of events and decided to suspend the movement. This decision, while controversial, underscored Gandhi's principles and his belief that the struggle for independence must be conducted through peaceful means. The suspension led to a temporary decline in the momentum of the freedom movement but also solidified Gandhi's position as a leader who placed ethics above all else.

2. CIVIL DISOBEDIENCE MOVEMENT (1930-1934)

2.1 Causes

The Civil Disobedience Movement was ignited by the rejection of Indian demands for self-governance in the Simon Commission report, which was seen as another instance of British disregard for Indian aspirations. The Indian National Congress, under Gandhi's leadership, declared complete independence (Poorna Swaraj) as its goal during the Lahore Session in December 1929. The formal declaration of independence on January 26, 1930, set the stage for direct action against British laws and policies.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

2.2 Key Events

The movement gained momentum with the iconic Dandi March, where Gandhi and 78 followers marched 240 miles to the coastal village of Dandi to produce salt, directly challenging the British monopoly on salt production and sales. This act of defiance inspired millions of Indians to join the struggle by refusing to pay taxes, boycotting British goods, and participating in mass protests.

2.3 Programme

The movement called for the non-payment of taxes, the boycott of British goods, the non-cooperation with British authorities, and the promotion of indigenous industries. It was marked by widespread civil disobedience, where ordinary citizens took up the cause, leading to mass arrests and increased repression by the British government.

2.4 Impact

The movement brought international attention to India's struggle for independence, highlighting the moral and political arguments against colonial rule. The British government, recognizing the scale of the unrest, entered into negotiations with Gandhi, resulting in the Gandhi-Irwin Pact of 1931. Under this agreement, the government agreed to release political prisoners and allow the salt tax to be repealed in exchange for Gandhi's participation in the Second Round Table Conference in London. Although the conference did not yield immediate results, the movement significantly strengthened the Indian resolve for independence and laid the groundwork for future actions.

3. QUIT INDIA MOVEMENT (1942)

3.1 Causes

The Quit India Movement emerged in the context of World War II. The failure of the Cripps Mission in 1942, which offered India dominion status but not immediate independence, led to widespread disappointment and anger among Indian leaders. The Japanese advance towards India and the fear of a possible invasion heightened the urgency for immediate independence. Gandhi, recognizing the critical moment, called for the British to "Quit India" and leave the country to its own devices.

3.2 Programme

On August 8, 1942, the All India Congress Committee passed the Quit India Resolution, demanding an end to British rule. Gandhi's call for "Do or Die" resonated across the nation, leading to a massive civil disobedience campaign. People from all walks of life participated in strikes, protests, and acts of defiance against the British authorities. The movement was marked by widespread violence, including attacks on government buildings, communication lines and other symbols of British authority.

3.3 Significance

The British response was swift and brutal, with mass arrests, including the imprisonment of Gandhi and other Congress leaders. Despite the repression, the Quit India Movement demonstrated the determination of the Indian people to achieve independence. Although it did not achieve immediate success, the movement marked a turning point in the struggle for freedom, signaling to the British that their hold on India was weakening. The movement also united the Indian populace in their resolve to end colonial rule, paving the way for India's eventual independence in 1947.

These three movements Non-Cooperation, Civil Disobedience, and Quit India were instrumental in mobilizing the Indian masses, fostering a spirit of nationalism, and applying relentless pressure on the British government. Gandhi's leadership and the principles of non-violence and civil disobedience became the hallmark of India's freedom struggle, ultimately leading to the country's independence on August 15, 1947.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTION

1. The Rowlatt Act was called the Black Act because the Indians:
(a) Could not possess any arms
(b) Could not export any goods
(c) Could be arrested without a warrant
(d) Could be sent overseas on duty

Ans : MAIN 2024

Thus (c) is correct option

2. People protested against the _____ because it had seven British members and no Indian representation.
(a) Simon Commission
(b) Lucknow Pact
(c) Ilbert Bill
(d) Cabinet Mission

Ans : MAIN 2023

Thus (a) is correct option

3. The main objective of the Assertive Nationalists was _____.
(a) Constitutional agitation
(b) Peaceful protests
(c) Purna Swaraj
(d) Self-government under British Rule

Ans : MAIN 2023

Thus (c) is correct option

4. _____ was one of the causes of the Quit India Movement.
(a) Failure of the Second Round Table Conference
(b) Rowlatt Act
(c) Mountbatten Plan
(d) Failure of the Cripps Mission

Ans : MAIN 2023

Thus (d) is correct option

5. Who was the leader of the Khilafat Movement?
(a) Maulana Azad
(b) Muhammad Ali and Shaukat Ali
(c) Jawaharlal Nehru
(d) Subhas Chandra Bose

Ans : COMP 2001

Thus (b) is correct option

6. Which event led to widespread anger and contributed to the Non-Cooperation Movement?
(a) Simon Commission
(b) Jallianwala Bagh Massacre
(c) Dandi March
(d) Rowlatt Act

Ans : SQP 2005

Thus (b) is correct option

7. When did the Jallianwala Bagh Tragedy take place?
(a) 1919
(b) 1917
(c) 1920
(d) 1921

Ans : MAIN 2000

Thus (a) is correct option

8. Who led the Non-Cooperation Movement?
(a) Subhas Chandra Bose
(b) Jawaharlal Nehru
(c) Mahatma Gandhi
(d) Lala Lajpat Rai

Ans : COMP 2018

Thus (c) is correct option

9. What was the main cause of the Non-Cooperation Movement?
(a) British policies
(b) Failure of the Montagu-Chelmsford reforms
(c) Non-acceptance of the Rowlatt Act
(d) All of the above

Ans : SQP 2012

Thus (d) is correct option

10. Which incident led to the suspension of the Non-Cooperation Movement in 1922 ?
(a) Dandi March
(b) Chauri Chaura incident
(c) Salt March
(d) Salt Satyagraha

Ans : MAIN 2018

Thus (b) is correct option

NODIA

11. What was the outcome of the Chauri Chaura incident?
(a) Gandhi called for a complete boycott of British goods
(b) The Non-Cooperation Movement was suspended
(c) The movement gained momentum
(d) Indian National Congress became more radical

Ans : SQP 2022

Thus (b) is correct option

12. Which of the following was a major component of the Non-Cooperation Movement's programme?
(a) Non-payment of taxes
(b) Boycott of foreign goods
(c) Starting a civil disobedience campaign
(d) All of the above

Ans : COMP 2019

Thus (b) is correct option

13. What was the main cause of the Civil Disobedience Movement?
(a) Reaction to the Simon Commission
(b) Declaration of Poorna Swaraj
(c) Reaction to the failure of the Cripps Mission
(d) All of the above

Ans : SQP 2000

Thus (d) is correct option

14. Where was the Quit India Resolution passed?
(a) Lucknow (b) Bombay
(c) Lahore (d) Kolkata

Ans : COMP 2021

Thus (b) is correct option

15. What was declared at the Lahore Session of 1929?
(a) Non-Cooperation Movement
(b) Poorna Swaraj (Complete Independence)
(c) Dandi March
(d) Gandhi-Irwin Pact

Ans : MAIN 2008

Thus (b) is correct option

16. What was the significance of the Second Round Table Conference?
(a) It led to the Partition of India
(b) It was an agreement between the Congress and the British
(c) It marked a turning point in the Indian freedom struggle
(d) It ended the Civil Disobedience Movement

Ans : COMP 2000

Thus (c) is correct option

17. What was the aim of the Dandi March led by Mahatma Gandhi?
(a) To protest the Jallianwala Bagh Massacre
(b) To break the salt law
(c) To demand the release of political prisoners
(d) To promote Indian industries

Ans : SQP 2005

Thus (b) is correct option

18. Which act did the Civil Disobedience Movement focus on defying?
(a) Salt Act
(b) Rowlatt Act
(c) Vernacular Press Act
(d) Government of India Act, 1919

Ans : COMP 2012

Thus (a) is correct option

19. Which of the following was a key outcome of the Civil Disobedience Movement?
(a) Increase in British repression
(b) Rise of Indian nationalism
(c) The Salt Satyagraha was successful
(d) All of the above

Ans : MAIN 2002

Thus (d) is correct option

20. What was the Gandhi-Irwin Pact of 1931?
(a) Agreement to end the Quit India Movement
(b) Agreement to withdraw the Civil Disobedience Movement
(c) Agreement on joint talks for self-rule
(d) Agreement on the partition of India

Ans : SQP 2007

Thus (b) is correct option

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

21. Which event was a major cause for the Quit India Movement?
(a) Failure of the Cripps Mission
(b) Passing of the Rowlatt Act
(c) Jallianwala Bagh Massacre
(d) Launch of the Civil Disobedience Movement

Ans : MAIN 2013

Thus (a) is correct option

22. What was the primary objective of the Quit India Movement?
(a) To demand full independence from Britain
(b) To organize non-violent protests
(c) To promote a constitutional solution for self-rule
(d) To demand the abolition of the salt tax

Ans : SQP 2022

Thus (a) is correct option

23. Which of the following was a significant result of the Quit India Movement?
(a) Gandhi's arrest
(b) Increased repression by the British
(c) Widespread protests across the country
(d) All of the above

Ans : MAIN 2001

Thus (d) is correct option

24. What was the Japanese threat that influenced the Quit India Movement?
(a) Japan's occupation of Burma
(b) Japan's occupation of China
(c) Japan's invasion of India
(d) Japan's military alliance with Germany

Ans : SQP 2018

Thus (a) is correct option

25. When was the Quit India Resolution passed?
(a) 1940 (b) 1942
(c) 1945 (d) 1939

Ans : COMP 2018

Thus (b) is correct option

26. Was the role of the Cripps Mission in the Quit India Movement?
(a) It promised full independence to India
(b) It failed to satisfy Indian demands, leading to the Quit India Movement
(c) It led to the formation of the Indian National Congress
(d) It granted the right to self-rule

Ans : SQP 2006

Thus (b) is correct option

27. Who was the British leader who led the Cripps Mission?
(a) Winston Churchill
(b) Lord Mountbatten
(c) Sir Stafford Cripps
(d) Lord Curzon

Ans : COMP 2008

Thus (a) is correct option

28. Which key event marked the end of the Quit India Movement?
(a) The arrest of Mahatma Gandhi
(b) The end of World War II
(c) The passing of the Quit India Resolution
(d) The formation of the Indian National Congress

Ans : MAIN 2017

Thus (a) is correct option

29. What was the impact of the Quit India Movement?
(a) It led to widespread repression by the British
(b) It united people across India for the cause of independence
(c) It intensified the freedom struggle, leading to India's independence
(d) All of the above

Ans : SQP 2016

Thus (d) is correct option

ONE MARK QUESTIONS

30. Which tragic incident prompted Gandhiji to launch the Non-Cooperation Movement?

Ans : COMP 2024

Jallianwala Bagh Tragedy.

31. Name the two methods adopted by Gandhiji in the freedom struggle.

or

State two methods of political struggle evolved by Mahatma Gandhi as part of the national movement.

Ans : MAIN 2002,2009

Non-violence and Satyagraha.

32. When did Gandhiji launch the Champaran Satyagraha in Bihar?

Ans : COMP 2015

In 1917, the movement was launched to provide justice to the tenants of Champaran.

33. What is meant by Swadeshi ?

Ans : SQP 2001

Swadeshi means use of the goods produced within one's country and by one's countrymen.

34. Under whose leadership was the Khilafat Movement of 1920 launched ?

or

Who were the leaders of the Khilafat movement ?

Ans : COMP 1997,2001,2013,2020

Ali Brothers – Muhammed Ali and Shaukat Ali.

35. Name the prominent leader who sacrificed his life while agitating against Simon Commission.

Ans : MAIN 2004

Lala Lajpat Rai.

36. When and by whom was the Civil Disobedience Movement launched?

Ans : SQP 2004

Civil Disobedience Movement was launched by Gandhiji on 18th March, 1930.

37. What is the historical importance of 26^{th} Jan. 1930 ?

Ans : MAIN 2001

It was the day on which Purna Swaraj was celebrated all over India.

38. Name the Act passed by the British Government in the year 1919 which gave them the authority to arrest and detain suspected Indians.

Ans : COMP 2004

The Rowlatt Act.

39. Why was the 'Civil Disobedience Movement, of March, 1930 withdrawn ?

Ans : SQP 2003

The Civil Disobedience Movement was withdrawn after the Gandhi-Irwin pact.

40. Who was the British General, responsible for 'The Jallianwala Bagh Massacre' ?

Ans : MAIN 1996

General Dyer.

41. When did the Jallianwala Bagh tragedy occur?

Ans : SQP 2000

On April 13, 1919.

42. When was the Swaraj Party formed?

Ans : COMP 2003

In December, 1922.

43. Who was known as 'Frontier Gandhi' ?

Ans : SQP 2004

Khan Abdul Gaffar Khan.

44. When was the Gandhi-Irwin Pact signed ?

Ans : COMP 2011

In March, 1931.

45. When was the First Round Table Conference held ?

Ans : SQP 2007

In 1930-31.

46. In which session of the Congress demand for Poorna Swaraj was declared as the goal of the Congress?

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

Ans : MAIN 2005

Congress Session of 1929 at Lahore.

47. Name two leaders who encouraged socialism in the Congress.

Ans : COMP 2006

Jawaharlal Nehru and Subhash Chandra Bose.

48. Which day was to be observed as the Poorna Swaraj Day all over India every year ?

Ans : COMP 2008

26th January.

49. When did Mahatma Gandhi start his historic march to Dandi ?

Ans : MAIN 2009

On March 12, 1930.

50. Which provision of the Communal Award made Gandhiji to go on fast unto death ?

Ans : SQP 2010

At the dismemberment of the Hindu Community.

51. Why was Khilafat Movement launched ?

Ans : MAIN 2012

The Khilafat Movement was launched against the injustice done to Turkey and Caliph.

52. What was the major cause of the failure of the First Round Table Conference?

Ans : COMP 2013

The First Round Table Conference failed because the Congress boycotted the Conference.

53. Name the Pact after which the Civil Disobedience Movement was suspended.

Ans : SQP 2014

Gandhi-Irwin Pact, 1931.

54. At which Session of the Congress was the decision to launch Non-Cooperation Movement undertaken ?

Ans : MAIN 2000

Nagpur Session.

55. When was Civil Disobedience Movement finally suspended ?

Ans : COMP 2015

April, 1934.

56. Who represented the Indian National Congress in the Second Round Table Conference ?

Ans : SQP 1991

Mahatma Gandhi.

57. Name the movement which was started by the Congress after the Lahore Session of 1929.

Ans : MAIN 2016

Civil Disobedience Movement.

58. Name two of the leading lights (main leaders) of the Non-Cooperation Movement of 1920.

Ans : MAIN 2023

C.R. Das and Rajendra Prasad.

59. What is Poona Pact ?

Ans : COMP 2017

Under the Poona Pact, both the Hindus and the Harijans agreed to have joint electorates.

60. What did the violation of Salt Laws denote?

Ans : SQP 2018

It was a symbol of defiance of the laws made by the Government.

61. What was the new name given to the untouchables by Mahatma Gandhi ?

Ans : MAIN 2019

Harijans.

62. What moral code was laid down by Gandhiji for a Satyagrahi ?

Ans : COMP 2020

A Satyagrahi should rely on love-force and there should be no ill-will against the evil-doer.

63. Which provision of the Rowlatt Act aroused widespread popular indignation?

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

Ans : SQP 2023

The provision of No Dalil, No Vakil, No Appeal, i.e., No pleas, No lawyer, No appeal.

64. Name any two movements launched by Gandhiji against British rule in India.

Ans : MAIN 2021

Non-Cooperation Movement and Civil Disobedience Movement.

TWO MARKS QUESTIONS

65. Mention any two causes of the Quit India Movement.

Ans : MAIN 2024

Failure of the Cripps Mission : The British offer of limited self-government was rejected, leading to frustration.
Impact of World War II : India was forced into the war without consultation, increasing demands for independence.

66. What do you mean by Non-Cooperation Movement ?

Ans : COMP 2004,2014

The Non-Cooperation Movement, launched by Gandhiji in 1920, was a response to the injustice in Turkey, the repression in Punjab, and the demand for Swaraj. It earned its name due to the methods of non-cooperation with British authorities used during the movement.

67. When and why was the Simon Commission appointed ?

Ans : SQP 2010

The Simon Commission was appointed by the British government in 1927 to review the functioning of the constitutional system in India and suggest reforms. It was set up because the British wanted to assess the 1919 Government of India Act and determine the next steps for India's political progress. However, it was met with widespread protest in India because it did not include any Indian members.

68. Mention any two events which led to the Civil Disobedience Movement.

Ans : MAIN 2007,2018

(i) The resolution for 'Complete Independence' or 'Purna Swaraj' was passed at the Lahore session of the Congress.
(ii) Gandhi's 'Eleven Point' programme was rejected by the British government.

69. Why did Gandhiji suspend the Non-Cooperation Movement ?

Ans : SQP 1996

Gandhiji suspended the Non-Cooperation Movement in 1922 following the violent incident at Chauri Chaura, where a mob of protesters clashed with the police, resulting in the burning of a police station and the deaths of 22 policemen. Gandhiji, who was committed to non-violence, decided to halt the movement as he believed it had deviated from its principle of peaceful protest.

70. What is meant by Satyagraha ?

Ans : COMP 2018

Satyagraha is a philosophy and method of non-violent resistance developed by Mahatma Gandhi. It means "truth force" or "soul force" and involves using peaceful protest, civil disobedience, and non-cooperation to oppose injustice and bring about social or political change.

71. Why was Dandi March undertaken?

Ans : SQP 2001

The Dandi March was carried out to initiate the Civil Disobedience Movement and to defy the Salt Laws.

72. Why was the Rowlatt Act (1919) passed ?

Ans : COMP 2007

The Montague-Chelmsford Reforms fell short of the expectations and hopes of the Indian masses, leading to widespread agitation. In response, the government passed the Rowlatt Act in 1919 to suppress these protests.

NODIA

73. Name two leaders of Swaraj Party. Why were they said to be the pro-changers ?

Ans : MAIN 2010

Two leaders of the Swaraj Party were Motilal Nehru and Chittaranjan Das.They were called pro-changers because they supported participating in the elections under the Act of 1919.

74. Why was the Simon Commission boycotted everywhere ? Give one reason.

Ans : SQP 2010,2013,2015

The Simon Commission was boycotted everywhere in India because it did not include a single Indian member, which was seen as an insult to the Indian people and their aspirations for self-governance.

75. On what assurances did Gandhiji with-draw the Civil Disobedience Movement ?

Ans : MAIN 2008

Gandhiji withdrew the Civil Disobedience Movement after receiving assurances from the British government through the Gandhi-Irwin Pact in 1931. The key assurances included the release of political prisoners, the return of confiscated properties, and the permission for peaceful picketing of liquor shops and foreign cloth.

76. What is mass involvement in Gandhi's methods ?

Ans : COMP 2001

Mass involvement means that people from all castes, creeds, and professions should participate in the movement. Gandhi recognized the strength of a united and organized population.

77. Why is the Khilafat Movement significant in the history of the National Movement ?

Ans : MAIN 1994,1999

The Khilafat Movement is significant in the history of the National Movement because it marked the first time that Indian Muslims, led by leaders like Maulana Azad and the Ali brothers, joined hands with the Indian National Congress in a united struggle against British rule. It also strengthened Hindu-Muslim unity in the fight for India's independence.

78. Mention any one provision each of the Gandhi-Irwin Pact signed in 1931.

Ans : SQP 2014

One provision of the Gandhi-Irwin Pact signed in 1931 was that the British government agreed to release all political prisoners who had not committed violence during the Civil Disobedience Movement.

79. Why was the Congress session held at Lahore in 1929 significant to the National Movement ?

Ans : MAIN 2016

The Congress session held at Lahore in 1929 was significant to the National Movement because it marked the adoption of the resolution for 'Purna Swaraj' or Complete Independence as the goal of the Indian National Congress. During this session, January 26, 1930, was declared as Independence Day, and the Civil Disobedience Movement was also planned, setting the stage for a more intensified struggle against British rule.

80. Explain the value of constructive programme in Gandhian methods.

Ans : MAIN 2003

The constructive programme, including the removal of untouchability, upliftment of women, provision of basic education, village sanitation, and promotion of khadi and village industries, provided the social and moral foundation for the National Movement.

81. Why did Gandhiji lay emphasis on 'Swadeshi' ? Give two reasons.

Ans : COMP 2001

(i) Gandhiji supported 'Swadeshi' to alleviate poverty and unemployment.
(ii) It was also intended to disrupt British trade in India.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

82. Mention any two objectives of the Non-Cooperation Movement of 1920.

Ans : SQP 2010

(i) Attaining Swaraj (self-rule) by withdrawing Indian support from British institutions and laws.
(ii) Boycotting British goods and institutions to weaken British economic and political control over India.

83. Mention one item each of the positive and negative programme of the Non-Cooperation Movement.

Ans : MAIN 2000

One item of the positive programme of the Non-Cooperation Movement was the promotion of Swadeshi, encouraging the use of Indian-made goods.
One item of the negative programme was the boycott of British goods and institutions.

84. What was the main aim of Swaraj Party ?

Ans : COMP 2001

The main aim of the Swaraj Party was to enter the legislative councils and obstruct British government policies from within, using constitutional means to push for self-governance and greater political rights for Indians.

85. Give two measures which Mahatma Gandhi adopted for the upliftment of Harijans.

Ans : SQP 2005

(i) Promoting the removal of untouchability through social campaigns and awareness.
(ii) Establishing educational and vocational centers to improve the economic and social status of Harijans.

86. Mention any two recommendations of the Simon Commission.

Ans : SQP 2023

(i) The Provincial Legislative Councils should be expanded.
(ii) Communal representation would be maintained.

87. What led to the formation of the Swaraj Party ?

Ans : MAIN 2011

The formation of the Swaraj Party was prompted by the suspension of the Non-Cooperation Movement in 1922. Some Congress leaders, like C.R. Das and Motilal Nehru, wanted to continue the struggle for self-rule by entering the legislative councils and working within the system to oppose British policies, leading to the establishment of the Swaraj Party in 1923.

88. Which proposal of the August Offer was welcomed by the Muslim League ?

Ans : SQP 2008

The Muslim League welcomed the August Offer's proposal that no future Constitution would be adopted without the consent of all communities in India, as it provided assurance to the minorities.

89. How did the Nehru Report drawn in 1928 lead to the launching of the Civil Disobedience Movement ?

Ans : COMP 2004

The Nehru Report of 1928, which sought self-governance, was rejected by the British. This refusal led to increased frustration among Indian leaders, prompting the Congress to demand complete independence and launch the Civil Disobedience Movement in 1930.

90. When and why was the Cripps Mission sent to India ?

Ans : MAIN 2007

The Cripps Mission was sent to India in March 1942 by the British government during World War II.

91. (i) When was Quit India Resolution passed ?
(ii) Give two reasons for the launching of the Quit India Movement.

Ans : SQP 2007

(i) The Quit India Resolution was passed on August 8, 1942.

NODIA

(ii) Reasons for launching the Quit India Movement:
(a) Failure of the Cripps Mission to grant full independence.
(b) Japanese threat during World War II, raising concerns about India's security under British rule.

92. What was the major cause of the failure of the Quit India Movement ?

Ans : COMP 2010

The movement failed mainly due to lack of coordination and absence of a clear-cut programme.

93. Why was the August Offer rejected by the Congress ? Give one reason.

Ans : SQP 2011

The government proposed the creation of a constitutional body, but it did not specify a time frame for when this body would be established.

94. Mention any two proposals of the August Offer of 1940.

Ans : COMP 1991

(i) Expansion of the Viceroy's Executive Council to include more Indian members.
(ii) Assurance of Dominion Status for India after the war, with the possibility of framing a new constitution based on the consent of all communities in In

95. Why did the Congress ministries resign in 1939 ?

Ans : COMP 2013

The Congress ministries resigned in 1939 to protest against the British decision to involve India in World War II without consulting Indian leaders or securing India's consent.

96. What was the cause of the rift in the Congress in 1939 ?

Ans : SQP 2014

(i) By 1937, Subhas Chandra Bose emerged as a prominent leader of the Indian National Congress, differing with Gandhiji on policies and methods of dealing with the government.
(ii) In 1939, Subhas Chandra Bose resigned from the Congress presidency over disagreements regarding the formation of the Congress Working Committee and subsequently founded a separate group within the Congress known as the Forward Bloc.

97. What were the circumstances during the Second World War which forced the national leaders to launch the 'Quit India Movement'?

Ans : MAIN 2009

The Quit India Movement was launched due to:
(i) Failure of the Cripps Mission (1942) to offer full independence.
(ii) Japanese Threat of invasion during World War II.
(iii) Continued British Control despite India's support in the war, leading to growing demands for immediate independence.

98. Who were the 'Pro-changers' and 'no changers' ?

Ans : MAIN 2003

Pro-changers : These were members of the Congress, like C.R. Das and Motilal Nehru, who in 1923 supported contesting elections under the Act of 1919 to fight British rule from within the legislative councils.
No Changers : These were members of the Congress who opposed contesting elections under the Act of 1919, preferring to continue the boycott of British institutions.

99. How was the constitution-making body to be constituted according to Cripps Proposals of 1942 ?

Ans :

(i) It would be composed of elected representatives from the British Indian provinces and nominated members from the princely states.
(ii) The British Indian provinces were to elect their representatives through their respective legislative assemblies.

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

(iii) The princely states were to be represented by members nominated by their rulers.

100. When and why was the 'Deliverance Day' celebrated ?

Ans : MAIN 2012

Deliverance Day was celebrated on December 22, 1939, by the Muslim League to mark the resignation of Congress ministries, which they viewed as a relief from Congress's rule.

THREE MARKS QUESTIONS

101. The famous Nagpur Session of the Indian National Congress in 1920 adopted a resolution to launch Non-Cooperation Movement. In this context, answer the following questions:
(i) Reasons or circumstances for launching the Non-Cooperation Movement.
(ii) Which Mass Struggle was launched by Gandhi on non-violent lines in 1920? Explain in brief the programmes of such a Campaign.
(iii) Reason for the withdrawal of the Movement.
(iv) Importance of the Movement.
(v) What were the objectives which the movement sought to achieve ?

Ans : MAIN 2024

(i) Reasons or circumstances for launching the Non-Cooperation Movement :
(a) **Failure of the Montague-Chelmsford Reforms:** The Congress found the Montague-Chelmsford Reforms to be inadequate, unsatisfactory, and disappointing. The reforms introduced had little impact on the administration.
(b) **The Rowlatt Act:** The Rowlatt Act was enacted to suppress any movement against the British. It granted the police extensive powers to arrest individuals without cause, search premises without a warrant, and imprison people without trial. It became infamous as the "Black Act."
(c) **The Jallianwala Bagh Massacre:** In response to the strong protests against the Rowlatt Act in Punjab, two Congress leaders, Dr. Satya Pal and Dr. Saifuddin Kitchlew, were arrested. To protest their arrests, a public meeting was held on April 13th in Jallianwala Bagh, where General Dyer ordered his troops to fire on the crowd without warning, resulting in over 1,000 deaths. This atrocity shocked the world.
(d) **The Khilafat Movement:** The Khilafat Movement, led by the Ali brothers Mohammed Ali and Shaukat Ali was organized to protest the injustice done to Turkey after World War I. Congress leaders supported the Khilafat agitation and helped spread it across the country.

(ii) The Non-Cooperation Movement was launched by Mahatma Gandhi in 1920 as a mass struggle based on the principle of non-violence (Ahimsa). It aimed to resist British rule peacefully by withdrawing cooperation from the colonial government. Programmes of the Non-Cooperation Movement:
(a) **Boycott of British Institutions and Goods :** Indians were encouraged to boycott British goods, including textiles, and adopt Swadeshi (use of Indian-made products).
(b) **Promotion of Swadeshi and Khadi :** People were urged to promote local industries and hand-spun cloth (Khadi) to reduce dependence on foreign goods.
(c) **Surrender of Titles and Honors :** Indians renounced British titles and honors as a mark of protest. For example, Gandhi returned his title of Kaiser-i-Hind.
(d) **Resignation from Government Jobs :** Officials were encouraged to resign from their government posts to weaken British administration.

NODIA

(e) **Non-payment of Taxes :** Refusal to pay taxes and land revenue was a part of the movement to hurt the financial stability of the British regime.

(f) **Peaceful Demonstrations :** Mass gatherings, marches and public meetings were held to spread awareness and demand self-rule (Swaraj).

(iii) Reason for the withdrawal of the Movement :

(a) **Violent Incident :** Gandhiji suspended the movement due to the violent incident in Chauri Chaura, Uttar Pradesh, where a mob burned 22 policemen alive. Gandhiji, deeply committed to non-violence, believed that nationalist workers had not fully embraced the principle. He could not tolerate violence from his followers, leading him to halt the movement.

(b) **Turkey Revolution :** In 1922, Turkey became a republic following a revolution. This change diminished the significance of the movement in India, as the original cause related to the Khilafat issue lost relevance.

(iv) (a) **Establishment of Educational Institutions :** The Non-Cooperation Movement boosted the Indian education system, leading to the establishment of institutions like Jamia Millia and Kashi Vidyapeeth under a national education programme.

(b) **Expansion of the National Movement:** The movement broadened the scope of the freedom struggle by involving masses from all walks of life, extending beyond the educated urban elite.

(c) **Unity Among Communities :** It was the first major movement where Hindus and Muslims participated together, fostering a sense of unity and fraternity across the country.

(d) **Impact on the Congress :** The movement significantly influenced the Congress, leading it to adopt Satyagraha and Non-Cooperation as key strategies on a larger scale.

(v) Objectives achieved by this movement :

(a) Addressing the injustices in Punjab, including the Jallianwala Bagh massacre and the imposition of martial law.

(b) Restoring the former status of the Sultan of Turkey.

(c) **Achieving Swaraj (self-rule) :** In September 1920, a special Congress session led by Lala Lajpat Rai was held in Calcutta to approve this agenda.

102. The advent of Mahatma Gandhi into the Indian National Congress in 1919 brought a dramatic change in the National Movement. In this context explain:

(i) His Doctrine of Satyagraha and Swadeshi.

(ii) His belief in Non-Violence.

(iii) His belief in the Mass Movement.

Ans : MAIN 1994,2012,1994

(i) Doctrine of Satyagraha and Swadeshi :

(a) **Gandhiji's Doctrine of Satyagraha :** Derived from Sanskrit, 'Satyagraha' means "firm insistence on truth" (Satya meaning 'truth' and Agraha meaning 'insistence'). It advocates for non-violent resistance and self-restraint while facing injustice.

(b) **Principles of Satyagraha :** A Satyagrahi must be willing to endure suffering, remain peaceful under provocation, and never harm others. Satyagraha is about courage and moral strength, not aggression.

(c) **Meaning and Purpose of Swadeshi:** 'Swadeshi' means "of one's own country." The movement aimed at social and economic upliftment, particularly for rural workers, through the use of indigenous goods and the boycott of foreign products.

(d) **Economic Upliftment through Swadeshi :** Gandhi promoted the use of the 'charkha' (spinning wheel) and cottage industries in rural areas to combat poverty and unemployment, providing employment and self-reliance to the rural population.

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

(ii) Gandhiji's belief in Non-Violence (Ahimsa) was a cornerstone of his leadership in the Indian National Movement. He believed that true resistance to oppression should be peaceful and rooted in moral force. This belief guided the Non-Cooperation Movement after the Jallianwala Bagh Massacre and was evident when he suspended the movement following the Chauri Chaura incident in 1922, where violence erupted. Non-violence also underpinned the Civil Disobedience Movement, where peaceful protests like the Dandi March were key methods of resistance.

(iii) Gandhiji realised the importance and power of the organised masses :

(a) Gandhiji believed that freedom could not be achieved by a few leaders or individuals alone.

(b) He emphasized that the collective strength of the masses would be necessary to compel the British to leave India.

(c) To harness this power, he launched the Non-Cooperation Movement, Civil Disobedience Movement, and Quit India Movement, involving workers, women, students, and farmers in the struggle.

103. The Civil Disobedience Movement was significant in the history of the National Movement. With reference to this movement, write short note on :

(i) Circumstances leading to the Civil Disobedience Movement.

(ii) Importance or Impact of the Movement.

Ans : SQP 1999,2001,2011

(i) Circumstances leading to the Civil Disobedience Movement :

(a) **The Simon Commission :** The Reforms of 1919 failed to satisfy national leaders, leading to the formation of the Simon Commission, composed entirely of British members. Its arrival in India was met with strikes and demonstrations, sparking significant political fervor and discontent among Indians.

(b) **Lahore Session and Demand for Complete Independence :** Due to the British Government's failure to grant Dominion Status and other developments in 1929, the Congress, at its Lahore Session in December 1929, presided over by Jawaharlal Nehru, passed the resolution for 'Purna Swaraj' (Complete Independence) and decided to launch the Civil Disobedience Movement.

(c) **Gandhi's Eleven Demands :** On January 30, 1930, Mahatma Gandhi presented Eleven Demands aimed at addressing injustices against Indians, but the Viceroy dismissed them as unrealistic, further intensifying the call for Civil Disobedience.

(ii) Importance or Impact of Civil Disobedience Movement :

(a) **Salt as a Symbol :** Mahatma Gandhi recognized salt as a powerful unifying symbol, as it was a basic necessity for both the rich and the poor.

(b) **Political Awakening :** The Civil Disobedience Movement ignited patriotic fervor, raising political awareness and a sense of responsibility among the people.

(c) **Social Impact :** The movement had a positive social effect, leading to the creation of the Harijan Sevak Sangh, which helped untouchables secure basic rights and gain access to temples and churches.

(d) **Constitutional Reforms :** The government realized the need for significant reforms, leading to the introduction of the Government of India Act, 1935, which brought important changes to India's governance.

104. The Indian National Congress in 1930 resolved to launch the Civil Disobedience Movement. In this context, answer the following questions :

NODIA

(i) The circumstances leading to the Civil Disobedience Movement.
(ii) Why was the movement suspended ?
(iii) Why was the movement renewed ?

Ans : COMP 1991,1999

(i) Circumstances leading to the Civil Disobedience Movement :
   (a) **The Simon Commission :** The 1919 Reforms failed to satisfy national leaders, leading to the formation of the Simon Commission, composed entirely of British members. Its arrival in India was met with strikes and protests, generating significant political fervor.
   (b) **Lahore Session and Demand for Complete Independence :** The British Government's refusal to grant Dominion Status in 1929 led Congress, under Jawaharlal Nehru's leadership at the Lahore Session, to pass the Purna Swaraj resolution and plan for Civil Disobedience.
   (c) **Gandhi's Eleven Demands :** On January 30, 1930, Gandhi presented Eleven Demands to address injustices faced by Indians, but the Viceroy dismissed them as unrealistic.

(ii) The Movement was suspended due to the following reasons:
   (a) **Ineffectiveness of Repressive Measures :** Despite the government's attempts to crush the nationalist movement through various repressive tactics, these efforts failed, leading the government to consider negotiations with the leaders.
   (b) **Failure of the First Round Table Conference :** The First Round Table Conference in London in 1930 was unsuccessful due to the absence of Congress. This failure made the government more inclined to compromise with the Congress.

(iii) The movement was renewed due to the failure of the Second Round Table Conference in London. When Gandhiji returned to Bombay on December 28, 1931, he found that the government had resumed its repressive actions despite the Gandhi-Irwin Pact. The Viceroy even refused to meet him. Consequently, on January 1, 1932, the Congress Working Committee passed a resolution to resume the movement and boycott British goods. On January 4, Gandhiji was arrested, and the Congress was declared an illegal organization.

NODIA

105. In the context of the Civil Disobedience Movement, explain the importance of the following :
(i) The Simon Commission (1927).
(ii) The Lahore Session of the Indian National Congress (1929).

Ans : MAIN 2004

(i) The importance of the Simon Commission (1927).
   (a) The Simon Commission was appointed to review the Government of India Act 1919 and suggest further administrative reforms.
   (b) The Commission was boycotted by Indians because all its members were Englishmen, with no Indian representation.
   (c) The Commission arrived in India on 3rd February 1928, and the entire country observed a hartal on that day.
   (d) The Simon Commission faced massive protests and demonstrations across the country wherever it went.
   (e) During one such demonstration, Lala Lajpat Rai was severely assaulted by the police.
   (f) The Simon Commission fueled political fervor in India and laid the groundwork for the Civil Disobedience Movement, which had its roots in the protests against the Commission.

(ii) During the Lahore Session of the Congress in December 1929, under the leadership of Jawaharlal Nehru, the Congress formally demanded Purna Swaraj (complete independence) for India. The Viceroy's

announcement of a Round Table Conference in London, instead of offering dominion status, dissatisfied Congress leaders. Radicals within the Congress, led by Nehru and Subhas Chandra Bose, pushed for a more assertive stance. The Congress called on all members and nationalists to boycott elections and resign from the legislatures. To achieve complete independence, it was decided to launch the Civil Disobedience Movement. Additionally, Congress declared that January 26th would be observed annually as Independence Day. On January 26, 1930, Independence Day was celebrated nationwide, with thousands pledging their commitment to the inalienable right of the Indian people to freedom and the fruits of their labor, setting the stage for renewed resistance against British rule.

106. Trace the programme and progress of the Civil Disobedience Movement under the leadership of Mahatma Gandhi with reference to the following :
(i) The Dandi March of 1930.
(ii) Gandhi-Irwin Pact 1931.
(iii) The Second Round Table Conference of 1931.

Ans : SQP 1991,1992,2000,2002,2011,2015

(i) The Civil Disobedience Movement commenced with the Dandi March. On March 12, 1930, Gandhiji, accompanied by 79 satyagrahis, set out from his Sabarmati Ashram on a 390 km march to the village of Dandi on the west coast of Gujarat.
Main Aim and Progress of the Dandi March:
(a) The primary goal was to break the Salt Laws, symbolizing defiance against the government's oppressive laws.
(b) The march aimed to transform the national movement into a mass movement, engaging a broader section of the population.
(c) The defiance of the Salt Laws sparked the spread of the Civil Disobedience Movement across the country, leading to the boycott of foreign goods and, later, the refusal to pay taxes.
(d) Millions, including women, actively participated in the movement.
(e) The widespread impact of the movement ultimately compelled the government to sign the Gandhi-Irwin Pact.

(ii) (a) Gandhi–Irwin Pact was signed on March 5, 1931.
(b) Under the pact the government agreed to release all the political prisoners.
(c) It also agreed to withdraw all ordinances imposing curbs on political activities.
(d) In return Mahatma Gandhi consented to discontinue Civil Disobedience Movement.
(e) He also consented to take part in the Second Round Table Conference.

(iii) The Second Round Table Conference took place in London in September 1931, with Gandhiji selected as the sole representative of the Congress. The conference included representatives from all sections of Indian society.

Assurance from Governor	**Assurance from Gandhiji**
Release all political prisoners, except those involved in violence.	The Civil Disobedience Movement would be called off.
Repeal the ordinances issued in response to the Civil Disobedience Movement.	Gandhiji would represent the Congress at the Second Round Table Conference.
Allow coastal residents to produce salt.	Promote Hindu-Muslim unity.

Gandhiji called for a responsible government, independence for India, and the immediate granting of Dominion Status.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

107. Various circumstances were responsible for the Non-Cooperation Movement started by Gandhiji. In this context, write short notes on the following :
(i) Rowlatt Act, 1919.
(ii) Jallianwala Bagh Tragedy.
(iii) Khilafat Movement.

Ans : COMP 1992,2003

(i) Rowlatt Act, 1919 : The Rowlatt Act, also known as the "Black Act," was passed by the British government in March 1919. This act authorized the government to imprison any person suspected of terrorist activities without trial for up to two years. It also allowed the government to suppress any potential revolutionary activities, censor the press, and conduct searches without warrants. The Rowlatt Act was seen as a blatant violation of civil liberties and a continuation of wartime repressive measures, even though World War I had ended. The act led to widespread anger and protests across India, as people from all walks of life condemned the government's oppressive policies. Gandhiji, who was then emerging as a national leader, called for a nationwide hartal (strike) to protest against the act, which laid the foundation for the Non-Cooperation Movement.

(ii) The Jallianwala Bagh Tragedy, which took place on April 13, 1919, in Amritsar, Punjab, was one of the most horrific incidents in Indian history. On this day, a large crowd had gathered at Jallianwala Bagh to peacefully protest against the arrest of two nationalist leaders, Dr. Saifuddin Kitchlew and Dr. Satya Pal. Without warning, General Dyer ordered his troops to fire into the unarmed crowd, resulting in the deaths of hundreds of men, women, and children. The massacre shocked the entire nation and exposed the brutal nature of British colonial rule. It led to a massive wave of outrage and resentment against the British government, galvanizing support for the Non-Cooperation Movement. The tragedy also marked a turning point in the Indian freedom struggle, as it convinced many moderates that the British could no longer be trusted to govern India fairly.

(iii) Khilafat Movement :
(a) The Muslim population in India launched a strong agitation known as the Khilafat Movement, led by the Ali Brothers - Mohammed Ali and Shaukat Ali - along with Maulana Azad, Hakim Ajmal Khan, and Hasrat Mohani, in response to the injustice done to Turkey.
(b) Gandhiji recognized the Khilafat Movement as an opportunity to unite Hindus and Muslims in a common cause.
(c) In November 1919, Mahatma Gandhi was elected President of the All-India Khilafat Conference and advised the Khilafat Committee to adopt a policy of Non-Cooperation with the British government.
(d) By August 31, 1920, the Khilafat Non-Cooperation Movement had officially begun.
(e) People resigned from government jobs, shops selling foreign goods were picketed, students boycotted schools and colleges, and hartals and demonstrations were organized.
(f) By the end of 1920, the Khilafat Movement and the Congress Non-Cooperation Movement had merged into a single nationwide movement.
(g) Mahatma Gandhi agreed to merge the movements, seeing it as a chance to bring Muslims under the umbrella of a unified national struggle for independence.

108. With reference to the National Movement from 1930 to 1947, answer the following :
State any three features of the Programme of the Civil Disobedience Movement launched in 1930.

Ans : MAIN 2019

(i) Salt as a Unifying Symbol : Mahatma Gandhi recognized salt as a powerful

symbol that could unite the nation, as it was a basic necessity consumed by both the rich and the poor.

(ii) Patriotic Fervor : The Civil Disobedience Movement sparked a wave of patriotic fervor across the country, raising political awareness and a sense of responsibility among the masses.

(iii) Social Impact : The movement positively influenced social conditions, leading to the establishment of the Harijan Sevak Sangh, which helped untouchables gain basic rights and access to churches and temples.

109. The Simon Commission was appointed in 1927 to recommend constitutional changes in India. In this context answer the following questions :

(i) The purpose of the Commission.

(ii) Main recommendations.

(iii) People's reaction.

Ans : SQP 2020

(i) The Simon Commission was appointed by the British government in 1927 to review the working of the Government of India Act of 1919 and to recommend further constitutional reforms in India. Its primary purpose was to evaluate the effectiveness of the existing administrative structures and suggest changes to address any issues or shortcomings.

(ii) Main Recommendations of simon commission :

(a) Provinces should have full autonomy, including control over law and order, but Governors should retain overriding powers in areas like internal security.

(b) Provincial Legislative Councils should be expanded.

(c) Communal representation should be maintained.

(d) High Courts should remain under the administrative control of the Government of India.

(e) British troops and officers should continue to be present in India for many years.

(f) The Governor-General should have the freedom to appoint members of his Cabinet.

(iii) People reactions of simon commission :

(a) The proposals of the Commission were totally unacceptable to the major political parties, including the Indian National Congress, because it was an all-white Commission with no Indian member, and its recommendations were not in line with the aspirations of the Indian people.

The proposals of the Commission were totally unacceptable to the major political parties, including the Indian National Congress, because it was an all-white Commission with no Indian member, and its recommendations were not in line with the aspirations of the Indian people.

(b) **Widespread Hartal and Protests :** When the Simon Commission arrived in India on February 3, 1928, the entire country observed a hartal, with meetings held nationwide to condemn the Commission and reject its legitimacy.

(c) **Violent Repression :** The Commission's arrival and subsequent tours were met with massive protests, demonstrations, and hartals across the country. The police responded with repressive measures, including firing in Madras and lathi charges in many places.

(d) **National Outcry :** The slogan "Simon Go Back" echoed throughout the country, reflecting the widespread rejection of the Commission by the Indian populace. The Central Legislative Assembly also decided by majority that it would not cooperate with the Commission.

110. Japanese success in the East prompted the British Government to send the Cripps Mission to India. In this context, state :

(i) The proposals of the Cripps Mission.

(ii) Reasons for its rejection by the Congress.

(iii) Reasons for its rejection by other

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

communities.

(iv) Reasons for its rejection by the Muslim League.

Ans : COMP 1992,1993,1998

(i) The proposals of the Cripps Mission :
   (a) India would be granted Dominion Status immediately after the war.
   (b) A Constituent Assembly would be established, with members from British India elected by Provincial Legislative Assemblies and representatives from Princely States nominated by their rulers.
   (c) Provinces that did not agree with the new constitution would have the freedom to create their own constitution.
   (d) Measures would be taken to protect racial and religious minorities.
   (e) The responsibility for controlling and directing India's defense would remain with His Majesty's Government.

(ii) The Congress rejected the proposals because:
   (a) They included a provision that could lead to the division of India into numerous independent provinces.
   (b) There was no specified time frame for establishing the constitution-making body.
   (c) The Congress insisted that all subjects, including defense, be handed over to the National Government.

   Gandhiji was so dismayed by the proposals that he referred to them as a "post-dated cheque."

(iii) Other communities opposed the Cripps Mission because they believed it did not provide sufficient safeguards for their interests. They felt the proposals were too vague and lacked specific protections for smaller religious and ethnic groups. These communities were concerned about potential marginalization in the future governance of India. The absence of clear guarantees for their rights led to widespread dissatisfaction and rejection of the Cripps proposals by these groups.

(iv) The Muslim League rejected the Cripps Mission because:
   (a) **Demand for Pakistan:** The proposals did not address the Muslim League's demand for the creation of a separate state of Pakistan, which was a key priority for them.
   (b) **Fear of Hindu Domination:** The Muslim League feared that the proposed Constituent Assembly would be dominated by Hindus, leading to the marginalization of Muslims in a united India.

111. Read the passage given below and answer the questions that follow : "On August 7th and 8th in Bombay the All-India Congress Committee considered and debated in Public the resolution,.... The Committee resolves therefore to sanction,... the starting of a mass struggle on non-violent lines under the inevitable leadership of Gandhiji.

The resolution was finally passed late in the evening of August 8th, 1942. A few hours later, in the early morning of August 9th, a large number of arrests were made in Bombay and all over the country.

(From : The Discovery of India - Jawaharlal Nehru).

(i) What is meant by 'Mass struggle on non-violent lines' ? Which resolution was passed on the 8th of August, 1942 leading to a mass struggle on non-violent lines ?

(ii) State any three reasons behind the launching of the August, 1942 movement.

(iii) Discuss any four consequences of the 1942 Movement.

Ans : SQP 2005,2009

(i) A "Mass struggle on non-violent lines" refers to a large-scale movement involving the general population in acts of civil disobedience and protest, conducted without the use of violence. The resolution passed on August 8th, 1942, was the Quit India Resolution, which called for an immediate end to British rule in India and led to the launch of the Quit India Movement under the leadership of

Ans : MAIN 2008

Thus (b) is correct option.

16. What was the role of Subhash Chandra Bose in the INA?
(a) He was a strategist but did not lead the INA
(b) He formed and led the INA during World War II
(c) He supported the INA but was not directly involved
(d) He was a key figure in its defeat

Ans : SQP 2011

Thus (b) is correct option.

17. Which of the following was a key objective of Subhash Chandra Bose's Indian National Army (INA)?
(a) To fight alongside the British against Japan
(b) To establish a new colonial government in India
(c) To gain Indian independence with the support of Japan
(d) To unite India with Britain

Ans : MAIN 2022

Thus (c) is correct option.

18. What slogan is famously associated with Subhash Chandra Bose and the INA?
(a) "Jai Hind"
(b) "Inquilab Zindabad"
(c) "Satyagraha"
(d) "Vande Mataram"

Ans : SQP 2000

Thus (a) is correct option.

19. Which country provided support to the Indian National Army during World War II?
(a) United States
(b) Japan
(c) Germany
(d) Soviet Union

Ans : MAIN 2005

Thus (b) is correct option.

20. What was the major contribution of the Forward Bloc to India's freedom struggle?
(a) Leading peaceful protests against British policies
(b) Strengthening the demand for complete independence from the British
(c) Promoting unity between Hindus and Muslims
(d) Establishing educational institutions for Indian students

Ans : COMP 2019

Thus (b) is correct option.

ONE MARK QUESTIONS

21. Name the party formed by Subhash Chandra Bose in 1939.

or

Who was the founder of the 'Forward Bloc' ?

Ans : MAIN 2007,2015

Forward Bloc Or Subhash Chandra Bose.

22. What was the immediate objective of the Forward Bloc ?

Ans : SQP 2002,2012,2015

The main aim was the immediate liberation of India.

23. Name the leader who planned to fight for the liberation of India from abroad.

Ans : COMP 2017

Rashbehari Bose planned to fight for the liberation of India from abroad.

24. Who established the Provisional Government of India in 1943?

Ans : MAIN 2011

Subhash Chandra Bose, on 21st October 1943, announced the formation of the Provisional Government of Free India.

25. Who gave the call of 'Delhi Chalo' and 'Total Mobilisation' ?

Ans : SQP 2001

Netaji Subhash Chandra Bose.

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

BETTER THAN BOOK IN THE MARKET

Why students are choosing this book 👉

School teachers already use this content to set papers.

Still not sure?

- 👉 Match this PDF with your question papers
- 👉 See the similarity yourself

Why does this happen?

- ✓ Teachers have its PDF & Word files
- ✓ Easy access
- ✓ Direct copy-paste questions
- ✓ Same pattern followed

Don't miss out—get the advantage today!

Jawaharlal Nehru, and Maulana Abul Kalam Azad, were arrested, and the Congress party was outlawed.

(c) **Public Response:** The arrest of the leaders ignited widespread unrest. Strikes and protests erupted across the nation, leading to an unarmed yet highly violent revolt. Government properties were attacked, and transportation and communication networks were severely disrupted. Students played a significant role in the movement, resulting in the closure of colleges, universities, and schools. The movement was particularly intense in regions such as Bihar, Uttar Pradesh, Assam, and Bengal.

(d) The government employed police and military forces to quell the movement, resulting in hundreds of deaths and over 70,000 arrests within a span of less than five months. Armed aircraft were deployed in Bhagalpur and Monghyr in Bihar. Crowds were dispersed using lathi charges, rifles, pistols, and occasionally machine guns. Women and children were also targeted. The primary aim of the government was to intimidate and terrorize the populace.

(e) The Quit India Movement was significant for several reasons:

(a) **Mobilization of the Masses:** It marked a significant mobilization of the Indian masses against British rule, showcasing the widespread demand for independence.

(b) **Heightened Nationalism:** The movement intensified nationalist sentiments and galvanized public opinion against colonial rule.

(c) **Political Pressure:** It increased political pressure on the British government, eventually leading to a reconsideration of India's political future.

(d) **Foundation for Future Struggles:** The Quit India Movement set the stage for further political and revolutionary activities, leading to eventual independence in 1947.

113. The August Offer of 1940 evoked little enthusiasm in India. In this context, answer the following :

(i) Why was the August Offer made ?

(ii) What proposals did the August Offer contain ?

(iii) Why was the Offer rejected ?

Ans : SQP 1999

(i) In 1940, Lord Linlithgow proposed the August Offer to resolve the political impasse that had arisen during World War II. On July 27, 1940, the Congress party proposed to support the war effort if their demand for independence was met and a provisional national government, accountable to the existing Central Assembly, was established at the central level. In response to this, the British government put forth the August Offer.

(ii) (a) After the war, the government would establish a body to draft the Constitution of India.

(b) The Viceroy's Executive Council would be enlarged to include Indian members.

(c) A War Advisory Council would be created.

(d) The government reaffirmed its commitment to fully consider the interests of minorities.

(iii) The August Offer was rejected for the following reasons:

(a) **Insufficient Concessions:** It did not provide immediate autonomy or self-rule.

(b) **No Independence Timeline:** It lacked a clear plan for full independence.

(c) **Unaddressed Needs:** It did not address economic hardship or political repression.

(d) **Leader Discontent:** Key leaders and parties felt it did not meet their expectations.

NODIA

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

British undermined the Caliph's position after World War I, violating promises to protect Muslim holy places.

(b) **Religious Sentiments:** The weakening of the Caliphate hurt Muslim religious feelings.

(c) **British Betrayal:** Muslims felt betrayed as the British failed to honor their wartime assurances.

Merger of khilafat movement with the Non-Cooperation movement : The Khilafat and Non-Cooperation Movements merged in 1920 for the following reasons:

(a) **Common Enemy:** Both aimed to weaken British rule.

(b) **Hindu-Muslim Unity:** Gandhi saw the Khilafat issue as a way to foster unity and mass participation.

(c) **Strengthening the Movement:** The merger created a larger and more powerful national movement.

(iii) Non-Cooperation Movement withdrawn due to following reasons :

(a) **Suspension of the Movement:** Gandhiji suspended the Non-Cooperation Movement after the Chauri Chaura incident, where 22 policemen were killed by a mob. He believed that the nationalist workers had not fully grasped the principle of non-violence, which was central to his philosophy.

(b) **Decline of the Khilafat Movement:** The Khilafat Movement lost its significance after Turkey became a republic in 1922, following a revolution.

(c) **Formation of the Swaraj Party:** Dissatisfied with Gandhi's decision to withdraw the Non-Cooperation Movement, leaders like C.R. Das and Motilal Nehru decided to form the Swaraj Party after the Congress rejected the Council-entry proposal at the Gaya session.

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

(ii) What were the three causes of the Non-Cooperation Movement? Name the incident which led to the suspension of this movement.

(iii) Mahatma Gandhi and Lord Irwin signed a pact in 1931. Mention any two conditions that the Congress agreed to and two conditions that the British Government agreed to according to this pact.

Ans : MAIN 2023

(i) The march being led by Gandhiji in the picture is the Dandi March (Salt March) of 1930. This march launched the Civil Disobedience Movement, aimed at protesting against the British salt tax and asserting the right of Indians to produce their own salt.

(ii) Three causes of the Non-Cooperation Movement:

(a) **Jallianwala Bagh massacre:** The brutal massacre of peaceful protestors by British troops in Amritsar in 1919 caused widespread outrage.

(b) **Rowlatt Act:** This repressive law allowed the British government to imprison individuals without trial, sparking massive protests.

(c) **Khilafat Movement:** Gandhi supported this movement to show solidarity with Indian Muslims, protesting against the treatment of the Ottoman Caliph.

The movement was suspended following the Chauri Chaura incident (1922), where protestors clashed with the police, leading to the burning of a police station and the death of policemen.

(ii) Congress agreed to:

(a) **Suspend the Civil Disobedience Movement:** Congress stopped all civil disobedience actions, including protests and boycotts.

(b) **Participate in the Second Round Table Conference:** Congress agreed to join the discussions on constitutional reforms in London.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

British Government agreed to:

(a) **Release political prisoners:** The British agreed to free all non-violent political prisoners.

(b) **Permit salt production:** Indians were allowed to produce salt for personal use along the coast.

117. (i) Identify two male personalities in the picture given below. Mention four ideological tenets of the Indian leader.

(ii) Explain the reason behind the launching of the Khilafat Movement in India. Why were the Khilafat and Non-Cooperation Movements merged in 1920?

(iii) Why was the Non-Cooperation Movement withdrawn ?

Ans : SQP 2006

(i) Lord Mountbatten and Mahatma Gandhi. Four ideologies :

(a) Non-violence (Ahimsa)

(b) Satyagraha (Truth Force)

(c) Swadeshi

(d) Truth.

(ii) Reasons behind launching the khilafat movement : The Khilafat Movement (1919-1924) was launched by Indian Muslims to protest the British treatment of the Ottoman Empire and its Caliph, the spiritual leader of the Islamic world.

(a) **Disrespect to the Caliphate:** The

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

114. Soon after the beginning of the Second World War, the Congress ministers resigned. In this context answer the following questions :

(i) Cause for the resignation of the Congress ministries.

(ii) Reaction of the British Government to these resignations.

(iii) Reaction of the Muslim League.

Ans : COMP 1981

(i) The British involved India in the war without consulting the Central Legislature or Provincial Governments. In response, the Congress demanded the formation of an Indian government accountable to the Central Legislative Assembly and a promise of independence after the war. The British Government rejected these demands. Consequently, in November 1939, the Congress ministries in the provinces resigned, realizing that Britain was advancing its own imperialist interests in the war.

(ii) The British Government experienced a sense of relief following the resignation of the Congress ministers. This relief stemmed from the fact that the Congress had held power in eight out of the eleven provinces, giving them significant influence and the ability to potentially disrupt or hinder the government's war efforts. With the resignation, the British were no longer under the pressure of dealing with a political force that could challenge or obstruct their strategies during the war, allowing them to pursue their objectives with greater ease and without the threat of internal opposition from the Congress ministries.

(iii) The Muslim League was elated by the resignation of the Congress ministers and chose to observe the event as 'Deliverance Day.' Viewing this as a chance to demonstrate its loyalty to the British government, the Muslim League pledged full support for the war effort. However, they insisted that no constitutional plan would be finalized without their consent.

CASE BASED QUESTION

115. With reference to the picture given below, answer the following questions :

(i) Identify the Memorial built for those who were killed in this incident.

(ii) Where did this incident take place ?

(iii) Name the movement launched by Gandhi in 1920 as a consequence.

Ans : COMP 2019

(i) The memorial is the Jallianwala Bagh Memorial, which was built to honor the victims of the Jallianwala Bagh massacre.

(ii) This tragic incident took place at Jallianwala Bagh in Amritsar, Punjab, on April 13, 1919.

(iii) As a consequence of the Jallianwala Bagh massacre, Mahatma Gandhi launched the Non-Cooperation Movement in 1920.

116. Look at the picture given below and answer the following questions:

(i) Name the march being led by Gandhiji in the above picture. Which movement did this march launch?

NODIA

CHAPTER 6

FORWARD BLOC AND THE INA

SUMMARY

1. OBJECTIVES OF FORWARD BLOC

The Forward Bloc was formed by Subhash Chandra Bose in 1939 after his resignation as the President of the Indian National Congress. The primary objective of the Forward Bloc was to achieve complete independence from British rule through a united effort of all anti-British forces in India. Bose envisioned the Forward Bloc as a platform that would consolidate the left-wing elements within the Congress and push for a more radical approach to securing freedom.

The key objectives of the Forward Bloc included :

(i) **Complete Independence :** The ultimate goal was to liberate India from British colonial rule.

(ii) **Unity of Anti-British Forces :** The Forward Bloc aimed to unite all groups and individuals opposed to British rule, regardless of their political or ideological differences.

(iii) **Socialist Revolution :** Bose sought to lay the groundwork for a socialist society in India, where economic and social inequalities would be addressed.

(iv) **Mass Mobilization :** The Forward Bloc emphasized mass mobilization and active participation in the struggle for independence, including potential collaboration with foreign powers opposed to British imperialism.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

2. INDIAN NATIONAL ARMY (INA) AND SUBHASH CHANDRA BOSE

2.1 Objectives

The Indian National Army (INA) was initially formed in 1942 with the aim of liberating India from British rule. Subhash Chandra Bose took command of the INA in 1943, revitalizing it with a strong sense of purpose and nationalistic fervor. Under Bose's leadership, the INA became a symbol of resistance against British rule and played a significant role in the Indian freedom struggle. The key objectives of the INA under Subhash Chandra Bose were:

(i) **Overthrowing British Rule :** The primary goal of the INA was to wage an armed struggle to expel the British from India, using military force if necessary.

(ii) **Collaboration with Axis Powers :** Bose sought the support of Axis powers (Japan, Germany and Italy) to challenge British supremacy in India. The INA collaborated with the Japanese forces in Southeast Asia to launch a campaign against British India.

(iii) **Mobilization of Indians Abroad :** Bose actively recruited Indian expatriates and prisoners of war in Southeast Asia to join the INA, transforming it into a formidable fighting force.

3. CONTRIBUTIONS OF SUBHASH CHANDRA BOSE AND THE INA

Inspiration for Nationalism : Bose's leadership and the activities of the INA inspired a renewed sense of nationalism and resistance among Indians. His famous slogans, "Jai Hind" and "Give me blood, and I will give you

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

freedom," galvanized the Indian population to support the cause of independence.

Military Engagement : The INA engaged in military operations against the British forces in the northeastern regions of India, although these efforts ultimately did not succeed in liberating India.

Post-War Impact : Although the INA's military campaign did not achieve its goal, the trial of INA officers after World War II generated widespread public sympathy and resentment against British rule, contributing to the momentum for India's eventual independence in 1947.

Subhash Chandra Bose's legacy and the efforts of the INA remain an important chapter in India's struggle for freedom, highlighting the diverse approaches and sacrifices made to achieve independence from colonial rule.

MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTION

1. Read the two statements given below and select the option that shows the correct relationship between (A) and (R):

Assertion (A) : Forward Bloc had the objective of abolishing Zamindari System.

Reason (R) : Subhash Chandra Bose wanted to establish a socialist state.

(a) A is true but R is false
(b) R is the reason for A
(c) Both A and R are false
(d) Only R is true, A is false

Ans : MAIN 2024

Thus (d) is correct option.

2. Given below are the objectives of the Indian National Army. Identify the odd one out of the following:

(a) To organise a provisional government of Free India
(b) Total mobilisation of Indian manpower and money
(c) Unity, faith and sacrifice
(d) To train and organise public opinion in the country

Ans : MAIN 2024

Thus (d) is correct option.

3. Surat split : Moderates and Assertive Nationalists : : Tripuri Split .....?.....

(a) Gandhiji and Bose
(b) Gandhiji and Tilak
(c) Gandhiji and Jinnah
(d) Gandhiji and Nehru

Ans : SQP 2001

Thus (a) is correct option.

4. Name the army under 'Subhash Chandra Bose' command.

(a) British Indian Army
(b) Indian Independence Army
(c) Indian National Army
(d) POW Army

Ans : COMP 2005

Thus (c) is correct option.

5. Which of the following were the objectives of INA?

(i) To organise an armed revolution and to fight against the British army.
(ii) To organise a provisional government of free India.
(iii) To mobilise Indian manpower and money to end the World war.

(a) (i) and (ii)
(b) (i) and (iii)
(c) (ii) and (iii)
(d) (i), (ii) and (iii)

Ans : MAIN 2004

Thus (a) is correct option.

6. INA :.....?..... : Quit India : Do or Die

(a) Jai Hind
(b) Unity Faith, Sacrifice
(c) Delhi Chalo
(d) Give me blood, and I'll give you freedom

Ans : SQP 2005

Thus (d) is correct option.

NODIA

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

7. Subhash Chandra Bose was re-elected the President of INC at the Tripuri Session in 1939 by defeating which of the following candidates?
(a) Dr. Rajendra Prasad
(b) J.B. Kriplani
(c) Pattabhi Sitaramaiya
(d) Nellie Sengupta

Ans : COMP 2008

Thus (c) is correct option.

8. Arrange the following events of Netaji's life in chronological order
(i) Congress Presidents hip
(ii) Formation of Forward Block
(iii) Provisional Government of free India
(iv) Supreme Commander of INA
(a) (i), (ii), (iii) and (iv)
(b) (iv) (ii), (iii) and (i)
(c) (iv) (i) (iii) and (ii)
(d) (i), (iii), (iv) and (ii)

Ans : MAIN 2017

Thus (a) is correct option.

9. The Forward Bloc would work for the establishment of _____ state.
(a) Capitalist
(b) Socialist
(c) Combination of (a) and (b)
(d) None of the above

Ans : SQP 2009

Thus (b) is correct option.

10. What was the main objective of the Forward Bloc formed by Subhash Chandra Bose?
(a) To promote the idea of a unified India under British rule
(b) To demand complete independence from British colonial rule
(c) To form alliances with European powers
(d) To support the policies of the Indian National Congress

Ans : COMP 2008

Thus (b) is correct option.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

11. Who was the founder of the Forward Bloc in 1939?
(a) Jawaharlal Nehru
(b) Subhash Chandra Bose
(c) Lala Lajpat Rai
(d) Gandhi

Ans : MAIN 2018

Thus (b) is correct option.

12. The Provincial Government under Netaji first acquired which of the following territories in India?
(a) Mowdok
(b) Ukhral and Kohima
(c) Andaman and Nicobar Islands
(d) Imphal

Ans : COMP 2021

Thus (c) is correct option.

13. To attain Independence Netaji did not lay stress on which of the following?
(a) Organization of masses
(b) Large scale industrializations
(c) Small scale industries
(d) National Planning

Ans : MAIN 2006

Thus (d) is correct option.

14. What was one of the primary goals of the Indian National Army (INA) led by Subhash Chandra Bose?
(a) To assist the British in World War II
(b) To fight for India's independence through armed struggle
(c) To support the British colonial system in India
(d) To negotiate a peaceful settlement with the British

Ans : SQP 2003

Thus (b) is correct option.

15. Where was the Indian National Army (INA) formed?
(a) Lahore
(b) Singapore
(c) Calcutta
(d) Delhi

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

Mahatma Gandhi.

(ii) Three reasons behind the launching of the August, 1942 movement :
   (a) **Failure of Cripps Mission:** The 1942 Cripps Mission failed to offer immediate independence, frustrating Indian leaders.
   (b) **Japanese Threat:** Advancing Japanese forces in WWII raised concerns about India's security under British rule.
   (c) **Demand for Independence:** Growing impatience with British rule led Congress to launch the Quit India Movement for immediate independence.

(iii) Four consequences of the 1942 Movement:
   (a) **Demonstration of National Unity:** The movement revealed the intensity of national sentiment and convinced the British that their control over India was nearing its end. People from across the country united in their struggle against British rule.
   (b) **Setback for the British:** British officials realized that they could no longer maintain their grip on India, as the movement clearly demonstrated the diminishing power of British rule.
   (c) **Emergence of Parallel Governments:** A notable aspect of the Quit India Movement was the formation of parallel governments in places like Ballia in Uttar Pradesh, Midnapur in Bengal, and Satara in Maharashtra.
   (d) **Growth of the Congress Socialist Party:** The Quit India Movement significantly strengthened the Congress Socialist Party, whose active and heroic participation in the movement influenced the broader Indian National Congress with its socialist ideals.

112. On August 8, 1942 the All India Congress Committee passed the famous Quit India Resolution. In this context explain :
(i) The reasons that led to the passing of the Quit India Resolution.
(ii) The objectives of the Quit India Movement.
(iii) The spread of the Movement.
(iv) The reaction of the British Government.
(v) Explain any four significant effects of the Quit India Movement.

Ans : MAIN 1993,1995,1998,2013,2018,2020

(i) The reasons that led to the passing of the Quit India Resolution:
   (a) **Failure of the Cripps Mission:** The Cripps Mission's proposals failed to meet Indian aspirations for immediate independence and included provisions that could potentially divide India into smaller independent regions, creating dissatisfaction among Indian leaders.
   (b) **War Situation:** The possibility of a Japanese attack on India, combined with the lack of Indian power to resist, heightened the demand for complete independence as Indian leaders, including Gandhiji, sought to avoid internal anarchy and external aggression.
   (c) **Internal Anarchy:** The worsening communal situation and the Muslim League's demand for a separate state of Pakistan contributed to a deteriorating internal environment, further justifying the call for immediate independence.

(ii) The objectives of the Quit India Movement :
   (a) The goal was to launch a large-scale, non-violent struggle for independence to end British rule in India.
   (b) The Quit India resolution also called for the establishment of a provisional government to defend India against foreign aggression.

(iii) Spread of the Movement :
   (a) **Quit India Resolution:** The Quit India Resolution was passed on 8th August 1942, with "Do or Die" as the rallying cry of the movement.
   (b) **Arrest of Leaders:** On the morning of 9th August 1942, all key Congress leaders, including Mahatma Gandhi,

NODIA

26. What was the objective of the Indian National Army?

Ans : SQP 2019

The objective of the Indian National Army was to organise on armed revolution and to fight the British Army with modern arms.

27. When was Indian National Army formally established ?

Ans : COMP 2010

It was formally established on 1st September, 1942.

28. Who announced the formation of Provisional Government of Free India ?

Ans : MAIN 2003

Netaji Subhash Chandra Bose.

29. Name any four countries which accorded recognition to the Provisional Govern-ment.

Ans : MAIN 2003

Japan, Germany, Italy and Burma.

30. Name any two slogans which became the battle cry of the INA.

Ans : SQP 2018

'Delhi Chalo' and 'Jai Hind'.

31. Name the military organization of which Bose became the Supreme Commander in 1943.

Ans : MAIN 2024

Indian National Army (INA).

32. Name the islands which were handed over to INA by Japan. What names were given by Subhash Chandra Bose to these islands?

Ans : COMP 2001

Andaman and Nicobar Islands were handed over to the INA. These were renamed as 'Shahid' and 'Swami.

33. Who was Rash Behari Bose ?

Ans : COMP 2013

He was an Indian revolutionary who went to Japan in 1915 and established Indian Independence League in 1942. He played a vital role in raising the Indian National Army.

34. Why did Subhash Chandra Bose resign from the Presidentship of the Indian National Congress ?

Ans : SQP 2018

Subhash Chandra Bose resigned due to some differences with Gandhiji.

TWO MARKS QUESTIONS

35. Name the Party formed by Subhash Chandra Bose in May 1939. What was the party's programme for rebuilding India?

Ans : MAIN 2000

The party formed by Subhash Chandra Bose in May 1939 was the Forward Bloc. The party's programme for rebuilding India included :

(i) Planning for the reorganization of agriculture and industry along socialist principles.
(ii) Abolition of the Zamindari system.
(iii) Establishment of a new monetary and credit system.

36. Why couldn't the Indian National Army capture Imphal?

Ans : MAIN 2006

The soldiers of the INA, fighting alongside Japanese forces, advanced to Imphal in Manipur. However, shortly thereafter, the Japanese were compelled to redirect their aircraft from the Indo-Burma zone to the Pacific zone. Additionally, the monsoon season began before Imphal could be captured.

37. Why did Rash behari Bose organise the Indian Independence League? Who was the first Commander-in-Chief of the Indian National Army?

Ans : SQP 2005

Rashbehari Bose, an experienced revolutionary who fled to Japan in 1915, organized the Indian Independence League

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

(iii) Subhash Chandra Bose was the founder of the Indian National Army (INA).
Three objectives of the Indian National Army:
(a) **Liberation of India :** The primary objective was to free India from British colonial rule through military means.
(b) **Mobilization of Indian Soldiers :** To rally and organize Indian soldiers and expatriates to fight against the British forces.
(c) **Establishment of an Independent Government :** To establish a sovereign and independent government in India after the successful removal of British authority.

48. Using the following points summarise Netaji's contribution to the National Movement :
(i) His escape from house arrest.
(ii) His becoming the Supreme Commander of the INA.
(iii) Subhash Chandra Bose's contribution to the National Movement.

Ans : COMP 2021

(i) In July 1940, Bose was arrested under the Defence of India Rules and went on a hunger strike. As his health deteriorated, the government was forced to release him. However, he was placed under house arrest in Kolkata. On January 26, 1941, he successfully escaped, evading police surveillance. Traveling through Peshawar and Russia, he arrived in Berlin on March 28, where the Indian community warmly welcomed him as their leader, Netaji and greeted him with the slogan 'Jai Hind'. Bose called upon his countrymen via radio to take up arms against the British and established Free India Centres in Rome and Paris.
(ii) On August 26, 1943, Subhash Chandra Bose officially took command of the Indian National Army (INA) and became its Supreme Commander. His first significant move was the formal declaration of the Provisional Government of Free India on October 21, 1943. Shortly after, the Provisional Government declared war on Britain and the USA. Within a few days, nine countries, including Japan and Germany, recognized the government headed by Bose. The Provisional Government gained its first territory when Japan handed over the Andaman and Nicobar Islands on November 6, 1943. Bose subsequently renamed these islands as 'Shahid' and 'Swaraj', respectively.
(iii) Contributions of Subhash Chandra Bose to the National Movement :
(a) **Formation of the Forward Bloc (1939):** After resigning from the Congress due to ideological differences, Bose formed the Forward Bloc to unite anti-British forces and push for immediate independence. His party focused on radical measures, socialist principles and mass mobilization.
(b) **Leadership of the INA (1943):** Bose assumed control of the Indian National Army (INA) in 1943, turning it into a powerful symbol of resistance against British rule. The INA, fighting alongside the Japanese, advanced to Imphal, Manipur and hoisted the Indian flag for the first time on liberated soil.
(c) **Provisional Government of Free India :** Bose established the Provisional Government of Free India in 1943, giving a symbolic declaration of independence. This government gained recognition from Axis powers and played a role in mobilizing support for the INA.
(d) **Inspiring Nationalism :** Bose's leadership, along with slogans like "Jai Hind" and "Give me blood, and I will give you freedom," stirred nationalist fervor among Indians. His role in the INA, despite its military failure, inspired revolts in the Indian Navy and elsewhere, weakening British control in India.

NODIA
Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

following :
(i) Name the new party which he formed.
(ii) Under what circumstances he resigned from the Congress.
(iii) What led to the formation of the new party ?
(iv) Mention the ideals of the new Party.

Ans : MAIN 1993,2018,2020,2008

(i) He formed the Forward Bloc in 1939.
(ii) Subhash Chandra Bose became Congress President in 1938, reflecting the growing influence of the Leftist and Socialist wing within the Congress. He was re-elected in 1939, defeating Gandhi's candidate, Pattabhi Sitaramayya. Gandhi viewed this as a personal defeat. A conflict arose between Bose and Gandhi over the formation of the Congress Working Committee. Bose wanted the freedom to choose his own committee, while Gandhi, fearing Bose might use violent means in the struggle for independence, disapproved. Despite mediation efforts by Nehru and Jayaprakash Narayan, the deadlock persisted. As a result, Bose found himself isolated, with no one willing to join his Working Committee due to Gandhi's disapproval. Consequently, Bose resigned from the Congress Presidentship on April 29, 1939 and Dr. Rajendra Prasad, a Gandhian, succeeded him.
(iii) The formation of the Forward Bloc was driven by Bose's desire to continue the fight for complete independence through more radical means. After resigning from the Congress Presidency, Bose sought to unite left-wing forces and mobilize the masses for a more direct and militant struggle against British rule.
(iv) The immediate objective of the Forward Bloc was to liberate India with the support of workers, peasants, youth and other radical organizations.
Main ideals of the Party:
(a) Develop the economy based on socialist principles.
(b) Abolish landlordism, specifically the Zamindari System.
(c) Introduce a new monetary and credit system.

NODIA

2. The heroism of the Indians was revealed by the courage of Subhash Chandra Bose and the Indian National Army. With reference to this, answer the following questions:
(i) Mention any three objectives of the Forward Bloc.
(ii) Mention any three contributions of Subhash Chandra Bose.
(iii) Who was the founder of the Indian National Army ? Mention any three of its objectives.

Ans : MAIN 2023

(i) Three objectives of the Forward Bloc :
(a) **Complete independence for India :** The Forward Bloc aimed at achieving full and immediate independence from British rule.
(b) **Revolutionary socialism :** It sought to establish a socialist society based on equality and justice, free from exploitation.
(c) **Mobilizing the masses :** The Forward Bloc aimed to bring together various sections of society, including peasants, workers and youth, to create a united front against British colonialism.
(ii) Three contributions of Subhash Chandra Bose :
(a) **Formation of the Indian National Army (INA) :** Subhash Chandra Bose founded the INA to fight against British rule with military strength, garnering support from Indian soldiers and expatriates.
(b) **Leadership and Inspiration :** Bose provided strong leadership and inspired millions of Indians to join the freedom struggle, promoting the idea of complete and immediate independence.
(c) **Advocacy of Armed Struggle :** He emphasized the need for armed resistance against British rule, contrasting with the non-violent methods advocated by leaders like Mahatma Gandhi.

Along with Japanese forces, they held Burma for nearly a year.

INA's impact on the National Movement: The INA became a symbol of Indian unity and sacrifice. The trial of INA officers, though they were found guilty, resulted in no punishment due to nationwide protests.

56. Study the given picture and answer the following questions :

(i) Identify the given person.
(ii) Name the political organization with which she was associated.

Ans : SQP 2019

(i) Captain Lakshmi Sehgal
(ii) She led the Rani Jhansi Regiment Indian National Army (INA).

www.nodia.in

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

49. With reference to the Indian National Army, answer the following questions :

(i) Mention the circumstances which led to the formation of the Indian National Army.

(ii) Contribution of Subhash Chandra Bose to the National Movement.

(ii) Objectives of INA.

Ans : SQP 2001,2003,2008,2011,2016

(i) Circumstances which led to the formation of the Indian National Army :

(a) **Formation of the Indian Independence League :** During World War II, Japan captured over 40,000 Indian soldiers. Along with Indians living in Southeast Asia, they formed the Indian Independence League under Rash Behari Bose's leadership.

(b) **The Tokyo Conference (March 28-31, 1942) :** Attended by over 120 delegates from countries like Burma, Malaya, Thailand and Japan, the conference passed a resolution to form the Indian National Army (INA). Mohan Singh became the Commander-in-Chief and Rash Behari Bose was elected President.

(c) **Leadership of Subhash Chandra Bose :** On August 26, 1943, Subhash Chandra Bose took command of the INA as its Supreme Commander. It was also decided to strengthen and expand the Indian Independence League.

(ii) Contribution of Subhash Chandra Bose to the National Movement :

(a) **Subhash Chandra Bose's Decision :** Subhash Chandra Bose, despite passing the Indian Civil Service Examination, chose not to join the British Government. He is popularly known as Netaji for his courage, sacrifice and boldness.

(b) **Formation of the Forward Bloc :** In May 1939, due to differences with Gandhiji, Subhash Chandra Bose resigned from the Congress Presidency and formed the Forward Bloc. The party aimed to liberate India with the support of workers, peasants, youth and radical organizations.

(c) **Leadership of the INA :** In 1943, Bose officially took charge of the Indian National Army (INA). The INA fought alongside Japanese forces and advanced up to Imphal, Manipur. On October 21, 1943, Bose declared the formation of the Provisional Government of Free India.

(d) **INA's Battle Cry and Victories :** The slogans "Delhi Chalo" and "Jai Hind" became the battle cry of the INA. On March 19, 1944, the INA hoisted the Tricolour on liberated Indian soil and they, along with Japanese forces, held Burma for nearly a year.

(e) **INA's Impact on the National Movement :** The INA symbolized unity, dedication and sacrifice. The trials of INA officers led to widespread protests, affecting the armed forces and sparking a revolt in the Indian Navy in Bombay in 1946. Although the INA's mission failed, it left a lasting legacy of patriotism.

(iii) Objectives of Indian National Army :

(a) The primary objective of the INA was to overthrow British rule in colonial India.

(b) To establish a provisional government for free India.

(c) To seek assistance from the Japanese Army and raise the Indian flag on Indian soil by ousting the British.

(d) To expand and strengthen the Indian Independence League.

NODIA

50. In 1939, Subhash Chandra Bose formed the Forward Bloc. In this context, answer the following questions :

(i) Why did Subhash Chandra Bose decide to form a new party ?

(ii) What were the aims and objectives of the new party formed by Subhash Chandra Bose.

(iii) Mention two main objectives of the Provisional Government of Free India.

Name any two countries that recognized the Provisional Government of India formed in Singapore in 1943.

Ans : COMP 2018

(i) Subhash Chandra Bose decided to form a new party, the Forward Bloc, due to his differences with the Indian National Congress leadership, especially with Mahatma Gandhi. Bose advocated for a more radical and immediate approach to achieving independence, including the use of mass mobilization and potential alliances with foreign powers. His views on direct action clashed with the Congress's non-violent strategies, leading to his resignation from the Congress presidency and the formation of the Forward Bloc in 1939.

(ii) Aims and objectives of the new party formed by Subhash Chandra Bose :
- (a) Achieve immediate and complete independence from British rule.
- (b) Unite all anti-British forces, including workers, peasants and youth, to fight for liberation.
- (c) Promote socialist principles to develop India's economy, abolish the Zamindari system and introduce a new monetary and credit system.

(iii) Two main objectives of the Provisional Government of Free India:
- (a) To lead an armed struggle to liberate India from British rule.
- (b) To establish a free and independent Indian government.

Two countries that recognized the Provisional Government of India:
1. Japan
2. Germany

51. As the Supreme Commander of the INA, Subhash Chandra Bose inspired, from outside the country, many in his homeland. In this context, answer the following questions :
(i) How can you say that the INA was a unique army ?
(ii) What were the main objectives of the INA?
(iii) What were the achievements of the INA ?

Ans : MAIN 2000

(i) The Indian National Army (INA) was conceived by Mohan Singh, an Indian officer in the British Indian Army, in Malaya during World War II. Instead of retreating with the British, Singh sought Japanese support to form an Indian military unit. The Japanese had, up to that point, only encouraged Indian civilians to join anti-British groups but had not considered a military wing. After the fall of Singapore, which brought 45,000 Indian prisoners of war (POWs) into Mohan Singh's sphere of influence, the INA began to take shape. By the end of 1942, around 40,000 Indian POWs had expressed their willingness to join the INA. However, the INA was unique as it was formed on foreign soil, far from India and was dependent on foreign support for arms, equipment and transport. The INA relied on the patriotic contributions of Indians scattered across East Asia, providing essential supplies and manpower. Despite these challenges, the INA's greatest strength was the patriotic spirit and self-sacrifice of its volunteers, who were committed to laying down their lives for India's independence. Its eventual leadership under Subhash Chandra Bose further galvanized the movement, inspiring even more widespread support for the fight against British rule.

(ii) Objectives of the INA : The main objectives of the INA were the following :
- (a) To lead an armed revolution and confront the British Army with modern weaponry.
- (b) As organizing a revolution from within India was difficult, the task was assigned to Indians residing abroad, particularly in East Asia.
- (c) To form a Provisional Government of Free India to efficiently mobilize all forces.
- (d) To fully mobilize Indian manpower and financial resources for an all-out war effort.

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

(e) The motto of the INA was 'unity, faith and sacrifice'.

(iii) The INA, alongside the Japanese army, captured several territories in Southeast Asia. In 1944, they seized Kohima and advanced to Imphal in Manipur. On March 19, 1944, they had the privilege of hoisting the tricolor flag for the first time. Although the INA did not achieve its goal of liberating India from colonial rule, its contribution to the freedom struggle is unforgettable. Firstly, it set a powerful example of patriotism for the Indian people. The bravery and sacrifices of INA soldiers stirred political awareness among Indian forces. Secondly, it made the British realize that they could no longer depend on Indian soldiers to uphold their control over India. Thirdly, the trial of INA officers at the Red Fort in Delhi garnered nationwide sympathy. Lastly, the INA's influence spread to the Indian armed forces, sparking revolts in the Indian Navy in Mumbai and similar uprisings in Kolkata and Chennai, shaking the foundations of British rule.

52. With reference to the Indian National Army, answer the following questions :

(i) Explain three measures taken by Subhash Chandra Bose to establish a socialist society.

(ii) What were the three decisions taken at the Tokyo Conference ?

(iii) Explain any four contributions of Subhash Chandra Bose to the National Movement.

Ans : SQP 2009

(i) Three measures taken by Subhash Chandra Bose to establish a socialist society :

(a) **Abolition of the Zamindari System:** Bose wanted to end landlordism and ensure land redistribution to uplift the peasants and create a more equal society.

(b) **Economic Development on Socialist Lines:** He envisioned a state-led economy with strong government control over industries to prevent exploitation and ensure the well-being of workers and the poor.

(c) **New Monetary and Credit System:** Bose proposed reforms to establish a more just and equitable financial system to support the growth of a socialist society.

(ii) Three decisions were taken at the Tokyo Conference :

(a) **Formation of the Indian National Army (INA):** A resolution was passed to formally create the INA, with Mohan Singh as its first Commander-in-Chief and Rash Behari Bose as the President.

(b) **Leadership of the INA:** The INA would operate under the command of Subhash Chandra Bose, once he assumed leadership in 1943.

(c) **Expansion of the Indian Independence League:** It was decided to expand and strengthen the Indian Independence League to mobilize Indians in Southeast Asia and gather resources for the independence struggle.

(iii) Four contributions of Subhash Chandra Bose to the National Movement :

(a) **Formation of the Forward Bloc (1939):** After resigning from the Congress due to ideological differences, Bose formed the Forward Bloc to unite anti-British forces and push for immediate independence. His party focused on radical measures, socialist principles and mass mobilization.

(b) **Leadership of the INA (1943):** Bose assumed control of the Indian National Army (INA) in 1943, turning it into a powerful symbol of resistance against British rule. The INA, fighting alongside the Japanese, advanced to Imphal, Manipur and hoisted the Indian flag for the first time on liberated soil.

(c) **Provisional Government of Free India:** Bose established the Provisional Government of Free India

in 1943, giving a symbolic declaration of independence. This government gained recognition from Axis powers and played a role in mobilizing support for the INA.

(d) **Inspiring Nationalism:** Bose's leadership, along with slogans like "Jai Hind" and "Give me blood and I will give you freedom," stirred nationalist fervor among Indians. His role in the INA, despite its military failure, inspired revolts in the Indian Navy and elsewhere, weakening British control in India.

53. The last nine years of the Indian freedom struggle were marked by widespread agitations. In this context, discuss :

(i) A rift between Gandhiji and Subhash Chandra Bose.

(ii) The Quit India Movement (1942).

(iii) The impact of Quit India Movement on the National Movement.

Ans : MAIN 2011

(i) The rift between Gandhiji and Subhash Chandra Bose began at the Tripuri session of the Congress in 1939. Gandhiji advised Bose not to stand for re-election as Congress President for a second term, but Bose chose to contest. Gandhiji endorsed Pattabhi Sitaramayya as his preferred candidate, putting his full support behind him. Despite this, Bose won the election by a majority of votes. After the result, Gandhiji remarked that Sitaramayya's defeat was his own. Following this, 13 members of the Congress Working Committee resigned in protest. Bose was then asked to form a Working Committee aligned with Gandhiji's views. Most delegates who had backed Bose still expressed their confidence in Gandhiji's leadership, leading to a deadlock between the two leaders.

(ii) In August 1942, Gandhiji launched the Quit India Movement ("Bharat Chhodo Andolan"). On 8 August 1942, the All India Congress Committee passed a resolution in Bombay, demanding the immediate end of British rule. The Congress planned a mass, non-violent struggle on a national scale. Gandhiji's slogan, "Do or Die" ("Karo ya Maro"), inspired people across the country to dream of a free India.

The British government responded quickly by banning the Congress and arresting its leaders before they could mobilize the masses. Despite this, people launched hartals and protests nationwide, attacking symbols of British authority like railway stations, law courts and police stations. In some places, people even formed independent governments, especially in regions like Uttar Pradesh, Bihar, Bengal, Bombay, Odisha and Andhra Pradesh.

The British reacted with brutal repression, using the army and police to crush the movement. Demonstrators were fired upon and over 60,000 people were imprisoned by December 1942. Leaders like Jai Prakash Narayan, Aruna Asaf Ali and Ram Manohar Lohia went underground to guide the movement. Ultimately, the movement proved that the British could no longer rule India against the will of its people..

(iii) The impact of Quit India Movement on the National Movement :

(a) The Quit India Movement showcased the depth of nationalist sentiment across the country and revealed the people's remarkable ability for struggle and sacrifice.

(b) It was the last major mass uprising before independence, with people from all regions and communities Hindus, Muslims, Sikhs, Christians, Parsis and even those from the Princely States participating in processions and demonstrations.

(c) The movement also strengthened the Congress Socialist Party due to its prominent and courageous role.

(d) After the Quit India Movement

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

was suppressed in 1942, the issue of constitutional reforms remained dormant until the end of World War II in 1945.

CASE BASED QUESTION

54. Study the given picture and answer the following questions :

(i) Identify the given person.
(ii) Name the political organization with which he has associated.

Ans : MAIN 2018

(i) The person in the picture is Subhash Chandra Bose.
(ii) Subhash Chandra Bose was associated with the Indian National Congress (INC) and later founded the Forward Bloc. He also led the Indian National Army (INA) during World War II.

55. Study the picture and answer the following questions :

(i) Identify the person in the picture and name the army organized by him. How was this army formed and where ?
(ii) What were the objectives of this army ? Did it achieve its objectives ?
(iii) Mention this army's contributions to the India's freedom struggle.

Ans : COMP 2023

(i) The person in the picture is Subhash Chandra Bose. He organized the Indian National Army (INA), which was formed with the help of Indian prisoners of war and expatriates in Southeast Asia, primarily in Singapore, during World War II.
(ii) The main objectives of this army were :
  (a) To launch an armed revolution and combat the British army using modern weaponry.
  (b) Since organizing an armed revolution from India was not feasible, the responsibility fell on Indians abroad, particularly those in East Asia.
  (c) To establish a Provisional Government of Free India for the effective mobilization of all available forces.
  (d) Complete mobilization of Indian manpower and financial resources for a full-scale war effort.
  (e) The INA's core motto was 'unity, faith and sacrifice.'
(iii) Though the INA did not succeed in its mission, Subhash Chandra Bose and its soldiers set an enduring example of patriotism for the Indian people. INA soldiers fought bravely alongside Japanese forces, reaching Imphal and Manipur.
  (a) On October 21, 1943, Subhash Chandra Bose announced the formation of the Provisional Government of Free India and declared war on the Allies. Japan handed over the Andaman and Nicobar Islands and "Delhi Chalo" and "Jai Hind" became the INA's rallying cries.
  (b) **INA's victories in Southeast Asia:** On March 19, 1944, the INA hoisted the tricolour on liberated Indian soil.

NODIA

to rally the Indian community in the fight for India's independence.
The first Commander-in-Chief of the Indian National Army (INA) was General Mohan Singh.

38. State two important objectives of the Indian National Army.

Ans : MAIN 2014

(i) The army aimed to overthrow British rule in colonial India with the support of the Japanese.
(ii) To establish a provisional government.

39. Mention any two contribution of the INA to the freedom movement?

Ans : COMP 2023

(i) Inspiring Nationalism : The INA, under Subhash Chandra Bose, fueled a strong sense of nationalism and unity among Indians.
(ii) Challenging British Rule : The INA's military efforts weakened British authority and increased support for the independence movement.

40. Why did Subhash Chandra Bose resign from the Congress Presidents hip ?

Ans : SQP 2020

When Subhash Chandra Bose sought Gandhiji's opinion regarding the refusal of the New Working Committee members to act as a puppet President under Gandhi's influence, he received no response. As a result, Subhash Chandra Bose resigned from the Congress Presidentship on 29 April, 1939.

41. Name any three countries that recognised the Provisional Government of India formed in Singapore in 1943.

Ans : SQP 2008

(i) Japan
(ii) Italy and
(iii) Germany recognized this Provisional Government of India.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

42. Mention two main objectives of the Provisional Government of Free India.

Ans : MAIN 2002

(i) To initiate and lead the struggle to expel the British and their allies from Indian soil.
(ii) To establish a permanent National Government of Free India (Azad Hind).

43. Name the two slogans which became the war cry of the INA. Which islands were renamed as 'Shahid' and 'Swaraj'?

Ans : COMP 2021

The two slogans that became the war cry of the Indian National Army (INA) were "Jai Hind" and "Chalo Dilli".
The Andaman and Nicobar Islands were renamed as 'Shahid' and 'Swaraj' respectively.

44. Mention two contributions of Subhash Chandra Bose to India's free struggle.

Ans : COMP 2007

(i) He reorganized the Indian National Army (INA), which played a crucial role in India's freedom struggle. The INA was the first to hoist the Tricolour flag on liberated Indian soil.
(ii) He formed the Forward Bloc to promote economic development based on socialist principles.

45. Mention two contributions of Subhash Chandra Bose to India's freedom struggle.

Ans : SQP 2004

(i) He established a new party called the Forward Bloc with the aim of liberating India.
(ii) He reorganized the Indian National Army, which hoisted the Tricolour flag for the first time on liberated Indian soil.

THREE MARKS QUESTIONS

46. Subhash Chandra Bose laid the foundation of a radical and progressive party within the Congress in 1939. In this context answer the

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

CHAPTER 7

INDEPENDENCE AND PARTITION OF INDIA

SUMMARY

1. CABINET MISSION PLAN (1946)

The Cabinet Mission Plan was a crucial attempt to resolve the political deadlock between the Indian National Congress and the Muslim League, both of which were demanding different visions for India's future. The plan aimed at preserving Indian unity while granting considerable autonomy to provinces. Its key clauses included :

1.1 Federal Structure

The plan proposed a weak central government with control over only foreign affairs, defense, and communication, while the provinces would retain autonomy over other subjects.

1.2 Groupings

Provinces were divided into three groups Group A (Hindu-majority provinces), Group B (Muslim-majority provinces in the northwest), and Group C (Muslim-majority provinces in the east).

1.3 Constituent Assembly

A Constituent Assembly was to be elected by provincial legislatures to draft the future Constitution of India.

1.4 Interim Government

Until the Constitution was framed, an interim government comprising representatives from different political parties was to be set up at the center.

However, the Muslim League's insistence on a separate state and the Congress's refusal to accept groupings based on religion led to the plan's failure.

2. MOUNTBATTEN PLAN (1947)

Lord Mountbatten, the last Viceroy of India, proposed a plan that laid the foundation for the partition of British India. This plan was driven by the urgency to prevent a civil war due to communal tensions and to grant India its independence swiftly. Key clauses included:

2.1 Partition

India was to be divided into two independent dominions, India and Pakistan, based on religious majorities.

2.2 Boundary Commission

Sir Cyril Radcliffe headed the commission to demarcate the boundaries between India and Pakistan in Punjab and Bengal, areas with mixed populations.

2.3 Princely States

The princely states were given the option to join either India or Pakistan or remain independent, although Mount batten urged them to join one of the two dominions.

2.4 Dominion Status

Both India and Pakistan would become independent dominions within the British Commonwealth, enjoying full autonomy but acknowledging the British monarch as the symbolic head of the Commonwealth.

3. INDIAN INDEPENDENCE ACT (1947)

The Indian Independence Act, passed by the British Parliament in July 1947, legally sanctioned the partition and granted independence to India and Pakistan. The act's clauses were:

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

35. Mention any two provisions of the Indian Independence Act, 1947.

Ans : SQP 2020

(i) The Act established two independent dominions, India and Pakistan, effective from August 15, 1947.
(ii) The office of the Secretary of State for India was abolished.

36. State two important reasons that prompted the British to withdraw from India.

Ans : MAIN 2015

The British exit was undoubtedly graceful, and Prime Minister Attlee's efforts were commendable. However, the withdrawal was driven by two key factors:
(i) The strong wave of nationalism, led primarily by Mahatma Gandhi.
(ii) England's weakened position following World War II.

37. How did the outcome of the Second World War help India's demand for self-government?

Ans : SQP 2011

Following the conclusion of the Second World War in April 1945, India's fight for independence entered a new stage. The unrest from the Quit India Movement was still fresh in people's minds, the failure of the INA marked the end of a brave effort, and the Muslim League had heightened its call for the partition of India.

38. What was the reaction of the Congress to the Cabinet Mission Plan?

Ans : SQP 2005

The Congress accepted the Cabinet Mission Plan with some reservations. They agreed to the portion of the plan that pertained to Constitution-making, viewing the Constituent Assembly as a sovereign body responsible for drafting the Constitution. However, the Congress wanted the grouping of provinces to be optional rather than mandatory, especially since Assam, which was placed in Group C, had a Congress-led government at the time.

39. Who was elected as the President of the Constituent Assembly in 1946? Name the last Viceroy of India. State one of his proposals with regard to the Princely States.

Ans : COMP 2010

In 1946, Dr. Rajendra Prasad was elected as the President of the Constituent Assembly. The last Viceroy of India was Lord Men-about-town of his proposals regarding the Princely States, as outlined in the Mount batten Plan, was that the Princely States were given the option to either join India or Pakistan or remain independent, though Mountbatten strongly encouraged them to accede to one of the two dominions.

NODIA

40. What was the composition of Pakistan according to the Independence Act, 1947?

Ans : SQP 2019

According to the Indian Independence Act of 1947, Pakistan was composed of:
(i) West Pakistan: This included the Muslim-majority areas of Punjab, Sindh, North-West Frontier Province (NWFP), and British Baluchistan.
(ii) East Pakistan: The Muslim-majority province of East Bengal along with the Sylhet District of Assam (based on a referendum) formed East Pakistan.

These regions were established as part of the new dominion of Pakistan following the partition of India.

41. Mention any two reasons why the Congress finally accepted the Partition of India.

Ans : MAIN 2015

The Congress accepted the Partition of India due to:
(i) Rising Communal Violence: Partition was seen as a way to prevent further bloodshed between Hindus and Muslims.
(ii) Muslim League's Demand: The Muslim League's insistence on Pakistan made a united India seem unworkable.

42. What did the Indian Independence Act 1947 state about :

6. Group A: United Provinces : : Group B :_ _ _
(a) Baluchistan
(b) Punjab
(c) Delhi
(d) Bihar

Ans : COMP 2022

Thus (b) is correct option.

7. Which of the following was NOT proposed by the Cabinet Mission?
(a) Federal Union of British Provinces
(b) Formation of a Constituent Assembly
(c) British Provincess to be divided on linguistic basis
(d) Union government would control communication

Ans : SQP 2009

Thus (c) is correct option.

8. The Muslim League put forth a demand which had tragic consequences. What was the demand ? What did it result in?
(a) The demand for a separate Muslim-dominated Pakistan. It resulted in the Partition of country.
(b) The demand for separate electorate for Muslims. It resulted in the Partition of India.
(c) The demand for Muslim leadership of the country. It resulted in the formation of Pakistan.
(d) The demand of have a Governor General of a dominion. It resulted in the Partition of the country.

Ans : SQP 2008

Thus (c) is correct option.

9. According to Indian Independence Act, a plebiscite would be held in
(a) Bihar
(b) Sylhet
(c) Princely states
(d) Central provinces

Ans : COMP 2011

Thus (b) is correct option.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

10. Why did the Muslim League accepted the Cabinet Mission Plan?
(a) Its demand for a separate nation was fulfilled.
(b) It felt that grouping of Muslim majority Provinces was a step towards a separate dominion.
(c) It felt that its claim to nominate Muslim members to the Executive Council was supported.
(d) None of the above.

Ans : MAIN 2005

Thus (b) is correct option.

11. Which of the following forced the British government to send Lord Mount batten?
(a) Communal riots
(b) Labour Unrest
(c) Congress-League deadlock
(d) All of the above

Ans : COMP 2007

Thus (d) is correct option.

12. Which of the following provisions regarding the Constituent Assemblies is/are correct?
(a) Act as Central Legislatures in each dominion
(b) Full powers to make laws for their dominion
(c) Act as sovereign bodies for legislative purpose
(d) All of the above

Ans : COMP 2011

Thus (d) is correct option.

13. According to Mount batten Plan which is incorrect regarding the status of Princely States?
(a) They will become independent
(b) All treaties would end.
(c) Plebiscite will be held
(d) Freedom to associate with any dominion

Ans : MAIN 2023

Thus (c) is correct option.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

functioning and to prevent any effective governance by the Congress.

(b) **Communal Riots :** The widespread communal riots, triggered by the League's "Direct Action" Day, convinced everyone that partition was the only solution to the communal problem.

(c) **End of Undemocratic Practices :** Leaders believed that undemocratic practices like separate electorates would weaken democracy, making partition necessary to eliminate them.

(d) **Urgency for Independence :** People and leaders were so eager to end British rule that they were willing to accept partition as the price for immediate independence.

56. The Cabinet Mission Plan came to India on 10th August, 1945. In this context answer the following questions :

(i) Why did Mission reject the demand of a separate state for the Muslims?

(ii) Under what circumstances was the Mission sent to India ?

(iii) What were its main objectives ?

Ans : SQP 2010

(i) Mission reject the demand of a separate state for the Muslims due to following reasons :

(a) **No Resolution to the Communal Issue :** Establishing Pakistan would not resolve the communal tensions, as the Muslim population was unevenly spread across India.

(b) **Non-Muslim Areas :** Including non-Muslim districts of Bengal, Assam, and Punjab in Pakistan lacked justification.

(c) **Separation of Territories :** The geographical separation between West Punjab and East Bengal would create difficulties in communication and governance for the proposed Pakistan.

(d) **Complexity with Princely States :** Partition would further complicate the integration of the Princely States, making the process more difficult.

(ii) (a) **Shift in Power in England:** In 1945, the Labour Party came to power, which was more supportive of granting self-government to India.

(b) **International Pressure:** World War II had weakened British power, while the U.S.A. and Russia emerged as superpowers. Both nations backed India's demand for independence, prompting Britain to take steps towards India's freedom.

(c) **Pressure from Indian Revolutionaries and Freedom Fighters:** Indian revolutionaries and freedom fighters made it clear to the British that their rule was coming to an end. The INA had launched attacks on British-held territories.

(iii) Objectives of cabinet mission plan :

(a) To create a framework for the transfer of power from British rule to Indian leadership

(b) To establish a Constituent Assembly to draft a new Constitution for India.

(c) To propose a federal structure for India that would balance unity while giving autonomy to the provinces, especially to address the demands of both the Congress and the Muslim League.

(d) To create an Interim Government to manage the transition of power until the new Constitution was implemented.

57. The attempt of the British to pacify the Congress and the Muslim League was clearly visible in the Cabinet Mission proposals, but in reality neither could be pleased. With reference to this, explain :

(i) Any three proposals of the Cabinet Mission.

(ii) The reasons for the Muslim League's acceptance and later rejection of the Cabinet Mission plan.

(iii) The reactions of the Congress to the Cabinet Mission plan.

NODIA

it felt that the grouping of Muslim Majority provinces in a way meant the formation of Pakistan.

27. Name the first Governor-General of independent India and Indian Governor-General of India.

Ans : COMP 2007

First Governor-general of independent India was Lord Mount batten and Indian Governor-General of India was C. Rajagopalachari.

28. Name the first Governor-General of free India.

Ans : MAIN 2001

C. Rajagopalachari.

29. What was the impact of Mount batten Plan on the Constituent Assembly ?

Ans : MAIN 2005

The Constituent Assembly was allowed to work but the Constitution framed by it would not apply to Pakistan.

30. Why was Mount batten Plan accepted by the Muslim League ?

Ans : SQP 2017

The Muslim League accepted it because it contained the provision for creation of Pakistan.

TWO MARKS QUESTIONS

31. Give two reasons for the acceptance of the Mount batten Plan by the Congress.

Ans : Main 2023

(i) The Congress accepted the plan to avoid a potential civil war and large-scale communal violence between Hindus and Muslims, which had escalated due to growing tensions.
(ii) The plan offered a clear time line for British withdrawal, allowing for an expedited path to independence, which the Congress prioritized to end colonial rule quickly.

32. Why was demand for Pakistan rejected by the Cabinet Mission ? Give two reasons.

Ans : SQP 2005

(i) The creation of Pakistan would not resolve the issue of communal minorities.
(ii) Partition would further complicate the matter of the Princely states.

33. What was said in the Cabinet Mission Plan about the division of power between the Federal Government and the Provinces?

Ans : MAIN 2000

A Federal Union was to be formed, comprising the British Provinces and Princely States. The Union Government (Central Government) would handle matters related to:
(i) Foreign affairs
(ii) Defense
(iii)Communications.
The Union Government would have the authority to raise finances necessary for managing these subjects. It would also have its own executive and legislature, with members elected from all Provinces. Meanwhile, the Provinces would retain full autonomy over all areas except those assigned to the Union.

34. What was mentioned in the Cabinet Mission Plan regarding Provincial Autonomy ?

Ans : COMP 2012

The British provinces would be organized into groups, with each group deciding on common provincial subjects. A province could leave its group and join another through a majority vote.

Group A	Group B	Group C
Bombay, Madras, Bihar, U.P., Orissa, and the Central Province	Sindh, Punjab, British Baluchistan, N.W.F.P.	Assam and Bengal

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

14. The Indian Independence Act provided for division of which state if so desired by the people?
(a) Jammu and Kashmir
(b) Punjab and Bengal
(c) Bihar and Orissa (Odisha)
(d) Bombay and Madras

Ans : SQP 2002

Thus (b) is correct option.

15. Who had the power to bring India Independence Act into operation?
(a) The Secretary of State for India
(b) The Governor General
(c) The British Prime Minister
(d) None of the above

Ans : SQP 2008

Thus (b) is correct option.

ONE MARK QUESTIONS

16. Name the last British Viceroy of India.

Ans : MAIN 2004,2008,2018,2020

Lord Mount batten.

17. State any one of the provisions of the Indian Independence Act 1947.

Ans : SQP 2018

It provided for the setting up of two independent Dominions of India and Pakistan with effect from 15th August, 1947.

18. Who replaced Lord Wavell ?

Ans : COMP 2023

Lord Mount batten.

19. Who was the first President of the Indian Union ?

Ans : MAIN 2018

Dr. Rajendra Prasad

20. Who was Attlee ?

Ans : SQP 2008

Attlee was the Prime Minister of Britain when India became independent. He was the person who announced that the British would quit India by June 30, 1948.

21. What was the implication of the Group 'B' States proposed by the Cabinet Mission Plan?

Ans : COMP 2003

The Cabinet Mission Plan proposed three Muslim Majority provinces to be included in Group 'B' i.e. Punjab, North west Frontier Province (NWFP) and Sind.

22. What was mentioned in the Cabinet Mission Plan regarding Provincial Autonomy ?

Ans : MAIN 2005

It was mentioned that the Provinces would enjoy full autonomy for all subjects other than the Union Subjects.

23. What arguments did the Cabinet Mission give to reject Jinnah's proposal of Pakistan?

Ans : SQP 2003

According to Cabinet Mission the establishment of Pakistan would not solve the problem of communal minorities.

24. What was the most important but tragic provision of the Mount batten Plan?

Ans : SQP 2022

The most important but tragic provision of the Mount batten Plan was the transfer of power, without any delay and partition of the country into two dominions.

25. To whom was the power to be transferred according to the Mount batten Plan?

Ans : MAIN 2016

The power was to be transferred to Indians according to the Mount batten Plan.

26. Why did the Muslim League accept Cabinet Mission proposals?

Ans : COMP 2008

The Muslim League, accepted the Cabinet mission's proposals on June 6, 1946 because

NODIA

(i) Bengal and Punjab;
(ii) North West Frontier Province; and
(iii) Sylhet District of Assam?

Ans : COMP 2002

The Indian Independence Act of 1947 stated the following:
(i) Bengal and Punjab : These provinces were to be partitioned between India and Pakistan based on religious majorities, with boundaries determined by a Boundary Commission.
(ii) North West Frontier Province (NWFP) : The NWFP was to hold a referendum to decide whether it would join India or Pakistan.
(iii) Sylhet District of Assam : A referendum was to be held in the Sylhet district to determine whether it would remain part of Assam in India or join East Pakistan.

43. In what way did Britain suffer after the Second World War?

Ans : MAIN 2006

Following the Second World War, Britain implemented several measures to resolve the ongoing deadlock that had persisted since the resignation of the Congress Ministries in 1939, aiming to create a favorable environment for negotiations.

44. Name the persons who constituted the Cabinet Mission.

Ans : SQP 2012

The Cabinet Mission was constituted by the following three members:
(i) Lord Pethick-Lawrence : Secretary of State for India.
(ii) Sir Stafford Cripps : President of the Board of Trade
(iii) A.V. Alexander : First Lord of the Admiralty

45. What was the purpose of sending the Cabinet Mission to India in 1946?

Ans : MAIN 2018

The Cabinet Mission was sent to India in 1946 to:
(i) Negotiate the Transfer of Power from British rule to Indian leaders.
(ii) Propose a Framework for India's Governance, including the creation of a Constituent Assembly to draft a Constitution, while addressing the demands of both the Congress and the Muslim League.

46. Name any two provisions of the Mountbatten Plan.

Ans : COMP 2023

(i) Partition of India : India was to be divided into two independent dominions, India and Pakistan, based on religious majorities.
(ii) Princely States : The princely states were given the option to join either India or Pakistan or remain independent.

47. Mention any two provisions of the Independence Act, 1947.

Ans : COMP 2016

(i) Constituent Assembly: Two separate Constituent Assemblies were established for the two Dominions, each acting as the Central Legislature for its respective dominion.
(ii) Princely States: The Princely States gained independence, and all powers previously held by British authorities over them were abolished.

48. Why was Attlee's announcement welcomed by the Muslim League ?

Ans : SQP 2000

The Muslim League accepted it because the Prime Minister clarified that power would not necessarily be transferred to a unified government for all of India.

49. What was the provision there regarding the transfer of power in the Independence Act ?

Ans : MAIN 2007

The plan concluded by announcing that the transfer of power would occur much sooner than June 1948, as initially expected.

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

BETTER THAN BOOK IN THE MARKET

Why students are choosing this book 👉

School teachers already use this content to set papers.

Still not sure?

- 👉 Match this PDF with your question papers
- 👉 See the similarity yourself

Why does this happen?

- ✓ Teachers have its PDF & Word files
- ✓ Easy access
- ✓ Direct copy-paste questions
- ✓ Same pattern followed

Don't miss out—get the advantage today!

50. What was the provision for the states in the Indian Independence Act of 1947?

Ans : COMP 2004

The Indian Independence Act of 1947 provided that the Princely States were no longer under the suzerainty of the British Crown. They were given the freedom to choose between three options:
(i) Join India
(ii) Join Pakistan
(iii) Remain independent

51. What is the importance of Indian Independence Act ?

Ans : MAIN 2008

This Act signaled the end of British rule in India, leading to India's independence on August 15, 1947.

52. Name any two factors which led the British to quit India.

Ans : MAIN 2010

(i) Economic Strain after World War II, which made managing the empire difficult.
(ii) Rising Nationalist Movements, like the Quit India Movement, demanding independence.

THREE MARKS QUESTIONS

53. 'The Cabinet Mission Plan made earnest efforts to resolve the Constitutional deadlock'. In this context answer the following :
(i) What were the main proposals under the Cabinet Mission Plan?
(ii) Why did the Cabinet Mission Plan fail ?

Ans : MAIN 2001,2002,2015

(i) Main proposals under the Cabinet Mission Plan :
(a) The Federal Government (Central Government) was to have only three subjects under its jurisdiction, namely defence, foreign affairs and communications.
(b) The rest of the subjects would be under the control of Princely States.
(c) **Constituent Assembly :** A Constituent Assembly consisting of 389 members –292 members from provinces, 4 from the territories governed by Chief Commissioner and 93 from Indian Princely States would draft the Constitution of India.
(d) **Division of Provinces :** The provinces were to be divided into three groups.

Group A	Group B	Group C
Bombay, Madras, Bihar, U.P., Orissa, the Central Province.	Sindh, Punjab, British Baluchistan, N.W.F.P.	Assam and Bengal

(e) **Interim Government :** An Interim Government was to be formed at the Centre, with representation from all communities, and there would be equal representation for Hindus and Muslims.
(f) **Treaty :** A treaty would need to be negotiated between the Constituent Assembly and the United Kingdom regarding matters related to the transfer of power.
(g) **Union of India:** The Union of India would have the option to either remain within or withdraw from the British Commonwealth, and the plan had to be accepted or rejected in its entirety.
(ii) (a) **Congress's Objection :** The Congress opposed the compulsory grouping of provinces and was unhappy with the limited status and powers of the Interim Government, as well as the principle of parity with the Muslim League.
(b) **League's Objection :** The Muslim League criticized the Cabinet Mission because it did not explicitly accept the demand for a separate Pakistan.

NODIA

(c) **Sikhs' and Scheduled Castes' Reaction:** The Sikhs opposed Punjab being placed in Group B with Muslim-majority provinces, while the Scheduled Castes were dissatisfied with their lack of proper representation in the Interim Government.

54. The Cabinet Mission Plan of 1946 tried to please both the Congress and the League. In this context, answer the following :

(i) Why did the League earlier accept and later reject the proposals of the Cabinet Mission ?

(ii) What were the reaction of the Congress and the Muslim League to the Cabinet Mission Plan?

Ans : COMP 2001

(i) The Muslim League initially accepted the Cabinet Mission Plan because it believed that grouping the Muslim-majority provinces essentially laid the groundwork for Pakistan. However, on July 29, 1946, the League withdrew its acceptance of the plan for the following reasons:

(a) The Congress had accepted only the portion of the plan related to Constitution-making and viewed the Constituent Assembly as a sovereign body. The Congress interpreted the grouping of provinces as optional rather than mandatory.

(b) The League had secured only 73 seats and feared that it would be overshadowed and dominated by the Congress in the Constituent Assembly.

(ii) (a) **Congress's Reaction :** The Congress accepted the idea of the Constituent Assembly to draft a Constitution but opposed the compulsory grouping of provinces. The Congress wanted provinces to have the freedom to opt out of groups, as it feared the division could lead to communal tension and eventual partition

(b) **Muslim League's Reaction :** Initially, the League accepted the plan as it believed the grouping of provinces was a step toward Pakistan. However, after the Congress's opposition to the compulsory grouping, the League rejected the plan, feeling that its demand for a separate Muslim state was not being met.

55. The Mount batten Plan of June 3, 1947 was accepted by all parties. In this context, answer the following questions :

(i) Explain any four proposals made by Lord Mount batten to settle the independence issue for India.

(ii) The reasons that made the Congress accept the partition proposals.

Ans : MAIN 2018

(i) Four proposals made by Lord Mount batten to settle the independence issue for India :

(a) **Partition of India :** India would be divided into two independent dominions – India and Pakistan. The partition was based on religious lines, with Muslim-majority areas forming Pakistan.

(b) **Boundary Commission :** A Boundary Commission, headed by Sir Cyril Radcliffe, would be set up to demarcate the borders between India and Pakistan, especially in Punjab and Bengal, where religious populations were mixed.

(c) **Princely States:** The Princely States were given the option to join either India or Pakistan, or remain independent. However, Mount batten strongly urged them to accede to one of the two dominions to ensure stability.

(d) **Independence Date :** The plan stipulated that the transfer of power would occur on August 15, 1947, much earlier than initially expected.

(ii) Reasons that made the Congress accept the partition proposals :

(a) **League's Obstruction :** The Muslim League joined the Congress not to cooperate but to hinder its

NODIA

3.1 End of British Rule

British sovereignty over India ended on August 15, 1947, marking the end of nearly two centuries of colonial rule.

3.2 Creation of Two Dominions

Two independent nations, India and Pakistan, were created, with Pakistan including the Muslim-majority areas of the northwest and east (later Bangladesh).

3.3 Princely States

The princely states were free to accede to either dominion or declare independence, though most eventually joined India or Pakistan.

3.4 Full Legislative Powers

Both India and Pakistan were granted full legislative authority to govern their territories without British interference, with the Constituent Assemblies of both nations assuming full sovereign powers.

The Indian Independence Act marked the culmination of India's long struggle for freedom, but it also brought immense suffering, as the partition led to mass migrations and communal violence. Despite the challenges, it laid the foundation for India and Pakistan as independent nations.

MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTION

1. Which of the following international events forced Britain to consider handing over the governance of India to Indians?
(a) End of Fascism
(b) Rise of Communism
(c) World War II
(d) Rise of USA as a superpower

Ans : MAIN 2001

Thus (c) is correct option.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

2. Who among the following was NOT a part of the Cabinet Mission?
(a) Penthic Lawrence
(b) Sir Stafford Cripps
(c) A.V. Alexander
(d) Lord Linlithgow

Ans : SQP 2018

Thus (d) is correct option.

3. Arrange the following events in chronological order
(i) End of World War
(ii) Attlee's Announcement
(iii) Mountbatten Plan
(iv) Cabinet Mission
(a) (i), (ii), (iii) and (iv)
(b) (i), (iv), (ii) and (iii)
(c) (i), (iv), (iii) and (ii)
(d) (i), (iii), (ii) and (iv)

Ans : COMP 2003

Thus (d) is correct option.

4. Which of the following is incorrect about the formation of a Constituent Assembly according to the Cabinet Mission Plan?
(a) Members to be directly elected by the people of India
(b) Members to be elected by Provincial Legislative Assemblies
(c) 296 members from the Provinces and 93 from princely states
(d) Complete freedom to frame the Constitution of the Indian Union.

Ans : SQP 2009

Thus (a) is correct option.

5. Why was the Cabinet Mission sent to India in 1946?
(a) To facilitate transfer of power to Indians
(b) To facilitate the Partition of the country
(c) To facilitate the division of resources between Provinces and Princely States.
(d) To facilitate the drawing up of the Constitution for each Dominion.

Ans : MAIN 2008

Thus (a) is correct option.

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

Ans : MAIN 2006

(i) Main proposals under the Cabinet Mission Plan :

(a) The Federal Government (Central Government) was to have only three subjects under its jurisdiction, namely defence, foreign affairs and communications.

(b) The rest of the subjects would be under the control of Princely States.

(c) **Constituent Assembly :** A Constituent Assembly consisting of 389 members –292 members from provinces, 4 from the territories governed by Chief Commissioner and 93 from Indian Princely States would draft the Constitution of India.

(d) **Division of Provinces :** The provinces were to be divided into three groups.

Group A	Group B	Group C
Bombay, Madras, Bihar, U.P., Orissa, the Central Province.	Sindh, Punjab, British Baluchistan, N.W.F.P.	Assam and Bengal

(e) **Interim Government:** An Interim Government was to be formed at the Centre, with representation from all communities, and there would be equal representation for Hindus and Muslims.

(f) **Treaty:** A treaty would need to be negotiated between the Constituent Assembly and the United Kingdom regarding matters related to the transfer of power.

(g) **Union of India:** The Union of India would have the option to either remain within or withdraw from the British Commonwealth, and the plan had to be accepted or rejected in its entirety.

(ii) Reasons for the Muslim League's Acceptance and Later Rejection of the Cabinet Mission Plan:

(a) **Acceptance:** The Muslim League initially accepted the Cabinet Mission Plan because it allowed for the grouping of Muslim-majority provinces. The League saw this as a step towards achieving their demand for a separate Pakistan, as it provided autonomy to these regions.

(b) **Rejection:** The League later rejected the plan after the Congress opposed the compulsory grouping of provinces. The Congress wanted the provinces to have the freedom to opt out, which weakened the League's goal of creating a distinct Muslim state.

(iii) Reactions of the Congress to the Cabinet Mission Plan :

(a) **Acceptance of the Constituent Assembly :** The Congress accepted the idea of a Constituent Assembly to draft a constitution, as it aligned with their goal of a united India with a democratic framework.

(b) **Opposition to Grouping :** The Congress rejected the idea of compulsory grouping of provinces. They wanted provinces to have the flexibility to choose whether or not to join a group, which clashed with the Muslim League's vision.

(c) **Concerns about Interim Government :** The Congress was also dissatisfied with the proposed interim government that called for equal representation between Hindus and Muslims, as it felt that it would limit their power in governing the country.

58. Indian Independence Act received the Royal assent on July 18, 1947. In this context, discuss :

(i) Main provisions of the Indian Independence Act of 1947.

(ii) Enforcement of the Act.

Ans : COMP 2010,2011,2015

(i) Main provisions of the Indian Independence Act of 1947 :

(a) **Creation of Two Dominions :** The Act established two independent

NODIA

states could send 93 representatives.

(ii) Reasons for the Muslim League's Acceptance and Later Rejection of the Cabinet Mission Plan:

(a) **Acceptance :** The Muslim League initially accepted the Cabinet Mission Plan because it allowed for the grouping of Muslim-majority provinces. The League saw this as a step towards achieving their demand for a separate Pakistan, as it provided autonomy to these regions.

(b) **Rejection :** The League later rejected the plan after the Congress opposed the compulsory grouping of provinces. The Congress wanted the provinces to have the freedom to opt out, which weakened the League's goal of creating a distinct Muslim state.

62. The Cabinet Mission was commissioned by the British Government in February 1946 to find a solution for constitutional reforms in India. In the light of this, answer the following questions:

(i) Who were the members of the Cabinet Mission?

(ii) Why was the Cabinet Mission appointed?

(iii) Why didn't the Mission concede to the League's demand for Pakistan?

Ans : MAIN 2023

(i) The Cabinet Mission was composed of three British officials: Lord Pethick-Lawrence, Sir Stafford Cripps, and A. V. Alexander.

(ii) The Second World War concluded with Japan's surrender in August 1945. On the domestic front, the trial of INA officers had sparked strong anti-British sentiment in India, creating a crisis that required a swift solution. Lord Pethick-Lawrence, the new Secretary of State for India, responded by announcing elections to the Central and Provincial legislatures. The Congress formed ministries in eight of the eleven provinces, while the Muslim League established governments in Bengal and Sindh. However, the League soon demanded partition, fearing that the Hindu-majority Congress would dominate the government. To address this situation, the British sent Lord Pethick-Lawrence, Sir Stafford Cripps, and Mr. A.V. Alexander to mediate between the League and the Congress for the swift transfer of power to Indian leadership.

(iii) The Cabinet Mission rejected the Muslim League's demand for Pakistan for several reasons:

(a) A significant proportion of non-Muslims (37.93% in the northwest and 48.31% in the northeast) would remain within Pakistan, failing to solve the communal minority issue.

(b) Including non-Muslim areas of Bengal, Assam, and Punjab in Pakistan lacked justification.

(c) Partition would disrupt shared systems like the armed forces, transport, and communication networks, which were designed for unified India.

(d) The Princely States would face difficulty deciding which Union to join.

(e) The two regions of Pakistan would be separated by 700 miles, complicating their interaction.

63. The Cabinet Mission Plan was sent to India to resolve the constitutional deadlock. With reference to the above statement, answer the following questions.

(i) On what main issues was there a constitutional deadlock in India?

(ii) To what extent did it solve the constitutional deadlock.

Ans : COMP 2005

(i) The constitutional deadlock in India centered around the following key issues:

(a) **Demand for Pakistan :** The Muslim League, led by Jinnah, demanded a separate nation for Muslims, which was opposed by the Congress.

(b) **Groupings of Provinces :** The debate over whether India should

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

60. The British Government proposed several plans to satisfy the demand for Indian Independence but the schemes failed. Finally, Lord Mount batten suggested the partition of India. Answer following questions :

(i) Why was India to be divided into two separate states?

(ii) What was the basis for the partition?

(iii) What was the place of princely States in this plan?

(iv) What was the result of the plan?

Ans : MAIN 1981

(i) India was to be divided into two separate states to address the rising tensions between the Indian National Congress and the Muslim League. The Muslim League, led by Muhammad Ali Jinnah, had been demanding a separate state for Muslims (Pakistan) due to concerns that Muslims would be politically marginalized in a united India dominated by the Hindu majority. The ongoing communal violence and the failure to reach a consensus on a united India prompted Lord Mountbatten to suggest partition as a solution to avoid further bloodshed.

(ii) The partition of India was based on religious lines. Areas with Muslim-majority populations were to form the new state of Pakistan, while Hindu-majority regions would remain in India. The partition primarily affected the provinces of Punjab and Bengal, which were divided between the two newly formed dominions based on religious demographics.

(iii) In the Mount batten Plan, the princely states were given the option to either join India or Pakistan based on their geographical location and the will of their people, or to remain independent. However, the Plan strongly urged them to join one of the two dominions for stability. The princely states were not allowed to stay neutral, as their decision would affect the territorial integrity of the new nations.

(iv) The Mount batten Plan led to the partition of India and the creation of two independent dominions, India and Pakistan on August 15, 1947. This resulted in mass migrations, as Hindus and Sikhs moved to India, while Muslims moved to Pakistan, leading to wide spread violence, displacement, and loss of life. The partition also sowed the seeds of future conflict between India and Pakistan, particularly over regions like Kashmir.

61. The attempt of the British to pacify the Congress and the Muslim League was clearly visible in the Cabinet Mission proposals but in reality neither could be pleased. With reference to this, explain:

(i) Any three proposals of the Cabinet Mission.

(ii) The reasons for the Muslim League's acceptance and later rejection of the Cabinet Mission Plan.

(iii) Why did the Congress refuse to participate in the formation of the Interim Government under the Cabinet Mission Plan ?

Ans : SQP 2013

(i) Three proposals of the Cabinet Mission were :

(a) **Federal Union:** The Cabinet Mission proposed a federal union comprising both British provinces and princely states. The central government would handle only key areas like defense, foreign affairs, and communications, while the provinces would have autonomy over other subjects.

(b) **Groupings of Provinces:** The provinces were to be grouped into three sections based on religious majority, with the option for provinces to opt out of their group after an initial period. This was seen as a way to balance Muslim and Hindu interests.

(c) A Constituent Assembly was to be established to draft the Union Constitution, consisting of 385 members in total - 292 elected from the provinces, while the princely

NODIA

(i) Mention the Provisions of the Indian Independence Act of 1947 regarding the Constituent Assembly.

(ii) Discuss the basic reasons why the Cabinet Mission Plan rejected the demand for Pakistan.

(iii) Mention the areas where plebiscites were to be held. What was the position of His Majestly's government in the new set-up in India?

Ans : MAIN 2001,2003,2023,2021,2020

(i) Provisions of the Indian Independence Act of 1947 regarding the Constituent Assembly :

(a) **Two Independent Dominions :** India and Pakistan were to be established as two independent dominions from August 15, 1947. Pakistan included East Bengal, West Punjab, Sindh, Baluchistan, NWFP, and Sylhet, while India consisted of the remaining territories of British India.

(b) **Governor-General for Each Dominion :** Both India and Pakistan would have their own Governor-General as the representative of His Majesty's Government, serving as constitutional heads acting on the advice of their respective ministers.

(c) **Sovereign Legislatures :** Each dominion would have a sovereign legislature with full authority to create laws. The Constituent Assemblies of India and Pakistan would act as the legislative bodies, and no British laws passed after August 15, 1947, would apply. Until new constitutions were created, both governments would follow the Government of India Act of 1935.

(d) **End of Paramountcy :** The British Crown's authority over the Indian Princely States ended on August 15, 1947. The princely states became independent and could choose to join either India or Pakistan or remain independent.

(e) **Abolition of the Secretary of State for India :** The office of the Secretary of State for India was abolished, with future relations managed by the Commonwealth Secretary.

(f) **Division of Army and Assets :** Provisions were made for dividing the Indian Army and sharing assets and liabilities between India and Pakistan.

(ii) The Cabinet Mission rejected the Muslim League's demand for Pakistan for several reasons:

(a) A significant proportion of non-Muslims (37.93% in the northwest and 48.31% in the northeast) would remain within Pakistan, failing to solve the communal minority issue.

(b) Including non-Muslim areas of Bengal, Assam, and Punjab in Pakistan lacked justification.

(c) Partition would disrupt shared systems like the armed forces, transport, and communication networks, which were designed for unified India.

(d) The Princely States would face difficulty deciding which Union to join.

(e) The two regions of Pakistan would be separated by 700 miles, complicating their interaction.

(iii) Areas where plebiscites were to be held :

(a) **North West Frontier Province (NWFP) :** To determine whether it would join India or Pakistan.

(b) **Sylhet district (East Bengal) :** To decide whether it would remain part of India or join Pakistan.

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

be a strong central government or a loose federation with autonomous provinces. The Muslim League favored provincial autonomy, while the Congress wanted a strong central government.

(c) **Representation and Parity :** The Muslim League demanded parity with Congress in the executive council, which Congress opposed, particularly the idea that the League alone would represent all Muslims.

(ii) The Cabinet Mission arrived in India to address the challenges related to the Indian Constitution and managed to make progress. However, when it met with various party leaders, they were unable to reach a unified agreement. As a result, the Cabinet Mission developed a plan based on its own observations and understanding of Indian issues. Initially, the plan had certain ambiguities, but once clarified, the Muslim League fully accepted it on June 6, 1946, despite initially being critical. On the other hand, the Congress insisted that a Constituent Assembly should be the final authority on deciding constitutional matters.

64. Mount batten formula was to divide India but to retain maximum unity. In the light of the statement, answer the following questions:

(i) State the basis of the Partition of India.

(ii) State any three features of the Mount batten Plan.

(iii) Why did the Congress accept the Mount batten Plan?

Ans : MAIN 2011,2013,2018

(i) The plan proposed the partition of Punjab and Bengal, giving the Princely States the option to join either India or Pakistan.

(a) Bengal and Punjab could be divided if the people desired. Provincial Assemblies of Hindu and Muslim majority areas would vote separately on whether to partition the provinces.

(b) A plebiscite would be held in the North West Frontier Province (NWFP) and Sylhet district in East Bengal to decide whether they wanted to join India or Pakistan.

(ii) Three features of the Mount batten Plan:

(a) **Princely States :** The Princely States were given the option to either join India or Pakistan or remain independent, though they were encouraged to accede to one of the two dominions.

(b) **Boundary Commission :** A Boundary Commission was to be set up to demarcate the borders between India and Pakistan, particularly in Punjab and Bengal, where religious populations were mixed.

(c) **Partition of India:** India was to be divided into two independent dominions, India and Pakistan, based on religious majorities.

(iii)(a) The widespread communal riots convinced Congress leaders that partition was the only solution to the communal problem, as it was seen as preferable to the continued slaughter of innocent people.

(b) The non-cooperative attitude of the Muslim League, which had joined the Interim Government in October 1946, made administration difficult, leading Congress leaders to believe that partition or open conflict with the League was inevitable.

(c) Partition was viewed as a way to avoid a weak central government, allowing India to establish a strong central authority and evolve into a truly secular and democratic state, while avoiding further violence and potential civil war.

65. Indian Independence Act was unique in history, because never before had such a large population of the world achieved Independence through legislation. In this context answer the following questions :

NODIA

(i) State three main provisions of the Indian Independence Act.
(ii) Who was appointed the first Governor-General for each of the two Dominions?
(iii) Mention the areas where plebiscites were to be held.
What was the position of His Majesty's government in the new set-up in India?

Ans : SQP 2003,2007,2018,2022

(i) On the basis of the Mount batten Plan of June 3, 1947, the British Parliament passed the Indian Independence Act on July 16, 1947, with the following main provisions:
  (a) Pakistan would include East Bengal, West Punjab, Sindh, Baluchistan, NWFP, and the district of Sylhet in Assam.
  (b) The Constituent Assemblies of both Dominions would function as sovereign bodies, responsible for framing their respective Constitutions and passing other laws. They would also act as the Central Legislatures for India and Pakistan.
  (c) The Act provided for the division of the Indian Army and the distribution of assets and liabilities between the
(ii) First Governor-General for each of the two Dominions:
  (a) **India :** Lord Mount batten was appointed the first Governor-General of independent India.
  (b) **Pakistan :** Muhammad Ali Jinnah was appointed the first Governor-General of Pakistan.
(iii) Plebiscites were to be held in the North-West Frontier Province (NWFP) and the Sylhet district of Assam to decide whether these areas would join India or Pakistan. His Majesty's Government had no direct control over the new dominions after the enactment of the Indian Independence Act. The two dominions of India and Pakistan were fully sovereign and independent. However, they could remain members of the British Commonwealth, with the British monarch recognized as a symbolic head of the Commonwealth, but without executive power over the new governments.

66. The Indian Independence Act of 1947 marked the end of the British rule in India. In this context, answer the following questions :
(i) Who passed the Indian Independence Act?
(ii) List the areas included in Pakistan.
(iii) Why did the Congress leaders accept the partition of India?

Ans : SQP 2013, 2014,2015

(i) The British Prime Minister introduced the Indian Independence Bill in the House of Commons, and it was approved by both houses of the British Parliament in July 1947.
(ii) The areas included in Pakistan were the Muslim-majority regions of:
  (a) West Punjab
  (b) East Bengal
  (c) Sindh
  (d) North-West Frontier Province (NWFP)
  (e) Parts of Assam (Sylhet district)
  (f) Baluchistan
(iii) Congress leaders accepted the partition of India to prevent further communal violence, as the country was engulfed in large-scale riots. They also saw partition as a way to resolve the administrative deadlock caused by the non-cooperation of the Muslim League and believed that a smaller, unified India with a strong central government was better than a larger, unstable federation with a weak center. Additionally, the partition would remove undemocratic practices like separate electorates, enabling India to evolve into a secular and democratic state.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

CASE BASED QUESTION

67. Look at the picture given and answer the following questions:

The Times of India

WAY OUT OF INDIAN DEADLOCK

BRITAIN'S PLAN FOR SMOOTH TRANSFER OF POWER

Immediate Dominion Status Granted

PEOPLE ASKED TO DECIDE PARTITION QUESTION

Present Constituent Assembly Not Disturbed

Only Practical Method

PREMIER'S VIEW

Plan Commended To Commons

"UNIFIED INDIA BEST SOLUTION"

Viceroy's Appeal

"THERE IS INDIAN CONSCIOUSNESS"

MR. NEHRU COMMENDS PLAN TO NATION

Mr. Jinnah Hopeful Of League's Acceptance

SARDAR BALDEV SINGH CALLS IT "SETTLEMENT"

(i) Name the Viceroy who announced the plan for smooth transfer of power. Mention any two clauses of his plan with reference to the Princely States.

(ii) Mention any three reasons for the acceptance of his plan by the Congress.

(iii) Mention any four provisions of the Indian Independence Act of 1947.

Ans : MAIN 2024

(i) The Viceroy who announced the plan for the smooth transfer of power was Lord Mount batten.

Two clauses of his plan with reference to the Princely States:

(a) The Princely States were given the option to either join India or Pakistan, or remain independent, as the British would not compel them to join either dominion.

(b) The Princely States were encouraged to take into account geographical contiguity and the wishes of their people when making the decision to join either dominion or remain independent.

(ii) Three reasons for the acceptance of his plan by the Congress :

(a) **Avoidance of civil war :** The Congress recognized that accepting the partition plan would prevent widespread violence and bloodshed between Hindus and Muslims.

(b) **Timely independence :** The Congress wanted a swift transfer of power and realized that accepting partition was the only way to achieve independence quickly.

(c) **Inability to keep India united :** Congress leaders, including Nehru and Gandhi, acknowledged that continued efforts to keep India united had failed, and partition seemed inevitable for maintaining peace.

(iii) Four provisions of the Indian Independence Act of 1947 :

(a) **Creation of two independent dominions :** The Act created two independent nations, India and Pakistan, which came into being on August 15, 1947, with full authority to govern themselves.

(b) **End of British rule :** British rule in India formally ended, and all powers were transferred from the British Crown to the governments of India and Pakistan.

(c) **Partition of Bengal and Punjab :** The provinces of Bengal and Punjab were divided along religious lines, forming West Bengal and East Bengal (Pakistan), and West Punjab (Pakistan) and East Punjab (India), leading to mass migrations and violence.

(d) **Princely States :** The Princely States were given the choice to join India, Pakistan, or remain independent, with guidance to consider geography and public opinion in making their decision.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

68. In the historic photograph, Pandit Jawaharlal Nehru, is being sworn in as Prime Minister of free India. In this context, answer the following :

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

dominions, India and Pakistan, effective from August 15, 1947. Pakistan included East Bengal, West Punjab, Sindh, Baluchistan, NWFP, and Sylhet district of Assam, while India comprised the remaining territories of British India.

(b) **Governor-General for Each Dominion :** Each dominion would have its own Governor-General, who would act as a constitutional head, following the advice of ministers.

(c) **Sovereign Legislatures :** Both India and Pakistan would have sovereign legislatures with full authority to make laws. The Constituent Assemblies would serve as legislative bodies until their respective Constitutions were framed. The Government of India Act of 1935 would remain in effect until then.

(d) **End of Paramountcy:** The Crown's authority over the Princely States would end on August 15, 1947, and the states could choose to join India, Pakistan, or remain independent.

(e) **Abolition of Secretary of State:** The office of the Secretary of State for India was abolished, and relations with India and Pakistan were to be managed by the Commonwealth Secretary.

(f) **Division of Army and Assets:** Provisions were made for the division of the Indian Army and the sharing of assets and liabilities between India and Pakistan.

(ii) Enforcement of the Act: The Governor-Generals of both dominions were tasked with implementing the Act. On August 15, 1947, the Dominion of India was established, with Nehru requesting Lord Mountbatten to continue as India's first Governor-General. In Pakistan, Mohammed Ali Jinnah assumed the role of its first Governor-General. This marked the official end of British rule in India, bringing independence after years of struggle, sacrifice, and the painful partition. The partition, a devastating outcome, was the result of British policies, particularly their "Divide and Rule" strategy, which left a lasting impact on the region.

59. The Cabinet Mission Plan proposed a two-tiered federal union of British Provinces and Princely States. With reference to this describe the following :

(i) Name the persons who constituted the Cabinet Mission. What was the purpose of sending the Cabinet Mission to India in 1946?

(ii) The federal structure proposed by the Cabinet Mission Plan.

(iii) The option given to the Princely States.

Ans : COMP 2018

(i) The Cabinet Mission was constituted by three British officials: Lord Pethick-Lawrence, Sir Stafford Cripps, and A. V. Alexander. Their primary aim was to facilitate an agreement between the Muslim League and the Congress for the swift transfer of power from British control to Indian leadership.

(ii) After failing to secure an agreement between the Congress and the Muslim League, the Cabinet Mission proposed the following:

(a) A federal union would be established, comprising all the provinces and princely states of India.

(b) The central government would manage only defense, foreign affairs, and communications, while the provinces would handle all other subjects and retain control over residual powers.

(iii) The Princely States were to gain independence, with all powers held by British authority ending. All treaties and agreements between the British and the States would expire on August 15, 1947. The States would then have the freedom to either join one of the two Dominions or remain independent.

NODIA
Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

(c) Both provinces choose to join Pakistan (West and East Pakistan, respectively).

His Majesty's Government would no longer be responsible for India's government after August 15, 1947. All treaties and agreements with Indian states or tribal areas would become invalid. The Dominion would negotiate agreements with the tribes of the North West Frontier Province.

69. With reference to the picture given above answer the following:

(a) Identify the Viceroy in the picture.
(b) Why was he sent to India?
(c) How did he plan to solve the communal problem existing in India?
(d) Why did the Congress accept the Plan? State three reasons to justify its acceptance.

Ans : MAIN 2014

(i) The Viceroy in the picture is Lord Louis Mountbatten.

(ii) On February 20, 1947, the British Prime Minister announced in the House of Commons that Britain would withdraw from India and transfer power to responsible Indian authorities by June 20, 1948. If Indian leaders failed to reach an agreement by then, Britain would still withdraw, either handing power to a central government or, in some regions, to the existing provincial governments. The British government would not force any unwilling provinces to join a united Indian government. To implement these plans, Lord Wavell was recalled, and Lord Mountbatten was appointed the new Viceroy, assuming office on March 24, 1947.

(iii) Lord Mountbatten quickly initiated negotiations with party leaders such as Nehru, Patel, Azad, Liaqat Ali, Baldev Singh, and others. During these discussions, he became convinced that reaching a consensus based on the Cabinet Mission Plan was impossible, and that the partition of India was unavoidable. Mountbatten successfully persuaded both Patel, Nehru, and other Congress leaders to accept this view.

(d) (a) Non-Cooperative Stance of the League: The League joined the interim government with the aim of disrupting Congress activities, rather than cooperating with it.

(b) **Communal Riots:** The widespread communal violence that spread across the country convinced everyone that partition was the only solution to the communal issue. These riots resulted from the League's "Direct Action" Day.

(c) **Elimination of Undemocratic Practices:** The leaders believed that undemocratic practices like separate electorates and the British policy of Divide and Rule would weaken democracy. Therefore, partition was necessary to eliminate these obstacles.

70. (i) Identify the event in the picture. Name the Lady seen in the picture. Mention the year when the event took place.

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

(ii) What were the main provisions of the Indian Independence Act?

(iii) Mention the reasons that made the Congress to accept the Partition Proposals.

Ans : MAIN 2011

(i) The event shown is the swearing-in of Jawaharlal Nehru as the Prime Minister of Independent India. The lady in the picture is Lady Mountbatten, wife of Lord Mountbatten, who was the Governor-General of India at that time. This event took place on 18th July 1947.

(ii) (a) **End of British Rule :** British rule over India was formally ended, and the sovereignty of the two dominions was recognized.

(b) **Governor-General :** Each dominion was to have its own Governor-General to represent the Crown, but they would act on the advice of the ministers of the new governments.

(c) **Legislative Powers :** The Constituent Assemblies of both India and Pakistan were given the power to act as sovereign legislatures and frame their respective Constitutions.

(d) **Princely States :** The princely states were free to either join India or Pakistan or remain independent.

(e) **Division of Assets :** The assets of the British Indian government were to be divided between India and Pakistan.

(f) **Formation of Two Dominions :** India and Pakistan were established as two independent dominions from August 15, 1947.

(iii) (a) **Communal Riots :** The large-scale communal riots and violence convinced Congress leaders that partition was necessary to prevent further bloodshed and unrest.

(b) **Non-cooperation from the Muslim League :** The Muslim League's obstructive behavior made it difficult to work together within a unified government, leading Congress to agree to partition as a solution.

(c) **Immediate Independence :** The Congress leaders were keen on ending British rule as soon as possible, and they saw partition as a price to pay for immediate independence.

www.nodia.in

NODIA

CHAPTER 8

THE FIRST WORLD WAR

SUMMARY

1. CAUSES OF THE FIRST WORLD WAR

1.1 Nationalism and Imperialism

By the early 20th century, nationalism had grown into a powerful force in Europe. Nations sought to assert their dominance, believing their nation to be superior. This led to conflicts over territories and political influence. Nationalism was particularly intense in areas like the Balkans, where various ethnic groups sought independence from larger empires.

Imperialism further deepened tensions. European powers, especially Britain, France and Germany, were involved in a fierce competition for colonies in Asia and Africa. They sought new markets, resources and strategic territories. The desire for global dominance increased distrust and rivalry between nations, particularly between Britain and Germany. The aggressive pursuit of empire-building also resulted in conflicts in Africa and Asia, contributing to the broader global tensions that eventually led to war.

1.2 Armament Race

As nationalism and imperialism fueled tensions, European countries began an intense military buildup. Major powers, particularly Germany and Britain, were locked in an arms race, competing for military superiority. Germany significantly expanded its army and navy, aiming to challenge British naval dominance. In response, Britain enlarged its fleet and other nations followed suit.

The development of new weapons, including powerful battleships like the British "Dreadnought" and advanced artillery, led to a militarization of Europe. Countries invested heavily in military technology and conscription, preparing for a potential large-scale conflict. This armament race contributed to the war's outbreak by creating a sense of inevitability and fear, as nations believed that they needed to strike first before being attacked.

1.3 Division of Europe into Alliances

Europe was divided into two hostile military blocs, which made the situation extremely volatile:

The Triple Alliance was formed by Germany, Austria-Hungary and Italy. It aimed to counterbalance the power of other European nations, especially France and Russia.

The Triple Entente consisted of Britain, France and Russia and was created as a response to the growing military strength of Germany.

These alliances were designed to provide security but ended up pulling multiple countries into the conflict once war began. A localized conflict had the potential to become a full-scale European war because, under these alliances, if one country was attacked, its allies were bound to support it, resulting in a domino effect. This division of Europe into opposing camps laid the foundation for a massive and widespread conflict.

1.4 Sarajevo Crisis (June 1914)

The immediate cause of World War I was the assassination of Archduke Franz Ferdinand,

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

72. How was militant nationalism a cause of the First World War?

Ans : MAIN 2016

Militant nationalism allowed leaders and rulers to stir up hatred and intense emotions under the guise of patriotism. Loyalty to one's own country often required animosity toward others. For example, France was determined to reclaim its provinces of Alsace and Lorraine from Germany, regardless of the cost. As a result, every nation sought to assert its independence and establish itself as a powerful state.

73. State any two aims of the League of Nations.

Ans : COMP 2011

(i) To promote international cooperation among nations by encouraging dialogue and collaboration on political, economic and social issues.

(ii) To maintain global peace and security by preventing conflicts through diplomatic means, disarmament and resolving international disputes peacefully.

74. Why was the League of Nations established?

Ans : SQP 2019

The League of Nations was established in 1920 after World War I to prevent future conflicts and promote global peace. Its primary aim was to encourage international cooperation, resolve disputes through diplomacy and ensure collective security by bringing nations together to address issues without resorting to war. It sought to create a new world order focused on peaceful conflict resolution and disarmament.

75. How did the race for armaments contribute to the First World War ?

Ans : COMP 2000

Germany began constructing a powerful navy to rival Britain's naval strength, which raised serious concerns for both Britain and France. This triggered an arms race between the opposing alliances, becoming one of the primary causes of the First World War.

76. What was the immediate cause for the First World War?

Ans : MAIN 2013

On June 28, 1914, Archduke Franz Ferdinand of Austria was assassinated in Sarajevo, the capital of Bosnia, by a Serbian nationalist. Austria held the Serbian government responsible and issued an ultimatum. However, Serbia rejected some of the demands, as they infringed on its sovereignty. As a result, Austria declared war on Serbia on July 28, 1914. This conflict quickly escalated, leading to the outbreak of the First World War.

77. Mention any three of the terms of the Treaty of Versailles.

Ans : MAIN 2014

(i) Germany was held responsible for aggression under the treaty and was required to pay $33 million in war reparations to the Allies.

(ii) The Saar region's coal mines were given to France for 15 years and the area was placed under the administration of the League of Nations.

(iii) The Rhineland was to be demilitarized as part of the treaty's terms.

78. When and why was the League of Nations formed?

Ans : MAIN 2000

The League of Nations was founded in 1920 to foster international cooperation and ensure global peace and security.

79. How did imperialistic rivalry create hatred among nations?

Ans : SQP 2022

Britain had established a vast empire in Asia and Africa, becoming wealthy through foreign trade. Other nations like Germany, the Netherlands, Italy and the USA also sought to acquire colonies in these regions. This desire for colonies led to a fierce scramble, creating rivalries and conflicts, which ultimately contributed to the outbreak of the First World War.

NODIA

MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTION

1. The immediate cause of the First World War was _____.
(a) Imperialism
(b) Alliance System
(c) Sarajevo Crisis
(d) Arms Race

Ans : MAIN 2024

Thus (c) is correct option.

2. What refers to the sense of unity felt by people who share a common history and culture that came to fore in beginning of the 20th century?
(a) Communism
(b) Fascism
(c) Nationalism
(d) Imperialism

Ans : COMP 2021

Thus (c) is correct option.

3. At the end of the 19th century British and French government policies were NOT focussed on
(a) Increasing trade
(b) Exploiting their colony's resources
(c) Encouraging nationalism in Asia
(d) Protecting their colonies

Ans : SQP 2023

Thus (b) is correct option.

4. The Franco-Prussian war led to which of the following?
(a) Race for armaments
(b) Scramble for colonies
(c) Rise of nationalism in Asia
(d) Communist movement in Russia

Ans : MAIN 2015

Thus (a) is correct option.

5. Which of the following was NOT a Nation-State?
(a) France (b) Russia
(c) Germany (d) Holland

Ans : COMP 2017

Thus (b) is correct option.

6. Which of the following had vast colonies in Asia and Africa?
(a) Germany
(b) Italy
(c) USA
(d) Britain

Ans : MAIN 2000

Thus (d) is correct option.

7. Which of the following is incorrect?
(a) Triple Entente: France, Russia, Japan
(b) Allied Powers: Britain, France, Russia
(c) Triple Alliance: Germany, Italy, Austria-Hungary
(d) Central Powers: Germany, Austria, Italy

Ans : SQP 2005

Thus (d) is correct option.

8. When and where did the First World War begin?
(a) 1912; Europe
(b) 1914; Asia
(c) 1914; Europe
(d) 1912; Africa

Ans : SQP 2017

Thus (c) is correct option.

9. Who left the 'Triple Alliance'?
(a) Germany
(b) Russia
(c) France
(d) Italy

Ans : COMP 2007

Thus (d) is correct option.

10. Arrange the following in chronological order:
(i) Formation of Tripple Entente
(ii) Assassination of Archduke Ferdinand
(iii) Formation of Tripple Alliance
(iv) Austria declaring the war on Serbia
(v) Britain declaring war on Germany
(a) (i), (ii), (iii), (iv) and (v)
(b) (iii), (i), (ii), (iv) and (v)
(c) (iii), (ii), (i), (v) and (iv)
(d) (i), (iii), (ii), (v) and (iv)

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

heir to the Austro-Hungarian throne, on June 28, 1914. The assassination took place in Sarajevo, Bosnia, by a Serbian nationalist, Gavrilo Princip, a member of a group called the Black Hand, which sought to end Austro-Hungarian rule over Bosnia. This event triggered a diplomatic crisis.

Austria-Hungary, with backing from Germany, issued an ultimatum to Serbia. When Serbia's response was deemed unsatisfactory, Austria-Hungary declared war on Serbia on July 28, 1914. Russia, allied with Serbia, began mobilizing its forces. Germany declared war on Russia and France and Britain, as part of the Triple Entente, declared war on Germany. The alliances turned a regional conflict into a global war.

2. RESULTS OF THE FIRST WORLD WAR

2.1 Treaty of Versailles (1919)

The war ended with the signing of the Treaty of Versailles on June 28, 1919. The treaty imposed severe penalties on Germany. The terms of the treaty were extremely harsh and Germany was held responsible for causing the war (the "War Guilt Clause"). Germany was forced to:
Pay huge reparations to the Allied Powers. Cede significant territories, including Alsace-Lorraine to France and parts of Prussia to Poland. Limit its military to 100,000 troops and was prohibited from maintaining a navy or air force.

The treaty was resented in Germany, leading to economic hardship, political instability and a sense of humiliation. These grievances sowed the seeds for the rise of Adolf Hitler and the outbreak of World War II.

2.2 Territorial Rearrangements

The defeat of the Central Powers (Germany, Austria-Hungary and the Ottoman Empire) led to significant changes in the political map of Europe. The empires of Austria-Hungary and the Ottoman Empire were dismantled. Several new countries were created, including: Poland, which regained its independence. Czechoslovakia and Yugoslavia were formed by merging various ethnic regions.

Territories such as Alsace-Lorraine were returned to France and colonies in Africa and the Pacific previously controlled by Germany were redistributed among the Allies. The collapse of the Russian Empire led to the rise of Soviet Russia and former Russian territories like Finland, Estonia, Latvia and Lithuania gained independence. The territorial rearrangements were meant to establish stability but often created new tensions, particularly in regions with mixed ethnic populations.

NODIA

2.3 Formation of the League of Nations

One of the key outcomes of the Treaty of Versailles was the creation of the League of Nations. The League was intended to be an international organization aimed at promoting peace and preventing future conflicts through diplomacy and collective security. It was the first attempt at a global governing body that could mediate disputes between nations. The League of Nations had several goals:

1. Encourage disarmament.
2. Settle international disputes peacefully.
3. Promote cooperation in addressing issues such as labor conditions, public health and human rights.
4. However, the League suffered from several weaknesses:
5. Major powers like the United States never joined.
6. It had no military force of its own, relying on member nations to enforce its resolutions.
7. It failed to prevent aggressive actions by nations like Japan, Italy and Germany in the 1930s, leading to its eventual failure.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

21. The Treaty of Versailles was based on
(a) Woodrow Wilson's Fourteen points
(b) The French Charter
(c) The Eleven demands of Serbia
(d) The conditions of the October Revolution

Ans : MAIN 2015

Thus (c) is correct option.

22. The terms of the Treaty of Versailles were decided by
(a) Woodrow Wilson
(b) Lloyd George
(c) George Clemenceau
(d) All of the above Arts

Ans : COMP 2019

Thus (d) is correct option.

23. Which of the following was one of aims of the League of Nations?
(a) Prohibition of Secret Treaties and Alliances between members
(b) Prohibition of maintenance of large armed forces by member-states
(c) Promotion of local, cultural and economic cooperation
(d) All of the above

Ans : MAIN 2011

Thus (d) is correct option.

ONE MARK QUESTIONS

24. Name the signatory countries of the Triple Alliance (1882). State the rival bloc that was formed.

Ans : MAIN 2012,2022

Tripple Alliance-Germany Austria-Hungary and Italy.

25. What was the immediate cause of the First World War ?

Ans : SQP 2013

Killing of AF Ferdinand, the Heir - Apparent to the throne of Austria in Bosnia in 1914.

26. Why was the League of nations established ?

Ans : COMP 2019

The main objective of the League of Nations was to preserve peace and settle disputes by arbitration.

27. Give one main objective of the League of Nations.

or

Why was the League of nations established ?

Ans : MAIN 2019

The main objective of the League of Nations was to preserve peace and settle disputes by arbitration.

28. How much did Germany have to pay as war reparation charges according to the Treaty of Versailles ?

Ans : COMP 2001

Germany had to pay 33 million dollars as war reparation charges.

29. When did the First World War break out?

Ans : MAIN 2005

The First World War broke out on 28th July, 1914.

30. What did France gain from the Treaty of Versailles?

Ans : SQP 2009

The Coal mines in the German area called Saar were ceded to France for 15 years and the area was to be governed by the League of Nations.

31. Name the two major countries which were not allowed to become the member of the League of Nations.

Ans : COMP 2022

(i) Germany
(ii) The Soviet Union

32. How many original members did the League of Nations have?

Ans : COMP 2003

There were 42 original members.

NODIA

Ans : MAIN 2013

Thus (b) is correct option.

11. Which countries, along with their allies were called the "Allied Powers"?
(a) Britain, France, Germany
(b) Italy, Russia, Germany
(c) Britain, France, Russia
(d) Turkey, Britain, Italy

Ans : MAIN 2011

Thus (c) is correct option.

12. Which countries, along with their allies were called the "Central Powers"?
(a) Germany, Britain
(b) Russia, Bulgaria
(c) Italy, Turkey
(d) Germany, Austria

Ans : SQP 2017

Thus (d) is correct option.

13. What happened at Sarajevo that trigger the War?
(a) Failure of talks between Germany and Austria-Hungary
(b) Fall of the Russia empire
(c) Assassination of the heir to the throne of Austria-Hungary
(d) None of the above

Ans : COMP 2019

Thus (c) is correct option.

14. When and where did the First World War begin?
(a) 1912; Europe
(b) 1914; Asia
(c) 1914; Europe
(d) 1912; Africa

Ans : SQP 2017

Thus (c) is correct option.

15. The first World War was fought on many _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _.
(a) Trenches
(b) Fronts
(c) Borders
(d) Ports

Ans : COMP 2010

Thus (b) is correct option.

16. Which event led the United States to declare war on Germany?
(a) The attack on Pearl Harbour
(b) The assassination of Archduke Francis Ferdinand
(c) The sinking of Lusitania by U-boats
(d) None of the above

Ans : MAIN 2015

Thus (c) is correct option.

17. When was the Treaty of Versailles signed?
(a) June 26, 1918
(b) June 28, 1919
(c) July 14, 1918
(d) June 26, 1919

Ans : COMP 2019

Thus (b) is correct option.

18. The Treaty of Versailles was signed as a result of the discussions at the
(a) Paris conference
(b) Moscow conference
(c) London conference
(d) New York conference

Ans : SQP 2023

Thus (a) is correct option.

19. As per the Treaty of Versailles, Alsace-Lorraine and Danzing were respectively restored to
(a) Denmark and Belgium
(b) France and Polland
(c) Russia and Hungary
(d) Germany and France

Ans : MAIN 2008

Thus (b) is correct option.

20. The League of Nations was created as a World organization of all independent states in
(a) 1918 (b) 1920
(c) 1912 (d) 1922

Ans : COMP 2010

Thus (b) is correct option.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

47. On which side did Turkey join the war?

Ans : MAIN 2017

Turkey joined the war on Austria's side.

48. Which treaty was the symbol of humiliation to the German people?

Ans : COMP 2015

The Treaty of Versailles was the symbol of humiliation to the German people.

TWO MARKS QUESTIONS

49. Mention any two clauses of the Treaty of Versailles.

Ans : MAIN 2023

Reparations: Germany was required to pay reparations to the Allied countries for the damages caused during World War I. Territorial Losses : Germany lost territories, including Alsace-Lorraine to France and parts of Prussia to Poland.

50. Name the countries which formed the Triple Alliance and the Triple Entente.

Ans : COMP 2019

The countries that formed the Triple Alliance were:
(i) Germany
(ii) Austria-Hungary
(iii)Italy
The countries that formed the Triple Entente were:
(i) Britain
(ii) France
(iii)Russia

51. Name the two alliances formed in Europe before the beginning of the First World War.

Ans : MAIN 2023

(i) The Triple Alliance (1882) – consisting of Germany, Austria-Hungary and Italy.
(ii) The Triple Entente (1907) – consisting of France, Russia and Britain.

52. Mention any two important consequences of the First World War.

Ans : MAIN 2009

Two important consequences of the First World War include:
(i) Massive loss of human life and resources, which led to significant political and social changes in many countries.
(ii) Economic strains that resulted in major geopolitical shifts, including the redrawing of national borders and the rise of new political ideologies.

53. Name the two rival blocs formed in Europe before World War-I.

Ans : SQP 2015

(i) Triple Alliance: Germany, Austria-Hungary and Italy.
(ii) Triple Entente: Britain, France and Russia.

54. How did the Sarajevo crisis in 1914 lead to the First World War ?

Ans : MAIN 2006

(i) Austria believed Serbia was involved in the assassination of Archduke Franz Ferdinand and issued an ultimatum to Serbia.
(ii) Backed by Russia, Serbia refused to fully comply with the ultimatum, leading Austria to declare war on Serbia.

55. Mention two most important clauses of the Treaty of Versailles.

Ans : SQP 2014

(i) Germany was held responsible for the war and was required to pay 33 billion dollars in war indemnities to the victorious nations.
(ii) Germany was forced to withdraw from all the territories it had occupied during the war.

56. State any two objections imposed by the Treaty of versailles on the German military power.

Ans : COMP 2019

NODIA

Two restrictions imposed by the Treaty of Versailles on Germany's military power were:
(i) Reduction of the Army: The German army was limited to 100,000 soldiers and conscription was banned.
(ii) Prohibition of Advanced Military Equipment: Germany was forbidden from having tanks, submarines and an air force and its navy was significantly reduced.

57. What was the war indemnity imposed on Germany through the Treaty of Versailles ?

or

What was the amount of reparation that Germany had to pay the allies ? Mention any two terms of the treaty of Versailles which affected the German military ?

Ans : MAIN 2022

The amount of reparation that Germany had to pay to the Allies, as stipulated in the Treaty of Versailles, was 33 billion U.S. dollars (132 billion gold marks).
Two terms of the Treaty of Versailles that affected the German military were:
(i) Reduction of the Army: Germany's army was limited to 100,000 troops and conscription was prohibited.
(ii) Restrictions on Military Equipment: Germany was banned from having tanks, submarines, an air force and its navy was significantly reduced. Additionally, the Rhineland was to be demilitarized.

58. What was the effect of the First World War on the colonial possessions of industrialised countries ?

Ans : SQP 2022

Germany lost all its colonies and possessions, which were taken over by Britain, France and Belgium. Togoland and Cameroon (in West Africa) were divided between Britain and France, while German East Africa was shared between Britain and Belgium. However, these territories were administered by the Allied powers (Britain, France and Belgium) as mandates under the supervision of the League of Nations.

59. What was the cause of Franco-German rivalry ?

Ans : COMP 2011

France was defeated by Germany in the 1870-71 war, leading to the loss of its two provinces, Alsace and Lorraine. Germany refused to return these territories, fueling a desire for revenge among the French. Additionally, their imperial ambitions clashed in Morocco, Africa, as both sought control over the region, making conflict between the two nations inevitable.

60. What is meant by the term 'Imperialism', as a cause for World War I ?

Ans : COMP 2020

Imperialism refers to the policy of extending a nation's power and influence by acquiring colonies and exploiting weaker regions for economic, political and military advantages. As a cause for World War I, imperialism played a significant role as European powers, such as Britain, France and Germany, competed fiercely for colonies in Africa and Asia. This competition for global dominance led to increased tensions and rivalries among the major powers, contributing to the overall climate of hostility and mistrust that eventually sparked the war.

61. State two features of Imperialism.

Ans : SQP 2000

Two features of Imperialism are:
(i) Colonial Expansion: Acquiring colonies to exploit resources and establish markets.
(ii) Political and Economic Domination: Controlling weaker nations for economic and political benefits.

62. Why was there a scramble for colonies?

Ans : MAIN 2008

The scramble for colonies happened due to:
(i) Economic Gain : Access to raw materials and new markets.
(ii) Political Power : Colonies symbolized national prestige and provided strategic advantages.

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

63. What was the cause of Anglo-German rivalry?

Ans : SQP 2005

Germany built large ships and expanded the Kiel Canal, challenging Britain's naval dominance. Determined to preserve its naval supremacy, Britain engaged in a competition with Germany to strengthen their respective naval forces, leading to an intense arms race between the two nations.

64. Which country was blamed for the assassination of the Archduke Francis Ferdinand? Which country declared war on Serbia? Name two countries which supported Austria.

Ans : MAIN 2007

Serbia was blamed for the assassination of Archduke Franz Ferdinand.
Austria-Hungary declared war on Serbia.
Two countries that supported Austria-Hungary were Germany and Italy.

65. Why did Britain declare war on Germany in 1914?

Ans : SQP 2004

Britain declared war on Germany in 1914 because Germany violated Belgium's neutrality by invading it as part of the Schlieffen Plan to attack France. Britain had a treaty with Belgium to protect its neutrality and Germany's invasion on August 4, 1914, prompted Britain to fulfill its obligation and declare war on Germany.

66. Name the country which emerged as a world power after the War. What happened to the Austrian Empire after the First World War?

Ans : MAIN 2013

The United States emerged as a world power after the First World War.
Austria-Hungary was dissolved, resulting in the creation of two separate kingdoms, Austria and Hungary. Austria was required to cede territories to Czechoslovakia, Yugoslavia and Poland and was compelled to recognize their independence.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

NODIA

67. Name the five major powers who got involved in the hostilities in 1914.

Ans : COMP 2019

(i) Britain
(ii) France
(iii) Russia
(iv) Germany
(v) Austria

68. Why is the war fought between 1914 and 1918 called the First World War ?

Ans : MAIN 2003

The war between 1914 and 1918 is called the First World War because it involved many major powers across multiple continents, with battles fought globally, making it the first truly international conflict.

69. Which country withdrew from the First World War and why?

Ans : SQP 2008

Russia withdrew from the First World War after facing significant setbacks, with over 600,000 Russian soldiers killed. The day after the Bolshevik government, led by Lenin, came to power, it issued the Decree on Peace, proposing to end the war without any annexations or indemnities.

70. Explain briefly the Treaty of Versailles?

Ans : COMP 2012

The Treaty of Versailles was a peace agreement made with Germany, which was blamed for starting World War I. Signed on June 28, 1919, in the Hall of Mirrors at Versailles, the treaty imposed severe penalties on Germany, including territorial, military and economic restrictions, marking the formal end of the war.

71. How was Denmark affected by the Treaty of Versailles ?

Ans : COMP 2019

The duchies of Schleswig and Holstein, which had been seized by Prussia from Denmark in 1864, were returned to Denmark after nearly 55 years.

33. Why did Britain declare war on Germany and when ?

Ans : SQP 2009

Britain declared war on Germany on August 4, 1914 when German army invaded Belgium, whose neutrality had been guaranteed by Britain.

34. Mention the time period of the First World War.

Ans : MAIN 2000

The First World War started in 1914 AD and ended in 1918 AD.

35. What was the conflict between Austria and Serbia due to regions?

Ans : SQP 2003

The major cause of tension between Serbia and Austria was Balkan region.

36. Which country declared war on Serbia and when ?

Ans : COMP 2006

Austria declared a war on Serbia on 28th July, 1914 due to constant refusal of Serbia to comply with Austrian constitution.

37. Name the country which withdrew from the Triple Alliance during the First World War.

Ans : SQP 2011

Russia.

38. Name the five major powers which got involved in World War I.

Ans : MAIN 2007

The five major powers were Russia, Germany, Britain, Austria and France.

39. When and by whom was the League of Nations initiated ?

Ans : MAIN 2018

The League of Nations was initiated on January 16, 1920 by President Wilson of the USA with its headquarters at Geneva in Switzerland.

40. Give the date of the Armistice on which the First World War came to an end.

Ans : SQP 2012

The date of Armistice on which the war came to an end was November 11, 1918.

41. Why is the First World War called the World War ?

Ans : COMP 2015

It is called the World War as it was fought on land, water and in air. Moreover armies and resources of about 86 nations were involved in the war.

42. When and by whom was Russia attacked first during the World War I ?

Ans : SQP 2000

Russia was attacked by Austria-Hungary on August 6, 1914.

43. Which country withdrew from Triple Alliance during the World War I ?

Ans : COMP 2008

Italy withdrew from Triple Alliance and joined the war against Germany in 1915.

44. Which region was the cause of tension between France and Germany ?

Ans : MAIN 2023

The province of Alsac-Lorane which France had lost to Germany after the Franco-Prussian War of 1870.

45. Where were headquarters of the League of Nations situated?

Ans : MAIN 2019

The League of Nations had its headquarters at Geneva in Switzerland.

46. Which country was blamed for the assassination of Archduke Francis Ferdinand?

Ans : SQP 2008

Serbia was blamed for the assassination of Archduke Francis Ferdinand.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

80. How was nationalism a cause of the First World War ?

Ans : COMP 2007

Nationalism is the belief that one's country is superior to others, making nations more assertive and aggressive. It played a significant role in the outbreak of World War I. Nationalism not only led to the assassination of Archduke Franz Ferdinand, but also fueled Germany's desire to be seen as a formidable power, as it was not fully recognized by other nations as a strong competitor. Nationalism was also the driving force behind imperialism, with the quest for resources being the underlying motive.

81. What were the conditions of the Austrian ultimatum to Serbia ?

Ans : MIAN 2012

Serbia must suppress all anti-Austrian activities and dissolve nationalist groups that were seen as hostile to Austria-Hungary, particularly the Black Hand.
Serbia must dismiss any officials involved in anti-Austrian propaganda, especially those in the military and government.
Austria-Hungary must be allowed to participate in the investigation and trial of those responsible for the assassination of Archduke Franz Ferdinand.
Serbia must take measures to prevent arms and explosives from being smuggled across the border.

82. When and where were the two International Conferences held before 1914 and with what outcome ?

Ans : MAIN 2018

(i) First Hague Conference (1899) : Held in The Hague, it aimed to discuss disarmament and peaceful dispute resolution but made limited progress on disarmament.
(ii) Second Hague Conference (1907) : Also in The Hague, it established conventions on warfare but failed to prevent rising tensions and the arms race.

83. What is the Sarajevo Incident ? Who assassinated whom, when and where ?

Ans : COMP 2001

The Sarajevo Incident refers to the assassination of Archduke Franz Ferdinand of Austria-Hungary. He was killed by a Serbian nationalist, Gavrilo Princip, on June 28, 1914, in Sarajevo, the capital of Bosnia. This event was the immediate trigger for World War I.

84. Mention two territorial conflicts between European nations before the outbreak of World War I.

Ans : SQP 2008

(i) Tension arose between France and Italy regarding the occupation of Tunis.
(ii) There was a territorial dispute between Turkey and several European powers.

85. How is the dictatorship in Germany and Italy attributed to be the cause of the First World War ?

Ans : SQP 2000

(i) The Treaty of Versailles was signed following the conclusion of the First World War.
(ii) The war led to economic and political instability in several European nations.

86. Which country emerged as the super power after the War ?

or

The USA emerged as the Super Power after the War. Why ?

Ans : COMP 2004

The USA emerged as a superpower after the war because
(i) It brought an end to the political isolation imposed by the Monroe Doctrine.
(ii) The USA played a key role in the victory of the Allied Powers, significantly turning the tide against Germany and the Axis Powers.
(iii) The Armistice signed by Germany on November 11, 1918, was based on US President Wilson's Fourteen Points.

NODIA

the League, against any nation that threatened world peace.

The organization formed in 1945 with similar objectives is the United Nations (UN).

97. The First World War had a devastating effect on the world and caused unprecedented destruction. With reference to the First World War, answer the following questions.

(i) Name the signatory countries of the Triple Entente.

(ii) What is meant by the term Imperialism ?

(iii) Explain the immediate cause of the First World War.

(iv) What was the amount of war reparation that Germany had to pay the allies ? Mention any two terms of the Treaty of Versailles which affected the German military.

Ans : MAIN 2022

(i) The signatory countries of the Triple Entente were Britain, France and Russia.

(ii) Imperialism refers to a policy where a powerful nation seeks to extend its control over other countries, either through colonization, military conquest, or economic domination, in order to exploit resources and strengthen its own power.

(iii) The immediate cause of the First World War was the assassination of Archduke Franz Ferdinand, the heir to the Austro-Hungarian throne, on June 28, 1914, in Sarajevo by a Serbian nationalist. This event triggered a series of alliances and conflicts that eventually led to a global war.

(iv) Germany was required to pay 132 billion gold marks (approximately 33 billion US dollars) in war reparations.

Two terms of the Treaty of Versailles that affected the German military were:

(a) The German army was limited to 100,000 soldiers and conscription was banned.

(b) Germany was prohibited from having an air force or submarines and its navy was restricted to a small fleet of 36 ships.

98. With reference to the First World War answer the following questions :

(i) State any three consequences of the war.

(ii) Mention three points under the Treaty of Versailles, which affected Germany.

(iii) Discuss any three reasons which led to the war in 1914.

Ans : COMP 2013

(i) Three consequences of First World War :

(a) **Territorial Rearrangements:** The war led to significant changes in national borders, including the breakup of empires such as Austria-Hungary and the Ottoman Empire and the creation of new countries like Yugoslavia and Czechoslovakia.

(b) **Economic Devastation:** The conflict resulted in massive financial costs and widespread destruction of infrastructure, leading to economic hardships and instability in many countries.

(c) **Formation of the League of Nations:** The League of Nations was established to promote international cooperation and prevent future conflicts, although it struggled to maintain peace effectively.

(ii) Treaty of Versallies :

(a) **War Indemnity:** The Treaty of Versailles declared Germany guilty of aggression and required it to pay a heavy sum of approximately $33 billion as war indemnity to the Allies. Additionally, Germany had to evacuate the territories it had captured during the war.

(b) **Demilitarization of the Rhine Valley:** The Rhine Valley was to be demilitarized, with Germany prohibited from maintaining or constructing fortifications on both banks of the Rhine. Existing fortifications were to be dismantled and the territory west of the Rhine was to be occupied by Allied troops for 15 years to ensure compliance.

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

BETTER THAN BOOK IN THE MARKET

Why students are choosing this book 👉

School teachers already use this content to set papers.

Still not sure?

- 👉 Match this PDF with your question papers
- 👉 See the similarity yourself

Why does this happen?

- ✓ Teachers have its PDF & Word files
- ✓ Easy access
- ✓ Direct copy-paste questions
- ✓ Same pattern followed

Don't miss out—get the advantage today!

BETTER THAN BOOK IN THE MARKET

Why students are choosing this book 👉

School teachers already use this content to set papers.

Still not sure?

- 👉 Match this PDF with your question papers
- 👉 See the similarity yourself

Why does this happen?

- ✓ Teachers have its PDF & Word files
- ✓ Easy access
- ✓ Direct copy-paste questions
- ✓ Same pattern followed

Don't miss out—get the advantage today!

democratic governments emerged:
(a) The German Emperor William II fled and a democratic government was established.
(b) A People's Republic was formed in Russia following the 1917 Revolution.
(c) Italy also became a republic.

93. With reference to the causes of the First World War, explain :
(i) World situation in 1914.
(ii) Mutual rivalries between nations.
(iii) Clash of Imperial Interests and Colonial Rivalries. Enumerate any three causes of the First World War.

Ans : MAIN 2005,2007,2011,2015,2018

(i) (a) **Sarajevo Incident :** On June 28, 1914, Archduke Franz Ferdinand of Austria-Hungary and his wife were assassinated in Sarajevo by a Serbian nationalist, triggering the chain of events that led to World War I.
(b) **Lack of International Machinery :** The absence of effective international systems to maintain peace, highlighted by the failures of the Hague Conferences in 1899 and 1907, forced nations to rely on armaments and secret diplomacy for self-protection.
(c) **Territorial Conflicts :** The Balkan Wars in 1912 and 1913 intensified tensions, as Serbia, Greece and others fought Turkey and Bulgaria, leading to new alliances and heightened conflicts.
(d) **Imperialist and Colonial Rivalry :** Colonial disputes, such as between France and Italy over Tunis and between Britain and Russia over Persia, divided Europe into two blocs Germany, Austria-Hungary and Turkey on one side and Britain, France and Russia on the other.
(e) **Armament Race :** European nations escalated an arms race, building up weapons to ensure their security, which heightened tensions across the continent.
(f) **Militant Nationalism and Rivalries:** Nationalism grew increasingly aggressive, fostering a sense of superiority and hatred between nations, which led to intense rivalries and a highly charged political atmosphere.
(g) **Division of Europe into Power Blocs:** By 1914, Europe was divided into two major blocs the Triple Alliance (Germany, Austria-Hungary, Italy) and the Triple Entente (Britain, France, Russia), creating a highly tense and polarized environment that contributed to the outbreak of war.

(ii) In the 19th century, patriotism was characterized by love for one's own country and hostility towards others. Each nation prioritized its own interests, leading to competition and aggression. This created an atmosphere filled with interstate rivalries.

(iii) In the 19th century, European nations competed for colonies in Africa and Asia. Britain dominated most territories, with others claimed by France, Spain, Holland, Portugal and Belgium. Germany, entering the race later, sought its share in the global market, causing concern among Britain and France over its growing power, sparking conflicts. Additionally, small wars broke out, such as between France and Italy over Tunis and Britain and Russia over Persia. These rivalries led to the formation of two power blocs: Britain, France and Russia versus Germany, Austria and Turkey. The scramble for colonies was a key cause of World War I.

Three Causes of the First World War:
(a) **Militarism :** European nations built large militaries, increasing the risk of war.
(b) **Alliance System :** Alliances like the Triple Alliance and Triple Entente pulled many nations into the conflict.
(c) **Nationalism :** Strong national pride and territorial ambitions fueled rivalries and tensions.

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

94. Write a note on Treaty of Versailles with reference to :
(i) Loss to Germany in material and military arrangement.
(ii) Losses with respect to her own territories.
(iii) Mention four points under the Treaty of Versailles which affected Germany.

Ans : COMP 2005,2007,2011,2015

(i) (a) Germany was required to pay war indemnity to the victorious nations, amounting to 33 billion dollars.
(b) The German army was dismantled and it was permitted to retain only 100,000 soldiers. Both the air force and submarines were prohibited and the navy was restricted to 15,000 men and 36 ships.
(c) Germany had to hand over its merchant ships to the Allies as part of the reparations.
(d) Germany was obligated to supply large quantities of coal to France, Italy and Belgium for 10 years.
(e) To compensate France for the coal mines destroyed by Germany in 1918, France was granted full control over the coal-rich Saar Basin, although the area was administered by the League of Nations.

(ii) (a) Germany was to return Alsace and Lorraine to France.
(b) She had to hand over Eupen and Malmedy to Belgium.
(c) Schleswig was to be given to Denmark.
(d) The German city of Danzig was made a free port in Polish territory.
(e) The German territory to the west of the Rhine Valley was to be occupied by the Allies.

(iii) Germany's overseas colonies in Africa and the Pacific were confiscated and distributed as mandates to the Allied powers, primarily Britain and France.
Four Points that Crippled Germany's Strength :
(a) Britain and France divided and took control of Togo and the Cameroons in Southeast Africa.
(b) German colonies in East Africa and South-West Africa were distributed among England, Belgium, Portugal and South Africa.
(c) Japan was granted Shantung and Kiau-Chow in China.
(d) Samoa Island was given to New Zealand.

The Treaty of Versailles aimed to cripple Germany both militarily and economically, ensuring it would not pose a future threat to European stability.

95. The First World War was unique in history. In this context, answer the following :
(i) Any three causes that led to the war.
(ii) The extent and methods used in this war.
(iii) Economic consequences of this war.

Ans : MAIN 2000

(i) Causes of First World War
(a) **Militant Nationalism :** Germany, under Kaiser William II, aggressively pursued the goal of establishing a vast German Empire and becoming a global leader, which contributed to heightened tensions and competition.
(b) **Armament Race :** Intense nationalism led to Europe becoming an armed camp, with nations rapidly increasing their military capabilities. Germany, in particular, built a powerful navy to protect its colonies, causing concern for Britain and France.
(c) **Arms Race Dynamics :** The competitive nature of the arms race meant that as one country increased its military strength, others felt compelled to do the same, escalating tensions and preparing the ground for conflict.
(d) **Europe split into two armed camps:** the Triple Alliance and the Triple Entente. The Triple Alliance, formed in 1879, included Germany, Austria-Hungary and later Italy. In response, the Triple Entente was formed with Britain, France and Russia. This division heightened tensions and rivalry between the two alliances.

NODIA

(ii) (a) **Extent :** Unlike earlier wars, which mainly affected soldiers, the First World War was a total war that mobilized all human and economic resources of the participating countries. It had a global impact on the economy and caused severe civilian casualties due to bombings, famines and epidemics, resulting in widespread suffering.

(b) **Methods :** The war saw the introduction of many new weapons, including machine guns and flamethrowers. Aircraft were used for the first time in warfare, including for bombing civilian areas. Tanks were introduced by the British and became a significant weapon, while Germany extensively deployed submarines known as U-boats.

(iii) (a) **High Financial Cost :** The First World War involved approximately 86 nations, with total expenses estimated at around $186 billion, making it an extremely costly conflict.

(b) **Economic Destruction :** The war caused significant damage to cities, farms and factories, leading to the destruction of trade and severe economic disruption.

96. The war that broke out in 1914 was different from the previous wars in many ways. In this context discuss the following points briefly:

(i) Militant Nationalism as a cause of the War.

(ii) What was the territorial rearrangement of Europe as a result of this War?

(iii) What were the objectives of the League of Nations? Name the organization formed in 1945 with similar objectives.

Ans : SQP 2005,2008,2011,2015

(i) In the 19th century, militant nationalism grew due to:

(a) **Franco German Rivalry :** France sought to regain Alsace and Lorraine and compete with Germany over Morocco, increasing tensions.

(b) **Anglo-German Rivalry :** Germany's naval expansion and the widening of the Kiel Canal heightened competition with England.

(c) **Austria-Russia Tensions :** Russia supported Serbia, while Austria opposed it, exacerbating conflict as Austria annexed Bosnia and Herzegovina, which clashed with Serbia's Slavic ambitions.

(d) **Scramble for Colonies :** Germany's rise as an industrial power intensified competition for colonies with established European powers like France and Britain.

(e) **German Ambitions :** Kaiser Wilhelm II's claims of Germany's world leadership and aggressive propaganda increased global tensions.

(ii) (a) Japan received Shantung and Kiau-Chow in China, while New Zealand was given Samoa Island

(b) Yugoslavia and Czechoslovakia emerged as independent countries.

(c) Danzig was designated as a "Free City."

(d) Togoland and Cameroon were divided between France and England.

(e) Austria and Hungary were separated into two distinct kingdoms.

(iii) The objectives of the League of Nations were as follows:

(a) No state was permitted to enter into secret treaties.

(b) Member states were prohibited from possessing warships and destructive armaments.

(c) All mutual disputes between states were to be referred to the League of Nations for resolution.

(d) States were expected to respect each other's independence.

(e) The League was tasked with promoting cultural, social and economic cooperation among member states.

(f) Member states were required to take necessary actions, as directed by

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

87. How was the outbreak of the Second World War an outcome of the First World War ?

Ans : MAIN 2006

The harsh treatment of the defeated nations after the First World War contributed to the outbreak of the Second World War. The Treaty of Versailles, signed after the war, was humiliating and oppressive for countries like Germany, Austria, Hungary, Turkey and Bulgaria.

88. Why did the League of Nations collapse and who replaced it ?

Ans : COMP 2023

The League of Nations collapsed due to its inability to prevent conflicts, particularly World War II and its lack of enforcement power. Key nations, like the USA, never joined and rising aggression from countries like Germany and Italy weakened it. It was replaced by the United Nations in 1945 to maintain global peace.

89. What did France gain from the Treaty of Versailles ?

Ans : MAIN 2002

(i) France was granted full control of the rich coal mines in the Saar basin, though the region was administered by the League of Nations.

(ii) France also received parts of Togo and Cameroon in Southeast Africa.

90. When and between whom was the Treaty of Versailles signed ?

Ans : SQP 2015

The Treaty of Versailles was signed on June 28, 1919, between Germany and the Allied Powers, which included countries like France, Britain and the United States, officially ending the First World War.

91. What is nationalism ?

Ans : COMP 2022

Nationalism is an ideology that unites people through shared institutions and culture, fostering a sense of unity. It includes elements like race, religion, history and geography. In the mid-19th century, nationalism shifted from liberal and humanitarian ideals to a more aggressive focus on national power. Essentially, nationalism is the idea that people identify with each other based on common values, beliefs and cultural traditions.

THREE MARKS QUESTIONS

92. With reference to the consequences of the World War I, explain :

(i) Loss of life and money.

(ii) Changes in the political map of the world.

(iii) Emergence of the democratic spirit after World War I.

Ans : SQP 2010, 2015, 2024

(i) (a) **Loss of Life :** Over the four years of war, approximately 8 million people were killed, 6 million were disabled and around 12 million were wounded. Additionally, 8 million were reported missing. Many more suffered from diseases, famines and epidemics caused by the war.

(b) **Loss of Money :** The war had a huge financial impact. The Allied powers spent around 41,000 million pounds, while the Germans spent 15,000 million pounds. Numerous industries, farms and towns were destroyed, severely damaging the global economy.

(ii) The Treaty of Versailles and other treaties after World War I reshaped the political map. Germany lost territories like Alsace-Lorraine to France and new nations like Poland, Czechoslovakia and Yugoslavia were created from the defeated empires of Austria-Hungary, Germany and the Ottoman Empire. The redrawing of borders caused significant political and ethnic tensions that persisted for years.

(iii) Before World War I, empires like Russia, Germany, Turkey and Austria were ruled by royal dynasties. After the war,

NODIA

(c) **Loss of Colonies and Overseas Possessions:** Germany lost all its colonies and overseas possessions. Togoland and Cameroon in West Africa were divided between Britain and France, while Germany's East Africa was shared between Britain and Belgium.

(iii) There were many causes which led to the First World War (1914-1918) :

(a) Franco-German rivalry was an important cause. France wanted to avenge its defeat at the hands of the Germans and get back Alsace and Lorraine captured by the Germans. Also both countries wanted to seize Morocco in Africa. Thus war between them was inevitable.

(b) At this time there was also a scramble for new colonies. France, Spain, Portugal and England had established colonies in different parts of the world. With Germany emerging as a powerful industrial nation, there was great rivalry among the European nations to set up and control colonies.

(c) German ambition to be a world power also added to the tension. German Kaiser William II went about proclaiming that 'Germany' was going to be the leader of the world empire and the war propaganda by newspapers specially in Germany added to the war hysteria.

99. Various events led to the First World War. In this context, explain the following:

(i) Division of Europe into two hostile camps.

(ii) Militant nationalism.

(iii) Race for armaments in the beginning of the 20th century

Ans : COMP 2018

(i) By the early 20th century, Europe was sharply divided into two rival alliances, primarily driven by the interests of their respective powers to counterbalance each other's influence and secure their territories:

(a) **The Triple Alliance (1882) :** This was composed of Germany, Austria-Hungary and Italy. It was initially formed to isolate France and provide mutual support against potential Russian aggression or French retaliation.

(b) **The Triple Entente (1907) :** Formed as a counter to the Triple Alliance, this alliance linked France, Russia and Great Britain. The alliance was largely a response to the growing threat posed by the Triple Alliance and it aimed at providing a counterweight to the rising German power.

These alliances were meant as deterrents but instead fostered an environment ripe for conflict, where a war in one area could quickly escalate into a full-scale European war due to the obligations of alliance members to support each other militarily.

(ii) Militant nationalism, often termed competitive patriotism, meant that nations prioritized their own interests, showing little regard for others. This attitude held that true patriotism involved hostility towards other nations. Under Kaiser Wilhelm II, Germany, having defeated France in the Franco-Prussian War (1870-71) and annexed the resource-rich territories of Alsace and Lorraine, aspired to global leadership. In response, France was determined to reclaim these provinces at any cost. Meanwhile, the rivalry between England and Germany for commercial and colonial dominance reached a peak. In the Balkans, the conflict between Austria and Serbia and the competing interests of Austria and Russia, significantly threatened global peace. Political leaders fueled this environment by spreading hatred and passion under the guise of nationalism.

(iii) Intense nationalism transformed Europe into a landscape dotted with heavily armed camps. Germany, aiming to match Britain's naval power, expanded its navy and deepened the Kiel Canal

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

to accommodate battleships. Despite Britain's repeated pleas to reduce naval armament, Germany persisted, triggering an arms race across Europe. From 1908 to 1918, defense spending surged dramatically. This escalation in armaments emerged as a critical factor leading to the outbreak of the war.

100. The First World War was precipitated by the assassination of the heir to the throne of Austria-Hungary, Archduke Francis Ferdinand. In this context, describe the following :

(i) Sarajevo Crisis.

(ii) Why did the USA join the First World War ?

(iii) What was the impact of the War on Austria-Hungary?

Ans : SQP 2010

(i) The tensions in Europe had been escalating for years, but the assassination of Archduke Ferdinand of Austria on June 28, 1914, in Sarajevo by a Serbian nationalist provided the spark that ignited the conflict. Austria-Hungary blamed the Serbian government for the murder and issued a harsh ultimatum. Serbia, unable to accept all the conditions as they violated its sovereignty, refused to comply fully. Consequently, Austria declared war on Serbia on July 28, 1914. This declaration quickly set off a chain reaction of alliances and conflicts, culminating in the outbreak of the First World War. The rapid escalation highlighted the deep-seated rivalries and tensions that had been brewing in Europe.

(ii) The United States joined the First World War in 1917 due to several key factors:

(a) **Unrestricted Submarine Warfare :** Germany's resumption of unrestricted submarine warfare, targeting civilian and neutral ships, including those carrying American passengers, led to significant American casualties.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

(b) **The Zimmermann Telegram :** Germany's attempt to ally with Mexico against the United States, revealed in the intercepted Zimmermann Telegram, further inflamed American public opinion.

(c) **Economic Interests :** The U.S. had strong economic ties with the Allied Powers and a victory for the Central Powers could jeopardize American economic interests and investments in Europe.

(iii) The Austro-Hungarian Empire was dismantled following the First World War, leading to the creation of two separate kingdoms: Austria and Hungary. This breakup resulted in significant territorial changes. Austria was required to cede substantial territories to the newly established countries of Czechoslovakia, Yugoslavia and Poland. Additionally, Austria had to formally accept the independence of these newly formed nations, which not only reshaped the political map of Central Europe but also had lasting implications for regional stability and national identities. These territorial concessions and the recognition of new states marked a profound shift in the post-war European landscape.

NODIA

101. There were several far reaching consequences as a result of the First World War. In this context, answer the following :

(i) Explain how World War I brought about a changed political scenario of the world.

(ii) What did France gain from the Treaty of Versailles ?

(iii) What was the major drawback of the League of Nations? How did it lead to another World War?

Ans : MAIN 2000

(i) The political map of the world, particularly in Europe, underwent significant transformations after the Peace Treaties following World War I. The old empires such as the German Empire, the Austro-Hungarian Empire,

the Ottoman Empire and the Russian Empire were shattered, leading to the dissolution of their extensive territories. This dramatic shift led to the emergence of many new nation-states. New states such as Poland, Finland, Latvia, Lithuania, Czechoslovakia, Romania and Yugoslavia were created, each with newly defined borders that reflected the ethnic and nationalist aspirations ignited by the war. This reconfiguration was largely influenced by the principles of national self-determination promoted during the Paris Peace Conference.

(ii) (a) Germany was required to return the territories of Alsace and Lorraine to France.

(b) As compensation for the damage to her coal mines by Germany in 1918, France was granted full control over the lucrative Saar basin coal mines in Germany, which would be administered by the League of Nations.

(c) Britain and France split and took joint possession of the West African regions of Togoland and the Cameroons.

(d) Germany was obligated to deliver a substantial amount of coal to France, Italy and Belgium for a decade.

(iii) The formation of the League of Nations did not fulfill the aspirations for a global organization committed to maintaining peace and the independence of nations. Initially, two major powers Germany and the Soviet Union were excluded from membership for several years. The emergence of dictatorships in Italy and Germany further undermined the League of Nations, compromising its fundamental goal of preserving global peace. Ultimately, the League's failure was highlighted when Hitler's invasion of Poland triggered the onset of World War II (1939-1945), leading to the League's dissolution.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

102. The terms of the Treaty of Versailles (1919) were not the result of negotiations between the defeated and the victorious powers but were imposed by the victorious powers on the defeated nations. In this context, answer the following :

(i) In what ways was Germany punished by the Allies?

(ii) What were the consequences of the First World War on the position of England ?

(iii) What did France gain from the Treaty?

Ans : COMP 2015

(i) (a) Severe Military Restrictions: The Treaty of Versailles imposed strict limitations on Germany's military capabilities, restricting the army to 100,000 soldiers, the navy to 15,000 personnel and 36 ships and completely banning the air force.

(b) **Demilitarization of the Rhineland:** Germany was prohibited from constructing or maintaining any fortifications along both the left and right banks of the Rhine River, further weakening its defensive and offensive military capabilities.

(c) **Economic and Naval Concessions:** In addition to military restrictions, Germany was required to surrender all its merchant ships to the Allies as compensation and was barred from possessing submarines. Furthermore, Germany had to provide substantial quantities of coal to France, Italy and Belgium for a decade, impacting its own economic recovery and industrial needs.

(ii) Austria-Hungary was compelled to sign the Treaty of St. Germain with the Allies, which imposed the following terms:

(a) The dual monarchy of Austria-Hungary was dissolved, resulting in the separate formation of the kingdoms of Austria and Hungary.

(b) Austria was required to cede territories to Czechoslovakia, Yugoslavia and Poland and had to recognize their independence.

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

(c) The size of the Austrian military was limited to 30,000 troops and Austria was obligated to pay a substantial war indemnity.

(iii)(a) **Territorial Gains :** As mentioned earlier, France regained Alsace-Lorraine and was also given control over the Saar Basin's coal mines for 15 years.

(b) **Security Measures :** The demilitarization of the Rhineland provided a buffer zone between France and Germany, intended to prevent future German aggression.

(c) **Reparations :** France received a significant portion of the reparations from Germany, which were intended to compensate for the immense destruction suffered during the war and aid in reconstruction.

(d) **Military Limitations on Germany :** The severe restrictions placed on the German military were seen as crucial by France to prevent any future threat from its neighbor.

103. The world witnessed a 'great war' in the years between 1914-1918. In this context :

(i) Mention three clauses of the Treaty of Versailles.

(ii) Explain how the Treaty of Versailles was responsible for the outbreak of the Second World War.

Ans : COMP 2012

(i) Three clauses of the Treaty of Versailles :

(a) **War Guilt Clause (Article 231) :** Assigned full blame for the war to Germany and its allies, justifying the reparations demanded by the Allies.

(b) **Reparations :** Germany was mandated to pay 132 billion gold marks (about $31 billion in 1921) to cover war damages.

(c) **Territorial Losses :** Germany lost substantial territories, including Alsace-Lorraine to France, Eupen and Malmedy to Belgium, North Schleswig to Denmark and eastern regions to the new state of Poland, creating the Polish Corridor.

(ii) (a) **Perceived Injustice and Humiliation:** The punitive measures imposed by the Treaty of Versailles, including significant territorial losses and heavy war indemnities, were perceived by Germans as excessive and unjust, deeply humiliating a proud nation.

(b) **Rise of Extremist Movements :** These harsh conditions and national humiliation provided fertile ground for the rise of extremist ideologies like Nazism, leading Germany towards a path of aggressive expansionism and militarism in the following years.

104. With reference to the causes of the First World War explain.

(i) Division of Europe

(ii) Nationalism

(iii)Imperialism

Ans : MAIN 2012

(i) The division of Europe into opposing alliances is often cited as a direct precursor to the outbreak of the First World War. By the early 20th century, the major European powers were split into two main alliances:

(a) **The Triple Alliance (1882) :** Comprising Germany, Austria-Hungary and Italy, this alliance was initially formed to counteract French power but later became aimed at opposing Russia and France both.

(b) **The Triple Entente (1907) :** Linking France, Russia and Britain, this alliance was established in response to the growing threat posed by the Triple Alliance and was more about balancing German power in Europe.

These alliances were defensive in nature, meaning that each member promised to support the others in the event of an attack by other powers. This system of alliances meant that any conflict involving one country could easily escalate into a broader conflict, drawing all the major

European powers into war due to their treaty obligations to their allies.

(ii) Nationalism was another potent force that contributed significantly to the outbreak of the war. In the context of pre-war Europe, nationalism was marked by:

(a) **Ethnic Groups Seeking Independence:** Various ethnic groups within and across empires (like the Slavs in the Austro-Hungarian Empire) sought greater autonomy or outright independence, which destabilized multi-ethnic states.

(b) **Patriotic Fervor :** In countries like Germany and France, a strong sense of national pride and the desire for international prestige or revenge (in France's case, revenge for the loss of Alsace-Lorraine to Germany in 1871) fueled militaristic and expansionist policies.

(c) **Balkan Nationalism :** In the Balkans, the decline of Ottoman control led to rising nationalism among newly independent states like Serbia, which aspired to form a larger Slavic state. This was seen as a threat by Austria-Hungary and was a direct spark for the war following the assassination of Archduke Franz Ferdinand by a Bosnian Serb nationalist.

(iii)(a) **Surge in Imperial Expansion :** By the late 19th century, established European powers like Britain, France and Spain were joined by Germany and Italy in a competitive rush to acquire new colonies, driven by increasing nationalism, demand for land and limited opportunities within their own borders.

(b) **German Industrial and Colonial Ambitions :** Germany's industrial prowess led to its desire for a greater share in global markets, necessitating colonial acquisitions. This ambition put Germany in direct conflict with established colonial powers such as Britain and France, heightening tensions and contributing to a warlike atmosphere.

(c) **Strategic and Diplomatic Conflicts:** The 1904 secret agreement between Britain and France over political control in Egypt and Morocco and Germany's opposition to French claims in Morocco, showcased the deep-seated rivalries and strategic maneuvers that further strained relations among European powers.

(d) **Infrastructure Projects and Regional Dominance :** Germany's plan to build a railway from Berlin to Baghdad, along with Italy's and Russia's expansionist activities in Africa and the Ottoman Empire, respectively, triggered fear and opposition from Britain, France and Russia, underlining the interconnected ness of imperial ambitions and regional dominance which escalated the pre-war tensions.

NODIA

105. There was a transformation in the political map of the world as the consequence of the First World War. In this context, explain the following:

(i) Territorial rearrangements.

(ii) Economic Conflicts.

(iii) League of Nations

Ans : SQP 2011

(i) (a) **Decline of European Dominance :** The aftermath of World War I marked the decline of European supremacy, with the United States emerging as a predominant economic and military world power. This shift was facilitated by the transformative effects of the peace treaties on the political landscape of Europe.

(b) **Fall of Monarchies and Rise of Democracies :** The war led to the collapse of three major dynasties: the Romanovs in Russia, the Hohenzollerns in Germany and the Habsburgs in Austria-Hungary. This

The two countries where dictatorship arose after the First World War were Italy and Germany.

19. Name Hitler's autobiography and where did he write it ?

Ans : SQP 2018

Hitler's autobiography was named Mein Kampf (My Strength). He wrote it in jail when he was arrested in 1923 for 5 years.

20. Who formed the Fascist Party in Italy and when ?

Ans : MAIN 2010

Duce Benito Mussolini formed the Fascist Party in Italy in 1922.

21. What did the Fascist regime in Italy do to solve the unemployment problem ?

Ans : COMP 2001

(i) It set up many factories.
(ii) It enhanced the production of electricity.

22. On which side did Italy fight in the First World War ?

Ans : MAIN 2022

Italy fought the War on the side of the Allies (Britain and France) in 1915.

23. What name or title did Mussolini give to himself after he became the party leader ?

Ans : SQP 2018

Mussolini gave himself the title of 'Duce' which means the leader of the country.

24. What did Mussolini do to restore law and order in Italy ?

Ans : COMP 2019

Mussolini restored law and order by banning all other political parties except his own Fascist Party.

25. What does the Italian word "Fascio" stand for?

Ans : MAIN 2004

The Italian word "Fascio" means a bundle of rods tied together, which signifies that strength lies in unity.

26. Name the party Newspapers published by Hitler to spread Nazism.

Ans : SQP 2008

People's Observer or Guardian was the newspaper published by Hitler to spread Nazism.

TWO MARKS QUESTIONS

27. What is meant by 'Fascism'? Why did the Italians feel that they had been deceived by the Treaty of Versailles?

Ans : MAIN 2024

Fascism was a highly nationalistic, anti-communist and anti-democratic movement. It promoted dictatorship, where all state power was concentrated in one leader and citizens were required to obey his commands without question. Opposition or criticism of the leader's policies was not tolerated.

The Italians were discontented with the Treaty of Versailles, feeling humiliated as they gained little from the war. Italy had joined the Allies in World War I hoping to acquire territories from Turkey and Germany. However, under the Treaty of Versailles, Italy only received Southern Tyrol, Trentino and parts of Dalmatia, but none of the German or Turkish colonies it sought.

28. Mention the two most important causes of the rise of Fascism.

Ans : COMP 2020

(i) **Economic Hardships :** Post-World War I economic crises, including high unemployment and inflation, caused widespread discontent.
(ii) **Political Instability :** Weak democratic governments and frequent leadership changes created a power vacuum, allowing Mussolini to rise to power.

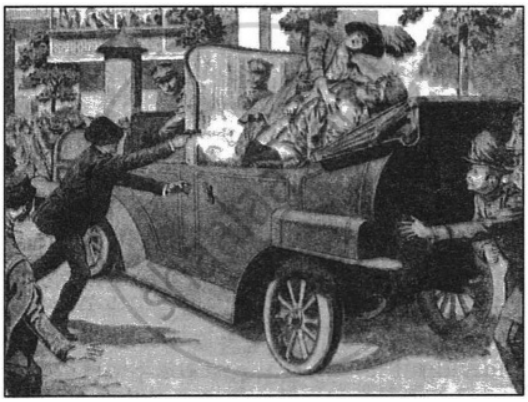
Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

by Serbian nationalists, leading to demands for retribution against Serbia.

(b) **Chain Reaction :** Austria-Hungary's harsh response to Serbia (with the backing of Germany) led to a chain reaction among the intertwined alliances. Russia mobilized to defend Serbia, followed by Germany declaring war on Russia and subsequently on France. When Germany invaded Belgium to outflank the French defenses, Britain entered the war against Germany, marking the full escalation into a global conflict.

CASE BASED QUESTION

107. (i) Identify the event in the picture and state how it became the immediate cause of the First World War.



(ii) State any three other causes of the First World War.

(iii) Mention any three clauses of the Treaty of Versailles.

Ans : MAIN 2001,2005,2003,2018,2019,2023

(i) The event in the picture is the assassination of Archduke Franz Ferdinand of Austria and his wife, Sophie, by Gavrilo Princip in Sarajevo on June 28, 1914. This assassination was the immediate cause of the First World War. Archduke Franz Ferdinand was the heir to the Austro-Hungarian Empire and his murder by a Bosnian Serb nationalist was perceived by Austria-Hungary as a direct threat, supported by Serbia. This event set off a chain reaction among the major European powers, all bound by complex alliances, ultimately leading to the full-scale outbreak of World War I after Austria-Hungary declared war on Serbia, prompting Russia and subsequently other major powers to mobilize or declare war in defense of their allies.

(ii) (a) **Militant Nationalism as a Catalyst for Hostility:** Militant nationalism was a significant factor in escalating tensions across Europe, as it fueled hatred and passion under the guise of patriotic love. This phenomenon was exemplified by France's intense desire to reclaim the provinces of Alsace and Lorraine from Germany, demonstrating how nationalism pushed nations towards conflict to assert their dominance and independence.

(b) **Arms Race Between Major Powers:** Germany's ambitious effort to match the naval capabilities of Britain highlighted the intensifying arms race that concerned both Britain and France. This competition for military superiority not only heightened tensions but also contributed to the overall insecurity and rivalry among the major European powers.

(c) **Alliance Systems and the Division of Europe :** The formation of the Triple Alliance in 1879 and subsequently the Triple Entente in 1907, effectively split Europe into two major hostile camps. This division fostered an atmosphere of tension and instability, with the rivalry between these alliances laying the groundwork for the outbreak of the First World War.

(iii) The three clauses were :

(a) **Rhine Valley Demilitarization :** The area was demilitarized and German

NODIA

37. Why did Germans feel humiliated by the Treaty of Versailles?

Ans : COMP 2019

The Treaty of Versailles, imposed on Germany, was harsh and unfair. Germany was forced to give up significant territories to France, Belgium, Poland and Denmark and her overseas colonies were divided among the victors. Additionally, Germany's military was severely restricted, with her army limited to just 100,000 troops. This sense of injustice and humiliation eventually contributed to the outbreak of the Second World War.

38. Name the book in which Hitler first expressed Nazi principles. Name the country where the Nazi party came to power in 1933. Give one positive and one negative result of Nazism in Germany ?

Ans : COMP 2005

The book in which Hitler first expressed Nazi principles is "Mein Kampf".The country where the Nazi Party came to power in 1933 is Germany.

(i) Positive result of Nazism : Nazism led to a significant reduction in unemployment and improved infrastructure through public works and military rearmament.

(ii) Negative result of Nazism : Nazism led to extreme persecution, particularly the Holocaust, where millions of Jews and other minorities were killed.

39. Give any two aims of Nazism.

Ans : SQP 2000

(i) Establishment of Aryan Supremacy : Nazism aimed to create a pure Aryan race, promoting racial superiority and eliminating those deemed inferior, especially Jews.

(ii) Expansion of German Territory : Hitler sought to expand German territories by conquering Eastern Europe to provide "Lebensraum" (living space) for the German people.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

40. Why was the economic burden of Germany greater than that of other countries?

Ans : SQP 2013

The economic burden of Germany was greater than that of other countries because the Treaty of Versailles imposed heavy reparations on Germany. These reparations, along with territorial losses and military restrictions, crippled Germany's economy, making recovery more difficult compared to other nations. This economic strain contributed to the rise of Nazism.

41. How did the. Fascists look upon the rights and liberties of the people ?

Ans : MAIN 2003

The Fascists viewed the rights and liberties of the people as secondary to the interests of the state. They believed individual freedoms should be sacrificed for national unity and strength, often suppressing personal rights like freedom of speech, press and assembly to maintain strict control and promote authoritarian rule.

42. Do you think that the aims of the Fascists and Nazis could have brought lasting peace and prosperity to their countries? Do you agree with those aims? Why?

Ans : SQP 2004

The aims of the Fascists and Nazis were centered around extreme nationalism, authoritarianism and military expansion, which were unlikely to bring lasting peace and prosperity to their countries. These ideologies relied on aggression, suppression of individual freedoms and racial superiority, leading to conflict both domestically and internationally.

I do not agree with these aims because they promoted violence, discrimination and oppression, ultimately leading to destruction, such as World War II and the Holocaust, rather than peace and prosperity. True progress requires respect for human rights, equality and peaceful cooperation, not authoritarianism and division.

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

CHAPTER 9

RISE OF DICTATORSHIPS

SUMMARY

1. CAUSES FOR THE RISE OF FASCISM IN ITALY AND NAZISM IN GERMANY

1.1 Economic Instability

Both Italy and Germany faced severe economic hardships after World War I. High inflation, unemployment and a sense of humiliation due to the Treaty of Versailles (for Germany) led to widespread discontent.

1.2 Political Instability

Italy and Germany experienced weak democratic governments that failed to address the pressing needs of their populations. The parliamentary systems in both nations were unstable, leading to frequent changes in leadership and political chaos.

1.3 Treaty of Versailles

For Germany, the Treaty of Versailles (1919) imposed heavy reparations, territorial losses and military restrictions. The treaty angered the German people and fueled nationalist sentiments, providing fertile ground for the rise of extremist ideologies like Nazism.

1.4 Fear of Communism

The Russian Revolution (1917) and the spread of communism across Europe led to a fear of communist uprisings. Both Fascism in Italy and Nazism in Germany gained support from elites, industrialists and the middle class, who saw these ideologies as a defense against communism.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

1.5 Nationalism

Extreme nationalist ideologies played a central role in both Fascism and Nazism. The desire to restore national pride, expand territorial boundaries and create a powerful, unified state attracted many supporters.

Aspect	Mussolini's Fascism	Hitler's Nazism
Leadership	Benito Mussolini, Italy (1922)	Adolf Hitler, Germany (1933)
Core Beliefs	Strong centralized state, nationalism, anti-communism, militarism	Extreme nationalism, anti-Semitism, racial purity, anti-communism
Totalitarianism	Fascism advocated for a totalitarian state where all aspects of life were controlled by the state.	Nazism also supported totalitarianism but placed a stronger emphasis on racial hierarchy and ethnic cleansing.
Role of Violence	Mussolini used violence to suppress opposition, especially communists and socialists.	Hitler used violence extensively through the SA and SS to eliminate enemies, enforce racial policies and instill fear.
Expansionism	Mussolini sought to revive the Roman Empire and expand Italian influence in Africa.	Hitler aimed to expand Germany by conquering Eastern Europe and establishing a pure Aryan race.
Attitude towards Race	Fascism focused on creating a strong Italian nation but was less focused on racial ideologies.	Nazism was obsessed with the idea of racial purity, promoting Aryan supremacy and conducting mass genocide (Holocaust)

NODIA

Militarism	Mussolini promoted militarism and believed in the use of force to achieve national goals.	Hitler built a powerful military machine, rearming Germany in violation of the Treaty of Versailles and preparing for aggressive expansion.

In summary, both Fascism and Nazism grew out of similar economic and political crises, but Nazism placed a greater emphasis on racial superiority and the extermination of Jews, while Fascism focused more on national revival and military strength. Both ideologies contributed to the rise of totalitarian regimes that sought to expand their power and influence, leading to significant global consequences during World War II.

MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTION

1. The word 'Fascism' means
(a) Capitalism
(b) Democracy
(c) Autocracy
(d) Communism

Ans : MAIN 2000

Thus (c) is correct option.

2. Which of the following was NOT a cause of Fascism in Italy?
(a) Economic stability
(b) Class conflicts
(c) Leadership provided by Mussolini
(d) Threat of socialism or communism

Ans : SQP 2008

Thus (a) is correct option.

3. Mussolini turned which country into a protectorate of Italy?
(a) Albania
(b) Turkey
(c) Japan
(d) Spain

Ans : COMP 2012

Thus (a) is correct option.

4. Who was called the 'Duce' – meaning the 'Leader'?
(a) Adolt Hitler
(b) Mussolini
(c) King Victor Emma null II
(d) King Victor Emma null III

Ans : MAIN 2005

Thus (b) is correct option.

5. Which of the following did contribute to the rise of Fascism?
(a) Treaty of Versailles
(b) Rise of democracy
(c) Economic crisis
(d) Fear of Communism

Ans : SQP 2001

Thus (b) is correct option.

6. Name the Pact signed between the Pope and Mussolini in 1929?
(a) Treaty of Italy
(b) Treaty of Lateran
(c) Treaty of War
(d) Treaty of Vatican

Ans : COMP 2006

Thus (b) is correct option.

7. Hitler planned to capture power through a march on
(a) Berlin
(b) Reichstag
(c) Munich
(d) Rome

Ans : SQP 2005

Thus (b) is correct option.

8. Which of the following is NOT a factor contributing to growth of Nazism in Germany?
(a) Resurgence of Militant Nationalism
(b) Economic Crisis
(c) Charismatic Personality of Hitler
(d) Strong opposition

Ans : SQP 2000

Thus (d) is correct option.

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

9. "Mein Kamph", written by Adolf Hitler literally means
(a) The war
(b) My struggle
(c) My leadership
(d) My Constitution

Ans : COMP 2018

Thus (b) is correct option.

10. Which of the following was NOT an aim of the Nazi Movement?
(a) To extol war
(b) To advocate the rule by a great leader from a single party
(c) To disparage nationalism
(d) To uphold racial supremacy

Ans : MAIN 2015

Thus (c) is correct option.

11. What was the main objective of Hitler's foreign policy?
(a) To despise internationalism, peace and democracy
(b) To use force and brutality
(c) To establish a Totalitarian state
(d) To reject the Treaty of Versailles

Ans : SQP 2017

Thus (c) is correct option.

12. Who all had to be purged to ensure dominance of the master race?
(a) Jews, communists and Christians
(b) Communists, socialists
(c) Germans, Italians and French
(d) British, Americans and Indians

Ans : MAIN 2005

Thus (a) is correct option.

13. Which of the following is a negative aspect of Fascism?
(a) End of Civil liberties
(b) End of food shortage
(c) Growth of trade
(d) Revival of the economy

Ans : SQP 2018

Thus (a) is correct option.

14. What was the main focus of the Fascist's economic reforms?
(a) Promoting worker's unions and trade guilds
(b) Discouraging rise of capitalists
(c) Removing unemployment and making the nation self sufficient
(d) Increasing support to fulfil domestic demands for food and power.

Ans : COMP 2013

Thus (c) is correct option.

ONE MARK QUESTIONS

15. How did the Treaty of Versailles lead to the rise of dictatorship?

Ans : MAIN 2008

The hopes of Italy was not fulfilled by the Treaty of Versailles which lead to the rise of dictatorship.

16. Why did Mussolini control the press and the radio?

Ans : SQP 2004

Mussolini control the press and the radio in order to crush his opponents brutally Press was censored. The freedom of speech and organizing meetings was also prohibited.

17. Define dictatorship.

Ans : COMP 2020

Dictatorship is an anti-thesis of democracy. It is a rule by a dictator who has got total power of a country which he rules without popular consent. It gives no rights to people, tolerates neither opposition nor criticism. It envisages one party rule, controlled by one leader with complete authority. The individual, his freedom, his thinking are controlled by the State.

18. Name the countries where dictatorship arose after the First World War.

Ans : SQP 2003

NODIA

territories west of the Rhine were occupied by Allied troops for 15 years.

(b) **Germany's Colonial Losses :** Germany relinquished all colonies to the victorious Allies, including Britain, Belgium, South Africa and Portugal.

(c) **German Military Limitations :** The German army was capped at 100,000 soldiers, the navy at 15,000 personnel and 24 ships, with bans on the air force and submarines.

www.nodia.in

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

29. How did the failure of the League of Nations lead to the rise of dictatorship?

Ans : MAIN 2023

In the 1920, efforts were made to secure lasting peace, starting with the creation of the League of Nations in 1920 as a platform for resolving international conflicts. However, the League's influence was limited to persuasion and imposing moral and economic sanctions, which member nations could choose to enforce at their discretion. This ineffectiveness contributed to the rise of dictatorships.

30. State two similarities between Nazism and Fascism.

Ans : SQP 2007 , 2018

Two similarities between Nazism and Fascism are:

(i) Authoritarian Leadership : Both supported totalitarian rule under a single leader.

(ii) Anti-Communism : Both opposed communism and socialism.

31. How did the economic crisis, after the First World War create unrest in Italy?

Ans : COMP 2012

Italy experienced significant losses in both life and property during the First World War. After the war, many soldiers returned home to unemployment and trade and commerce were devastated, leading to widespread joblessness. Food shortages and the collapse of industries further fueled unrest and dissatisfaction among the Italian population.

32. State two underlying Principles of Fascism.

Ans : SQP 2011

(i) Extreme Nationalism : Fascism emphasized intense loyalty to the nation, prioritizing national interests above individual rights.

(ii) Totalitarianism : Fascism promoted absolute control of the state by a single leader, with no tolerance for opposition.

33. In what way was socialism a cause for the rise of Fascism in Italy?

Ans : COMP 2015

Socialism was a cause for the rise of Fascism in Italy as the fear of socialist uprisings and the growing influence of communist ideas created anxiety among the middle class, industrialists and landowners. They viewed socialism as a threat to their property and way of life. Mussolini's Fascist ideology, which was strongly anti-socialist and anti-communist, gained support from these groups as they saw it as a way to maintain order, protect their interests and counter the influence of socialism.

34. What did Mussolini do to solve the problem of unemployment?

Ans : MAIN 2008

To solve the problem of unemployment, Mussolini initiated large public works programs, such as building roads, bridges and infrastructure, to provide jobs. He also promoted military expansion and rearmament, which created employment opportunities in the defense sector.

35. Give any two positive results of Fascism in Italy.

Ans : SQP 2015

(i) Several measures were implemented to reduce unemployment, including the nationalization of factories and mills to improve conditions for workers.

(ii) Military training was made mandatory and efforts were made to strengthen Italy's naval power to compete with that of France and Germany.

36. Give any two features of Nazism.

Ans : COMP 2013

Main features of Nazism were as follows.

(i) It promoted authoritarianism and dictatorship.

(ii) It rejected democracy, liberalism, socialism and international is

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

upheaval paved the way for the end of autocratic rule in these regions and spurred the development of democratic governance structures across Europe.

(c) **Emergence of New Nations and Cultural Realignment :** The recon figuration of territories post-war resulted in the dissolution of multi-ethnic empires and the creation of new independent states with distinct cultural identities, such as Czechoslovakia, Yugoslavia, Finland, Estonia, Latvia and Lithuania. Additionally, regions with strong nationalistic movements like Alsace-Lorraine and Schleswig-Holstein were returned to France and Denmark, respectively, aligning political boundaries more closely with ethnic and cultural identities.

(ii) As a consequence of the First World War, Italy faced significant financial hardships, with its industry devastated and unemployment rising sharply. Additionally, the economic downturn triggered by the 1929 slump further exacerbated unemployment. These economic challenges contributed to the rise of Fascism in Italy and Nazism in Germany.

(iii) The League of Nations, founded in 1920 and based in Geneva, Switzerland, was created to foster international cooperation and secure global peace and security. The League aimed not only to prevent war but also to uphold several key objectives:

(a) Preserving the status quo as established by the outcomes of the peace conference.

(b) Safeguarding the rights of national minorities.

(c) Ensuring the effective administration of the Mandate system.

(d) Beyond its political roles, the League also sought to enhance cultural, social and economic collaboration among its member countries.

106. With reference to the First World War, answer the following questions :

(i) How was the war fought between 1914 and 1918 different from other wars ?

(ii) How did the Balkan Crisis lead to the First World War?

(iii) How was the Sarajevo crisis responsible for the First World War ?

Ans : SQP 2013

(i) In previous wars, civilian involvement was typically minimal. However, the First World War was characterized as a total war, utilizing all available human and economic resources from the participating nations. This conflict introduced several new weapons, including machine guns and flamethrowers. It also marked the first use of aircraft in combat and saw the British debut the tank on the battlefield.

(ii) In the early 1900s, significant European powers became increasingly involved in the Balkans. Austria annexed the Ottoman provinces of Bosnia and Herzegovina in 1908, regions also desired by Serbia as it emerged as a significant Balkan power. During this period, Serbia lacked Russian support for its goal of establishing a United Slav State in the Balkans. In 1912, the Balkan states launched a war against the Ottomans, stripping Turkey of most of its European territories. The subsequent year, in the Second Balkan War of 1913, Serbia and Greece, backed by Russia, overcame Bulgaria, an ally of Austria. This led Austria, with Germany's explicit support from Kaiser Wilhelm II, to take decisive actions to diminish Serbian influence in the area.

(iii) The Sarajevo Crisis, or the assassination of Archduke Franz Ferdinand of Austria-Hungary by Gavrilo Princip, a Bosnian Serb nationalist, on June 28, 1914, directly triggered the outbreak of the war:

(a) **Immediate Cause :** The assassination was seen by Austria-Hungary as a direct threat and an act of aggression

NODIA

43. What was Mussolini's foreign policy?

Ans : MAIN 2011

Mussolini's foreign policy aimed to demonstrate Italy's power and restore the glory of the Roman Empire. He believed territorial expansion was a sign of national greatness, which led to the invasion of Abyssinia. Mussolini, like many Italians, was dissatisfied with the Treaty of Versailles. His goal was clear: "I want to make Italy great, respected and feared." He also sought good relations with France and Britain, hosting the Four Power Pact in Rome in 1933, which he saw as a symbol of Italy's growing influence and his role as a leader in Europe.

44. In what way was the failure of Weimar Republic responsible for the introduction of Nazism?

Ans : MAIN 2009

Between 1919 and 1933, the Weimar Republic saw 21 ministries led by 12 different Prime Ministers. The constant changes in coalition governments failed to address the country's mounting issues, leading to widespread public dissatisfaction, riots and unrest. During this period, Adolf Hitler joined the German Workers' Party, eventually becoming its leader and renaming it the National Socialist Party, or Nazi Party. On January 30, 1933, he formed his first Nazi government.

45. Give any two consequences of Nazism in Germany.

Ans : COMP 2018

(i) Opposition was ruthlessly suppressed. All political parties, except the Nazi Party, were banned, including the Communist Party. Opposition leaders were either imprisoned or assassinated to eliminate resistance.

(ii) After becoming dictator in 1934, Hitler consolidated all power and established a strong central government. He dismantled democracy, creating an administration based on the principle of "one party, one leader" with strict discipline.

46. Did the totalitarian governments have an appeal to the masses? Why?

Ans : MAIN 2008

Yes, totalitarian governments had an appeal to the masses, particularly during times of economic and political instability. In Italy and Germany, the rise of Fascism and Nazism promised strong leadership, national revival and solutions to unemployment and social unrest. Mussolini and Hitler gained support by presenting themselves as decisive leaders who could restore order, rebuild the economy and restore national pride after the perceived failures of democratic governments.

47. Why did some countries lose faith in democratically elected governments?

Ans : COMP 2019

One of the Allies' declared goals in World War I was "to make the world safe for democracy," leading postwar Germany and many newly created or restored states to adopt democratic constitutions. However, by the 1920, a new wave of nationalism, militarism and totalitarianism called fascism seemed to be gaining ground. Fascism promised to address the needs of the people more effectively than democracy and positioned itself as the strongest defense against communism. Benito Mussolini established the first Fascist dictatorship in Italy in 1922.

48. Why were the Italians dissatisfied with Treaty of Versailles ?

Ans : MAIN 2005

Italians were unhappy with the Treaty of Versailles because they had allied with Britain and France during World War I in 1915, expecting to gain significant territories like Trentino, Trieste, Istria, Fiume, the coastal regions of Dalmatia, Albania and parts of Germany and Turkey. However, the Paris Peace Treaties granted them none of these areas from the defeated German and Turkish empires. As a result, Italians felt they "had won the war, but lost the peace."

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

and demonize perceived enemies, such as Jews and communists.

(c) **Use of Terror and Secret Police:** Hitler used terror to maintain control. The Gestapo (secret police) and the SS were used to eliminate any form of dissent. Political opponents, Jews and others deemed enemies of the state were arrested, sent to concentration camps, or executed.

(d) **Notification of Society:** Education, youth organizations and cultural institutions were all used to indoctrinate the population with Nazi ideals. The Nazi regime controlled every aspect of public life, ensuring total obedience to the state.

(iii) Similarities Between the Ideologies of Fascism and Nazism:

(a) Belief in Totalitarian Rule, where absolute power rests in the hands of the state.

(b) Rejection of Democratic Political Systems and institutions.

(c) Emphasis on the Supremacy of the State, with the right to suppress individual freedoms and rights.

(d) Advocacy of One-Party Rule under a single, powerful leader.

(e) Promotion of Aggressive Nationalism and Imperialism, aimed at expanding national power.

65. With reference to the Principles of Fascism, answer the following :

(i) Attitude towards democracy.

(ii) Attitude towards leader.

(iii) Attitude towards individual.

Ans : SQP 2003

(i) The Fascists were staunchly opposed to democracy:

(a) They rejected the rights and freedoms of individuals.

(b) The focus was placed on duties and obligations over personal liberties.

(c) The state was considered more important than the individual.

(d) There was a strong emphasis on nationalism, national pride and unity.

(e) They supported an imperialist and aggressive foreign policy aimed at enhancing the country's standing in the international community.

(ii) The fascists believed in :

(a) A single-party system with a sole leader holding absolute authority.

(b) All citizens are required to follow the leader unquestioningly.

(c) No opposition or criticism of the leader was permitted under any circumstances.

(iii) The individuals under the fascists were:

(a) Criticism of the leader was strictly prohibited in all situations.

(b) The state took precedence over individuals, who were expected to submit to its authority.

(c) Individual rights and freedoms were disregarded.

66. Describe the factors responsible for the Nazi movement in Germany under the following headings:

(i) Humiliation due to the Treaty of Versailles.

(ii) Growing Fear of Communism?

(iii) Personality of Hitler.

Ans : MAIN 2007

(i) (a) **Humiliation from the Treaty of Versailles :** Defeat in World War I and the harsh terms imposed by the Treaty of Versailles left Germans feeling humiliated, as Germany was forced to cede territory to France, Belgium, Poland and Denmark and lost its overseas colonies.

(b) **Economic and Military Restrictions :** Germany was burdened with heavy reparations, amounting to $33 billion and its military strength was drastically reduced to just 100,000 troops. These conditions caused widespread resentment among Germans.

NODIA

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

THREE MARKS QUESTIONS

57. With reference to results of Fascism, explain the following :
(i) Restoration of law and order.
(ii) Economic reforms and prosperity.
(iii) Aggressive Foreign Policy under Mussolini.

Ans : COMP 2016

(i) Mussolini restored law and order in Italy by banning all political parties except the Fascist Party, creating a one-party state. This allowed him to eliminate opposition and enforce strict control over the country's political landscape. Along with this, he used propaganda, censorship and a secret police force to suppress dissent and maintain order. By consolidating power, Mussolini ensured that Fascist ideology dominated the government, silencing any resistance to his regime.
(ii) For economic reforms and prosperity, Mussolini:
  (a) Cut down on government spending.
  (b) Enhanced transportation and communication systems.
  (c) Reclaimed land and boosted agricultural production.
  (d) Established numerous factories.
  (e) Provided improved facilities for workers.
  (f) Increased electricity production.
(iii) Mussolini often declared, "Italy must expand or perish." His goal was to acquire colonies to fulfill nationalist ambitions and support the country's economic needs. In pursuit of this, he annexed Ethiopia (Abyssinia) in 1936, followed by Albania.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

58. With reference to Fascism, discuss the following :
(i) Meaning of Fascism.
(ii) Principles of Fascism.
(iii) Fascist Propaganda.

Ans : MAIN 2015

(i) The term 'Fascism' comes from the Italian word Fascio, meaning a bundle of rods bound together, symbolizing the idea that strength comes from unity. The motto of Fascism is "Unity, Strength and Authority." In this system, all the power of the state is concentrated in one individual and it is mandatory for all citizens to follow his commands without question.
(ii) The main principles of Fascism are as are:
  (a) Opposition to democracy : Focus on duties and obligations, rejecting individual rights and liberties.
  (b) Single-party rule : Authority concentrated in one party and a leader with absolute power.
  (c) No opposition allowed : Criticism of the leader is prohibited.
  (d) State over individual : The state's interests are prioritized over individual rights.
  (e) Nationalism : Strong emphasis on national unity and patriotism.
  (f) Imperialism : Support for an aggressive foreign policy to enhance the country's international status.
(iii) Mussolini stressed the need for a strong state to advance the Italian nation. He advocated for aggressive nationalism, believing that a nation becomes stronger through war and the conquest of weaker nations. His ideas appealed to people from various backgrounds, such as ex-soldiers, farmers and workers, who organized themselves into groups called Fascios. Additionally, industrialists and capitalists were ready to provide him financial support if he opposed the Communists and Socialists.

59. With reference to the causes of the Rise of Fascism, discuss the :
(i) Impact on economic crisis in Italy.
(ii) Impact on working of the government prior to rise of Fascism.
(iii) Dissatisfaction with the Treaty of Versailles.

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

49. What were the two main complaints of the people about the working of the democratic government in Italy?

Ans : SQP 2007

(i) Frequent strikes occurred, with workers damaging machinery and seizing factories. Industrialists, frustrated by these disruptions, sought a strong leader to manage the crisis effectively.

(ii) The Italian government showed little interest in addressing the country's issues and was unable to maintain control of the situation.

50. How did the spread of Communism lead to the rise of Nazism in Germany?

Ans : MAIN 2013

Inspired by the Russian Revolution of 1917, German communists attempted to spark a revolution in Germany. Hitler, fearing that the spread of communism would make Germany subservient to Russia, warned the public about its harmful consequences. He stirred nationalistic sentiments and rallied the people against communism, positioning himself as a defender of Germany's independence.

51. Mention any two steps taken by Mussolini to make Italy a great power.

Ans : SQP 2005

(i) He enforced mandatory military training for the youth.

(ii) He pursued a bold and aggressive foreign policy to elevate Italy's prestige and influence in the global arena.

52. How did Mussolini meet his end and when ?

Ans : COMP 2017

Italy was defeated by Britain and France in 1943 during the Second World War and Rome was captured by the Allies in 1944. Mussolini was captured by his opponents and executed in 1945.

53. How did Mussolini become the Prime Minister of Italy and when ?

Ans : COMP 2020

Mussolini became the Prime Minister of Italy in 1922 after the March on Rome, a significant event where Fascist forces marched to demand power. Facing pressure, King Victor Emmanuel III appointed Mussolini as Prime Minister to avoid civil conflict and unrest.

54. What is meant by Mussolini's famous March to Rome in 1922 ?

Ans : MAIN 2000

Mussolini's March on Rome in 1922 was a planned coup by the Fascist Party to take control of the Italian government. On October 28, 1922, Mussolini and his Blackshirt followers marched towards Rome, pressuring King Victor Emmanuel III. Instead of using military force to stop them, the king appointed Mussolini as the Prime Minister of Italy on October 29, 1922. This marked the beginning of Mussolini's rise to power and the establishment of a Fascist dictatorship in Italy.

55. Why did Italy give up the membership of the League of Nations and when ?

Ans : MAIN 2019

Italy gave up its membership of the League of Nations in 1937. The primary reason was its growing dissatisfaction with the League's response to Italy's aggression, particularly during the Second Italo-Ethiopian War (1935-1936). After the League condemned Italy's invasion of Ethiopia and imposed economic sanctions, Benito Mussolini saw the League as a hostile body undermining Italy's imperial ambitions. In retaliation and defiance, Italy withdrew from the League in December 1937.

56. What do you understand by the terms "Brown Uniform" and "Black Uniform" ?

Ans : MAIN 2007

Black Uniform: The Nazi force in black uniforms was responsible for safeguarding and protecting the party leader.

Brown Uniform: The group in brown uniforms was tasked with disrupting opposition party meetings.

NODIA

(ii) Hitler's Domestic Policies :

(a) **Establishment of a Dictatorship :** Germany became a totalitarian state under Hitler, where all power was centralized in his hands. Opposition parties were banned, citizens' rights were suppressed, democracy was dismantled and the Gestapo (secret police) was created to monitor the population.

(b) **Economic Reforms :** Hitler restructured the economy and administration by creating new jobs, expanding bureaucracy and establishing factories and farms. Workers were provided with better facilities, though the right to strike was prohibited. Trade policies were controlled to ensure a favorable balance of trade.

(c) **Anti-Jewish Policies :** Jews were blamed for Germany's defeat in World War I, denied citizenship, removed from government jobs and banned from practicing various professions. Jewish shops were looted, their properties confiscated and they faced widespread persecution.

(d) **The Holocaust :** Hitler sought the complete extermination of Jews, resulting in the mass killing of around six million Jews, including men, women and children, as part of his genocide campaign during the Holocaust.

(iii)(a) **Imperialistic Ambitions :** Hitler aimed to establish global dominance under the rule of the Swastika, reflecting his imperialistic ambitions.

(b) **Rejection of the Treaty of Versailles :** Hitler openly declared that he would not comply with the restrictions imposed by the Treaty of Versailles, which fueled his expansionist policies.

(c) **Formation of Alliances :** Hitler formed key alliances, including the Anglo-German Naval Agreement in 1933, which allowed Germany to expand its navy.

(d) **Rome-Berlin Axis :** In 1936, Hitler allied with Italy, forming the Rome-Berlin Axis. When Japan joined in 1937, it became the Rome-Berlin-Tokyo Axis, solidifying a powerful alliance.

(e) **Non-Aggression Pact with Russia :** Hitler secured a Non-Aggression Pact with Russia, ensuring that he would not face Soviet opposition during his early expansion.

(f) **Territorial Expansion :** Hitler aggressively expanded German territory, annexing Austria in 1938 and Sudetenland. The Munich Pact enabled him to seize parts of Czechoslovakia with the appeasement of Britain and France. These aggressive moves escalated tensions and contributed to the outbreak of World War II.

61. With reference to the rise of dictatorship in Europe after the First World War, explain the following :

(i) How did class conflicts lead to the rise of dictatorship that emerged in Italy and Germany after the First World War?

(ii) How did the decline of democracy help in the rise of dictatorship in Italy and Germany?

(iii) What was the reason for the failure of the League of Nations?

Ans : MAIN 2002

(i) Class Conflict and the Rise of Fascism: Post-World War I Italy faced economic turmoil, with workers demanding better wages and conditions. Fearing a communist revolution, industrialists supported Fascism to suppress labor unions. This class conflict between workers and industrialists contributed to the rise of Fascism, which eventually led to the Second World War.

(ii) Weakness of Post-War Democracies: In Germany, the Weimar Republic struggled with instability and people sought a strong

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

government with effective economic policies. Fascism, with its opposition to democracy and liberalism, capitalized on these weaknesses, as leaders like Hitler believed the state had the right to control all aspects of life. This authoritarianism replaced democratic principles, leading to dictatorship.

(iii) Failure of the League of Nations: The League of Nations, established to maintain global peace after World War I, failed to prevent the rise of dictatorships. Its inability to act against the aggressive plans of Mussolini and Hitler allowed their ambitions to grow, ultimately contributing to the outbreak of World War II.

62. Due to Fascism, Italy made progress in different spheres of life and became a powerful nation. With reference to the results of Fascism in Italy, explain the following :

(i) Reforms introduced in Italy to improve the economic condition of the people.

(ii) Aggressive foreign policy under Mussolini.

(iii) Negative impact of Fascism in Italy.

Ans : COMP 2006

(i) Reforms introduced in Italy to improve the economic condition of the people :

(a) **Imperialistic Expansion :** Mussolini and the Fascists glorified war and pursued aggressive imperialistic policies. In 1936, Italian troops captured Ethiopia's capital, Addis Ababa, marking a significant expansion of Italy's empire.

(b) **Albania as a Protectorate :** Mussolini extended Italy's control over Albania, turning it into a protectorate, further asserting Italian dominance in the region.

(c) **Commercial and Diplomatic Treaties :** Mussolini strengthened Italy's international position by entering into commercial and diplomatic treaties with France and Russia, aiming to increase Italy's prestige and power on the global stage.

(ii) Aggressive foreign policy under Mussolini.

(a) **Ambition to Re-establish the Roman Empire's Greatness :** Mussolini aimed to restore the greatness of the Roman Empire through aggressive foreign policy and territorial expansion, believing that conquering foreign lands was essential for Italy to be seen as a powerful nation. This ambition fueled actions like the invasion of Abyssinia.

(b) **Grievances from the Treaty of Versailles :** Mussolini, like many Italians, was dissatisfied with the Treaty of Versailles, believing it had unfairly deprived Italy of the spoils of World War I. His foreign policy sought to address these grievances by expanding Italy's influence and territorial control.

(c) **Diplomatic Moves to Elevate Italy's Power :** Mussolini aimed to showcase Italy's growing influence by hosting key international meetings, such as the Four Power Pact in Rome in 1933, where France, Germany and Britain participated. Mussolini viewed this as a symbol of Italy's rising power and leadership in Europe.

(iii) Negative impact of Fascism in Italy :

(a) **Loss of Political Freedom :** Under Fascism, the Italian people had to sacrifice their political freedoms. Strict restrictions were imposed on the press and newspapers, limiting free expression and controlling public opinion.

(b) **Aggressive Foreign Policy :** Mussolini's aggressive and bold foreign policy, aimed at making Italy a powerful nation, contributed to escalating tensions in Europe and ultimately played a role in paving the way for the Second World War.

NODIA

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

63. Modern dictatorship was totalitarian and preached hostility for democratic political systems and for fundamental rights of the common man. With reference to this statement, explain the following features of the modern dictatorship;
(i) Ruthless one-party rule.
(ii) Authoritarianism.
(iii) Imperialism.

Ans : SQP 2013

(i) A single-party state, also referred to as a one-party system, is a type of government where only one political party is allowed to govern and no other parties are permitted to participate in elections. Totalitarianism is a form of government that theoretically allows no individual freedom and seeks to control every aspect of a person's life under the state's authority. Italian dictator Benito Mussolini introduced the term "Totalitario" in the early 1920 to describe Italy's Fascist state, summarizing it as: "Everything within the state, nothing outside the state, nothing against the state." In general, totalitarianism is characterized by a strong centralized government that exerts control over all aspects of personal life through force and repression.

(ii) Authoritarianism is a type of social structure characterized by submission to authority, in contrast to individualism and democracy. In political terms, it refers to a government where power is concentrated in a leader or group of leaders, typically not elected, who hold absolute, unchecked and arbitrary authority. Unlike totalitarianism, authoritarian systems permit certain social and economic institutions to function independently of government oversight.

(iii) Imperialism refers to a state's policy or practice of expanding its power and influence, typically through the direct acquisition of territory or by exerting political and economic control over other regions. Since imperialism often involves the use of force, particularly military, it is generally viewed as morally questionable. As a result, the term has frequently been used by nations to criticize and discredit the foreign policies of their rivals.

64. With reference to Nazism, answer the following questions:
(i) What were the aims of Nazism ?
(ii) How did Hitler establish a Totalitarian State in Germany?
(iii) State two similarities between the causes that led to the rise of Fascism and Nazism?

Ans : MAIN 2023

(i) Aims of Nazism :
(a) To promote the racial superiority of Germans and foster hatred towards Jews;
(b) To glorify nationalism and place the nation above all else;
(c) To enforce rule by a single-party system led by a powerful, great leader;
(d) To reject democracy, international cooperation and peace;
(e) To endorse the use of violence and brutality to achieve goals;
(f) To celebrate and encourage war as a means of advancing the nation's interests.

(ii) (a) **Elimination of Political Opposition:** After becoming Chancellor in 1933, Hitler quickly moved to eliminate all political opposition. He passed the Enabling Act, which gave him dictatorial powers and allowed him to rule by decree. All political parties except the Nazi Party were banned and key opposition figures were imprisoned or eliminated

(b) **Control of Media and Propaganda:** Hitler established strict control over the media, using propaganda to promote Nazi ideology and ensure loyalty to the regime. Joseph Goebbels, as Minister of Propaganda, used newspapers, radio, films and public events to glorify Hitler's leadership

NODIA

BETTER THAN BOOK IN THE MARKET

Why students are choosing this book 👉

School teachers already use this content to set papers.

Still not sure?

- 👉 Match this PDF with your question papers
- 👉 See the similarity yourself

Why does this happen?

- ✓ Teachers have its PDF & Word files
- ✓ Easy access
- ✓ Direct copy-paste questions
- ✓ Same pattern followed

Don't miss out—get the advantage today!

CASE BASED QUESTION

68. (i) Identify the leader in the picture. How did he establish a totalitarian state in his country?

(ii) State three factors that led to the rise of Nazism.

(iii) State four similarities between the ideologies of Nazism and Fascism.

Ans : MAIN 2023

(i) The leader in the picture is Adolf Hitler. Hitler possessed a charismatic personality, displaying all the traits necessary for a popular leader. He was a cunning politician and a courageous soldier, skilled in shaping public opinion to suit his needs. He tapped into the grievances of the German people, emphasizing their betrayal through the Treaty of Versailles and promoting the idea of a Jewish-Communist conspiracy to dominate the world. Many Germans, angered by the humiliating treatment they received from the Allies, were eager for retribution and Hitler effectively played to these sentiments.

(ii) Three factors that led to the rise of Nazism :

(a) **Treaty of Versailles and National Humiliation :** The defeat in World War I and the harsh terms of the Treaty of Versailles left Germans feeling humiliated and powerless. They were forced to pay $33 billion in reparations and their army was limited to 100,000 troops. Hitler urged Germans to discard the Treaty, rebuild Germany's empire and reclaim lost colonies.

(b) **Fear of Communism:** Following the Bolshevik Revolution, communist influence grew in Germany, gaining seats in the Reichstag. Hitler warned that German Communists would become puppets of Russia and argued that only Nazism could stop the rise of Communism.

(c) **Economic Crisis :** The Treaty of Versailles severely impacted Germany's economy, reducing agricultural output, trade and foreign investments. High unemployment and rising debt, especially among farmers, worsened the situation by 193(a)

(iii) Similarities Between the Ideologies of Fascism and Nazism :

(a) Belief in Totalitarian Rule, where absolute power rests in the hands of the state.

(b) Rejection of Democratic Political Systems and institutions.

(c) Emphasis on the Supremacy of the State, with the right to suppress individual freedoms and rights.

(d) Advocacy of One-Party Rule under a single, powerful leader.

(e) Promotion of Aggressive Nationalism and Imperialism, aimed at expanding national power.

(f) View of War as a Tool to achieve national objectives and strengthen the state.

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

(c) **Hitler's Exploitation of Resentment :** Hitler capitalized on the public's anger towards the Treaty of Versailles, encouraging Germans to disregard it, rebuild the German empire and reclaim lost colonies, thus gaining widespread support for the Nazi movement.

(ii) Growing Fear of Communism : Following the Bolshevik Revolution in Russia, communist influence in Germany grew significantly. The Communists organized effectively and gained several seats in the Reichstag. Hitler warned that German Communists would become subservient to their Russian counterparts and would follow Communist directives. He argued that only Nazism could effectively curb the rising influence of communism in Germany, persuading many to support his movement as a defense against this perceived threat.

(iii) Hitler possessed a highly influential and charismatic personality. He was an outstanding orator, resourceful, tireless and a talented organizer. His speeches were compelling, full of logical reasoning and strongly connected with his audience. This led people to place unwavering faith in him, viewing him as an exceptional leader. It is often said and rightly so, that he was a "master of propaganda."

67. With reference to the causes of the rise of Fascism in Italy, answer the following questions;

(i) What were the difficulties faced by the democratic government in Italy?

(ii) Why were the Italians disappointed by the Treaty of Versailles?

(iii) How did the Communists create conditions conducive for the growth of Fascism in Italy?

Ans :

(i) Difficulties faced by the democratic government in Italy :

(a) **Political Instability:** The 1919 elections in Italy, which introduced democracy for the first time, failed to produce a clear majority, leading to instability as six coalition governments were formed between 1919 and 192(b)

(b) **Inability to Address Problems:** The coalition governments were ineffective in addressing pressing issues such as unemployment, strikes and riots during 1921-22, contributing to growing public dissatisfaction.

(c) **Rise of Fascism:** Mussolini and the Fascists exploited the instability by promoting the idea of a strong national government, positioning themselves as the solution to Italy's chaotic political environment.

(ii) (a) **Unfulfilled Territorial Ambitions:** Italy joined the Allies in World War I with the expectation of gaining territories from Turkey and Germany but was largely disappointed by the Treaty of Versailles.

(b) **Limited Gains:** Italy only received Southern Tyrol, Trentino and parts of Dalmatia, failing to acquire any territories from the German and Turkish colonial empires, leading to national dissatisfaction.

(iii) (a) **Revolutionary Atmosphere:** Inspired by the Russian Revolution, the communists spread revolutionary ideas, leading to peasants seizing land and workers organizing strikes, damaging machinery and taking control of factories.

(b) **Communist Threat:** The communists began plotting to overthrow the government and seize power, creating a sense of lawlessness and insecurity throughout Italy.

(c) **Support for Fascism:** Alarmed by the growing power of labor unions and fearing further unrest, industrialists provided financial support to the Fascist movement, seeing it as a force to restore order and stability.

NODIA

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

Ans : SQP 2019

(i) The war had caused a great economic strain on Italy's economy :
   (a) Post-World War I, Italy experienced severe economic difficulties, including inflation, unemployment and widespread poverty.
   (b) The economic crisis led to social unrest, with frequent strikes and protests across the country.
   (c) Many Italians were frustrated with the government's inability to address these issues effectively.
   (d) This dissatisfaction created an environment where Mussolini's promises of stability and economic recovery gained widespread support.

(ii) 1919, Italy introduced a Parliamentary Government based on male adult franchise for the first time. However, no political party achieved a clear majority, leading to a series of unstable coalition governments. These short-lived governments lacked consistency and continuity in their policies and were ineffective in addressing the frequent strikes and riots. During communist-led strikes, workers often damaged machinery and seized factories. The general population, especially industrialists, grew tired of these strikes and disruptions. They sought strong leadership to resolve the crisis, which was provided by the Fascist Party under Benito Mussolini.

(iii) Italy joined the First World War alongside Britain and France in 1915, hoping to gain significant territories, including Trentino, Trieste, Istria, Fiume, the Dalmatian coast, Albania and parts of Germany and Turkey after the Allies' victory. However, the Paris Peace Treaties awarded Italy none of the lands from the defeated German and Turkish empires. This led to widespread discontent among Italians, who felt that while they had "won the war, they lost the peace," feeling betrayed by their wartime Allies.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

60. In the post-World War I scenario, Italy and Germany experienced the rise of dictatorships. In this context, explain :
(i) Any three circumstances that led to the rise of Fascism in Italy.
(ii) Any three domestic policies of Hitler.
(iii) How the foreign polices of Hitler were responsible for the outbreak of world War II?

Ans : MAIN 2006,2010,2016

(i) Three circumstances that led to the rise of Fascism in Italy :
   (a) **Economic Instability Post-World War I :** Italy faced severe economic challenges after World War I, including unemployment, inflation and industrial unrest. Many Italians, especially veterans and the middle class, were disillusioned by the lack of post-war rewards and economic hardships. This created fertile ground for extremist movements like Fascism, which promised stability and economic revival.
   (b) **Political Instability and Weak Democracy :** Italy's democratic system was fragile and ineffective, with frequent changes in government and political chaos. The democratic government struggled to maintain order and people lost confidence in its ability to address their needs. Mussolini capitalized on this dissatisfaction, presenting Fascism as a force that could restore order and national pride.
   (c) **Fear of Communism :** After the Russian Revolution of 1917, the fear of a similar communist uprising in Italy grew among the middle and upper classes. The rise of socialist movements and worker strikes in Italy further fueled these fears. Mussolini's Fascist movement promised to crush socialism and communism, appealing to those who feared left-wing revolution.

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

CHAPTER 10

THE SECOND WORLD WAR

SUMMARY

NODIA

1. CAUSES

Dissatisfaction with the Treaty of Versailles: The Treaty of Versailles, signed in 1919, imposed severe reparations, territorial losses and military restrictions on Germany. This created widespread resentment, with many Germans feeling humiliated by the harsh terms. The subsequent economic crisis contributed to the rise of Adolf Hitler, who promised to restore German pride and reverse the treaty's effects.

1.1 Rise of Fascism and Nazism

Authoritarian regimes rose in Italy under Benito Mussolini and in Germany under Adolf Hitler during the 1920 and 1930. Both promoted aggressive nationalism, glorified military power and pursued territorial expansion, rejecting democratic principles and using propaganda to maintain control, directly contributing to global instability.

1.2 Policy of Appeasement

Britain and France, hoping to avoid another war, adopted a policy of appeasement toward Nazi Germany in the 1930, allowing Hitler to annex territories such as Austria and the Sudetenland. However, this policy only emboldened him to pursue more aggressive actions.

1.3 Japanese Invasion of China

Japan sought to expand its empire by invading Manchuria in 1931 and launching a full-scale invasion of China in 1937. This aggressive expansion caused friction with Western powers and destabilized the Asia-Pacific region.

1.4 Failure of the League of Nations

The League of Nations, created after World War I to maintain peace, failed to prevent aggression by the Axis powers. It lacked the authority to enforce its decisions and was weakened by the absence of major powers like the U.S.

Hitler's Invasion of Poland: Hitler's invasion of Poland on September 1, 1939, prompted Britain and France to declare war on Germany, marking the start of World War II.

2. KEY EVENTS

2.1 Attack on Pearl Harbour

On December 7, 1941, Japan attacked Pearl Harbour, leading to the United States' entry into the war.

2.2 Bombing of Hiroshima and Nagasaki

In August 1945, the U.S. dropped atomic bombs on Hiroshima and Nagasaki, leading to Japan's surrender and the end of World War II in the Pacific.

3. CONSEQUENCES

3.1 Defeat of the Axis Powers

The combined efforts of the Allies led to the defeat of the Axis powers. Nazi Germany was defeated in May 1945 and Japan surrendered after the atomic bombings in August 1945.

3.2 Formation of the United Nations

The UN was established in 1945 to promote international peace and security, addressing the failures of the League of Nations. Its

69. Name two countries each belonging to the Capitalist Bloc and Communist Bloc ?

Ans : MAIN 2023,2024

Two countries from the Capitalist Bloc:
(i) United States
(ii) United Kingdom
Two countries from the Communist Bloc:
(i) Soviet Union (USSR)
(ii) China

70. What do you know about the Munich Pact of 1939 ? Which were the five countries involved in this Pact ?

Ans : COMP 2017

The Munich Pact of 1938 (not 1939) was an agreement between major European powers that allowed Nazi Germany to annex the Sudetenland, a region of Czechoslovakia with a significant ethnic German population, in an attempt to avoid war. This policy of appeasement was intended to satisfy Hitler's territorial ambitions and maintain peace in Europe, but it ultimately failed to prevent further aggression.
The five countries involved were:
(i) Germany
(ii) United Kingdom
(iii) France
(iv) Italy
(v) Czechoslovakia (though not present at the negotiations).

THREE MARKS QUESTIONS

71. The world wars marked a turning point in the history of the world. With reference to this period, answer the following questions:
(i) Mention any three similarities between the ideologies of Fascism and Nazism.
(ii) State the three consequences of the Second World War.
(iii) Mention any four causes of the Second World War.

Ans : MAIN 2023

(i) Three similarities between the ideologies of Fascism and Nazism :
(a) **Extreme nationalism :** Both Fascism (in Italy) and Nazism (in Germany) promoted an aggressive form of nationalism, advocating for the superiority of their respective nations and the expansion of their territories.
(b) **Dictatorship :** Both ideologies supported a totalitarian state, with all power concentrated in the hands of a single leader (Mussolini in Fascism, Hitler in Nazism), rejecting democracy and political pluralism.
(c) **Militarism and violence :** Fascism and Nazism glorified war and military strength as a means to achieve their goals and both ideologies promoted violence and repression to suppress opposition and maintain control.
(ii) Three consequences of the Second World War :
(a) **Formation of the United Nations (UN) :** The UN was established in 1945 to promote peace and prevent future global conflicts by fostering international cooperation and diplomacy.
(b) **Division of Germany :** After the war, Germany was divided into four occupation zones controlled by the Allied powers (the USA, UK, France and the Soviet Union). Eventually, it led to the formation of West Germany and East Germany during the Cold War.
(c) **Cold War :** The ideological and political differences between the USA and the Soviet Union after led to the Cold War, a period of intense rivalry and tension between the two superpowers.
(iii) Four causes of the Second World War :
(a) **Treaty of Versailles :** The harsh terms imposed on Germany after World War I, including heavy reparations and territorial losses, fueled resentment and contributed to the rise of Hitler and the Nazi Party.

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

7. Which of the following was the immediate cause of The World War II?
(a) Japanese Invasion of China
(b) Failure of League of Nations
(c) Hitler's Invasion of Poland
(d) Rise of Fascism and Nazism

Ans : SQP 2007

Thus (c) is correct option.

8. Which of the following was a part of the "Axis Powers"?
(a) Turkey
(b) Japan
(c) Britain
(d) Sweden

Ans : COMP 2004

Thus (b) is correct option.

9. Which of the following was not a part of the "Allied Powers"?
(a) France
(b) USA
(c) Germany
(d) Britain

Ans : SQP 2006

Thus (c) is correct option.

10. War conducted by Germany with great speed and force is known as
(a) Kamph
(b) Blitzkrieg
(c) Kamikaze
(d) Eintracht

Ans : MAIN 2003

Thus (b) is correct option.

11. Arrange the various conferences in chronological order.
(i) Potsdam
(ii) Yaltra
(iii)San Francisco
(a) (i), (ii) and (iii)
(b) (iii), (ii) and (i)
(c) (ii), (i) and (iii)
(d) (ii), (i) and (iii)

Ans : COMP 2010

Thus (d) is correct option.

12. When did Japan surrender unconditionally?
(a) September 1, 1946
(b) September 2, 1946
(c) September 2, 1945
(d) August 28, 1945

Ans : SQP 2009

Thus (c) is correct option.

13. The World War II lasted for how many years?
(a) Six years
(b) Four years
(c) Sixteen years
(d) Eight years

Ans : MAIN 2014

Thus (a) is correct option.

14. When was the first atomic bomb dropped and where?
(a) August 6, 1947; Berlin
(b) August 6, 1945; Hiroshima
(c) August 8, 1945; Nagasaki
(d) August 8, 1947, New Mexico

Ans : COMP 2001

Thus (b) is correct option.

15. Which of the following is NOT a feature of Cold War?
(a) No open armed conflict
(b) Peace time diplomacy
(c) Trade agreements
(d) Arms race

Ans : MAIN 2019

Thus (c) is correct option.

ONE MARK QUESTIONS

16. What is capitalism ?

Ans : COMP 2023

A type of government under which means of production are controlled by private individuals.

17. Name any two original member countries of NATO.

Security Council, with permanent members like the U.S. and Soviet Union, was designed to be more effective.

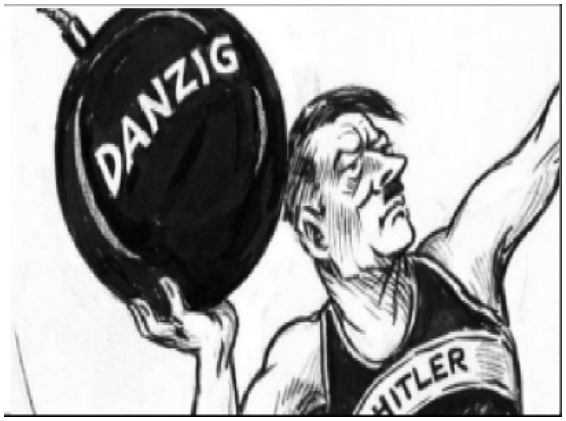
4. COLD WAR

The rivalry between the U.S. and the Soviet Union intensified after the war, leading to the Cold War. This period of geopolitical tension was marked by ideological conflict, proxy wars and an arms race, shaping global politics for decades.

In conclusion, World War II was caused by unresolved issues from World War I, the rise of authoritarian regimes and failures in diplomacy. Its consequences included the defeat of the Axis powers, the formation of the UN and the onset of the Cold War, which influenced global relations throughout the 20th century.

MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTION

1. Which incident depicted in the above cartoon led to the beginning of the Second World War?



By Milton Rawson Halldaya

(a) Hitler's policy of Imperialism
(b) Hitler's attack on Poland
(c) Hitler's annexation of Austria
(d) Hitler's attack on Czechoslovakia

Ans : MAIN 2024

Thus (b) is correct option.

2. Which of the following is NOT a consequence of the Second World War?
(a) Austria and Hungary became separate states
(b) Defeat of the Axis powers
(c) Beginning of the Cold War
(d) Formation of the United Nations

Ans : MAIN 2024

Thus (a) is correct option.

3. Mussolini opposed the Treaty of _____:
(a) Abyssinia
(b) Versailles
(c) Germany
(d) Czechnoslovakia

Ans : SQP 2001

Thus (b) is correct option.

4. Which empire did Italy want to revive the glory of?
(a) Old Roman empire
(b) Old Germany empire
(c) Old Italian empire
(d) Old Britain empire

Ans : COMP 2014

Thus (a) is correct option.

5. Arrange the following events in chronological order.
(i) Treaty to Versailles
(ii) Hitler's invasion of Poll and
(iii) Japanese attack on Pearl Harbour
(iv) Japanese invasion of China
(a) (i), (ii), (iii) and (iv)
(b) (i), (iv), (ii) and (iii)
(c) (i), (iii), (iv) and (ii)
(d) (i), (iv), (iii) and (ii)

Ans : SQP 2018

Thus (b) is correct option.

6. Hitler invaded Poland in
(a) September, 1939
(b) September, 1919
(c) October, 1936
(d) July 1942

Ans : MAIN 2000

Thus (a) is correct option.

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

32. Name the countries which followed the Policy of Appeasement and the countries towards whom they adopted this Policy.

Ans : MAIN 2011

Britain and France followed the policy of appeasement towards dictatorial countries like Germany and Italy.

33. Mention the dead and number of wounded soldiers in the Second World War.

Ans : SQP 2007

In the Second World War, about 25 million soldiers were killed and about 35 million were wounded.

34. Name the pact which was concluded by Russia to meet the challenge posed by American sponsored NATO.

Ans : SQP 2003,2004

Warsaw Pact.

35. Name the two power blocs that emerged after the Second World War.

Ans : COMP 2017

The two power blocs that emerged after the Second World War were the American Bloc and the Soviet Bloc

36. What is meant by calling the world as Bi-polar after the Second World War ?

Ans : MAIN 2010

The world was called Bi-polar as it was grouped into Capitalist nations (or Democratic Bloc) headed by the USA and Socialist nations (or Communist Bloc) headed by the USSR.

37. What is Cold War ?

Ans : COMP 2009,2013

It is situation where there is no armed struggle, but the rivals continue to maintain their peace time diplomatic relations along with their hostility.

It was the period of conflict, tension and competition between the USA and the Soviet Union and their respective allies from the mid 1940 till 1990.

TWO MARKS QUESTIONS

38. Mention any two common ideologies of Fascism and Nazism.

Ans : MAIN 2024

Two common ideologies of Fascism and Nazism are :

(i) Extreme nationalism : Both believed in the superiority of their nation and territorial expansion.

(ii) Totalitarianism : They supported a dictatorship with complete control and suppression of opposition.

39. Why did Britain and France become second rate powers after the Second World War ?

Ans : COMP 2018

Britain and France became second-rate powers after World War II due to the severe economic and infra structural damage they suffered. The rise of the United States and the Soviet Union as superpowers shifted global influence, while the loss of their colonial empires further weakened their international standing.

40. What was Truman Doctrine ?

Ans : SQP 1997,2012

On March 12, 1946 President Truman announced in the U.S. Congress that America should provide moral and financial support to countries whose political integrity was threatened by communism. This came to be known as the Truman Doctrine.

41. Name the two cities of Japan which were bombed by America in the year 1945.

Ans : MAIN 2024

The two cities of Japan that were bombed by America in 1945 were Hiroshima and Nagasaki. Hiroshima was bombed on August 6, 1945 and Nagasaki was bombed on August 9, 1945, with atomic bombs, leading to Japan's surrender and the end of World War II.

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

Ans : MAIN 2003

Belgium, Canada, Denmark and France.

18. Name four main countries included in the Allied Power.

Ans : COMP 2006

The four countries included in the Allied Power were Britain, France, America and Russia.

19. What was the issue between Germany and Poland that was a cause of World War II ?

Ans : SQP 2011,2012

Hitler wanted to permit him to have the city of Dan zing as he wanted to construct a motor road.

20. Name any two original alliances which came into being as a consequence of Cold War.

Ans : MAIN 2004,2010

(i) NATO
(ii) SEATO

21. State any two effects of the Cold War.

Ans : COMP 1999

(i) The Korean War
(ii) The armament race

22. Name the countries that formed the Axis Bloc, during World War II.

Ans : SQP 2018

(i) Germany
(ii) Italy
(iii) Japan.

23. Name the Allied Nations.

Ans : COMP 2017,2022

(i) Britain
(ii) France
(iii) Soviet Union.

24. Mention any two characteristics of the Cold War.

Ans : MAIN 2003,2008,20011

(i) A bitter state of tension and hostility.
(ii) Absence of armed struggle.

25. What is communism ?

Ans : SQP 2022

A type of government under which means of production are controlled by the state or the government, for example USSR.

26. What is the full form of NATO and SEATO?

Ans : COMP 2003

NATO – North Atlantic Treaty Organization.
SEATO – South-East Asia Treaty Organization.

NODIA

27. Name any two World Leaders who played a significant role in ending Cold War.

Ans : SQP 2007,2009

(i) Mikhail Gorbachev
(ii) George Bush

28. Name any two countries which became independent after the Second World War.

Ans : MAIN 2000

Many countries like India, Myanmar and Sri Lanka became independent after World War.

29. Name the International Organization that was formed after World War II.

Ans : SQP 2024

The United Nations Organization (UNO) was formed after World War II.

30. What was the main principle for which the Second World War was fought ?

Ans : MAIN 2005

The main principle for which the Second World War was fought was to make the world safe for democracy.

31. What is meant by the Policy of Appeasement ?

Ans : COMP 2004

Appeasement refers to the policy of conciliating an Aggressive power at the expense of some other country. It meant accepting the hostile demands of an Aggressive Nation to gain peace.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

50. Why did Britain and France follow the Policy of Appeasement?

Ans : SQP 2001

Britain and France believed that the dictators had valid complaints stemming from the harsh terms of the Treaty of Versailles. They assumed that addressing these issues would appease the dictators and prevent further aggression. By adopting the Policy of Appeasement, they aimed to preserve world peace and avoid another major conflict.

51. Name any two World Leaders who played a significant role in ending Cold War.

Ans : SQP 2009

Two world leaders who played a significant role in ending the Cold War were Mikhail Gorbachev, the leader of the Soviet Union and Ronald Reagan, the President of the United States.

52. How was the dissatisfaction of Italy responsible for the Second World War?

Ans : MAIN 2003

Italy joined the First World War with high expectations, but her requests for more territory were rejected at the peace conference. After investing heavily in military and war expenses, the country was left with significant debt. Economic conditions worsened, with growing poverty, hunger, disease and unemployment. This widespread dissatisfaction contributed to the underlying causes of the Second World War.

53. What was the Berlin-Rome-Tokyo Axis? Why did Italy join the side of Germany and Japan in the Second World War?

Ans : COMP 2019

The Berlin-Rome-Tokyo Axis was a military alliance created during World War II, involving Germany, Italy and Japan. This coalition, known as the Axis Powers, united these three nations in their wartime efforts.

54. Why did Hitler demand the Dan zing Corridor from Poland?

Ans : SQP 2004

Hitler demanded the Danzig Corridor from Poland because it provided Germany with access to East Prussia, a territory separated from the rest of Germany after World War I by the Treaty of Versailles. The corridor was also strategically important for expanding German territory and reclaiming lands lost after the war, which was a key part of Hitler's goal to unite all German-speaking people and reverse the terms of the Treaty.

55. Mention two reasons for the failure of the League of Nations to prevent the Second World War.

Ans : MAIN 2024

(i) Lack of Enforcement Power: The League had no military force of its own and relied on member nations to enforce its decisions, which often led to inaction when aggressive nations like Germany, Italy and Japan violated international agreements.

(ii) Absence of Major Powers: Key nations, including the United States, did not join the League and others like Germany and Japan withdrew, weakening the League's authority and ability to maintain global peace.

56. Mention three reasons for the invasion of Poland by Hitler?

Ans : COMP 2023

(i) The Treaty of Versailles split Germany into two parts to give Poland a land route to the sea, while the Port of Danzig was also placed under Polish control. Germany sought to regain these lost territories.

(ii) Danzig had a predominantly German population and by seizing the Danzig Corridor, Germany could reestablish a connection with East Prussia.

(iii) In August 1939, Germany signed a Non-Aggression Pact with Russia and accused Poland of mistreating the German population living within its borders.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

57. Why did the United States declare war on Japan?

Ans : SQP 2011

The United States declared war on Japan after the attack on Pearl Harbor on December 7, 1941. Japan launched a surprise assault on the U.S. naval base in Hawaii, inflicting heavy damage on the Pacific Fleet and causing the deaths of thousands of Americans. In response to this unprovoked attack, President Franklin D. Roosevelt requested a declaration of war from Congress, which was granted on December 8, 1941, officially bringing the U.S. into World War II.

58. Give two causes that led to the Cold War.

Ans : MAIN 2000

(i) Emergence of Superpowers: After the Second World War, the USA and the USSR emerged as the two dominant global powers, each representing opposing ideologies capitalism and communism and seeking to expand their influence by aligning other nations with their respective systems.

(ii) Formation of Rival Blocs: The world was divided into two rival blocs: the Capitalist bloc led by the USA and the Communist bloc led by the USSR, marking the beginning of the Cold War.

59. Mention two important consequences of the Second World War.

Ans : SQP 2010

(i) Massive loss of life and property: The Second World War caused widespread destruction, especially in the region between the Baltic and Black Sea, which became known as the "misery-belt" due to the severe devastation.

(ii) End of Fascist and Nazi dictatorships: The war led to the collapse of the Fascist and Nazi regimes in Germany, Italy and Japan, with these countries agreeing to disarm and pay war reparations.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

60. What was the Communist view about the western style democracy ? What was the Capitalist view about Communism?

Ans : SQP 2015

(i) Communist Ideology: According to communist ideology, land, factories and resources are collectively owned, with the aim of equally sharing goods among the people, eliminating poverty and class divisions. However, in practice, communism often deviated from this ideal.

(ii) Capitalist Criticism of Communism: Capitalist countries opposed communism, seeing it as a system where individuals in power controlled production, leading to corruption. The average person was left politically powerless, economically restricted and unable to fully benefit from their own labor.

NODIA

61. Why did America drop the atom bombs on the cities of Hiroshima and Nagasaki ?

Ans : MAIN 2006

The United States dropped atomic bombs on Hiroshima and Nagasaki in August 1945 to force Japan's unconditional surrender and bring a swift end to World War II. This followed Japan's attack on Pearl Harbour, which led the U.S. to join the war. Despite heavy losses, Japan refused to surrender and the bombs were seen as a way to avoid a costly invasion and further casualties. The bombings played a critical role in the defeat of the Axis Powers. The aftermath of the war led to the formation of the United Nations and set the stage for the Cold War.

62. What is meant by calling the world as Bi-polar after the Second World War ?

Ans : MAIN 2022

The world was termed bi-polar as it was divided into two major blocs: the Capitalist nations (or Democratic Bloc) led by the USA and the Socialist nations (or Communist Bloc) led by the USSR.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

63. Mention any two characteristics of the Cold war.

Ans : COMP 2011

(i) Ideological Conflict: The Cold War was marked by a deep ideological rivalry between the United States (promoting capitalism and democracy) and the Soviet Union (advocating communism).

(ii) Proxy Wars: Instead of direct military confrontation, the superpowers engaged in proxy wars by supporting opposing sides in conflicts, such as the Korean War and the Vietnam War, to spread their influence globally.

64. What was the issue between Germany and Poland that was the cause of World War-II ?

Ans : SQP 2011

The primary issue between Germany and Poland was over the Danzig Corridor and access to the Port of Danzig, which separated East Prussia from the rest of Germany. Hitler demanded the return of these territories to Germany, but Poland refused. Germany's invasion of Poland on September 1, 1939, to reclaim these lands, led Britain and France to declare war on Germany, marking the start of World War II.

65. How did the rise of Fascism and Nazism become one of the causes of the Second World War ?

Ans : MAIN 2015

The rise of Fascism in Italy and Nazism in Germany became key causes of the Second World War due to their aggressive expansionist policies and rejection of democratic principles. Both Benito Mussolini in Italy and Adolf Hitler in Germany promoted militarism, extreme nationalism and territorial conquest. Hitler sought to overturn the Treaty of Versailles, reclaim lost territories and expand German territory (Lebensraum). Mussolini pursued similar imperial ambitions. These expansionist actions, combined with their militarization and suppression of opposition, destabilized Europe and directly contributed to the outbreak of the war.

66. What was the immediate cause of the Second World War? Which incident brought the USA in the Second World War?

Ans : MAIN 2012

The immediate cause of the Second World War was Germany's invasion of Poland on September 1, 1939, which led Britain and France to declare war on Germany.
The incident that brought the USA into the war was Japan's attack on Pearl Harbor on December 7, 1941, when Japanese forces launched a surprise strike on the U.S. naval base in Hawaii. This prompted the U.S. to declare war on Japan the following day.

67. What made Japan to surrender to the Allies?

Ans : MAIN 2021

Japan surrendered to the Allies on August 14, 1945, largely due to the devastation caused by the atomic bombings. The bombing of Hiroshima resulted in the immediate death of around 150,000 civilians and destroyed about three-fourths of the city's buildings. Nagasaki also suffered heavily, with about 50,000 lives lost and one-third of the city destroyed. Faced with such catastrophic destruction and unable to endure further devastation, Japan announced its surrender, bringing an end to World War II.

68. What happened to Germany after her defeat in the War ?

Ans : MAIN 2019

After Germany's defeat in World War II, it was divided into four occupation zones controlled by the U.S., Soviet Union, UK and France, eventually leading to the creation of West and East Germany. Germany lost significant territory, paid reparations and was demilitarized. The denazification process aimed to remove Nazi influence and top Nazi leaders were prosecuted in the Nuremberg Trials for war crimes.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

42. Name the two rival blocs that fought against each other during World War II and state its signatory countries.

Ans : MAIN 2019

The two rival blocs during World War II were the Allied Powers (United States, Soviet Union, United Kingdom, China, France) and the Axis Powers (Germany, Italy, Japan). These blocs fought against each other throughout the war.

43. State two reasons why Britain and France followed a policy of appeasement towards Germany in the 1930's.

Ans : SQP 2007

(i) They believed dictators had valid grievances and addressing them would prevent further aggression.
(ii) The Western powers also sought to limit the spread of communism.

44. What is meant by 'Policy of Containment' ?

Ans : COMP 2023,2003

The Truman Doctrine, also referred to as the Policy of Containment, involved the U.S. providing economic and military support to nations at risk of falling under communist influence. Its aim was to help countries facing communist threats and prevent the spread of communism.

45. Give two reasons that prompted the armament race before the Second World War broke out.

Ans : COMP 2004

(i) Dissatisfaction with the Treaty of Versailles: Germany began rearming, defying the treaty, which led other nations to follow suit.
(ii) Failure of the League of Nations: Its inability to prevent aggression allowed countries like Germany, Italy and Japan to expand their militaries unchecked.

46. Name any two countries which became independent after the Second World War.

Ans : MAIN 2017

Two countries that became independent after the Second World War are India (1947) and Indonesia (1949).

47. Give one reason for the origin of the Cold War.

Ans : MAIN 2022

One key reason for the origin of the Cold War was the ideological conflict between the United States, which promoted capitalism and democracy and the Soviet Union, which sought to expand communism. This fundamental disagreement over political and economic systems created deep mistrust and rivalry between the two superpowers after World War II.

48. How was the Treaty of Versailles responsible for the Second World War?

Ans : COMP 2005

(i) The Treaty of Versailles imposed harsh and punitive terms on Germany, including the loss of territory, colonies and military power, as well as enormous war reparations, which left Germans feeling humiliated and resentful.
(ii) The resentment caused by the treaty fueled the rise of Nazism, with Hitler and the Nazi Party seeking to overturn the treaty's terms and pursue aggressive expansion, contributing to the outbreak of World War II.

49. What made Japan surrender to the Allies in August 1945 ?

Ans : MAIN 2016

Japan had conquered Thailand, Malaya, Burma and the Philippines and continued to fight against the U.S. in the Pacific. Despite numerous warnings, Japan refused to surrender. To demonstrate its dominance, the United States dropped an atomic bomb on Hiroshima on August 6, 1945, followed by another on Nagasaki on August 9. In a matter of seconds, 80,000 people were killed and 70,000 were severely injured. Realizing they had no chance of winning, Japan officially surrendered on August 15, 1945.

NODIA

(b) **Expansionist policies of Axis Powers :** Germany, Italy and Japan pursued aggressive expansion. Hitler's invasion of Poland in 1939 and Japan's ambitions in Asia escalated tensions, leading to war.

(c) **Failure of the League of Nations :** The League of Nations failed to prevent aggression and enforce collective security, allowing the rise of militarism in Germany and Japan.

(d) **Appeasement policy :** The British and French appeasement of Hitler's territorial expansion (like Austria and the Sudetenland) encouraged further aggression, eventually triggering the war.

72. With reference to Britain and France declaring war on Germany on 3rd September, 1939, discuss the following :
(i) Rise of Nazism in Germany.
(ii) Policy of appeasement towards Hitler.
(iii) The failure of the League of Nations.

Ans : MAIN 2010,2011,

(i) (a) **Political Instability in Germany :** After World War I, Germany faced economic crises, unrest, unemployment and inflation. The Weimar Republic, established in 1919, failed to address these issues, leading to further political instability.

(b) **Humiliating Treaty of Versailles :** The Treaty of Versailles imposed harsh penalties on Germany, including territorial losses, war reparations and disbanding its military. The treaty was seen as a national humiliation and many Germans resented the Weimar Republic for accepting its terms.

(c) **Economic Disaster :** Germany's economy suffered severely from unemployment, inflation and the global depression, worsened by heavy war reparations. Hitler gained popularity by promising economic relief to the struggling population.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

(ii) Britain and France adopted a policy of appeasement towards Germany, neglecting to enforce the terms of the Treaty of Versailles, which allowed Hitler to openly defy it. When Hitler attacked and annexed Austria, neither Britain nor France intervened. On September 28, 1938, the leaders of Germany, Italy, Britain and France met in Munich and agreed to cede Sudetenland to Germany. The Czechs were pressured into accepting the Munich Pact in the name of world peace, but in reality, this decision was aimed at appeasing Hitler at the expense of Czechoslovakia.

(iii) The League of Nations, established after World War I to preserve peace, proved ineffective in stopping aggression due to its lack of enforcement authority and the absence of key global powers, including the United States. It failed to respond decisively when nations like Japan, Italy and Germany violated international agreements, such as Germany's re-militarization of the Rhineland and Italy's invasion of Ethiopia. This undermined its credibility and allowed aggressor nations to act unchecked, ultimately contributing to the outbreak of World War II.

73. With reference to the causes of the Second World War, discuss :
(i) Armament race
(ii) Rival group formation.
(iii) US aloofness.
(iv) The immediate cause.

Ans : MAIN 2018

(i) In the years leading up to the Second World War, many nations, particularly Germany, Italy and Japan, aggressively built up their military capabilities. This arms of tension and fear, with nations feeling compelled to strengthen their military in response to the growing power of others. The rearmament of Germany, in violation of the Treaty of Versailles, was a key factor that destabilized Europe and fueled the onset of war.

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

Warsaw Pact served as the Eastern equivalent. This global divide resulted in decades of tension, proxy wars and a continuous struggle for influence between the two superpowers.

84. With reference to the Second World War, explain the impact on the following :
(i) The Axis powers.
(ii) Origin of the Cold War.
(iii) The formation of the UN.

Ans : COMP 2019

(i) Germany, Italy and Japan, the Axis powers, were ultimately defeated, leading to the fall of the Fascist and Nazi dictatorships. These nations agreed to reduce their military forces, limit armaments, pay war reparations and relinquish their overseas colonies. One of the significant consequences of the Second World War was the division of Germany into four zones, each controlled by the USA, Britain, France and Russia. Eventually, the United States, Britain and France merged their zones to form West Germany, while communist Russia established a separate government in its zone, resulting in the creation of East Germany.

(ii) The Second World War laid the foundation for the Cold War, as the United States and the Soviet Union emerged as superpowers with opposing ideologies - capitalism and communism. The division of Germany, particularly Berlin, into East (communist) and West (capitalist) zones symbolized this rivalry. The Treaty of Versailles and the League of Nations' failure had already exposed the fragility of international cooperation. After the war, growing mistrust between the Western and Eastern blocs led to the Cold War, marked by political and military tensions without direct conflict.

(iii) The destruction caused by the Second World War highlighted the need for a global organization to maintain peace and prevent future conflicts. The United Nations was established on October 24, 1945, replacing the failed League of Nations. Its goals included fostering international cooperation, promoting human rights and ensuring collective security. With headquarters in New York, the UN became a platform for diplomacy and peacekeeping, playing a central role in addressing global challenges.

NODIA

85. With regard to the causes of the Second World War, answer the following questions :
(i) What was the immediate cause that led to the Second World War ?
(ii) How was the League of Nations a weak and ineffective organization.
(iii) How did the rise of Fascism and Nazism, create conditions for the World War ?

Ans : MAIN 2000

(i) Causes of the Second World War:
  (a) The unjust Treaty of Versailles and the dissatisfaction it caused;
  (b) The rise of Fascism in Italy and Nazism in Germany;
  (c) Hitler's invasion of Poland in 1939, sparking the war;
  (d) The policy of appeasement followed by Western powers toward totalitarian dictators;
  (e) Japan's invasion of China in 1931, contributing to tensions in Asia;

(ii) The League of Nations was weak and ineffective, largely due to its lack of enforcement power and the absence of major global powers like the United States. It was unable to stop acts of aggression by countries like Italy, Japan and Germany. For instance, the League failed to act decisively when Japan invaded China or when Germany re-militarized the Rhineland. This failure to uphold international peace and hold aggressive nations accountable played a significant role in the lead-up to the Second World War.

(iii) Rise of Fascism and Nazism : The rise of extreme nationalism in Italy and Germany, in the form of Fascism and

(i) Though Britain and France emerged victorious from the war, their global status and economic strength diminished. In contrast, the USA became a superpower due to large-scale production, minimal war damage and possession of the atomic bomb. Another superpower was the Soviet Union.

(a) **USA :** After using the atomic bomb to defeat Japan, the USA emerged as a dominant military and economic power.

(b) **Soviet Union :** The Soviet Union expanded its territory, incorporating parts of Poland, the Baltic states and regions of Germany and became the leader of the Communist Bloc.

Following the war, two power blocs emerged:

1. The American Bloc
2. The Soviet Bloc.

(ii) The Second World War (1939–1945) brought lasting changes that affect our lives today:

(a) **Formation of the United Nations :** The UN was established in 1945 to prevent future conflicts and maintain global peace. It remains central to diplomacy, peacekeeping and humanitarian efforts worldwide.

(b) **De colonization and Geopolitical Shifts :** The war weakened colonial powers, accelerating independence movements in Asia and Africa. It also marked the rise of the USA and the USSR as superpowers, leading to the Cold War and shaping modern global alliances.

(c) **Economic and Human Rights Frameworks :** Post-war recovery efforts, like the Marshall Plan, rebuilt Europe and laid the foundation for economic integration, while the Holocaust spurred the creation of global human rights laws, including the Universal Declaration of Human Rights.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

(iii) The war led to the collapse of the colonial empires of Britain, France, Portugal, Germany, Italy and others. The desire for independence grew strong among the people in Asia and Africa. Countries like India, Burma, Sri Lanka and Malaya, which were under British rule, gained their freedom. The East Indies threw off Dutch rule, while Indo-China freed itself from French control and Indonesia also achieved independence. Similarly, colonies in Africa under British, French, Portuguese and Dutch rule broke free from colonial domination.

76. With the surrender of Japan, the Second World War was finally over. The War had far reaching consequences. Against this background, write short note on :

(i) Effect of World War II on technological advancements.

(ii) The division of Germany.

(iii) The Cold War and group of rivalries.

Ans : MAIN 2006

(i) Effect of World War II on Technological Advancements :

(a) **Military Innovations :** Development of radar and jet engines transformed warfare by improving aircraft detection and performance, laying the foundation for modern aviation and defense systems.

(b) **Atomic Energy :** The creation of the atomic bomb during the Manhattan Project introduced nuclear power, which shaped both military strategies and civilian energy production.

(c) **Medicine and Computing :** Mass production of penicillin saved lives, while early computing technologies, developed for code breaking and calculations, became the precursors to modern computers.

(ii) The Division of Germany : After the war, Germany was divided into four occupation zones controlled by the United States, the Soviet Union, Britain and France. This division soon became permanent,

NODIA

splitting the country into East Germany (a Soviet-controlled communist state) and West Germany (a democratic state allied with the West). Berlin, located in East Germany, was also divided, leading to the construction of the Berlin Wall in 196 (i) This division symbolized the ideological conflict between communism and capitalism during the Cold War.

(iii) The Cold War and Group of Rivalries : The Cold War emerged as a direct result of post-war tensions between the USA and the Soviet Union, the two superpowers with opposing ideologies. It led to rival military and economic blocs : NATO, formed by the USA and its allies and the Warsaw Pact, created by the USSR and its satellite states fueled regional conflicts and led to an arms race, including the development of nuclear weapons. Though the Cold War ended with the collapse of the Soviet Union in 1991, its legacy continues to affect international relations.

77. Describe the impact of the Cold War with reference to the following :

(i) Mad race for armaments ;

(ii) Formation of military alliances;

(iii) Setback to the effectiveness of the United Nations.

Ans : COMP 1991,2000,2003

(i) Mad Race for Armaments : The Cold War set off a fierce arms race between the United States and the Soviet Union, as both blocs spent enormous sums on military build-up and amassed deadly weapons. The Americans lost their nuclear monopoly when Russia detonated its first atomic bomb in 1949, leading to both nations being recognized as superpowers. With the Soviet Union now a nuclear power, both sides began stockpiling advanced weapons, including jet fighters, bombers, chemical weapons and biological weapons. Alarmingly, these weapons were also supplied to their respective allies, further escalating global tensions and increasing the potential for conflict.

(ii) The Cold War led to the creation of military alliances as nations aligned with either the Western or Eastern bloc. NATO (North Atlantic Treaty Organization) was formed in 1949 under U.S. leadership, while the Warsaw Pact was established in 1955 by the Soviet Union and its allies. Other alliances, such as SEATO (Southeast Asia Treaty Organization) and CENTO (Central Treaty Organization), also emerged. These alliances operated on the principle that an attack on one member would be treated as an attack on all, further entrenching the global divide.

(iii) Setback to the United Nations : The Cold War greatly reduced the effectiveness of the United Nations. The rivalry between the two blocs led to delays in granting membership to certain nations. Albania, Austria and Bulgaria were not admitted until 1955 and the U.S. blocked China's entry for a long time. These obstacles prevented the U.N. from achieving truly universal and inclusive global representation during that period.

78. Explain briefly three reasons for the dissatisfaction with the Treaty of Versailles.

Ans : COMP 2020

(i) The victors of the First World War - Britain, France and the U.S.A. - compelled Germany to sign a highly unjust and humiliating peace treaty.

(ii) The treaty imposed heavy war reparations on Germany and forced her to surrender significant territories, such as the Saar, Rhineland, Ruhr area and parts of her foreign colonies.

(iii) Additionally, the treaty prohibited Germany from rearming, restricting her military to a limit of 100,000 soldiers, which the Germans found deeply humiliating. The heavy reparations hindered Germany's economic recovery and France, driven by revenge, took control of the Saar Valley and the Ruhr Zone in 1923 when Germany was vulnerable.

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

79. Cold War has damaged the world more today than the world suffered during the Second World War. In the light of this observation, explain :
(i) The origin of the Cold War in the Truman Doctrine;
(ii) the meaning and the impact of the Cold War.

Ans : SQP 1996

(i) On March 12, 1946, President Truman declared before the U.S. Congress that America should offer moral and financial support to nations whose political independence was at risk due to communism. This policy became known as the Truman Doctrine. Truman stressed that communism posed a significant threat to the free world. The United States took on the responsibility of containing communism and provided substantial financial and military aid to Greece and Turkey, successfully preventing both from falling under communist control. The Soviet Union viewed this move as clear opposition from the U.S. against its interests.

(ii) The Cold War was primarily a propaganda war, characterized by a war of words exchanged through the media. Countries issued statements and counter-statements, accusing and counter-accusing one another, fueling tensions without engaging in direct combat. It represented a period of heightened tension between nations, where conflict was verbal and ideological rather than fought on the battlefield.

Impact of the Cold War :

(a) **Formation of Military Alliances :** Both blocs created alliances like NATO, SEATO, CENTO and the Warsaw Pact, where an attack on one member was considered an attack on all, reinforcing collective security.

(b) **Armament Race :** The Cold War intensified the arms race, with both blocs increasing military budgets and developing deadlier weapons. The Soviet Union also became a nuclear power in 1949.

(c) **Exploitation of Regional Conflicts :** Both blocs used regional conflicts to expand their influence, turning local issues into international disputes due to Cold War tensions.

(d) **Impact on the U.N :** The Cold War weakened the U.N. security system, as military alliances acted as alternatives or supplements to U.N. efforts. The Cold War also played out within the U.N., affecting its discussions and actions.

NODIA

80. State how each of the following factors were the causes of the Second World War.
(i) The failure of the League of Nations.
(ii) The Aggressive Nationalism of Germany.
(iii) The Policy of Appeasement.

Ans : MAIN 2001,2022,2023,2024

(i) The League of Nations, established after World War I to preserve peace, proved ineffective in stopping aggression due to its lack of enforcement authority and the absence of key global powers, including the United States. It failed to respond decisively when nations like Japan, Italy and Germany violated international agreements, such as Germany's re-militarization of the Rhineland and Italy's invasion of Ethiopia. This undermined its credibility and allowed aggressor nations to act unchecked, ultimately contributing to the outbreak of World War II.

(ii) Germany, under Adolf Hitler, pursued a policy of aggressive nationalism aimed at expanding its territory and overturning the Treaty of Versailles. Hitler's ambitions to unite all German-speaking people and create Lebensraum (living space) for Germans led to the annexation of Austria and the invasion of Czechoslovakia and Poland. This aggressive expansionism directly provoked conflict in Europe, triggering World War II.

(iii) Britain, which held significant influence in the League of Nations, adopted a timid policy and actively appeased Hitler. When Hitler annexed Austria, neither Britain nor France intervened. Emboldened by this inaction, Hitler went on to occupy Czechoslovakia in 1938. At this point, France also pursued a policy of appeasement towards Germany, aiming to maintain global peace. Both nations were also motivated by a desire to counter the spread of Communism and Russian Bolshevism, fearing that a stronger Germany would serve as a buffer against Soviet influence. As a result, Britain and France allowed Germany to rearm, remilitarize the Rhineland and capture Austria and Czechoslovakia. Without this policy of appeasement from the Western powers, Fascism and Nazism might not have endured long enough to ignite the Second World War.

81. The Treaty of Versailles was harsh and sowed the seeds for the Second World War. In this context, briefly describe the following:
(i) The grievances of Germany against the Treaty.
(ii) The motives of the USA, Britain and France in imposing the Treaty of Versailles on Germany.
(iii) The Policy of appeasement adopted by Britain and France. The dissatisfaction of Italy.

Ans : SQP 2011

(i) The Paris Peace Settlement was driven by a spirit of revenge and the Germans saw the Treaty of Versailles as harsh and unfair. Germany was forced to cede vast territories and its colonies in East Africa and South-West Africa, while its military capabilities were severely weakened. The heavy war reparations also placed a massive economic burden on the country. This treaty instilled deep resentment in the German people, fueling the rise of Nazism. When Hitler and his Nazi Party came to power, they embarked on a path of aggression, seeking to overturn the treaty and restore Germany's power.

(ii) The USA, Britain and France had distinct motives for imposing the Treaty of Versailles on Germany. France, seeking revenge for the destruction it endured during the war, aimed to permanently weaken Germany to prevent future aggression. Britain, while wanting to restore balance in Europe and maintain its global influence, took a less severe stance than France. The USA, led by President Woodrow Wilson, pushed for a more lenient peace based on his Fourteen Points, aiming for long-term stability and democracy, though the final treaty did not fully align with Wilson's vision.

(iii) Britain and France adopted the policy of appeasement towards dictatorships like Germany and Italy because they believed the dictators had legitimate grievances stemming from the harsh terms of the Treaty of Versailles. They assumed that addressing these grievances would prevent further conflict and maintain world peace. As a result, they permitted Germany to rearm, re-militarize the Rhineland and annex Austria and Czechoslovakia. Without this policy of appeasement by the Western powers, Fascism and Nazism would not have lasted as long or been able to trigger the Second World War.

82. The League of Nations was unable to eliminate power struggles leading to another World War. In this context describe how the following were connected with the Second World War.
(i) Japanese invasion of China ?
(ii) Ideological differences between nations.
(iii) Hitler's invasion of Poland.

Ans : MAIN 2022

(i) Japan's expansion policy was a significant cause of the Second World War. After World War I, Japan's ambitions grew and it became determined to dominate the Far East. In 1931, Japan intervened in Manchuria and despite opposition

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

from the League of Nations, occupied the region and established a government there. Japan also launched an undeclared war against China in the same year. China appealed to the League for sanctions against Japan, but Britain and France, the League's leading members, ignored the request. Axis, forming the Berlin-Rome-Tokyo Axis to further its imperialist ambitions. In 1933, Japan withdrew from the League of Nations and began occupying British and American properties in China. Britain and France pursued a policy of appeasement, hoping to use Japan to weaken China. Under these conditions, war became inevitable.

(ii) The USA, Britain and France upheld liberal democracy, characterized by periodic elections, civil liberties, freedom of speech and protection from arbitrary arrest. In contrast, the political systems in Italy and Germany were dominated by single-party rule. Hitler suppressed all opposition, establishing the Nazi Party as the only legal party in Germany, while Mussolini in Italy asserted that compromise between democracy and fascism was impossible. Both Axis powers - Italy and Germany - had expansionist ambitions, making a clash between the democratic and authoritarian camps inevitable. These stark ideological differences contributed significantly to the tensions that led to World War II.

(iii) By 1939, Germany had already annexed Austria and Czechoslovakia. Under the Treaty of Versailles, Germany was divided into two parts to provide a land route to Poland and gave the port of Danzig to Poland. This division was deeply resented by Germany, which demanded the return of these territories. Without waiting for a response, Germany invaded Poland on September 1, 1939. Britain demanded that Germany withdraw, but when Hitler refused, Britain declared war on Germany on September 3, 1939, marking the official start of World War II.

83. With the surrender of Japan, the Second World War was finally over. The war had far-reaching consequences. Against this background, write short notes on :

(i) Effect of World War II on Japan.

(ii) The division of Germany.

(iii) Division of the world into two Power Blocs.

Ans : SQP 2018

(i) Effect of World War II on Japan :

(a) Unlike Germany, Japan was not divided into zones to be governed by the victorious powers.

(b) The American Army administered Japan until 1952, after which the Japanese regained full control of their own governance.

(c) Emperor Horatio remained on the throne as a constitutional monarch, while the Japanese Parliament retained some of its legislative authority.

(ii) The Division of Germany : After the war, Germany was divided into four occupation zones controlled by the United States, the Soviet Union, Britain and France. This division soon became permanent, splitting the country into East Germany (a Soviet-controlled communist state) and West Germany (a democratic state allied with the West). Berlin, located in East Germany, was also divided, leading to the construction of the Berlin Wall in 196 (i) This division symbolized the ideological conflict between communism and capitalism during the Cold War.

(iii) Division of the World into two Power Blocs : In the aftermath of World War II, the world split into two opposing power blocs. The United States led the Western bloc, championing capitalism and democracy, while the Soviet Union led the Eastern bloc, promoting communism. This division sparked the Cold War, marked by political, military and ideological rivalry between the capitalist West and communist East. NATO was established to unite the Western powers, while the

(ii) European nations grew suspicious of Hitler's intentions and formed alliances for their security. As a result, before the outbreak of the Second World War, Europe was divided into opposing camps. The Axis Powers - Germany, Italy and Japan - pursued aggressive territorial expansion, while the Allied Powers, led by Britain, France and later the United States and Soviet Union, formed a counter force.

(iii) Following the First World War, the USA remained detached from European politics, opting not to join the League of Nations. This left England unable to counter French hostility towards Germany on its own. Consequently, American isolationism and lack of involvement enabled the military regimes in Germany and Italy to pursue aggressive and militant policies without significant opposition.

(iv) The immediate trigger for the Second World War was Germany's aggressive invasion of Poland on September 1, 1939. A month earlier, in August 1939, Germany had signed a Non-Aggression Pact with Russia. Following the invasion, Britain demanded that Germany withdraw from Poland, but Hitler refused. As a result, on September 3, 1939, Britain and France declared war on Germany, marking the beginning of the Second World War.

74. Give an account of the reasons on which the Second World War broke out and the effect of the following:

(i) Unjust Treaty of Versailles.

(ii) Aggressive Nationalism and Expansionism.

(iii) The cold war and group rivalries.

Ans : SQP 2011

(i) The victors of the First World War Britain, France and the USA compelled Germany to sign the Treaty of Versailles, which was widely regarded as unjust and humiliating. The treaty imposed heavy war reparations on Germany, forced her to cede significant territories such as the Saar, Rhineland and Ruhr, along with portions of her foreign colonies. Additionally, Germany was prohibited from rearming, with her military restricted to a limit of 100,000 soldiers. The Germans considered these terms deeply degrading.

(ii) The rulers of Germany, Italy and Japan embraced aggressive nationalism, seeking to acquire colonies to satisfy both nationalist ambitions and economic interests. Italy annexed Ethiopia and Albania, while Japan took control of Manchuria and later attacked China in 1937, capturing many cities. Germany annexed neighboring states like Austria and Czechoslovakia and Soviet Russia expanded into Eastern Europe and Central Asia. The League of Nations was ineffective in preventing these aggressive territorial expansions.

(iii) The Cold War refers to a period of intense political tension without direct conflict, where the threat of war constantly loomed. It was primarily a propaganda war that lasted from the end of World War II until 1990. The seeds of the Cold War were planted during the Second World War, when Stalin imposed socialist dictatorships on Eastern European countries like Poland, Romania and East Germany, causing distrust among the Western Allies, led by the United States. This resulted in the division of the world into two hostile blocs, with tensions leading to the formation of military alliances like NATO, SEATO and the Warsaw Pact.

75. With reference to the consequences of the Second World War, discuss the following :

(i) Emergence of new Super Powers and Power Blocs.

(ii) How do the consequences of the Second World War affect our lives even today ?

(iii) Resurgence of Nationalism in Asia and Africa.

Ans : COMP 2019,2020

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

Nazism, was a significant factor leading to the Second World War. Italy, under Mussolini, aimed to revive the glory of the Roman Empire. In 1937, Italy joined the Anti-Comintern Pact and in 1939, formed a ten-year alliance with Germany to strengthen its position. Mussolini established a dictatorship, opposed the Treaty of Versailles and demonstrated Italy's imperialist ambitions by invading Abyssinia. The League of Nations failed to take decisive action against Italy, exposing its weakness.

In Germany, Hitler sought to restore Germany's international prestige. He openly violated the military clauses of the Treaty of Versailles and embarked on a policy of re-armament. In 1938, Hitler annexed Austria and dismembered Czechoslovakia. The aggressive actions of Mussolini and Hitler pushed the world toward another World War.

86. With reference to the consequences of the Second World War explain the following:
(i) Defeat of axis power.
(ii) Formation of United Nations.
(iii) Cold War between Two Power Blocs.

Ans : COMP 2005

(i) The Defeat of the Axis Powers :
(a) Germany's military was drastically reduced, its war materials confiscated and it was required to pay substantial reparations and relinquish its colonies.
(b) Germany was divided into two parts: East Germany (under Soviet control) and West Germany (under Western control).
(c) On May 7, 1945, Germany officially surrendered, leaving the country broken, humiliated and devastated.
(d) The Axis Powers - Germany, Italy and Japan - were defeated by the end of World War II.
(e) They were forced to pay heavy war reparations and surrender their colonies abroad.

Japan : On August 6, 1945, the U.S. dropped an atomic bomb on Hiroshima, followed by another on Nagasaki on August 9, killing 80,000 people instantly and wounding 70,000. Japan surrendered on August 15, 1945 and all territories acquired since 1895 were taken away. General MacArthur was given control over Japan until 1952.
Italy : In July 1943, the Allies captured Sicily and advanced to Rome. Mussolini was removed and the new government under Badoglio surrendered to the Allies.

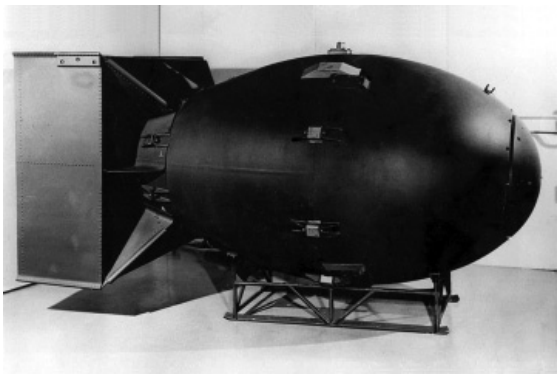
(ii) The United Nations Organization (UNO) was founded on October 24, 1945, with its headquarters in New York, USA, to protect future generations from the devastation of war. Its primary goals are to promote peace, justice, human dignity, brotherhood and cooperation among nations. As the largest international body, with 192 member states, the UNO has made substantial contributions in many areas. It is regarded as one of the most important legacies of World War II, committed to the protection and service of humanity.

(iii)(a) **Rise of Superpowers :** After World War II, two major powers, the USA and the Soviet Union, emerged, each seeking to expand its influence, leading to the Cold War.
(b) **Arms Race and Military Alliances :** The Cold War initiated a race for armaments and led to the formation of military alliances like NATO (under U.S. leadership) and the Warsaw Pact (led by the Soviet Union).
(c) **Division of the World :** The world was divided into two blocs: the Anglo - American Bloc (capitalist nations led by the USA, including Britain and France) and the Soviet Bloc (communist nations led by the Soviet Union, including countries like Poland, Hungary, Bulgaria and Romania).

NODIA
Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

CASE BASED QUESTION

87. Study the picture and answer the questions :



(i) Identify the object in the picture. Which country was responsible for its production?

(ii) Where was this object used for the first time? How did it being an end to the War?

(iii) How can a future war be avoided following the teachings of Mahatma Gandhi ?

Ans : MAIN 2023

(i) The object in the picture is an atomic bomb. The United States was responsible for its production during World War II.

(ii) This atomic bomb was first used on Hiroshima, Japan, on August 6, 1945 and a second bomb was dropped on Nagasaki on August 9, 194(v)By the time the atomic bombs were dropped, Germany and Italy, two of the Axis Powers, had already surrendered, but Japan continued to resist. However, the bombings of Hiroshima and Nagasaki dealt a devastating blow to the Japanese government. Realizing they could no longer endure the immense loss of lives and the severe damage to their economy, Japan promptly surrendered. This surrender marked the end of the Second World War.

(iii) To avoid future wars, following the teachings of Mahatma Gandhi would emphasize the principles of non-violence (Ahimsa), peaceful resistance and diplomacy. Gandhi believed in resolving conflicts through dialogue and mutual understanding, rejecting all forms of violence and promoting cooperation and compassion as the foundation for a peaceful world. Through these methods, nations can resolve disputes without resorting to destructive warfare.

88. (i) Identify the leader in the picture. What was the name given to the form of dictatorship practiced by him ?

(ii) State any two similar ideologies of the dictators.

(iii) What was the immediate cause of the Second World War ? Mention any two reasons for it.

(iv) Explain how the Japanese invasion of China became a cause for the Second World War.

Ans : MAIN 2020,2021,2022,2023,2024

(i) The leader in the picture is Adolf Hitler, the dictator of Germany. The form of dictatorship practiced by him was called Nazism.

(ii) (a) **Totalitarian rule :** Both Hitler and Mussolini believed in the absolute authority of a single leader and one-party rule.

(b) **Aggressive nationalism and expansionism :** Both aimed to expand their territories through military conquest to revive past imperial glories.

(iii) The immediate cause of the Second World War was Germany's invasion of Poland

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

on September 1, 1939. Two reasons for this :

(a) Germany's dissatisfaction with the Treaty of Versailles, which imposed harsh penalties on the country

(b) Hitler's expansionist policies, including the annexation of Austria and Czechoslovakia, emboldened by the Western powers' policy of appeasement.

(iv) Japanese invasion of China :

(a) Japan attacked China in 1931 and annexed Manchuria.

(b) China appealed to the League of Nations to declare sanctions against Japan, but the members of League of Nations followed policy of appeasement.

(c) In 1933, Japan left the League of Nations and started occupying the British and American properties in China.

(d) The Japanese were determined to dominate the Far East. America warned Japan of the dire consequences but Japan ignored.

89. Identify the persons given in the picture. Mention their contribution in the promotion of world peace.

Ans : MAIN 2023,2024, 2020,2021

Mikhail Gorbachev and President Regan of United States of America.

Contribution : Ronald Reagan and Mikhail Gorbachev played significant roles in promoting world peace during the Cold War era. Their leadership led to the signing of the Intermediate-Range Nuclear Forces (INF) Treaty in 1987, which was a major step in reducing nuclear arms. This treaty marked the first time the superpowers agreed to eliminate an entire class of nuclear weapons and paved the way for the easing of tensions between the United States and the Soviet Union, contributing to the eventual end of the Cold War.

www.nodia.in

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

67. What are the functions of the General Assembly?

Ans : COMP 2005

(i) **Deliberative Functions :** Discusses issues related to peace and security and recommends actions to promote international cooperation in political, economic, social, cultural, educational and health areas.

(ii) **Financial Functions :** Reviews and approves the United Nations' budget and determines how expenses are shared among member states.

(iii) **Electoral Functions :** Elects non-permanent Security Council members, Economic and Social Council members, Trusteeship Council members, appoints the Secretary-General based on Security Council recommendations and jointly elects International Court of Justice members with the Security Council.

(iv) **Amending the UN Charter :** Has the authority to propose amendments to the UN Charter, which require a two-thirds majority in the Assembly and ratification by two-thirds of member states, including all permanent Security Council members.

68. What can the General Assembly do if the Security Council fails to act in a case where there appears to be a threat to peace?

Ans : COMP 2010

If the Security Council is unable to act because its permanent members do not agree and there is a threat to peace, a breach of peace, or an act of aggression, the General Assembly can step in. In such cases, the Assembly is authorized to promptly address the issue and make recommendations to member states for collective actions, which may include the use of armed force.

69. Name the permanent members of the Security Council?

Ans : MAIN 2001

The five permanent members of the United Nations Security Council, often referred to as the P5, are:

(i) China
(ii) France
(iii) Russia
(iv) United Kingdom
(v) United States

70. What is meant by 'Veto Power' ?

Ans : SQP 2003

Each member of the Security Council is entitled to one vote. To approve procedural decisions, at least nine votes are necessary and all five permanent members must agree. A negative vote from any permanent member, called a veto, prevents the Council from taking action. However, choosing to abstain from voting does not count as a negative vote or a veto.

71. Where is the permanent headquarter's of International Court of Justice located ? What is the composition of the International Court of Justice?

Ans : MAIN 2011

The International Court of Justice is permanently headquartered at the Peace Palace in The Hague, Netherlands.

Composition of the International Court of Justice:

(i) **Number of Judges :** The ICJ is composed of 15 judges.

(ii) **Term Length :** Each judge serves a nine-year term and may be re-elected.

(iii) **Election Process :** Judges are elected by both the United Nations General Assembly and the Security Council.

(iv) **Representation :** The composition ensures representation from the major legal systems and different geographic regions of the world, promoting diversity.

(v) **Independence :** Judges serve in their individual capacities and do not represent their home countries, maintaining impartiality and independence in their judgments.

NODIA
Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

BETTER THAN BOOK IN THE MARKET

Why students are choosing this book 👉

School teachers already use this content to set papers.

Still not sure?

- 👉 Match this PDF with your question papers
- 👉 See the similarity yourself

Why does this happen?

- ✓ Teachers have its PDF & Word files
- ✓ Easy access
- ✓ Direct copy-paste questions
- ✓ Same pattern followed

Don't miss out—get the advantage today!

4. INTERNATIONAL COURT OF JUSTICE (ICJ)

(i) **Composition :** The ICJ is made up of 15 judges, elected by the General Assembly and Security Council for nine-year terms. Judges represent different legal systems of the world.

(ii) **Functions :** The ICJ serves as the principal judicial organ of the United Nations. It settles legal disputes between member states and provides advisory opinions on legal questions referred to it by UN bodies and specialized agencies. It works to uphold international law and is essential in addressing border disputes, treaty violations and other international legal matters.

5. MAJOR AGENCIES OF THE UNITED NATIONS AND THEIR FUNCTIONS

5.1 UNICEF

UNICEF is dedicated to the welfare of children around the world, particularly in developing nations. It focuses on providing access to healthcare, education, clean water, nutrition and emergency relief. UNICEF also advocates for children's rights and works to protect them from violence, exploitation and abuse.

5.2 WHO

WHO is responsible for international public health. Its main objectives include combating global diseases (such as malaria, tuberculosis and HIV/AIDS), improving health systems and responding to public health emergencies like pandemics. WHO also promotes research and development in healthcare, ensures access to essential medicines and encourages healthy living and prevention of diseases.

5.3 UNESCO

UNESCO focuses on promoting education, scientific advancement and cultural preservation worldwide. It works to ensure quality education for all, particularly in developing countries, while fostering scientific cooperation and preserving cultural heritage sites. UNESCO also promotes freedom of expression, media literacy and the protection of cultural diversity.

The United Nations, established to prevent future wars and foster global cooperation, remains one of the most important international organizations. Its key bodies - the General Assembly, the Security Council and the International Court of Justice - work together to uphold peace and security, promote human rights and ensure the rule of law. Through its specialized agencies such as UNICEF, WHO and UNESCO, the UN plays a vital role in addressing global challenges such as child welfare, public health, education and cultural preservation. Over the past decades, the UN has contributed significantly to peacekeeping efforts, humanitarian aid and the overall well-being of humanity, making it one of the greatest legacies of World War II.

MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTION

1. Which of the following is NOT part of the new objectives set by the UN?
(a) Disarmament
(b) Desalinization
(c) Disintegration
(d) Development

Ans : MAIN 2005

Thus (c) is correct option.

2. Which of the following is NOT a principle of the United Nations?
(a) To respect the sovereign equality of all its members
(b) All members should settle their international disputes by peaceful means
(c) The UN shall intervene in the domestic (internal) affairs of the state
(d) None of the above

Ans : SQP 2019

Thus (c) is correct option.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

CHAPTER 11

THE UNITED NATION

SUMMARY

1. OBJECTIVES OF THE UNITED NATIONS (UN)

The United Nations was founded on October 24, 1945, in the aftermath of World War II, with the primary aim of preventing future global conflicts. The main objectives of the UN are:

(i) Maintaining international peace and security by preventing conflicts and resolving disputes between nations through peaceful means.

(ii) Promoting human rights and fundamental freedoms for all individuals, regardless of race, gender, language, or religion.

(iii) Fostering international cooperation in solving global problems, including those related to economic, social, cultural and humanitarian issues.

(iv) Encouraging social and economic development and improving the living standards of people worldwide.

(v) Ensuring that international law is respected and adhered to in resolving disputes between countries.

The UN plays a key role in conflict resolution, peacekeeping and providing humanitarian aid during crises, all aimed at creating a more stable and secure world.

2. COMPOSITION AND FUNCTIONS OF KEY UN ORGANS

2.1 General Assembly

The General Assembly is the main deliberative body of the United Nations and includes all 193 member states, each of which has one vote. It is a platform for all member states to discuss international issues, regardless of their size or political influence.

The General Assembly discusses a wide range of international issues, including peace, security, human rights and sustainable development. It makes recommendations to states on matters within the scope of the UN Charter, passes resolutions (non-binding), approves the UN budget and oversees the appointment of key UN officials. It also plays a role in admitting new member states and electing members to various UN bodies.

3. SECURITY COUNCIL

3.1 Composition

The Security Council consists of 15 members. Five of these are permanent members - United States, United Kingdom, Russia, China and France - each holding veto power. The remaining 10 non-permanent members are elected by the General Assembly for two-year terms.

3.2 Functions

The Security Council is responsible for maintaining international peace and security. It can take decisive actions to prevent conflicts, including imposing sanctions, authorizing the use of force and deploying peacekeeping missions. The Council also facilitates negotiations to settle disputes and recommends solutions. Its resolutions are legally binding and it has the authority to intervene in situations that threaten global security.

NODIA

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

Ans : SQP 2023

Thus (d) is correct option.

14. Which of the following describes the flag of the UN?
(a) The star sprang led banner
(b) The Indian tricolor
(c) Light blue with the UN emblem in white
(d) Collage of flags of all member states.

Ans : MAIN 2019

Thus (c) is correct option.

15. Which of the following is NOT true about the decision of the General Assembly?
(a) It has no legal binding
(b) It signifies world opinion.
(c) It has legal binding on members.
(d) It shows the moral authority of the world community.

Ans : SQP 2004

Thus (c) is correct option.

16. UNICEF is governed by an Executive Board consisting of _____ members?
(a) 34
(b) 36
(c) 32
(d) 38

Ans : COMP 2004

Thus (b) is correct option.

17. Where is the Headquarters of the UNICEF located?
(a) New York, USA
(b) Washington, USA
(c) Florida, USA
(d) New Jersey, USA

Ans : SQP 2001

Thus (a) is correct option.

18. To finance its projects UNICEF depends on
(a) Voluntary contribution by governments
(b) Donations by private agencies
(c) Sale of Greetings cards
(d) All of the above

Ans : MAIN 2007

Thus (a) is correct option.

19. The main focus of UNICEF is
(a) Healthcare
(b) Education
(c) Children's welfare
(d) Communication

Ans : COMP 2008

Thus (c) is correct option.

20. When is the World Health Day celebrated?
(a) April 14
(b) April 17
(c) April 8
(d) April 7

Ans : SQP 2009

Thus (b) is correct option.

21. Where is the headquarters of WHO located?
(a) New York, USA
(b) Geneva, Switzerland
(c) Paris, France
(d) Bern, Switzerland Snit

Ans : SQP 2010

Thus (b) is correct option.

22. Which of the following diseases was not a part of programme to immunize children by WHO?
(a) Polio
(b) Tetanus
(c) Whooping cough
(d) Malaria

Ans : MAIN 2012

Thus (d) is correct option.

23. Where was the conference held for the establishment of an educational, scientific and cultural organization?
(a) Paris (b) Geneva
(c) London (d) New York

Ans : MAIN 2021

Thus (c) is correct option.

24. Where is the Headquarters of UNESCO located?
(a) Bern (b) Geneva
(c) Hague (d) Paris

Ans : MAIN 2022

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

52. Where are the headquarters of UNICEF? Name two preventable diseases against which UNICEF organizes its programmes.

Ans : MAIN 2023

The Headquarters of the UNICEF are located in New York [USA].
Diarrhoeal diseases and iodine deficiency disorder.

TWO MARKS QUESTIONS

53. Mention any two objectives of the United Nations.

or

State the most important reason for the formation of the UNO.

Ans : MAIN 2024

(i) Maintaining international peace and security by preventing conflicts and promoting peaceful resolution of disputes between nations.
(ii) Promoting human rights and fundamental freedoms for all individuals, regardless of race, gender, language, or religion.

54. Give two main functions of the UN General Assembly.

Ans : COMP 2024

(i) Deliberation and Decision-Making : Serves as a forum where all member states can discuss and collaborate on international issues, making recommendations on peace, security, development and human rights.
(ii) Budgetary and Administrative Oversight : Approves the United Nations budget, allocates funding to various programs and agencies and oversees the administrative functions of the UN to ensure effective operation.

55. Write any two principles of the United Nations.

Ans : SQP 2024

(i) Non-Intervention in Domestic Affairs : The United Nations respects the sovereignty of each member state by refraining from interfering in their internal matters.
(ii) Sovereign Equality : All member states have equal rights and responsibilities within the UN.

56. Name any four organs of the UNO.

Ans : COMP 2024

(i) General Assembly – Discusses and makes decisions on international issues.
(ii) Security Council – Maintains global peace and security.
(iii) International Court of Justice (ICJ) – Resolves legal disputes between states
(iv) Secretariat – Handles the day-to-day administrative tasks of the UN.

57. Why did world leaders decide to set up a world organization to maintain peace?

Ans : SQP 2024

After enduring the devastating effects of two World Wars within 25 years, world leaders recognized the need to create an organization more robust than the League of Nations. They convened numerous conferences to discuss the structure and feasibility of such an entity. Their collective efforts culminated on October 24, 1945, in San Francisco, with the establishment of the United Nations Organization.

58. State any two functions of the Security Council.

Ans : MAIN 2009

(i) The Security Council is responsible for examining any disputes or situations that may cause international tensions and for proposing methods to resolve these conflicts or establish settlement terms.
(ii) The Security Council recommends the appointment of the Secretary-General to the General Assembly and collaborates with the Assembly to elect judges for the International Court of Justice.

NODIA
Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

37. Where are the headquarters of the WHO ?

Ans : MAIN 2021

In Switzerland, at Geneva.

38. WHO is a specialised UN agency devoted to a specific cause ? What is this cause ?

Ans : SQP 2000

Health for all by the year 2000.

39. Name the agency that UN set up to deliver relief to children and mothers after World War II.

Ans : COMP 2015

UNICEF (United Nations International Children's Emergency Fund).

40. Give the expanded form of the UNESCO.

Ans : SQP 2000

United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization.

41. State one way in which the UNICEF raises funds.

Ans : MAIN 2004

Contribution of money by voluntary organizations, governments and persons

42. Which agency of the UN looks after the interest of the children in the world ? What was the original purpose of setting up this agency ?

Ans : SQP 2005

UNICEF. To help the emergency needs of children in post war Europe.

43. Who appoints the Secretary General of the UNO ?

Ans : MAIN 2012

General Assembly.

44. What methods does WHO adopt to fulfil its objectives?

Ans : MAIN 2022

It organizes conferences, seminars and training for health care personnel from different countries to fulfill its objectives.

45. Where is the permanent session of the International Court of Justice held ?

or

Where is the permanent head-quarters of the International Court of Justice located ?

Ans : COMP 2004

The Hague (Holland).

46. Veto Power is enjoyed by the five permanent members of the United Nations. What is this power ?

Ans : MAIN 1990,2001,2019

A negative vote by a permanent member of a Security Council is called a veto power.

47. Name the judicial organ of the United Nations.

Ans : SQP 2015

The International Court of the Justice is the principal judicial organ of the United Nations.

48. When was WHO established? Which day is celebrated as the World Health Day every year?

Ans : MAIN 2023,2024

WHO was established on 7th April, 1948. This day is observed annually as World Health Day.

49. Where are the headquarters of WHO located ?

Ans : SQP 2020

The headquarters of WHO are located at Geneva Switzerland.

50. How does UNICEF raise its funds?

Ans : COMP 2024

The projects of UNICEF are financed by voluntary contributions from governments, persons and organization. The sale of greeting cards is also an important source of UNICEF's income.

51. When was UNICEF established?

Ans : MAIN 2022

The UNICEF was established in 1946.

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

Thus (d) is correct option.

25. The largest sector of UNESCO's activity is in the field of:
(a) Education (b) Science
(c) Culture (d) Health

Ans : SQP 2015

Thus (a) is correct option.

26. Which of the following is NOT a function of UNESCO?
(a) Scientific Activities
(b) Communication
(c) Preservation of Cultural Heritage
(d) Research of Mythology

Ans : COMP 2005

Thus (d) is correct option.

27. In a remote village in Rwanda the infant mortality rate is one in every ten live births. Which agency of the UN could help this village?
(a) UNICEF (b) WHO
(c) UNESCO (d) None of the above

Ans : MAIN 2009

Thus (b) is correct option.

28. Which of the following is NOT a World Heritage Site?
(a) The Taj Mahal
(b) Ajanta Caves
(c) Delhi Public Library
(d) Agra Fort

Ans : MAIN 2000

Thus (c) is correct option.

29. Your school is organizing a handicrafts fair. You have gone to a village to seek craftsman to participate in the fair. You realize that the village is a facing a total lack of potable drinking water. Besides the local government who else could help you?
(a) WHO (b) UNESCO
(c) UNICEF (d) Your school

Ans : SQP 2010

Thus (c) is correct option.

ONE MARK QUESTIONS

30. When did the United Nations Organization officially come into existence ?

Ans : COMP 2024

24th October, 1945.

31. Name the five permanent members of the Security Council.

Ans : SQP 2024

China, Russia, USA, Great Britain and France.

32. Name the principal judicial organ of the United Nations.

Ans : COMP 2024

International Court of Justice.

33. Where is the permanent head-quarters of the international Court of Justice located ?

Ans : MAIN 2024

The Hague (Holland).

34. Who appoints the Secretary General of the UNO ?

Ans : COMP 2010

General Assembly.

35. Veto Power is enjoyed by the five permanent members of the United Nations. What is this power?

Ans : SQP 1990,2001,2019

A negative vote by a permanent member of a Security Council is called a veto-power.

36. Write the full form of the following :
(i) UNICEF
(ii) WHO
(iii) UNESCO

Ans : MAIN 2001,2010,2016,2018,2020

(i) **UNICEF :** United Nations International Children's Emergency Fund.
(ii) **WHO :** World Health Organization.
(iii) **UNESCO :** United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization.

NODIA

59. Mention any two functions of the UNESCO in the field of culture and communication.

Ans : SQP 1993

(i) Protecting World Heritage Sites : Identifies and preserves significant cultural and natural landmarks.
(ii) Mass Communication Projects : Develops and manages initiatives in mass media, including establishing radio networks and enhancing television facilities.

60. Mention any two functions of WHO.

Ans : COMP 2010

(i) It establishes global standards for food, biological and pharmaceutical products.
(ii) It works towards improving nutrition, housing, sanitation, working conditions and other elements of environmental hygiene.

61. Where are the headquarters of UNICEF? Name two preventable diseases against which UNICEF arginases its programmes.

Ans : MAIN 2022

The headquarters of UNICEF are located in New York City, USA. Two preventable diseases that UNICEF organizes its programs against are:
(i) Malaria
(ii) Tuberculosis

62. When was the name "The United Nations" used for the first time? Where was the UN established?

Ans : SQP 2011

(i) First Use of "The United Nations" : The name "The United Nations" was first used on January 1, 1942 in the Declaration signed by President Franklin D. Roosevelt and other Allied leaders during World War II.
(ii) Establishment of the UN : The United Nations was officially established in San Francisco, USA, on October 24, 1945 when the UN Charter was signed.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

63. State the most important reason for the formation of the UN. Which day is celebrated as the UN Day every year?

Ans : MAIN 2013

The most Important Reason for establishing the United Nations was to prevent the occurrence of future world wars by providing a platform for dialogue, fostering cooperation among nations and implementing collective security measures.
UN Day Celebration : Every year, October 24 is celebrated as United Nations Day, marking the anniversary of the UN's official establishment in 1945.

64. Where are the headquarters of the UN? Who can become the member of the UN?

Ans : COMP 2020

The United Nations is headquartered in New York City, USA, with its European office located in Geneva. Membership is available to all peace-loving nations that agree to uphold the obligations outlined in the UN Charter.

65. Who appoints the Secretary-General of the UN? Who is the present Secretary-General of the UN?

Ans : MAIN 2020

The Secretary-General of the United Nations is appointed by the General Assembly based on the recommendation of the Security Council. As of October 2023, the Secretary-General of the United Nations is António Guterres.

66. Name the principal organs of the United Nations.

Ans : SQP 2017

The principal organs of the United Nations are:
(i) General Assembly
(ii) Security Council
(iii) Economic and Social Council (ECOSOC)
(iv) Secretariat
(v) International Court of Justice (ICJ)
(vi) Trusteeship Council (currently inactive)

NODIA

3. When did the United Nations formally come into existence?
(a) October 26, 1945
(b) October 26, 1947
(c) October 24, 1945
(d) October 24, 1947

Ans : SQP 2012

Thus (c) is correct option.

4. The purpose of the United Nations was defined in
(a) Article II of the UN Charter
(b) Article III of the UN Charter
(c) Article I of the UN Charter
(d) Article IV of the UN Charter

Ans : COMP 2011

Thus (c) is correct option.

5. Which of the following NOT a purpose of the United Nations?
(a) To develop friendly relations among nations
(b) To achieve national cooperation in solving problems
(c) To maintain international peace and security
(d) To be a centre for harmonizing the actions of nations

Ans : SQP 2013

Thus (b) is correct option.

6. Which of the following was NOT a reason for the establishment of the United Nations?
(a) Disastrous World Wars
(b) Division of the World into Three Blocks
(c) Stockpiling of Destructive weapons
(d) Fear of the third World War

Ans : MAIN 2012

Thus (c) is correct option.

7. Who represented India at the San Francisco Conference?
(a) Indira Gandhi
(b) Jawaharlal Nehru
(c) Manmohan Singh
(d) APJ Abdul Kalam

Ans : SQP 2008

Thus (b) is correct option.

8. The International Court of Justice has _____ judges.
(a) 5 (b) 10
(c) 12 (d) 15

Ans : MAIN 2023

Thus (d) is correct option.

9. Where is the International Court of Justice located?
(a) New York (The USA)
(b) Moscow (Russia)
(c) Paris (France)
(d) The Hague (Netherland)

Ans : COMP 2003

Thus (d) is correct option.

10. Which is the last country to be admitted in the UN?
(a) South Sudan (b) France
(c) Russia (d) USA

Ans : MAIN 2000

Thus (a) is correct option.

11. How many Principal organs are there in the UN?
(a) Four (b) Six
(c) Eight (d) Ten

Ans : MAIN 2001

Thus (b) is correct option.

12. Which Principal organ is the executive body of the UN?
(a) The General Assembly
(b) The Trusters hip Council
(c) The International Court of Justice
(d) The Security Council

Ans : COMP 2007

Thus (d) is correct option.

13. Which is the only organ of the UN not based in the USA?
(a) The Security Council
(b) The General Assembly
(c) The Trusteeship Council
(d) The International Court of Justice

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

72. What is the importance of the International Court of Justice?

Ans : MAIN 2010,2024

"The International Court of Justice settles legal disputes between member states only when two or more parties submit their cases for judgment. Additionally, the ICJ provides advisory opinions to any United Nations organs that request them, though these recommendations are optional and may be accepted at their discretion."

73. Which agency of the UN looks after the interest of the children in the world ? What was the original purpose of setting up this agency ?

Ans : SQP 2019

The United Nations International Children's Emergency Fund (UNICEF) looks after the interests of children worldwide.
Purpose : UNICEF was originally established in 1946 to provide emergency food and healthcare to children in countries devastated by World War II. Over time, its mission expanded to focus on long-term development and well-being of children, including areas like education, health and protection from exploitation.

74. Describe any two of the functions of UNESCO in the field of scientific development.

Ans : COMP 2016

(i) UNESCO encourages fundamental research in areas such as geology, mathematics, physics and oceanography.
(ii) It ensures that the benefits of science reach all nations by sharing information through bulletins, journals and exhibitions.

75. How is the Security Council constituted?

Ans : SQP 2018

The Security Council, often called the UN's "Executive Wing," is made up of 15 members. This includes five permanent members: China, France, Russia, the United Kingdom and the United States. The other ten non-permanent members are elected by the General Assembly with a two-thirds majority for two-year terms. Members who are stepping down are not eligible for immediate re-election.

76. Give any two functions of the UNICEF.

Ans : COMP 2020

Two functions of UNICEF are:
(i) Providing healthcare and vaccinations to children in need.
(ii) Ensuring access to education and safe learning environments for children worldwide.

77. What is the role of UNICEF in mod ern times?

Ans : MAIN 2024

UNICEF plays a crucial role in advancing education and science, as well as preserving cultural heritage. In modern times, it has become an increasingly important agency contributing to global peace and security.

78. What has been the objective of WHO?

Ans : COMP 2015

The objective of the World Health Organization (WHO) is to promote the highest possible level of health for all people. This includes:
(i) Preventing and controlling diseases, particularly infectious diseases.
(ii) Improving health systems globally through research, policy and guidance.
(iii) Ensuring access to essential healthcare and promoting healthy lifestyles.

79. Why was UNESCO established? Where are its headquarters ?

Ans : SQP 2022

UNESCO was established in 1946 to promote international collaboration in the fields of education, science, culture and communication, with the goal of fostering peace and mutual understanding.
Its headquarters are in Paris, France.

NODIA
Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

(ii) Purpose of its formation :
   (a) **International Peace :** One of the primary purposes of establishing the UNO is to maintain global peace by taking effective actions to eliminate threats to peace.
   (b) **Friendly Relations :** Another key purpose is to foster friendly relations among nations, grounded in the principles of equal rights and self-determination for all people.
   (c) **International Cooperation :** The UNO aims to promote cooperation among countries to address global issues related to economics, society, culture and humanitarian concerns.
   (d) **Social Equality :** It seeks to promote respect for human rights and fundamental freedoms for everyone, without discrimination based on race, gender, language, or religion.

(iii) Guiding principles of the UNO :
   (a) The UNO is based on the principle of sovereign equality for all its members.
   (b) All members are required to resolve international disputes peacefully without jeopardizing global peace and security.
   (c) All members must provide full cooperation to the UNO in its operations.
   (d) The organization should ensure that non-member states also adhere to these principles.

87. The General Assembly is considered as the Parliament of the UNO. In this context, answer the following questions :
(i) Its composition.
(ii) Its functions.

Ans : SQP 1991,2018,2000,2004,2019

(i) The General Assembly is composed of all member states of the United Nations. Each member state has one vote, regardless of its size or power. Every country, large or small, is equally represented in the Assembly.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

(ii) Functions of general assembly :
   (a) **Financial Functions :** The General Assembly reviews and approves the UN budget and determines the contributions of member states based on their financial capacity.
   (b) **Electoral Functions :** It elects non-permanent members of the Security Council, members of the Trusteeship Council and Economic and Social Council and appoints judges to the International Court of Justice, as well as the UN Secretary-General.
   (c) **Supervisory Functions :** It oversees the activities of other UN organs and agencies and can make necessary adjustments to their functioning.
   (d) **Other Functions :** The General Assembly promotes international cooperation, human rights and fundamental freedoms and can address issues under the Uniting for Peace Resolution if the Security Council fails to act.

88. The Security Council is the most important organ of the UNO which looks after the security and peace of the world. In this context, describe the following:
(i) Its composition.
(ii) Its decision making procedure.
(iii) Its functions.

Ans : MAIN 1990,1991,2004,2009,2013,2019

(i) The Security Council is composed of 15 members:
   (a) 5 permanent members : The United States, the United Kingdom, Russia, China and France.
   (b) 10 non-permanent members elected by the General Assembly for two-year terms. Each member has one vote.

(ii) Every member of the Security Council has one vote. Ordinary issues are resolved by a majority of 9 out of 15 votes. For significant matters, 9 votes are needed, including the approval of all 5 permanent members. The permanent members have the right to use veto power, allowing any

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

(c) **Providing technical assistance :** WHO provides support to countries by offering expertise, training and funding to improve their health systems, especially in low-income regions.

(iii) Two founders of the Non-Aligned Movement (NAM) are Jawaharlal Nehru (India) and Josip Broz Tito (Yugoslavia). Objectives of Non-Aligned Movement :

(a) **Promote world peace :** NAM sought to maintain neutrality by not aligning with any of the major power blocs, such as the USA or the Soviet Union, during the Cold War. Its objective was to foster peaceful coexistence among nations and encourage diplomatic solutions to global conflicts without becoming entangled in the rivalry between superpowers.

(b) **Support for de colonization :** The movement played a significant role in supporting the independence of colonized nations. NAM encouraged and backed national liberation movements in regions like Asia, Africa and Latin America, advocating for the rights of people to self-determination and the end of colonial rule.

85. The United Nations Organization aims to maintain international peace. With reference to its organs and agencies, answer the following :

(i) What is the composition of the Security Council? What is the term of the nonpermanent members?

(ii) Mention any three functions of the General Assembly.

(iii) Give the full form of UNESCO. Mention any three of its functions.

Ans : MAIN 2023

(i) The Security Council, consisting of 15 members, includes 5 permanent members (the USA, the UK, Russia, China and France) and 10 non-permanent members, who are elected by the General Assembly for a two-year term.

(ii) Three functions of the General Assembly:

(a) **Deliberating on international issues :** The General Assembly discusses and makes recommendations on a wide range of international matters, such as peace, security and development.

(b) **Budget approval :** It approves the UN's budget and decides the financial contributions of member states.

(c) **Electing members :** It elects non-permanent members to the Security Council and appoints the Secretary-General based on the Security Council's recommendation.

(iii) Full form of UNESCO : United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization. Three functions of UNESCO :

(a) **Promoting education :** UNESCO works to ensure access to quality education for all and promotes lifelong learning.

(b) **Protecting cultural heritage :** It helps protect and preserve the world's cultural heritage, including historical sites and monuments.

(c) **Promoting scientific research :** UNESCO encourages scientific collaboration and supports sustainable development and climate change.

86. With reference to the formation of the UNO explain:

(i) Objectives of the UNO.

(ii) Purpose of its formation.

(iii) Guiding principles of the UNO.

Ans : MAIN 2009,2012,2015

(i) Objectives of the UNO :

(a) Maintaining international peace and security by preventing conflicts and resolving disputes peacefully.

(b) Promoting human rights and fostering respect for fundamental freedoms for all individuals.

(c) Encouraging international cooperation in solving global problems such as economic, social, cultural and humanitarian issues.

NODIA

(d) **Promoting Human Rights and Dignity :** The UN advocates for respect for human rights, the dignity of individuals and adherence to international law and treaties.

(e) **Harmonizing Global Actions :** The UN serves as a platform for nations to coordinate their efforts towards achieving common goals, such as peace, progress and improved living standards.

(ii) Principles of the UN for its members :

(a) **Acceptance of UN decisions :** All member nations must uphold and comply with the resolutions and decisions of the United Nations.

(b) **Avoiding the use of force or threats of war :** Nations are required to settle disputes without resorting to violence or threats of conflict.

(c) **Fulfillment of obligations :** Member nations must adhere to the responsibilities outlined in the UN Charter.

(d) **Sovereign equality :** All member states are considered equal under international law, regardless of their size or power.

(e) **Non-interference :** The UN does not interfere in the domestic affairs of its member countries.

(f) **Peaceful resolution of disputes :** Conflicts between nations must be resolved through diplomatic and peaceful means.

(g) **Non-member states :** The UN requires non-member states to also respect its principles to help maintain international peace and security.

(iii) Functions of the UN :

(a) **Peacekeeping operations :** Deploying peacekeepers to conflict zones to maintain peace and security.

(b) **Humanitarian assistance :** Providing aid during natural disasters, conflicts and other emergencies.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

(c) **Protecting human rights :** Advocating for and monitoring the protection of human rights around the world.

(d) **Promoting sustainable development:** Assisting countries in achieving social and economic development goals, particularly through education, health and environmental protection programs.

99. With reference to the General Assembly, explain the following;

(i) Composition of the General Assembly.

(ii) Its role in the promotion of international cooperation.

(iii) Any four of its functions.

Ans : MAIN 2020

(i) The General Assembly functions as the United Nations' primary deliberative body, including all member states of the UN. Each country may send up to five delegates, but each state possesses only one vote. Annually, the General Assembly holds its regular sessions from the third Tuesday in September through mid-December. Additionally, member states can request special sessions to address urgent issues. Critical decisions, such as admitting new members, budgetary allocations and making recommendations on peace and security, require a two-thirds majority vote. For all other matters, decisions are made based on a simple majority.

(ii) If the Security Council is unable to respond due to a lack of agreement among its permanent members in situations involving threats to peace, breaches of peace, or acts of aggression, the General Assembly can take action. The Assembly is authorized to promptly address the issue and offer recommendations to member states for collective measures, which may include the use of armed force.

(iii) The Assembly's functions can be categorized into the following areas:

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

one of them to block a decision, even if the majority supports it.

(iii) The functions of the Security Council are:
- (a) To recommend the admission of new members to the UN.
- (b) To elect judges to the International Court of Justice.
- (c) To recommend the appointment of the Secretary-General to the General Assembly.
- (d) To uphold international peace and security.
- (e) To investigate disputes or situations that could lead to conflict.
- (f) To suggest methods for resolving disputes.
- (g) To develop plans for regulating armaments.
- (h) To assess threats to peace or acts of aggression and recommend actions in response.
- (i) To urge members to impose economic sanctions and other measures to prevent aggression.
- (j) To authorize military action against aggressors.
- (k) To carry out the trusteeship functions of the United Nations.

89. The International Court of Justice is the principal judicial organ of the United Nations. In this context, answer the following questions :

(i) Explain the composition of the International Court of Justice.

(ii) Powers and functions.

Ans : MAIN 2008,2012,2016,2020

(i) The International Court of Justice (ICJ) consists of 15 judges, each serving a nine-year term, elected by a majority vote in both the Security Council and the General Assembly. To maintain continuity, one-third of the judges, or five, are elected every three years. The court selects its President and Vice President for a three-year term and has the power to appoint its Registrar.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

(ii) The ICJ has the authority to settle legal disputes between member states and provide advisory opinions on legal questions referred to it by UN organs and specialized agencies.

Three functions of the International Court of Justice:
- (a) Settling legal disputes between member states in accordance with international law.
- (b) Providing advisory opinions on legal matters when requested by UN bodies or specialized agencies.
- (c) Interpreting treaties and determining the legal consequences of breaches of international obligations.

90. The world has seen the damages caused by the two World Wars. The aim of the United Nations Organization is to save the succeeding generations from the scourge of another war. With reference to this,

(i) Explain any three functions of the General Assembly.

(ii) Mention three important functions of the UNESCO.

(iii) Discuss the role of the Security Council in maintaining world peace.

NODIA

Ans : SQP 2016,2006

(i) Three functions of the General Assembly:
- (a) **Financial Functions :** The General Assembly reviews and approves the UN budget and determines the contributions of member states based on their financial capacity.
- (b) **Electoral Functions :** It elects non-permanent members of the Security Council, members of the Trusteeship Council and Economic and Social Council and appoints judges to the International Court of Justice, as well as the UN Secretary-General.
- (c) **Supervisory Functions :** It oversees the activities of other UN organs and agencies and can make necessary adjustments to their functioning.
- (d) **Other Functions :** The General Assembly promotes international

80. Give one function of UNESCO in the field of education.

Ans : COMP 2012

UNESCO aims to promote education for both children and adults, providing financial assistance to support the education of disabled children.

81. Give the full form of these agencies of the UN: WHO and UNICEF. In which type of countries do the above agencies of UN work?

Ans : COMP 2017

WHO : World Health Organization
UNICEF : United Nations International Children's Emergency Fund
Both agencies focus primarily on developing countries, addressing health and child welfare challenges, though WHO also operates globally.

82. Mention some achievements of WHO?

Ans : SQP 2011

The achievement of WHO are :
(i) Smallpox has been completely eradicated.
(ii) Eighty-four percent of infants born in 1990 were vaccinated against polio.
(iii) Leprosy management has improved and the guinea worm is nearly eradicated.
(iv) Cholera and plague epidemics are now rare.
(v) India's infant mortality rate dropped from 107 in the 1980 to 79 per 1000 in the 1990.

83. Describe two ways by which UNESCO aims to promote culture.

Ans : MAIN 2016

(i) Preserving cultural heritage : UNESCO identifies and protects World Heritage Sites, safeguarding important cultural landmarks and traditions for future generations.
(ii) Encouraging cultural diversity : UNESCO supports programs that foster respect for cultural differences, promoting creativity, artistic expression and intercultural dialogue globally.

THREE MARKS QUESTIONS

84. Both the United Nations Organization and the Non-Aligned Movement aim to achieve international peace and security. In this context, answer the following:
(i) Mention any three functions of the Security Council.
(ii) Mention any three functions of the World Health Organization.
(iii) Name any two founders of the Non-Aligned Movement. Mention any two of its objectives.

Ans : MAIN 2024

(i) Three functions of the Security Council :
(a) **Maintaining international peace and security :** The Security Council investigates disputes or situations that may lead to conflict and works to resolve them through diplomatic means, sanctions, or other peaceful measures.
(b) **Authorization of military action :** It can authorize the use of force by member states to maintain or restore international peace when peaceful measures are inadequate.
(c) **Imposing sanctions :** The Security Council can impose sanctions on countries or entities that violate international law or threaten global peace, such as economic sanctions, arms embargoes, or travel bans.
(ii) Three functions of the World Health Organization :
(a) **Disease prevention and control :** The WHO plays a crucial role in coordinating international efforts to control outbreaks of diseases like malaria, HIV/AIDS and, more recently, COVID-19.
(b) **Setting global health standards :** WHO establishes norms and standards for health practices and medical products, ensuring that countries follow global guidelines to maintain and improve public health.

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

Council and appoints judges to the International Court of Justice, as well as the UN Secretary-General.

(c) **Supervisory Functions :** It oversees the activities of other UN organs and agencies and can make necessary adjustments to their functioning.

(d) **Other Functions :** The General Assembly promotes international cooperation, human rights and fundamental freedoms and can address issues under the Uniting for Peace Resolution if the Security Council fails to act.

92. Where are the headquarters of the UN located ? Who can become its member ?

Ans : COMP 2012

The headquarters of the United Nations (UN) are located in New York City, in the United States. This location serves as the central meeting place for the organization's key organs, including the General Assembly and the Security Council, where major international discussions, negotiations and decisions are made.

(i) Accept the obligations of the UN Charter : A country must agree to follow the principles of the UN Charter, including respect for sovereignty, promoting peace, protecting human rights and fostering international cooperation.

(ii) Be peace-loving : The country must show a commitment to maintaining international peace, resolving conflicts peacefully and avoiding aggression against other nations.

(iii) Be recommended by the Security Council and approved by a two-thirds majority of the General Assembly : The application must be approved by at least 9 of the 15 members of the Security Council, including all five permanent members and then endorsed by a two-thirds majority of the General Assembly.

93. Explain the role of UNESCO in the development of Science and Technology.

Ans : COMP 2013

UNESCO promotes the development of science and technology through several key initiatives:

(i) International Collaboration : It fosters global cooperation by connecting scientists and institutions to address challenges like climate change and sustainable development.

(ii) Scientific Education : UNESCO supports STEM education, providing resources and training, especially in developing countries, to enhance scientific knowledge.

(iii) Research Support : It funds and promotes research in areas such as biology, physics and environmental science through programs like the International Basic Sciences Programme (IBSP).

(iv) Sustainable Technology : UNESCO encourages the development of technologies for renewable energy and environmental protection to improve global living standards.

94. What are the main functions of the UNICEF ?

Ans : MAIN 2006,2009,2015,2018

The main functions of UNICEF are:

(i) **Child Health and Nutrition :** Providing healthcare, immunization and nutritional support to reduce child mortality and improve overall child well-being.

(ii) **Education :** Ensuring access to quality education for all children, especially girls and marginalized groups, by supporting schools and educational programs.

(iii) **Child Protection :** Safeguarding children from violence, exploitation and abuse and advocating for policies that protect children's rights.

(iv) **Emergency Relief :** Delivering aid during humanitarian crises, including natural disasters and conflicts, to protect and support children and their families.

(v) **Water, Sanitation and Hygiene (WASH) :** Improving access to clean water, sanitation and hygiene to prevent disease and promote healthy living conditions for children.

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

cooperation, human rights and fundamental freedoms and can address issues under the Uniting for Peace Resolution if the Security Council fails to act.

(ii) Three important functions of the UNESCO :
- (a) Providing study grants to teachers for research on teaching methods, theories and evaluation.
- (b) Offering expert assistance in constructing school buildings, designing curricula and developing textbooks.
- (c) Giving financial support for the education of disabled children, girls and women.
- (d) Promoting universal primary education for all children globally.

(iii) The functions of the Security Council are:
- (a) To recommend the admission of new members to the UN.
- (b) To elect judges to the International Court of Justice.
- (c) To recommend the appointment of the Secretary-General to the General Assembly.
- (d) To uphold international peace and security.
- (e) To investigate disputes or situations that could lead to conflict.
- (f) To suggest methods for resolving disputes.
- (g) To develop plans for regulating armaments.
- (h) To assess threats to peace or acts of aggression and recommend actions in response.
- (i) To urge members to impose economic sanctions and other measures to prevent aggression.
- (j) To authorize military action against aggressors.
- (k) To carry out the trusteeship functions of the United Nations.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

91. With reference to the organs of the United Nations Organization, answer the following questions :

(i) What is the composition of the Security Council ?

(ii) Explain briefly any one important peace-keeping operation of the UN Security Council.

(iii) Mention any four functions of the General Assembly.

Ans : MAIN 2004

(i) The Security Council is composed of 15 members:
- (a) 5 permanent members : The United States, the United Kingdom, Russia, China and France.
- (b) 10 non-permanent members elected by the General Assembly for two-year terms. Each member has one vote.

(ii) The Korean War (1950–1953) was one of the earliest and most significant peacekeeping operations of the UN Security Council. After North Korea invaded South Korea in June 1950, the Security Council demanded the withdrawal of North Korean forces, which was ignored. In response, the UN authorized a unified military command under the leadership of the United States to intervene and push back North Korean troops. The conflict ended with an armistice agreement in July 1953, though the peninsula remained divided. Efforts for reconciliation, supported by the UN, led to a significant agreement in June 2000 aimed at the eventual reunification of Korea.

(iii) Functions of general assembly :
- (a) **Financial Functions :** The General Assembly reviews and approves the UN budget and determines the contributions of member states based on their financial capacity.
- (b) **Electoral Functions :** It elects non-permanent members of the Security Council, members of the Trusteeship Council and Economic and Social

NODIA

(ii) (b) In Scientific Activities :
1. Facilitates international cooperation in scientific research and innovation.
2. Supports programs in environmental conservation, climate change and natural resource management.
3. Establishes scientific networks and initiatives, such as the Intergovernmental Oceanographic Commission (IOC) and Man and the Biosphere Program (MAB).
4. Promotes the application of science and technology for sustainable development.

97. The United Nations Organization was established to maintain peace and promote social progress and better standards of life in larger freedom. With reference to this, explain the following :
(i) The composition of the Security Council.
(ii) The functions of the Security Council related to maintaining World Peace.
(iii) The role of UNESCO in the development of Science and Technology.

Ans : COMP 2005,2008,2010

(i) The Security Council, often called the "Executive Wing" of the UN, is made up of 15 members. Five of these are permanent members : China, France, Russia, the United Kingdom and the United States. The remaining 10 non-permanent members are elected by the General Assembly with a two-thirds majority for a two-year term. Once a member's term expires, they are not eligible for immediate re-election.
(ii) Functions of Security Council related to maintaining World Peace are :
(a) **Conflict Resolution :** The Security Council is responsible for addressing international disputes and conflicts, recommending peaceful solutions and calling for Cease-fire when necessary.
(b) **Sanctions :** It can impose economic or diplomatic sanctions on countries or groups that threaten global peace and security, pressuring them to comply with international laws.
(c) **Peacekeeping Missions :** The Security Council authorizes peacekeeping operations by deploying UN forces to conflict zones to maintain peace, monitor cease fires and protect civilians.
(d) **Military Action :** In extreme cases, the Council can approve the use of military force to restore peace and security when diplomatic efforts and sanctions fail.
(iii) (a) UNESCO supports fundamental research in fields such as geology, mathematics, physics and oceanography.
(b) It ensures that the benefits of science reach all nations by sharing information through bulletins, journals and exhibitions. The official monthly magazine is called "Courier".
(c) UNESCO promotes the study of social sciences, with a focus on understanding the causes of violence, conflict and human rights violations.

98. With reference to the functioning of the United Nations, briefly state the following :
(i) State the objectives of the UN.
(ii) Mention the principles of the UN for its members.
(iii) State any four functions of the UN.

Ans : MAIN 2021,2022,2023,2024

(i) The objectives of the UN are as follows :
(a) **Maintaining International Peace and Security :** The UN's primary purpose is to ensure global peace and prevent conflicts through diplomatic means.
(b) **Developing Friendly Relations :** The UN works to foster positive relationships among nations, encouraging cooperation and peaceful coexistence.
(c) **International Cooperation :** The UN aims to address global economic, social, cultural and humanitarian challenges by promoting international cooperation.

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

95. What are the major functions of WHO ?

Ans : MAIN 2016,2018,2020,2010

The World Health Organization (WHO) performs several key functions that contribute to global health:

(i) **Global Health Leadership :** WHO provides leadership on critical health issues, shaping the global health agenda and identifying priorities to address pressing challenges in public health.

(ii) **Disease Control and Prevention :** WHO coordinates international efforts to combat communicable diseases like HIV/AIDS, malaria, tuberculosis and COVID-19 through prevention, treatment and eradication initiatives. It also works on non-communicable diseases, aiming to reduce the global burden of conditions like heart disease and diabetes.

(iii) **Strengthening Health Systems :** WHO helps countries build and improve their healthcare systems, ensuring access to essential medicines, vaccines and quality healthcare services, particularly in under served and low-income regions.

(iv) **Health Research and Data Collection :** WHO conducts research and collects health data to inform policy-making and strategies. By promoting evidence-based decisions, it helps governments and organizations implement effective health interventions.

(v) **Setting International Health Standards :** WHO establishes international regulations and standards for health, including guidelines for food safety, medicines, vaccines and public health protocols, ensuring consistency and safety across borders.

(vi) **Emergency Response :** In times of crises, WHO leads the global response to health emergencies, including epidemics, pandemics, natural disasters and humanitarian crises, providing critical assistance and resources.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

96. The opening words of the UNESCO constitution states that "Since war begins in the minds of men, it is the minds of men defence of peace must be constructed."
With reference to this, answer the following questions.

(i) What were the objectives of setting up of UNESCO ?

(ii) State the functions of the UNESCO in the field of Education and Scientific activities.

Ans : SQP 2002

(i) Objectives of Setting up UNESCO : The United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization (UNESCO) was established in 1945 with the primary objective of promoting international peace and security through education, science, culture and communication. Its goals include:

(a) Building peace by fostering collaboration among nations.

(b) Promoting universal access to education and eradicating illiteracy.

(c) Advancing scientific knowledge and innovation to address global challenges.

(d) Preserving cultural heritage and encouraging cultural diversity.

(e) Supporting freedom of expression and access to information.

(ii) (a) In Education Activities :

1. Promotes universal primary education, gender equality and lifelong learning.
2. Develops global initiatives like Education for All (EFA) and Sustainable Development Goal 4 (SDG 4), focusing on quality and inclusive education.
3. Provides technical assistance for developing educational systems and curricula.
4. Encourages cultural and historical understanding through education programs.

NODIA

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

(a) **Deliberative Functions :** The General Assembly is empowered to discuss any issues related to peace and security. It has the authority to issue recommendations aimed at fostering international cooperation in political, economic, social, cultural, educational and health-related areas.

(b) **Financial Functions :** The General Assembly is responsible for reviewing and approving the United Nations' budget. The financial obligations of the UN are distributed among member states based on allocations determined by the Assembly.

(c) **Electoral Functions :** The Assembly elects non-permanent members of the Security Council, members of the Economic and Social Council and elective members of the Trusteeship Council. Additionally, it appoints the Secretary-General following recommendations from the Security Council. Together with the Security Council, the General Assembly also elects members of the International Court of Justice.

(d) **Amending the UN Charter :** The General Assembly has the authority to amend the UN Charter. To pass an amendment, a resolution must receive a two-thirds majority vote in the Assembly and be ratified by two-thirds of the member states, including all permanent members of the Security Council.

100. With reference to the International Court of Justice, explain the following :
(i) Its Composition.
(ii) Its Compulsory Jurisdiction.
(iii) Its Advisory Jurisdiction.

Ans : SQP 2006

(i) The International Court of Justice (ICJ) consists of 15 judges who are elected for nine-year terms by the United Nations General Assembly and the Security Council. No two judges can be from the same country, ensuring geographic and legal diversity. The judges must represent the main legal systems of the world. The ICJ's President and Vice-President are elected by the judges from among themselves for three-year terms and the court has the power to appoint its own Registrar.

(ii) The Court exercises Compulsory Jurisdiction in two primary ways. First, many treaties specify that any disputes arising under them must be referred to the Court for resolution. Second, the Court's jurisdiction covers:
(a) Disputes involving the interpretation of International Law.
(b) Cases related to compensation for breaches of International Obligations

(iii) The Court's jurisdiction extends to all cases submitted by the parties involved. A dispute can be referred to the Court by one party alone. If the opposing party chooses to defend itself in the case, the Court views this as consent to its jurisdiction.

101. The Security Council is the most important and effective organ of the UN. In this context describe.
(i) Composition of the Security Council
(ii) Veto power.
(iii) Four of its functions.

Ans : MAIN 2024

(i) The Security Council, often called the "Executive Wing" of the UN, is made up of 15 members. Five of these are permanent members: China, France, Russia, the United Kingdom and the United States. The remaining 10 non-permanent members are elected by the General Assembly with a two-thirds majority for a two-year term. Once a member's term expires, they are not eligible for immediate re-election from Latin America and the Caribbean

(ii) Decisions on routine matters require at least nine out of the fifteen members to vote in favor of a resolution. For more

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

significant issues, a decision necessitates nine votes, including the agreement of all five permanent members. A negative vote cast by any permanent member is referred to as a veto, effectively preventing the Council from taking action on that matter. Conversely, if a permanent member abstains from voting, it does not constitute a veto. The nations that hold veto power are China, France, Russia, the United Kingdom and the United States.

(iii) Functions of security council :

(a) **Conflict Resolution :** The Security Council is responsible for addressing international disputes and conflicts, recommending peaceful solutions and calling for cease fires when necessary.

(b) **Sanctions :** It can impose economic or diplomatic sanctions on countries or groups that threaten global peace and security, pressuring them to comply with international laws.

(c) **Peacekeeping Missions :** The Security Council authorizes peacekeeping operations by deploying UN forces to conflict zones to maintain peace, monitor cease fires and protect civilians.

(d) **Military Action :** In extreme cases, the Council can approve the use of military force to restore peace and security when diplomatic efforts and sanctions fail.

102. With reference to UNICEF, answer the following questions:

(i) What was the purpose of setting up of UNICEF?

(ii) Briefly mention the function of UNICEF.

(iii) Mention some of the UNICEF programmes followed in India.

Ans : MAIN 2005,2006,2012,2018

(i) UNICEF (United Nations International Children's Emergency Fund) was established in 1946 with the purpose of providing emergency food, healthcare and relief to children and mothers in countries devastated by World War II. Over time, its mission expanded to focus on long-term welfare, including improving children's health, education and protection globally.

(ii) The important functions of UNICEF are

(a) **Nutritional Assistance :** UNICEF provides protective food such as milk, meat, fish and fats to children and addresses the needs of women and pregnant mothers.

(b) **Training Support:** It funds the training of health workers, sanitation workers, nutritionists and other community-based professionals.

(c) **Immunization Programs :** UNICEF's Universal Child Immunization initiative has vaccinated nearly 80% of the world's children against diseases like measles, diphtheria, tetanus, tuberculosis, polio and whooping cough by 1990.

(d) **Support for Social Programs :** UNICEF extends support to programs aimed at suppressing human trafficking, particularly involving women and children and preventing crimes committed by children.

(e) **Disaster Relief :** It provides immediate assistance to children and women during disasters, such as earthquakes, epidemics and wars.

(iii) UNICEF programmes in India :

(a) **School Feeding Law (2001):** The Supreme Court of India passed a law requiring all state governments to provide cooked mid-day meals in all primary schools.

(b) **Dular Project (2001) :** The Dular Project, launched in Bihar and Jharkhand with UNICEF support, aims to combat malnutrition, infant mortality and poor maternal health.

(c) **IMNCI (2001) :** India implemented the Integrated Management of Neonatal and Childhood Illness (IMNCI) to improve the care of newborns and children.

NODIA

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

(d) **Infant Milk Substitute Act (2003):** This amendment, supported by UNICEF, strengthens the 1992 law, mandating exclusive breast feeding for the first six months and continued breast feeding with complementary feeding up to two years or beyond.

103. With reference to WHO, answer the following questions :

(i) Where are the headquarters of WHO located? What methods does WHO adopt to fulfil its objectives ?

(ii) Mention any three functions of WHO.

(iii) Mention any two achievements of WHO.

Ans : MAIN 2024

(i) The headquarters of the World Health Organization (WHO) are located in Geneva, Switzerland. To fulfill its objectives, WHO adopts various methods such as:

(a) Providing leadership on global health matters and coordinating international responses to health emergencies.

(b) Setting international health standards and guidelines for the prevention and control of diseases.

(c) Conducting research and promoting knowledge sharing to inform policies and strategies for improving public health.

(d) Supporting countries with technical expertise and resources to strengthen their healthcare systems.

(ii) Functions of WHO :

(a) WHO supports projects, upon government request, to ensure the provision of safe drinking water.

(b) It works to improve nutrition, housing, sanitation and working conditions, as well as other aspects of environmental hygiene.

(c) WHO promotes and coordinates health research, focusing on priorities such as the control of communicable diseases, maternal and child health, mental health and conditions like cancer, blindness, diabetes and heart disease.

(iii) According to the World Health Statistics (2015) provided by WHO, the following achievements have been made:

(a) Immunization coverage has exceeded 80% globally.

(b) From 2001 to 2013, there were (a)3 million fewer new cases of HIV reported worldwide.

(c) Child mortality for children under five has decreased from 90 deaths per 1,000 live births to 46 deaths per 1,000 live births.

(d) There has been a 40% reduction in undernutrition among children globally.

104. The United Nation apart from its main organs also work through its allied agencies. In this context, answer the following questions :

(i) Write the expanded form of UNESCO. Mention two of its functions in the fields of education.

(ii) Explain three vital roles that the WHO plays in combating diseases.

(iii) Mention any two functions of the UNICEF.

Ans : SQP 2018

(i) UNESCO stands for United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization.

(a) UNESCO is dedicated to advancing education for both children and adults. It provides financial support specifically aimed at the education of children with disabilities.

(b) UNESCO offers guidance and expert assistance in areas such as school construction, curriculum development and the creation of textbooks.

(ii) (a) **Disease Eradication :** WHO leads efforts to combat and eradicate diseases such as smallpox, polio and malaria through vaccination drives and public health campaigns.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

(b) **Global Health Standards :** It sets international health guidelines and standards, ensuring countries adopt best practices in preventing and managing outbreaks like COVID-19 or Ebola.

(c) **Health Research and Assistance :** WHO conducts research on diseases and provides technical assistance to nations to improve healthcare systems and respond to health crises effectively.

(iii)(a) To assist in providing essential nutritious foods such as milk, meat, fish and fats to children. Additionally, it protects and supports the interests of women and expectant mothers.

(b) To allocate funding for the training of health and sanitation workers as well as nutritionists.

105. With reference to UNESCO, answer the following questions:

(i) What were the objectives of the formation of UNESCO?

(ii) How is the development of education, science and culture related to peace?

(iii) What efforts have been made by UNESCO to preserve cultural heritage?

Ans : COMP 2019

(i) The United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization (UNESCO) was established in 1946 with the following key objectives :

(a) Promoting peace and security through international collaboration in education, science, culture and communication.

(b) Encouraging respect for human rights and fostering mutual understanding among nations to prevent wars and conflicts.

(c) Advancing knowledge and education, fostering intellectual cooperation and promoting cultural diversity and preservation.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

NODIA

(ii) (a) **Education :**

1. UNESCO promotes education for both children and adults, offering financial support for the education of disabled children.
2. It provides expert advice on school construction, curriculum development and textbooks.
3. UNESCO organizes Book Fairs and festivals at national and international levels.

(b) **Science :**

1. UNESCO supports basic research in fields such as Geology, Mathematics, Physics and Oceanography.
2. It shares the benefits of science globally through bulletins, journals and exhibitions, with the Courier as its official monthly magazine.
3. UNESCO encourages the study of social sciences to address issues like violence, conflict and human rights violations.

(c) Cultural Interchange and Heritage Preservation :

1. UNESCO assists member states in preserving their cultural heritage and supports the translation of rare manuscripts.
2. It promotes artistic creation in literature and fine arts.
3. UNESCO also undertakes a number of projects in the field of mass - communication.

(iii) Efforts made by UNESCO to preserve cultural heritage :

(a) UNESCO sends cultural missions to various countries to foster international contacts that help promote peace and prosperity.

(b) It promotes cultural development through the medium of films.

(c) UNESCO encourages artistic creation in the fields of literature and fine arts.

(d) It focuses on protecting the global heritage of books, artworks and rare

manuscripts.

(e) UNESCO offers technical advice, assistance, equipment and funding to preserve monuments and works of art. It has created a World Heritage List to identify and protect significant monuments and sites.

NODIA

CASE BASED QUESTION

106. Study the given picture and answer the questions:

(i) Identify the Organization associated with the emblem. Mention any three principles of this organization.

(ii) Where is the headquarters of this organization located? Which is the main deliberative organ of the UN ? State any three of its functions.

(iii) Name the principal judicial organ of this organization and explain its composition.

Ans : MAIN 2009

(i) The emblem belongs to the United Nations (UN).

Three principles of the United Nations:

(a) **Sovereign equality of all members :** All member states, regardless of size or power, are considered equal in terms of sovereignty.

(b) **Peaceful settlement of disputes :** Member states are required to resolve their disputes through peaceful means, without resorting to the use of force.

(c) **Non-interference :** The UN respects the sovereignty of its member states and does not intervene in their internal affairs unless international peace and security are at risk.

(ii) The headquarters of the United Nations is located in New York City, United States.

The main deliberative organ of the UN is the General Assembly. The functions of the United Nations are as follows:

(a) **Maintaining International Peace and Security :** To uphold global peace and security by implementing collective measures to prevent and eliminate threats to peace and to suppress acts of aggression or other violations of peace.

(b) **Fostering Friendly Relations Among Nations :** To cultivate amicable relationships between countries based on the respect for the principles of equal rights and the self-determination of peoples.

(c) **Promoting International Cooperation :** To encourage collaboration in resolving international economic, social, cultural and humanitarian issues, while also advocating for the respect of human rights and fundamental freedoms.

(iii) The principal judicial organ of the United Nations is the International Court of Justice (ICJ).The court is comprised of 15 judges who are elected separately by both the General Assembly and the Security Council. Each judge serves a nine-year term and is eligible for re-election. A quorum is established when nine judges are present. All decisions are made by a majority vote of the judges in attendance. The Chief Justice, elected for a three-year term, has the authority to cast a deciding vote. Only one judge is elected per country. The court is headquartered in The Hague, Netherlands.

5. Which of the following does NOT come under Panchsheel?
(a) Mutual non-interference in internal affairs
(b) Mutual aggression
(c) Equality for Mutual benefit
(d) Peaceful co-existence.

Ans : SQP 2012

Thus (b) is correct option.

6. Which of the following is NOT considered as the 'founding fathers' of Non Aligned Movement:
(a) President Joseph Broze Tito of Yugoslavia
(b) Prime Minister Nehru of India
(c) President Nasser of Egypt
(d) President Rajendra Prasad of India.

Ans : MAIN 2013

Thus (c) is correct option.

7. Which of these leaders was an architect of the Non-Aligned Movement?
(a) Joseph Stalin
(b) Abdel Nasser
(c) Winston Churchill
(d) Franklin Roosevelt

Ans : MAIN 2023

Thus (b) is correct option.

8. Which amongst the following only attended the NAM summits as an observer but did not join it?
(a) Latin American nations
(b) Sweden
(c) Italy
(d) Germany

Ans : SQP 2008

Thus (c) is correct option.

9. Which of the following became the guidelines for NAM?
(a) Communist Manifesto
(b) The UN charter
(c) Panchsheel
(d) Warsaw Pact

Ans : MAIN 2006

Thus (c) is correct option.

10. Non-alignment means
(a) Non-membership to military
(b) Non alignment to power blocks
(c) Active participation international issues
(d) All of the above

Ans : MAIN 2001

Thus (b) is correct option.

11. What does the Non-Aligned Movement (NAM) aim to achieve?
(a) Full membership in the United Nations
(b) Alignment with either the USA or the USSR
(c) Independence from superpower influence
(d) Formation of military alliances

Ans : SQP 2013

Thus (c) is correct option.

12. Which countries are considered the founding members of the Non-Aligned Movement?
(a) India, Egypt, Yugoslavia, Ghana and Indonesia
(b) United States, USSR, France, China and India
(c) Egypt, Israel, France, England and China
(d) India, Pakistan, Nepal, Sri Lanka and Bangladesh

Ans : COMP 2008

Thus (a) is correct option.

13. Who was the key architect and leader of the Non-Aligned Movement?
(a) Jawaharlal Nehru
(b) Fidel Castro
(c) Sukarno
(d) Gamal Abdel Nasser

Ans : SQP 2005

Thus (a) is correct option.

14. Which of the following is one of the main objectives of the Non-Aligned Movement?
(a) To promote nuclear disarmament
(b) To encourage global economic policies in favor of developing nations
(c) To avoid political and military alliances with superpowers
(d) All of the above

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

(a) **Research Work :** The World Health Organization (WHO) promotes and coordinates health research by financing projects in many countries. Its research activities encompass areas such as nutrition, environmental safety, mental health and the control of specific diseases like cancer and heart disease.

(b) **Standardization of Medicines :** WHO establishes international standards for biological and pharmaceutical products. It also supplies essential medicines to developing countries, ensuring quality and accessibility.

(c) **Eradication of Diseases :** WHO has played a pivotal role in controlling many deadly diseases, including smallpox, measles, diphtheria, polio and tuberculosis. It works to prevent the spread of diseases to other countries by addressing outbreaks at their source.

(iii)(a) The World Health Organization (WHO) has been instrumental in eradicating several diseases globally. Notably, it coordinated a successful campaign to eliminate smallpox worldwide. WHO also launched initiatives aiming to eradicate polio by 2005 and continues to lead one of the world's largest health programs against malaria.

(b) In collaboration with UNICEF, WHO has implemented programs to immunize children against six major diseases. A significant achievement of these efforts was on February 15, 2000, when India and the entire South East Asian region were officially declared free of the Guinea worm disease.

NODIA

www.nodia.in

BETTER THAN BOOK IN THE MARKET

Why students are choosing this book 👉

School teachers already use this content to set papers.

Still not sure?

- 👉 Match this PDF with your question papers
- 👉 See the similarity yourself

Why does this happen?

- ✓ Teachers have its PDF & Word files
- ✓ Easy access
- ✓ Direct copy-paste questions
- ✓ Same pattern followed

Don't miss out—get the advantage today!

CHAPTER 12

NON ALIGNED MOVEMENT

SUMMARY

The Non-Aligned Movement (NAM) refers to a group of countries that, during the Cold War, chose to remain neutral and not align with any of the major power blocs (the US or the Soviet Union). It allowed countries to maintain their sovereignty and pursue their national interests without being drawn into the ideological conflict between the superpowers.

1. OBJECTIVES OF NON-ALIGNED MOVEMENT

The Non-Aligned Movement had several key objectives that reflected the desire of newly independent nations to preserve their autonomy and avoid being drawn into the ideological conflict between capitalism and communism.

1. **Preserving Independence :** Ensuring that countries could make decisions based on their national interests rather than the dictates of either superpower.
2. **Promoting Global Peace :** Striving to reduce tensions between superpowers and fostering peaceful coexistence among nations.
3. **Support for Self-Determination :** Assisting colonized or oppressed nations in their struggle for independence and the right to govern themselves.
4. **Territorial Integrity and Sovereignty :** Defending the sovereignty of nations against any form of external intervention or aggression.
5. **Opposition to Imperialism and Colonialism :** NAM countries strongly opposed colonialism, neocolonialism and imperialism in all forms, supporting freedom movements across the globe.
6. **Economic Cooperation :** Promoting economic cooperation and development among NAM countries, as many were struggling with poverty and underdevelopment.
7. **Disarmament :** Advocating for global disarmament and a reduction in the arms race, particularly in the context of nuclear weapons.

2. PANCHSHEEL PRINCIPLES

The five principles of Panchsheel were originally agreed upon between India and China in 1954 and later became the foundation of NAM's foreign policy. These principles promoted mutual respect and peaceful coexistence:

1. **Mutual Respect for Sovereignty and Territorial Integrity :** All nations should respect the sovereignty of other nations and not interfere in their domestic affairs.
2. **Non-Aggression :** Countries should avoid using force to resolve disputes and instead settle differences peacefully.
3. **Non-Interference in Internal Affairs :** No country should interfere in the internal political, social, or economic matters of another nation.
4. **Equality and Mutual Benefit :** Relations between nations should be based on equality, mutual benefit and cooperation.
5. **Peaceful Coexistence :** Nations with different political systems and ideologies should coexist peacefully without resorting to conflict.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

3. ROLE OF JAWAHARLAL NEHRU

Jawaharlal Nehru, India's first Prime Minister, was one of the leading figures behind NAM. He envisioned a neutral stance for India in global politics and worked towards peaceful coexistence and non-alignment. Nehru played a critical role in defining the principles of NAM and helped organize the first NAM summit in 1961.

4. ARCHITECTS OF NAM

The Non-Aligned Movement was conceived by a group of influential leaders from various parts of the world, who were determined to establish a neutral path amidst the Cold War tensions. These leaders are often referred to as the Architects of NAM and their efforts laid the groundwork for the movement:

1. **Jawaharlal Nehru (India) :** He was a key proponent of non-alignment, advocating for an independent path in international relations.
2. **Josip Broz Tito (Yugoslavia) :** As the leader of Yugoslavia, Tito played a pivotal role in organizing NAM and hosted the first NAM conference in Belgrade.
3. **Gamal Abdel Nasser (Egypt) :** Nasser was a significant figure in Arab nationalism and led Egypt's efforts to remain non-aligned during the Cold War. His leadership in the Suez Crisis further cemented Egypt's position in NAM.
4. **Kwame Nkrumah (Ghana) :** Nkrumah was a passionate advocate for African unity and independence. His leadership in Ghana's decolonization process made him an important figure in NAM.
5. **Sukarno (Indonesia) :** The first President of Indonesia, Sukarno was instrumental in promoting Asian and African solidarity and hosted the Bandung Conference of 1955, which laid the foundation for NAM.

These leaders shared a common vision of sovereignty, independence and neutrality and their collaboration led to the creation of a movement that continues to influence global politics today.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTION

1. Identify the principle of Panchsheel.
(a) Mutual non-aggression
(b) Regulate armaments
(c) Take action against aggressor
(d) Recommend admission of members

Ans : MAIN 2024

Thus (a) is correct option.

2. What is the Panchsheel Agreement?
(a) A trade agreement between India and China
(b) A five-pronged agreement emphasizing peaceful coexistence
(c) A military pact between India and Russia
(d) A diplomatic agreement with the United States

Ans : MAIN 2000

Thus (b) is correct option.

3. Which of the following is NOT a feature of the Non-Aligned Movement?
(a) It is opposed to any kind of military alliances like NATO, SEATO etc.
(b) It is aligned to any of the power blocs
(c) It judges an issue on merit and upholds the rights of all people for freedom and justice
(d) It does not remain aloof from international problems.

Ans : COMP 2010

Thus (b) is correct option.

4. Which of the following is an objective of the Non-Aligned Movement?
(a) To oppose colonialism, imperialism and racial discrimination
(b) To advocate non-settlement of international disputes
(c) To challenge the UN as an organ of world peace
(d) None of the above.

Ans : COMP 2024

Thus (b) is correct option.

NODIA

107. Study the picture and answer the following questions :

(i) Identify the organization associated with the given emblem.
Where are its headquarters located? Name two sources from where this organization gets its funds.

(ii) What is the main objective of this organization?

(iii) Mention any two achievements of this organization.

Ans : SQP 2002

(i) The emblem belongs to UNICEF (United Nations International Children's Emergency Fund).
Headquarters: Located in New York City, United States.
Two sources of funding for UNICEF :
(a) Voluntary contributions from governments.
(b) Donations from private individuals and organizations, including corporate partnerships.

(ii) The primary objective of UNICEF is to enhance children's welfare, particularly in developing countries, by providing low-cost, community-based services in maternal and child health, nutrition, immunization and related areas.
(a) UNICEF works to protect children concerning their survival, health and well-being. This is achieved through collaboration with individuals, civic groups, governments and the private sector.
(b) It provides funding for the training of personnel, including health and sanitation workers, teachers and nutritionists.
(c) UNICEF supplies technical resources, equipment and other assistance. This includes items ranging from paper for textbooks, equipment and medicines for health clinics, to pipes and pumps for delivering clean water to villages.

(iii) (a) UNICEF keeps children safe by providing vaccines against deadly diseases; it also distributes mosquito nets and promotes hygiene in communities around the world.
(b) UNICEF has improved the health of infants globally by providing low-cost, community-based services in maternal and child health and nutrition.
(c) UNICEF has helped reduce child mortality worldwide by assisting the most vulnerable children everywhere.

108. Study the emblem and answer the following question :

(i) Name the organization associated with the above emblem.

(ii) Mention any three functions of the organization named by you.

(iii) Mention any two programmes of this organization in India.

Ans : COMP 2010

(i) The emblem belongs to the World Health Organization (WHO).

(ii) Functions :

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

Ans : COMP 2015

Thus (d) is correct option.

ONE MARK QUESTIONS

15. Mention any two factors responsible for the development of the policy of Non-Alignment.

Ans : MAIN 2004

(i) Cold War
(ii) Struggle against imperialism.

16. Name any two countries which participated in Bandung Conference.

Ans : MAIN 2009

(i) Indonesia
(ii) India.

17. When did the NAM officially come into existence?

Ans : SQP 2014

NAM officially came into being in 1961 at Belgrade.

18. Name any four countries which attended the first Summit of NAM.

Ans : COMP 2010

(i) Egypt (ii) Cyprus (iii) India (iv) Burma.

19. Name the movement which can be known as the precursor of the non-aligned movement.

Ans : MAIN 2020

Asian Relations Conference held in New Delhi March 1947.

20. What is the Polluter Pays' Principle?

Ans : SQP 2015

India came up with the 'Polluter Pays' Principle in the 9th NAM Summit. India felt that as the economically developed world is largely responsible for the pollution of the environment so the onus of "cleaning up" should also be on it.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

21. Who coined the term 'Non-Aligned'?

Ans : SQP 2022

Jawaharlal Nehru coined the term 'Non-Aligned'.

22. Who signed the Panchsheel Agreement?

Ans : COMP 2011

The Panchsheel Agreement was signed by the Chinese Premier Chou En-Lai and Jawaharlal Nehru.

23. Name the European country which attended the first NAM Summit.

Ans : SQP 2009

Cyprus.

NODIA

TWO MARKS QUESTIONS

24. When did the concept of Non-Alignment emerge? Why?

Ans : SQP 2008,2010,2012

The concept of Non-Alignment emerged in the 1950 during the Cold War. It was developed as a response by newly independent countries, mainly in Asia and Africa, to avoid aligning with either the US-led Western bloc or the Soviet-led Eastern bloc. These nations aimed to preserve their sovereignty, maintain independence in foreign policy and promote global peace and cooperation, while focusing on their own economic and social development. Non-Alignment allowed them to stay neutral in global conflicts and resist pressure from superpowers.

25. Mention two objectives of Non-Aligned Movement.

Ans : SQP 1994,2011

(i) To maintain independence and sovereignty of member nations.
(ii) To promote global peace through peaceful coexistence and non-alignment with power blocs.

26. Mention any four objectives of the Non-Aligned Movement.

Ans : MAIN 2019

(i) Maintain independence and sovereignty.
(ii) Promote global peace through peaceful coexistence.
(iii) Support de colonization and self-determination.
(iv) Foster economic cooperation among developing nations.

27. What is meant by Non-Alignment ?

Ans : MAIN 2009,2015

Non-Alignment is a foreign policy where countries, particularly during the Cold War, chose not to align with either the US-led Western bloc or the Soviet-led Eastern bloc. These nations maintained independence in global affairs, avoiding military or political alliances with the superpowers, focusing instead on peace and self-determination.

28. Who were the architects of the Non-Aligned Movement ?

or

Mention any four Chief Architects of the Non-Aligned Movement.

Ans : COMP 1993,2009,2013,2020

(i) Jawaharlal Nehru (India)
(ii) Josip Broz Tito (Yugoslavia)
(iii) Gamal Abdel Nasser (Egypt)
(iv) Kwame Nkrumah (Ghana)
(v) Sukarno (Indonesia)

29. What are the basic principles of 'Panchsheel' ?

Ans : COMP 2020

The five basic principles of Panchsheel are:
(i) Mutual respect for each other's territorial integrity and sovereignty.
(ii) Non-aggression against one another.
(iii) Non-interference in each other's internal affairs.
(iv) Equality and mutual benefit in relations.
(v) Peaceful coexistence between nations.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

30. Where was Non-Aligned movement formally launched? Name three founder members of NAM.

Ans : MAIN 2001

The first Summit of Non-Aligned Nations was held from September 1 to 6, 1961 at Belgrade in former Yugoslavia.

Three founder members of NAM are:
(i) Jawaharlal Nehru (India)
(ii) Josip Broz Tito (Yugoslavia)
(iii) Gamal Abdel Nasser (Egypt)

31. What was Pt. Nehru's view about Non-Alignment? What did Pt. Nehru do to curb the mad race for armaments?

Ans : COMP 2005

Nehru believed that Non-Alignment was not a passive stance, but a positive and dynamic approach to addressing global challenges. He strongly opposed the arms race and advocated for disarmament and the elimination of nuclear weapon stockpiles. In line with this policy, India signed a treaty in 1963 to ban nuclear tests, reflecting Nehru's commitment to reducing global militarization.

32. Briefly mention how India promoted the cause of freedom of other countries of Asia and Africa.

Ans : SQP 2003

Since the establishment of the Non-Aligned Movement and its first conference in Belgrade in 1961, India has played a pivotal role in promoting world peace and advocating for the rights of people globally. India has been a leading champion of this initiative. In January 1949, at a conference convened in New Delhi at India's initiative, individuals under colonial rule urged the United Nations to work towards ending colonial domination in the East Indies. This effort ultimately led to the independence of Indonesia and strengthened unity across Asia. Furthermore, India has provided substantial support in addressing economic issues faced by developing countries and non-aligned nations.

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

33. Mention any two features of the policy of Non-Alignment.

Ans : SQP 2019

(i) Non-Alignment actively engages with international issues rather than staying detached.
(ii) It opposes any form of military alliances, such as NATO and SEATO.

34. Mention any two issues discussed at the First NAM Summit.

Ans : MAIN 2017

(i) The issue of Chinese representation in the United Nations;
(ii) The Berlin crisis was another major topic of discussion.

35. Give any two factors responsible for the development of the policy of Non-Alignment.

Ans : MAIN 2007

(i) The division of the world into two power blocs and the formation of military alliances.
(ii) The arms race between the superpowers was another key factor.

THREE MARKS QUESTIONS

36. With reference to the Non-Aligned Movement answer the following questions :
(i) State the major objectives of NAM.
(ii) What role did Pandit Nehru play in NAM ?

Ans : SQP 1999,2008,2012,2009,2014

(i) Major objectives of NAM :
(a) **Elimination of Imperialism and Colonialism :** Member nations of the Non-Aligned Movement oppose imperialism and colonial domination. NAM advocates for self-determination, inherent equality and the freedom of all countries.
(b) **Global Peace :** A primary goal of NAM is to eradicate the root causes and devastations of war, with a specific focus on the abolition of nuclear weapons.
(c) **Termination of Racism :** The Non-Aligned Movement stands against all types of racial discrimination. Numerous NAM summits have denounced racial segregation policies, particularly those implemented in South Africa and other regions worldwide.
(d) **Disarmament :** NAM supports the reduction of armaments and strongly opposes the possession and deployment of nuclear weapons. From its inception in 1961, the principle of non-alignment required that member countries refrain from joining any military alliances.

(ii) Role of Pandit Nehru in NAM :
(a) **Asian Relations Conference, 1947 :** In March 1947, India, led by Interim Prime Minister Jawaharlal Nehru, hosted the Asian Relations Conference in New Delhi. Nehru introduced the fundamental principles of Non-Alignment, declaring, "We have no design against anybody; ours is the great design of promoting peace and progress all over the world."
(b) **Enunciation of Panchsheel, 1954 :** In 1954, Nehru and Chinese Premier Zhou Enlai articulated the Five Principles of Peaceful Coexistence, known as Panchsheel. These principles established a foundation for friendly international relations, economic development and global peace, later becoming a cornerstone of the Non-Aligned Movement (NAM). This initiative marked Nehru's significant contribution to international diplomacy.
(c) **Nehru's Role in the Belgrade Conference, 1961 :** The first formal NAM Summit took place in Belgrade, Yugoslavia, from September 1-6, 1961, with participation from 25 nations. Nehru played a pivotal role

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

in drafting the 27-Point Declaration, emphasizing negotiation for peace, disarmament, the end of colonialism and imperialism, condemnation of racial discrimination and the socio-economic development of Afro-Asian nations based on mutual benefit and equality. The summit also called on superpowers to support global peace and invited more Afro-Asian and Latin American countries to join NAM. Leaders Jawaharlal Nehru, Marshall Tito and Colonel Nasser were instrumental in shaping the movement at Belgrade.

37. With reference to the policy of Non-Alignment adopted by several Afro-Asian nations, answer the following questions :
(i) Explain what is meant by Non-Alignment.
(ii) State the principle of the Panchsheel.
(iii) State two actions taken by Jawaharlal Nehru to further the cause of Non-Alignment.

Ans : MAIN 2018,2014,2011,2009,1997

(i) Non-Alignment is a foreign policy where countries, particularly during the Cold War, chose not to align with either the US-led Western bloc or the Soviet-led Eastern bloc. These nations maintained independence in global affairs, avoiding military or political alliances with the superpowers, focusing instead on peace and self-determination.
(ii) The five basic principles of Panchsheel are :
  (a) Mutual respect for each other's territorial integrity and sovereignty.
  (b) Non-aggression against one another.
  (c) Non-interference in each other's internal affairs.
  (d) Equality and mutual benefit in relations.
(iii) Actions taken by Jawaharlal Nehru to further the cause of Non-Alignment :
  (a) In March 1947, he organized the Asian Relations Conference in New Delhi, where he established the foundational principles of non-alignment.
  (b) In 1954, together with Chinese Premier Zhou Enlai, he articulated the five principles of peaceful coexistence, widely known as Panchsheel.

38. With reference to the Non-Aligned Movement, answer the following questions :
(i) Factors that led to the formation of NAM.
(ii) Relevance of NAM after the end of Cold War.

Ans : MAIN 2009,2014

(i) Factors that led to the formation of NAM:
  (a) **Cold War Tensions :** Newly independent Asian and African nations recognized that aligning with either of the two superpower blocs could threaten global peace. By staying neutral, they aimed to avoid the dangers of another large-scale conflict.
  (b) **Anti-Imperialism :** Having recently gained independence from major powers, these countries chose non-alignment to preserve their sovereignty and enjoy the freedoms and authority that came with their newfound independence.
  (c) **Independent Decision-Making :** By not aligning with any major bloc, newly independent nations maintained their unique identities and sought to address their own issues without external interference or influence.
  (d) **Balanced Relations with Major Powers :** These countries promoted goodwill and cooperation across Asia and Africa, aiming to advance mutual interests through friendly relations with all major nations.
  (e) **Economic Development :** Facing challenges like poverty and underdevelopment, newly independent states sought financial and technical assistance from both superpower blocs to support their growth and development.

NODIA

(ii) Relevance of NAM after the end of Cold War : Although the Cold War era has ended and the Soviet Union has dissolved, eliminating the two major blocs, the Non-Aligned Movement (NAM) remains a significant force in today's world.
   (a) **Independent Foreign Policy :** NAM is a free and equal association of states that are united by common interests to pursue their own independent foreign policies.
   (b) **Largest Political Formation :** NAM stands as the largest political grouping globally, second only to the United Nations.
   (c) **Promotion of World Peace :** NAM plays a vital role in stabilizing world peace, with member countries actively opposing the production and proliferation of dangerous weapons.
   (d) **Relevance Amid Neo-Colonialism :** With the rise of neo-colonialism, NAM has become increasingly important. Many small and vulnerable countries struggle to maintain their economic sovereignty due to interference from international financial institutions such as the World Bank, IMF and WTO. NAM provides a strong support base for these nations, helping them preserve their independence and pursue equitable economic development.

39. With reference to the Non-Aligned Movement, answer the following :
(i) Explain how Non-alignment is neither neutrality, nor isolation nor non-commitment.
(ii) State the five principles of Panchsheel.
(iii) Give any four objectives of NAM.
(iv) Mention any two factors that led to the formation of NAM.

Ans : SQP 2004,2008

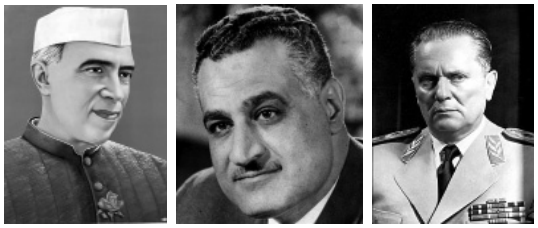
(i) Non-Alignment is the international policy of a Sovereign State according to which it does not align itself with any of the power blocs and at the same time actively participates in the world affairs to promote international peace, harmony and cooperation. It does not remain aloof from international problems. It actively participates in the politics among nations. Non-alignment stands for action rather than passivism. It is free to be friendly with both the power blocs.

(ii) Five principles of Panchsheel :
   (a) Mutual Respect for Sovereignty and Territorial Integrity.
   (b) Mutual Non-Interference in Internal Affairs
   (c) Peaceful Coexistence
   (d) Mutual Equality and Mutual Benefit
   (e) Respect for International Law and Justice

(iii) Objectives of the Non-Aligned Movement (NAM) :
   (a) Promote natural equality and the freedom of all nations by opposing imperialist and colonial practices.
   (b) Advocate for global peace, uphold a 'No War' policy and work towards the prevention of conflicts.
   (c) Strive to end all forms of racial discrimination and promote equality among all races.
   (d) Support global disarmament efforts, particularly opposing the possession and use of nuclear weapons.
   (e) Enhance the effectiveness of the United Nations to ensure it can effectively address international issues.
   (f) Advocate for an equitable and just global economic system that ensures fair distribution of resources and opportunities.
   (g) Promote international collaboration to safeguard the environment and address ecological challenges.
   (h) Foster cultural equality by restructuring the global information order to ensure fair representation of all cultures.
   (i) Uphold and enforce human rights globally, ensuring protection and respect for all individuals.

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

45. With reference to the pictures given, answer the following questions.



(i) Identify the three personalities.

(ii) What was the outcome of the ideas propounded by these leaders at Bandung Conference?

(iii) Mention the major achievements of the organization with which these three personalities were associated.

Ans : MAIN 2011

(i) The three personalities in the picture are:
   (a) Jawaharlal Nehru (India)
   (b) Gamal Abdel Nasser (Egypt)
   (c) Josip Broz Tito (Yugoslavia)

(ii) The Bandung Conference of 1955, where these leaders played an influential role, led to the strengthening of unity among Asian and African nations. The conference laid the foundation for the Non-Aligned Movement (NAM) by promoting the ideas of anti-colonialism, peaceful coexistence and non-alignment in the face of Cold War power blocs.

(iii) Major achievements of NAM are as follows :
   (a) **Facilitating the End of the Cold War :** NAM played a crucial role in easing tensions between the major superpower blocs, contributing significantly to the resolution of the Cold War.
   (b) **Addressing Key Global Issues :** Focused on important matters such as disarmament, the apartheid regime in South Africa, the Palestinian conflict and the Iran-Iraq war.
   (c) **Promoting a New International Economic Order (NIEO) :** Advocated for the establishment of the NIEO to foster economic cooperation and ensure justice and equity among nations.
   (d) **Opposing Injustice and Terrorism :** Stood against terrorism, called for the expansion of the United Nations Security Council and condemned injustices like the Suez Crisis, Israel's aggressive policies and the US-led invasion of Iraq.

NODIA
www.nodia.in

independence, pursuing their national interests and promoting global peace and cooperation. NAM allowed these countries to avoid becoming involved in ideological or military conflicts between the superpowers.

(ii) Objectives of the Non-Aligned Movement (NAM) :
- (a) Promote natural equality and the freedom of all nations by opposing imperialist and colonial practices.
- (b) Advocate for global peace, uphold a 'No War' policy and work towards the prevention of conflicts.
- (c) Strive to end all forms of racial discrimination and promote equality among all races.
- (d) Support global disarmament efforts, particularly opposing the possession and use of nuclear weapons.
- (e) Enhance the effectiveness of the United Nations to ensure it can effectively address international issues.
- (f) Advocate for an equitable and just global economic system that ensures fair distribution of resources and opportunities.
- (g) Promote international collaboration to safeguard the environment and address ecological challenges.
- (h) Foster cultural equality by restructuring the global information order to ensure fair representation of all cultures.
- (i) Uphold and enforce human rights globally, ensuring protection and respect for all individuals.

(iii) Jawaharlal Nehru was a key leader in shaping the direction of the Non-Aligned Movement. In March 1947, before India gained independence, he organized the Asian Relations Conference in New Delhi, promoting regional cooperation. Nehru also introduced the Five Principles of Peaceful Coexistence, known as Panchsheel, which became fundamental to NAM's philosophy. Under his leadership, India adopted a policy of friendship, cooperation and global peace, advocating for disarmament as the essential means to maintain international harmony.

42. With reference to the role played by NAM in the world affairs, state the following :
(i) Its efforts to put an end to apartheid in South Africa.
(ii) Its significance in promoting international peace.
(iii) Its role as a leader of the third world.

Ans : SQP 2021

(i) In various regions around the world, systemic mistreatment of people persisted, with South Africa being a prominent example. A small white minority government in South Africa perpetrated numerous atrocities against the black majority. India strongly condemned these inhumane practices and severed diplomatic relations with the South African government. Through India's persistent advocacy, South Africa faced international isolation, which ultimately pressured the nation to abandon its policies of racial discrimination in 1994.

(ii) The Non-Aligned Movement (NAM) plays a crucial role in fostering global unity by opposing divisive power politics, economic exploitation and racial discrimination. In today's world, where various regressive forces threaten the harmony of humanity, NAM actively works to counter these destructive trends. It promotes respect for national sovereignty and territorial integrity, advocates for non-interference in internal affairs and encourages the peaceful resolution of disputes without the use or threat of force. Additionally, NAM strives to ensure that all people enjoy freedom and its benefits. By upholding these principles, the Non-Aligned Movement significantly contributes to maintaining international peace and building a cohesive, respectful global community.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

(iii) The Non-Aligned Movement (NAM) emerged primarily in response to the dominance of bloc politics during the Cold War. However, its foundation was driven by the aspirations of Third World and developing countries to safeguard world peace, independence, unity and harmony. NAM has evolved into the largest peace movement globally. Though occasionally referred to as a "third bloc," NAM is true to its name, functioning as a movement rather than a formal organization. Its primary focus remains promoting peace and advocating for the interests of the Global South.

43. With reference to the achievements and future of NAM, state the following :
(i) The achievements of NAM for the developing countries of the world.
(ii) Role of NAM in seeking economic justice.
(iii) With the end of Cold War, NAM has lost its relevance. Explain.

Ans : COMP 2007

(i) Asian and African nations have been regular participants in NAM summits, with several Latin American countries joining the movement and European nations like Austria, Finland and Sweden attending as observers. NAM has accomplished numerous significant achievements, including:

(a) **Easing Cold War Tensions :** Played a pivotal role in reducing tensions between the two superpower blocs, contributing to the eventual end of the Cold War.

(b) **Opposing the Arms Race :** Actively resisted the superpowers' arms race during the Cold War, advocating for disarmament and the reduction of military expenditures.

(c) **Promoting Peace and Stability :** Fostered a platform for dialogue and cooperation among developing nations, enhancing global peace and security.

(d) **Supporting Decolonization and Sovereignty :** Assisted newly independent countries in asserting their sovereignty and resisting neo-colonial influences.

(e) **Advancing Economic Cooperation :** Facilitated economic collaboration among member states, promoting mutual development and reducing dependency on major powers.

(ii) Role of NAM in seeking economic justice : The Non-Aligned Movement (NAM) has been a strong advocate for a New International Economic Order (NIEO), emphasizing enhanced economic cooperation and fairness among nations. A significant achievement of NAM's efforts was the establishment of the first United Nations Conference on Trade and Development (UNCTAD) in 1964, which was largely driven by the initiatives of non-aligned countries. This conference aimed to address economic disparities and promote equitable development on a global scale.

(iii) Although NAM has significantly diminished in political influence, it remains a valuable platform for advocating economic justice. However, the movement has struggled to intervene effectively in conflicts involving its own member states. For instance, NAM was unable to address the prolonged Iran-Iraq war, the Soviet invasion of Afghanistan in 1979, or the US-led invasion of Iraq in 2003. These situations highlight NAM's limited ability to manage internal disputes among its members, despite its ongoing commitment to economic advocacy.

NODIA
Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

CASE BASED QUESTION

44. Study the picture and answer the following questions :

(i) Identify the persons in the picture. Name the organization with which these persons were associated.

(ii) Where was this organization formed ? State any three objectives of this organization.

(iii) Has this organization been able to achieve its objectives ? Give reasons for your answer.

Ans : MAIN 2003

(i) The people in the picture are Josip Broz Tito (Yugoslavia), Gamal Abdel Nasser (Egypt) and Jawaharlal Nehru (India). These leaders were associated with the Non-Aligned Movement (NAM), which they helped to establish.

(ii) This organization, the Non-Aligned Movement, was formally founded in Belgrade, Yugoslavia, during the First Non-Aligned Summit in 1961.

Objectives of UN :

(a) Promote natural equality and the freedom of all nations by opposing imperialist and colonial practices.

(b) Advocate for global peace, uphold a 'No War' policy and work towards the prevention of conflicts.

(c) Strive to end all forms of racial discrimination and promote equality among all races.

(d) Support global disarmament efforts, particularly opposing the possession and use of nuclear weapons.

(e) Enhance the effectiveness of the United Nations to ensure it can effectively address international issues.

(f) Advocate for an equitable and just global economic system that ensures fair distribution of resources and opportunities.

(g) Promote international collaboration to safeguard the environment and address ecological challenges.

(h) Foster cultural equality by restructuring the global information order to ensure fair representation of all cultures.

(i) Uphold and enforce human rights globally, ensuring protection and respect for all individuals.

(iii) Yes, the Non-Aligned Movement has been able to achieve some of its objectives:

(a) **Preservation of Sovereignty :** NAM played a significant role in safeguarding the sovereignty of member nations by advocating for non-interference in internal affairs and opposing colonialism and imperialism.

(b) **Voice for the Global South :** It provided a platform for developing countries to voice their concerns and stand united in global forums like the United Nations.

(c) **Disarmament and Peace :** NAM has consistently advocated for nuclear disarmament and peaceful coexistence, influencing international discussions on arms control.

(d) **Economic Cooperation :** NAM emphasized South-South cooperation and pushed for a New International Economic Order to reduce dependence on developed nations.

(e) **Decolonization :** NAM supported decolonization efforts in Asia, Africa and Latin America, contributing to the independence of several nations.

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

(iv) Main Factors Leading to the Formation of the Non-Aligned Movement (NAM) :

(a) **Response to Military Alliances :** NAM emerged as a reaction against the proliferation of military alliances, a direct outcome of the Cold War rivalry between the USA and Russia.

(b) **Preservation of National Sovereignty :** Asian and African nations sought to maintain their independence by avoiding general alliances and military pacts, ensuring their freedom from external influences.

(c) **Economic Development Needs :** Underdeveloped countries in Asia and Africa required technical and financial assistance from both superpower blocs, making NAM essential for their economic growth and development.

(d) **Strengthening the United Nations :** NAM was also driven by a collective desire to empower the United Nations. Afro-Asian nations believed that staying non-aligned would bolster the UN's effectiveness and contribute to global governance.

40. State the role of Jawaharlal Nehru under the following heads:
(i) Vision in starting the NAM.
(ii) Curbing the mad race for armaments ?
(iii) As the spokesman for the newly independent countries of Asia and Africa.

Ans : MAIN 2020,2022,2024

(i) Jawaharlal Nehru's vision for starting the Non-Aligned Movement (NAM) was to create an independent path for countries, particularly those recently liberated from colonial rule, to avoid aligning with the superpowers of the Cold War. He believed in a world where nations could maintain their sovereignty without becoming pawns in the power struggle between the Western and Eastern blocs. Nehru promoted peaceful coexistence, self-determination and the ability for nations to decide their own foreign policies without external pressure.

(ii) Nehru was a strong advocate for global disarmament. He spoke out against the nuclear arms race between the United States and the Soviet Union and actively promoted the reduction of nuclear and conventional weapons. He urged nations to prioritize peace over militarization and called for an end to stockpiling weapons of mass destruction. India, under Nehru's leadership, signed the 1963 Nuclear Test Ban Treaty, which aimed to halt nuclear tests and reduce the proliferation of nuclear weapons.

(iii) Since the establishment of the Non-Aligned Movement and its inaugural conference in Belgrade in 1961, India has played a pivotal role in advocating for global peace and the rights of people worldwide. India has been a leading champion of this initiative. In January 1949, during a conference organized in New Delhi at India's behest, individuals under colonial rule called on the United Nations to work towards ending colonial domination in the East Indies. This initiative ultimately led to Indonesia's independence and strengthened unity across Asia. Furthermore, India has been instrumental in supporting economic issues faced by developing and non-aligned nations.

41. With reference to the Non-Aligned Movement, explain the following :
(i) The meaning of Non-Aligned Movement.
(ii) The objectives.
(iii) The role of Pandit Jawahar Lal Nehru in the movement.

Ans : MAIN 2001

(i) The Non-Aligned Movement (NAM) refers to a coalition of countries, primarily from the developing world, that chose to remain neutral during the Cold War. These nations did not align with either of the two major power blocs - the Western bloc led by the United States or the Eastern bloc led by the Soviet Union. Instead, they focused on maintaining their

CHAPTER 13

THE UNION LEGISLATURE

SUMMARY

1. MEANING OF THE FEDERAL SETUP IN INDIA

India adopts a federal system of government where powers are divided between the central government and the state governments. The Union Legislature, known as the Parliament of India, embodies this federal structure and consists of two houses: the Lok Sabha (House of the People) and the Rajya Sabha (Council of States).

2. LOK SABHA

2.1 Term

The Lok Sabha is elected for a term of five years. However, it can be dissolved earlier by the President on the advice of the Prime Minister.

2.2 Composition

1. Maximum strength of 552 members:
2. Up to 530 members represent the states.
3. Up to 20 members represent the union territories.
4. 2 members from the Anglo-Indian community can be nominated by the President if he/she believes the community is not adequately represented (note: this provision was abolished by the 104th Constitutional Amendment Act, 2019).

2.3 Qualifications for Membership

1. Must be a citizen of India.
2. At least 25 years of age.
3. Mentally sound and not bankrupt.
4. Should not hold any office of profit under the government.

2.4 Parliamentary Procedures

1. Sessions : Parliament must meet at least twice a year, and the gap between two sessions cannot exceed six months.
2. Quorum : Minimum of one-tenth of the total members required to conduct a meeting.
3. Question Hour : Time allocated for members to question ministers about their departments.
4. Adjournment : Suspension of proceedings, which could be for a short time or the day.
5. No-Confidence Motion : A motion moved by the opposition expressing that the government no longer has the confidence of the House.

NODIA

3. SPEAKER

3.1 Election

Elected by the members of the Lok Sabha from among themselves.

3.2 Functions

1. Presides over the meetings of the Lok Sabha.
2. Maintains order and decorum in the House.
3. Decides on points of order.
4. Has a casting vote in case of a tie.
5. Determines whether a bill is a Money Bill.

4. RAJYA SABHA

4.1 Composition

1. Maximum strength of 250 members:
2. 238 represent the states and union territories.

3. 12 are nominated by the President for their expertise in fields like literature, science, art, and social service.

4.2 Qualifications for Membership

1. Must be a citizen of India.
2. At least 30 years of age.
3. Mentally sound and not bankrupt.
4. Should not hold any office of profit under the government.

4.3 Election

1. Members representing states are elected by the elected members of the State Legislative Assemblies through a system of proportional representation by means of a single transferable vote.
2. Members representing union territories are chosen in a manner prescribed by Parliament.

4.4 Term

1. The Rajya Sabha is a permanent body and is not subject to dissolution.
2. One-third of its members retire every two years, and elections are held to fill these positions.

4.5 Presiding Officer

1. The Vice-President of India serves as the ex-officio Chairman of the Rajya Sabha.
2. In the Vice-President's absence, the Deputy Chairman, elected from among the members, presides over the sessions.

5. POWERS AND FUNCTIONS OF THE UNION PARLIAMENT

5.1 Legislative Powers

1. Can make laws on subjects in the Union List and Concurrent List.
2. Can legislate on State List subjects under certain circumstances (e.g., during a national emergency).

5.2 Financial Powers

1. Controls the nation's finances; all proposals for taxation and expenditure must be approved by Parliament.
2. The Money Bill can only be introduced in the Lok Sabha.

5.3 Judicial Powers

Has the authority to impeach the President, Vice-President, and judges of the Supreme Court and High Courts for violation of the Constitution.

5.4 Electoral Powers

Participates in the election of the President and Vice-President of India.

5.5 Amendment of the Constitution

Can amend the Constitution under Article 368, with different levels of majority required depending on the nature of the amendment.

5.6 Control over Executive

1. Exercises control through questions, motions, debates, and the no-confidence motion.
2. Ensures the accountability of the Council of Ministers to the Parliament.

6. EXCLUSIVE POWERS OF THE TWO HOUSES

6.1 Lok Sabha

1. Money Bills can only originate in the Lok Sabha.
2. The Council of Ministers is responsible only to the Lok Sabha.
3. Can pass a no-confidence motion leading to the resignation of the entire Council of Ministers.

6.2 Rajya Sabha

1. Can authorize Parliament to make laws on subjects in the State List if it's in the national interest (Article 249).
2. Has special powers to create new All-India Services common to both the Union and the states.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTION

1. The strength of the house is 550. On a particular day 50 members are present. The speaker decides to adjourn the house. Identify the MOST LIKELY reason for the adjournment.
(i) Disorder in the house
(ii) Lack of quorum
(iii) Breach of privilege
(iv) Contempt of the House

Ans : MAIN 2024

Thus (b) is correct option.

2. The salaries and allowances of the ministers are decided by the:
(a) Parliament
(b) Finance Minister
(c) President
(d) Prime Minister

Ans : MAIN 2024

Thus (a) is correct option.

3. An ordinance has to be approved by the Parliament within _____ weeks.
(a) Two
(b) Three
(c) Six
(d) Eight

Ans : MAIN 2023

Thus (c) is correct option.

4. A major natural calamity has taken place and the opposition wants the house to lay aside all other business and take up this matter of urgent importance.
Which motion should the house move to allow this?
(a) Adjournment Motion
(b) No-confidence Motion
(c) Confidence Motion
(d) Censure Motion

Ans : MAIN 2023

Thus (a) is correct option.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

5. India has a federal system of government with a strong.....
(a) Federation of States
(b) Supreme Court
(c) Parliament
(d) Unitary bias

Ans : COMP 2010

Thus (d) is correct option.

NODIA

6. A single Constitution is a feature of..... form of government.
(a) Monarchial
(b) Federal
(c) Unitary
(d) None of the above

Ans : SQP 2015

Thus (b) is correct option.

7. State governments are neither the agents of the Central government nor do they draw their authority from it. The.....has an overiding position.
(a) Central government
(b) State government
(c) President
(d) Prime Minister

Ans : MAIN 2019

Thus (a) is correct option.

8. The Central and the State Governments draw their authority from
(a) The Constitution of India
(b) The people of India
(c) The Supreme Court
(d) The Judiciary

Ans : COMP 2000

Thus (a) is correct option.

9. The Constitution of India provides for a..... their government.
(a) Single
(b) Two
(c) Three
(d) Four

Ans : MAIN 2005

Thus (c) is correct option.

48. How are the Speaker and the Deputy Speaker of the Lok Sabha elected ?

Ans : COMP 2015, 2020

The Speaker and the Deputy Speaker of the Lok Sabha are elected by the members from amongst themselves.

49. What is the constitutional provision with regard to the representation of the Anglo-Indian Community in the Lok Sabha?

Ans : MAIN 2000

The President of India can nominate two members of the community if it has not been adequately represented.

50. Who presides over the joint sessions of the Parliament ?

Ans : SQP 1990

The Speaker of the Lok Sabha presides over the joint sessions of the Parliament.

51. Who is the Presiding Officer or the Chairman of the Lok Sabha called?

Ans : COMP 2019

The Speaker is the presiding officer of the Lok Sabha.

52. Who decides whether a bill is a money bill or not?

Ans : MAIN 2017

The Speaker decides whether a particular Bill is Money Bill or not.

53. Whom does the President summon to form a government after the election to the Lok Sabha?

Ans : SQP 1983

The leader of the majority party.

54. Which House of the Union Legislature had absolute power on Money Bills?

Ans : MAIN 1986

Lok Sabha

55. Name the two types of authority in a federal set up in India.

Ans : COMP 2013

Union and State.

56. What is meant by term Session?

Ans : SQP 2018, 2020

It is the time period during which the House meets, to conduct its business.

57. What is Question Hour?

Ans : MAIN 2007

The first hour on every working day of the House is reserved for questions unless otherwise decided by the Speaker.

58. When can the Vice-President cast a vote in the Rajya Sabha?

Ans : COMP 2013

Generally the Vice-President does not participate in voting. He participates only in case of tie.

59. Mention the body or bodies that have been granted exclusive powers to make laws on subject in the Concurrent List.

Ans : MAIN 1982

(i) Union Parliament
(ii) State Legislatures.

60. Mention one privilege of a member of Parliament.

Ans : SQP 2005

The members of the Parliament have the freedom to give their views within as well as outside the Parliament.

61. Name the two Houses of the Indian (Union) Parliament.

Ans : COMP 2015,2020

(i) The Lok Sabha
(ii) The Rajya Sabha

62. What is the maximum gap allowed between two parliamentary sessions ?

Ans : SQP 2007

Maximum six months.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

Thus (d) is correct option.

18. The Lok Sabha may be adjourned in which of the following cases?
(i) After the day's business is over.
(ii) For want of Quorum
(iii) In case of a natural calamity
(a) (i) and (ii) (b) (ii) and (iii)
(c) (i) and (iii) (d) (i), (ii) and (iii)

Ans : MAIN 2006

Thus (b) is correct option.

19. The term of the Lok Sabha can be extended during emergency by.....
(a) One year at a time.
(b) Six months at a time.
(c) Three months at a time.
(d) One month at a time.

Ans : SQP 2014

Thus (a) is correct option.

20. Who moves the No-Confidence Motion in Parliament?
(a) The Ruling Party in the Lok Sabha
(b) The Opposition Parties in the Lok Sabha
(c) The Standing Committee of the Lok Sabha
(d) The Speaker of the Lok Sabha

Ans : SQP 2002

Thus (b) is correct option.

21. Which of the following is NOT a type of questions addressed to the Chair of the House?
(a) Starred Questions
(b) Emergency Questions
(c) Unstarred Questions
(d) Short Notice Questions

Ans : MAIN 2015

Thus (b) is correct option.

22. Who determines the salaries and allowances of the Members of Parliament?
(a) The Parliament
(b) The President
(c) The Prime Minister
(d) The Lok Sabha

Ans : COMP 2004

Thus (a) is correct option.

23. Who is empowered to summon and to dissolve the Lok Sabha?
(a) The Speaker of the Lok Sabha
(b) The President of India
(c) The Prime Minister and the Council of Ministers
(d) The Chief Justice of India

Ans : MAIN 2011

Thus (b) is correct option.

24. How are the Speaker and the Deputy Speaker of the Lok Sabha elected?
(a) By the People during general electrons.
(b) By the members of the Lok Sabha from amongst themselves
(c) By the members of the Rajya Sabha.
(d) By the members of the State Legislature.

Ans : COMP 2013

Thus (b) is correct option.

25. What happens if the Lok Sabha and the Rajya Sabha fail to agree on an ordinary Bill?
(a) The Bill is sent back to the Houses of Parliament for reconsideration.
(b) The matter is decided by the joint-sitting of the two Houses of Parliament.
(c) The Bill is sent back to the Lok Sabha for reconsideration.
(d) The Bill is sent back to the Rajya Sabha for reconsideration.

Ans : COMP 2019

Thus (b) is correct option.

26. Who presides over the joint sitting of both the Houses of the Parliament?
(a) The President of India
(b) The Speaker of the Lok Sabha
(c) The Vice-President
(d) The Prime Minister of India

Ans : SQP 2012

Thus (b) is correct option.

NODIA
Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

10. How are the members of the Lok Sabha elected?
(a) Directly elected by the people on the basis of universal adult franchise.
(b) Indirectly by the representatives of the people on the basis of single transferable vote.
(c) Directly by all citizens of the country.
(d) Indirectly by members of State Legislatures.

Ans : MAIN 2015

Thus (a) is correct option.

11. The strength of a House is 510. What would be the Quorum of the House?
(a) 200
(b) 112
(c) 110
(d) 51

Ans : MAIN 2008

Thus (d) is correct option.

12. Complete the following analogy.
Lok Sabha :.....?.....: : Rajya Sabha : Council of States.
(a) Union of States
(b) House of the People
(c) Representation of the People
(d) Council of the People

Ans : COMP 2010

Thus (d) is correct option.

13. The States are represented in the Rajya Sabha on the basis of their.....
(a) GDP
(b) Taxes
(c) Population
(d) Area

Ans : COMP 2017

Thus (c) is correct option.

14. If the strength of a House is 230, what is the Quorum of the House?
(a) 46
(b) 32
(c) 23
(d) 20

Ans : COMP 2021

Thus (c) is correct option.

15. Which of the following statements is/are incorrect regarding the Lok Sabha?
(a) The members of the Lok Sabha are directly elected by the people.
(b) The Lok Sabha acts as the voice of the nation.
(c) The Lok Sabha represents the States of Indian Union
(d) The Lok Sabha keeps a check on the finances of the nation.

Ans : SQP 2005

Thus (c) is correct option.

16. When does the President of India address a joint session of Parliament?
(i) When there is a deadlock beteen the two Houses of Parliament over an ordinary Bill.
(ii) At the beginning of the first session after each general election when the lower House meets.
(iii) At the beginning of first session of each year.
(a) (i) and (ii)
(b) (i) and (iii)
(c) (ii) and (iii)
(d) (i), (ii) and (iii)

Ans : MAIN 2016

Thus (b) is correct option.

17. The unitary or non-federal features include which of the following?
(i) The Constitution has provided for a strong centre by giving more powers to the Central Government in the form of more items in the Union List than in the State List.
(ii) There is a single common and unified Constitution for the Centre and the States.
(iii) The States are neither agents of the Centre nor do they draw power from it.
(a) (i) and (ii) (b) (ii) and (iii)
(c) (i) and (iii) (d) (i), (ii) and (iii)

Ans : SQP 2010

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

35. Complete the following analogy with respect to members of the Rajya Sabha.
Elected : 238 : : Nominated : ....?....
(a) 20 (b) 15
(c) 12 (d) 10

Ans : MAIN 2005

Thus (c) is correct option.

36. Your father is a renowned scientist. He has neither contested nor won any election to the Rajya Sabha. But he has recently become a member of the Rajya Sabha. How is this possible?
(a) He is appointed by the Chief Justice of India
(b) He is nominated by the President
(c) He is appointed by the Prime Minister
(d) He is nominated by the State Governor.

Ans : COMP 2018

Thus (b) is correct option.

37. Suppose you are a member of the Opposition Party in the Lok Sabha. You want to express lack of confidence in the ruling government. Which motion will you move in the Parliament to do so?
(a) Adjournment Motion
(b) No-confidence Motion
(c) Quorum
(d) Impeachment

Ans : SQP 2011

Thus (b) is correct option.

ONE MARK QUESTIONS

38. Name the two Houses of the Indian (Union) Parliament.

Ans : MAIN 2024

(i) The Lok Sabha
(ii) The Rajya Sabha

39. What is the strength of the Rajya Sabha for elected and nominated members ?

Ans : COMP 2024

The Rajya Sabha consists of 238 elected and 12 nominated members.

40. Who is the ex-officio chairperson of the Rajya Sabha ?

Ans : SQP 2006

Vice-President.

41. Who presides over the meetings of the Rajya Sabha in the absence of the Vice-President ?

Ans : MAIN 1989,2016

Deputy Chairman.

42. What is the quorum of the Rajya Sabha and the Lok Sabha ?

Ans : COMP 2005

The quorum of the Rajya Sabha and the Lok Sabha is of one tenth of its total members.

43. What is the normal term of the Lok Sabha ?

Ans : SQP 2000,2012,2016

Five years.

44. What is the strength of the Rajya Sabha for elected and nominated members ?

Ans : COMP 2009

The Rajya Sabha consists of 238 elected and 12 nominated members.

45. What is a constituency ?

Ans : MAIN 2008

It is a well-defined territorial area which is called upon to elect a member to represent it in the Lok Sabha or Legislative Assembly.

46. What is the maximum period that shall not intervene between the two sessions of the Parliament ?

Ans : SQP 2007, 2018

Six months.

47. Name the Bill that cannot originate in the Rajya Sabha.

Ans : MAIN 2006, 2018

Money Bill.

NODIA

27. Who decides whether a bill is a Money Bill or not?
(a) President
(b) Prime Minister
(c) Speaker of the Lok Sabha
(d) Finance Minister

Ans : MAIN 2015

Thus (c) is correct option.

28. Complete the following analogy.
Speaker of Lok Sabha; Deputy Speaker of Lok Sabha : :.....?.....: Deputy Chairman of Rajya Sabha.
(a) President of India
(b) Vice-President of India
(c) Prime Minister of India
(d) None of the above

Ans : COMP 2010

Thus (d) is correct option.

29. Which of the following is incorrect about the Speaker of the Lok Sabha?
(a) The Speaker of the Lok Sabha is elected for a term of 5 years from among its own members in the Lok Sabha soon after the newly elected House meets for the first time.
(b) He can seek re - election any number of times, if he is elected as the member of the Lok Sabha
(c) When the House is dissolved the Speaker does not vacate his office and remains in office till a new Speaker is elected by the new Lok Sabha
(d) When the Lok Sabha is dissolved the Speaker vacates his office and seeks reelection.

Ans : SQP 2013

Thus (d) is correct option.

30. What happens in the case of conflict between laws on subjects in the Concurrent List?
(a) The State Law prevails
(b) The Union Law prevails
(c) A Bill is introduced in Parliament.
(d) The President decides which Law will prevail.

Ans : MAIN 2019

Thus (b) is correct option.

31. What is the tenure of the elected members of Rajya Sabha?
(a) 2 years (b) 4 Years
(c) 6 Years (d) 8 Years

Ans : COMP 2000

Thus (a) is correct option.

32. Which of the following is NOT true about the Rajya Sabha?
(a) It is a permanent body.
(b) Its members are directly elected by the people.
(c) It cannot be dissolved
(d) One-third of its member retire after every two years

Ans : COMP 2010

Thus (b) is correct option.

33.

Lok Sabha	Adult citizens of India
Rajya Sabha	?

(a) Elected Members of Legislative Assemblies
(b) Elected Members of State Legislatures
(c) Elected Members of Lok Sabha
(d) Elected Members of Panchayats

Ans : MAIN 2015

Thus (b) is correct option.

34. How are the Rajya Sabha members elected?
(a) By the elected members of the State Legislative Assembly by means of proportional representation.
(b) By the adult citizens of India by a single transferable vote.
(c) By the elected members of the Lok Sabha by means of proportional representation.
(d) By members of an electoral college by means of proportional representation.

Ans : SQP 2001

Thus (a) is correct option.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

63. Name the two Houses of the Indian Parliament.

Ans : COMP 2000

Parliament consists of two houses viz., Lok Sabha and Rajya Sabha formerly known as House of people and the Council of States.

64. Who determines the salaries and allowances of the Members of Parliament ?

Ans : SQP 2005

The salaries and allowances of MPs and Ministers are determined by Parliament.

65. What is the maximum strength of members of the Lok Sabha?

Ans : MAIN 2010

The maximum strength of the Lok Sabha, provided by the Constitution is 552.

66. Who is empowered to summon and to dissolve the Lok sabha?

Ans : COMP 2016

The President of India can summon and dissolve the Lok Sabha before the Scheduled time.

67. If the strength of a House is 230, what would be the quorum?

Ans : SQP 2011

The quorum would be 10 percent of the total strength of the house i.e. 23.

68. What happens when the quorum of a House is not met ?

Ans : MAIN 2015

The Speaker may adjourn the House or suspend the meeting until there is a requisite quorum.

69. Who presides over the Rajya Sabha ?

Ans : COMP 2010

The Vice - President of India presides over the Rajya Sabha.

70. Who is the ex-officio chairperson of the Rajya Sabha ?

Ans : COMP 2010

The Vice-President.

71. By whom and on whose advice can the Lok Sabha be dissolved?

Ans : SQP 2014

Lok Sabha may be dissolved by the President before the expiry of its terms on the advice of the Prime Minister.

72. How many members can the President nominate in the Lok Sabha?

Ans : MAIN 2017

The President may nominate 2 members to the Lok Sabha.

TWO MARKS QUESTIONS

73. Read the given news carefully and answer the question that follows:

Govt's power to promulgate, repromulgate Ordinances — why and how]

An Ordinance "shall have the same force and effect as an Act of Parliament". But the government is required to bring an Ordinance before Parliament for ratification — and failure to do so will lead to its lapsing "at the expiration of six weeks from the reassembly of Parliament".

The Indian Express – May 25, 2023

Mention any two points regarding an ordinance that can be deduced from the above news.

Ans : SQP 2019

(i) An ordinance has the same force and effect as an Act of Parliament, meaning it functions as a law until it is either ratified or lapses.

(ii) An ordinance must be presented before Parliament for ratification within six weeks of Parliament's reassembly, failing which it will lapse.

74. Name the three components of the Indian Parliament.

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

Ans : COMP 1987, 2011

The three components of the Indian Parliament are:
(i) The President of India
(ii) Lok Sabha (House of the People)
(iii) Rajya Sabha (Council of States)

75. How are the Rajya Sabha members elected ?

Ans : COMP 1986, 2007

The Rajya Sabha members from each state are elected by the elected members of the State Legislative Assembly (the Lower House). This election is conducted using a proportional representation system known as the Single Transferable Voting System.

76. What is the term of the Rajya Sabha ? Can it be dissolved ?

Ans : MAIN 2019,2020

The Rajya Sabha is a permanent body and cannot be dissolved. Its members serve a term of six years, with one-third of the members retiring every two years. This system ensures continuity in the functioning of the Rajya Sabha, as it is always in session with staggered terms for its members.

77. Who presides over the Rajya Sabha meetings ? Who elects the Deputy Chairman ?

Ans : COMP 1985

The Rajya Sabha meetings are presided over by the Vice-President of India, who is the ex-officio Chairman of the Rajya Sabha.
The Deputy Chairman is elected by the members of the Rajya Sabha from among themselves.

78. Discuss the composition of the Lok Sabha.

Ans : MAIN 2012

The Lok Sabha is India's lower house of Parliament with up to 552 members: up to 530 from states and up to 20 from Union Territories, all directly elected by citizens. Seats are allocated based on population. The President's power to nominate two Anglo-Indian members was removed by the 104th Amendment Act, 2019.

79. How many members can the President nominate to the Lok Sabha ? What is the criteria for the nomination ?

Ans : SQP 2009, 2012, 2015

As per the 104th Constitutional Amendment Act, 2019, the President cannot nominate any members to the Lok Sabha. Previously, the President could nominate up to two members of the Anglo-Indian community if they were underrepresented. The criteria for nomination was to ensure adequate representation of the Anglo-Indian community in the Lok Sabha. Now, all members are directly elected by the citizens of India.

80. How are the members of the Lok Sabha elected ?

Ans : COMP 2010,2012

Members of the Lok Sabha are elected directly by voters in 543 constituencies using the first-past-the-post (FPTP) system. During general elections held every five years, each constituency elects one Member of Parliament (MP) by selecting the candidate with the most votes. The party or coalition that wins a majority of seats forms the government, and its leader becomes the Prime Minister. This system ensures direct representation of the people in India's lower house of Parliament.

NODIA

81. Mention three important powers and functions of the Lok Sabha Speaker.

Ans : MAIN 2009

(i) Maintaining Order : The Speaker presides over the sessions of the Lok Sabha and ensures that debates and discussions are conducted in an orderly manner.

(ii) Decision on Bills : The Speaker decides whether a bill is a money bill or not, and their decision on this matter is final.

(iii) Casting Vote : In case of a tie during voting, the Speaker has the casting vote to break the deadlock.

82. What is Quorum?

Ans : SQP 2015

Quorum refers to the minimum number of members required to be present in a legislative body, like the Lok Sabha, for it to conduct its proceedings. In the Lok Sabha, the quorum is one-tenth of the total number of members, meaning at least 55 members must be present for the house to function. If the quorum is not met, the session is either adjourned or paused until enough members are present.

83. Mention the occasion on which the President addresses a joint session of Parliament?

Ans : MAIN 2010

When a deadlock occurs between the two Houses over an Ordinary Bill, the President calls for a joint sitting of both Houses.

84. Name the three Lists which distribute the subjects of legislation between the Union and the States.

Ans : COMP 1986, 1991

(i) Union List : Contains subjects on which only the Parliament can legislate.
(ii) State List : Contains subjects on which only State Legislatures can legislate.
(iii) Concurrent List : Contains subjects on which both the Parliament and State Legislatures can legislate.

85. How is the deadlock removed between the two Houses to pass the Ordinary Bill ?

Ans : MAIN 1993, 2000

The deadlock between the two Houses of Parliament on an Ordinary Bill is resolved through a joint sitting of both Houses. If one House passes the bill and the other House rejects it or doesn't take any action for six months, the President can summon a joint sitting. In this session, members of both Houses debate and vote together, and the bill is passed if a simple majority approves it. The Speaker of the Lok Sabha presides over the joint sitting.

86. What are Residuary powers ? To whom does the Residuary powers, to make law, belong?

Ans : MAIN 2016

Residuary powers refer to matters not specified in the division of powers. The authority to legislate on these residuary issues rests solely with the Parliament.

87. Mention the two main circumstances in which the Parliament can legislate on State Subject.

Ans : COMP 2011, 2019

The Parliament can legislate on State subjects in two cases:
(i) During a National Emergency under Article (iii) 5 (ii)
(ii) When the Rajya Sabha passes a resolution under Article 249, allowing it in the national interest with a two-thirds majority.

88. In what three ways does the Parliament exercise control over the Executive (i.e. the government in power)?

Ans : SQP 2009, 1994

(i) Question Hour : Between 11 a.m. and 12 noon, the House requests information from the government regarding its policies and performance.
(ii) Adjournment Motions : An adjournment motion pauses the House's regular activities.
(iii) Monetary Controls : The Public Accounts Committee monitors public expenditure to ensure it aligns with Parliament's decisions.

89. What is the consequence of the Money Bill, which is passed by the Lok Sabha, but not passed by the Rajya Sabha ?

Ans : COMP 1987

If the Rajya Sabha doesn't pass a Money Bill within 14 days, it is deemed passed in the form approved by the Lok Sabha. The Rajya Sabha can only recommend changes, which the Lok Sabha may accept or reject. Ultimately, the Lok Sabha has the final say on Money Bills.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

(iii) Normal Term : The normal term of the Lok Sabha is five years from the date of its first sitting.
   (a) Reduction of Term : Yes, the term can be reduced if the Lok Sabha is dissolved earlier by the President of India upon the advice of the Prime Minister. This may happen due to the government's inability to maintain a majority or other political reasons.
   (b) Extension : During a national emergency, the term of the Lok Sabha can be extended by a period of one year at a time, but not beyond six months after the emergency ends.

(iv) The Indian Parliament meets in three main sessions each year:
   (a) Budget Session : Held from February to May. This is the most important session as the budget is presented and discussed.
   (b) Monsoon Session : Held from July to September. It typically deals with important legislative matters.
   (c) Winter Session : Held from November to December. This session is generally shorter but handles important legislation and policy debates.

   A special session may also be convened at any time by the President based on the advice of the Council of Ministers.

(v) The Lok Sabha consists of representatives elected directly by the people based on universal adult suffrage. The Constitution envisions a maximum strength of 552 members: up to 5 (iii) 0 representatives from the States and up to 20 from the Union Territories. Previously, the President could nominate up to two members of the Anglo-Indian community if he believed they were not adequately represented in the House; however, this provision was discontinued by the 104th Constitutional Amendment Act in 2019. The total number of elected members is distributed among the States roughly in proportion to their population.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

NODIA

127. How is the Speaker of the Lok Sabha elected?

Ans : SQP 2016

(i) In the Lok Sabha, both presiding officers the Speaker and the Deputy Speakerare elected from among its members by a simple majority of those present and voting in the House.
(ii) No specific qualifications are prescribed for being elected as the Speaker; the Constitution only requires that the Speaker be a member of the House.
(iii) The Speaker is most often elected unanimously, with a formal election occurring only if the parties disagree on a candidate.
(iv) Once a candidate is agreed upon, their name is typically proposed by the Prime Minister or the Minister of Parliamentary Affairs.

128. With reference to the judicial powers of the Parliament, discuss the following:
(i) Impeachment of President.
(ii) Impeachment of Chief Justice/Judges of the Supreme Court.

Ans : COMP 2008

(i) Parliament has the authority to remove the President from office through a process called impeachment. If the President is accused of violating the Constitution or committing grave misconduct, either House of Parliament can frame charges against them. Should a resolution to this effect be passed by a two-thirds majority of the total membership of that House and by a majority of the members present and voting, the House will investigate the charges. If the other House also finds the President guilty upon investigation, the President can be impeached and subsequently removed from office.
(ii) The Parliament can remove the Chief Justice or Judges of the Supreme Court for violating the provisions of the Constitution, following the same procedure used for the impeachment of the President of India.

BETTER THAN BOOK IN THE MARKET

Why students are choosing this book 👉

School teachers already use this content to set papers.

Still not sure?

- 👉 Match this PDF with your question papers
- 👉 See the similarity yourself

Why does this happen?

- ✓ Teachers have its PDF & Word files
- ✓ Easy access
- ✓ Direct copy-paste questions
- ✓ Same pattern followed

Don't miss out—get the advantage today!

Ans : COMP 1981

(i) Lok Sabha: The bill must be passed by the Lok Sabha.
(ii) Rajya Sabha : The bill must also be passed by the Rajya Sabha (except for Money Bills).
(iii) President of India : The bill requires the President's assent to become law.

97. How many persons may the President of India nominate as members of the Rajya Sabha and what qualifications, if any, should they possess for nomination to the Rajya Sabha?

Ans : MAIN 2010

The President of India may nominate 12 members to the Rajya Sabha. These nominated members should have special knowledge or practical experience in fields such as literature, science, art, or social service. This provision ensures that individuals with distinguished contributions to society are represented in the legislative process.

98. Mr. Gurudev was nominated by the President to the Rajya Sabha. Mention any one criterion on which the President would have nominated him.

Ans : COMP 2010

Mr. Gurudev would have been nominated by the President to the Rajya Sabha based on his special knowledge or practical experience in one of the following fields: literature, science, art, or social service. This criterion ensures that experts in various fields contribute to the legislative process.

99. The existence of Union Territories is a departure from the federal form of Government. Give reasons.

Ans : COMP 2000

Another characteristic that underscores the unitary nature of the Indian Constitution is the presence of administrative divisions known as Union Territories. These territories are administered directly by the Central Government and do not possess any independent powers or autonomy.

100. State the minimum of times the Lok Sabha must meet in a year.

Ans : SQP 2014, 2018

(i) Budget Session : Usually held from February to May, where the annual budget is presented.
(ii) Monsoon Session : Typically conducted from July to September.
(iii) Winter Session : Generally takes place from November to December.

While the Constitution mandates a minimum of two sessions annually, in practice, the Lok Sabha usually convenes three times a year to address various legislative and governmental matters.

101. State any three exclusive powers of the Lok Sabha that is not enjoyed by the other House.

Ans : MAIN 2020

(i) Control Over Money Bills : Only the Lok Sabha can pass Money Bills, and the Rajya Sabha has limited say.
(ii) Vote of No-Confidence : Only the Lok Sabha can remove the government by passing a no-confidence motion.
(iii) In the event of a deadlock between the two houses, the Lok Sabha's decision prevails because of its greater numerical strength.

102. Explain two conditions under which a member of Parliament can be disqualified under the Anti- Defection Law.

Ans : COMP 2016

(i) If a member voluntarily resigns from their political party or votes (or abstains from voting) in the House against the party's directives, they will be disqualified.
(ii) An independent Member of Parliament or State Legislature will be disqualified if they join any political party after their election.

103. A bicameral legislature strengthens which form of government? Give a reason to support your answer.

Ans : MAIN 2002

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

117. Which bodies have the right to legislate on subjects in the Concurrent list? What happens in the case of conflict between such laws?

Ans : MAIN 2019

Both the Union Parliament and the State Legislatures have the right to legislate on subjects in the Concurrent List.
In case of a conflict between Union and State laws on the same subject, the Union law prevails. However, if a state law has received the President's assent, it can prevail in that particular state, unless the Parliament subsequently passes a law on the same subject, overriding the state law.

118. If the President does not give his assent to a Bill, what happens ?

Ans : SQP 2021

If the President of India does not give his assent to a bill, the following can happen:
(i) Withholding Assent : The President can refuse to sign the bill, effectively vetoing it. The bill then does not become law.
(ii) Returning the Bill : The President may also return the bill (if it is not a Money Bill) to Parliament for reconsideration with suggestions. If both Houses pass the bill again, with or without amendments, the President is required to give assent.

119. What is an Adjournment Motion ?

Ans : COMP 2023

An Adjournment Motion is a proposal to set aside all other business to address a "definite matter of urgent importance." Such motions are typically permitted on issues like incidents involving multiple deaths, a bold robbery, natural disasters such as devastating floods or tornadoes, or communal unrest.

120. Mention any one circumstance when the Parliament can make laws on a state subject.

Ans : SQP 2000

One circumstance when Parliament can make laws on a state subject is when the Rajya Sabha passes a resolution under Article 249, stating that it is necessary for Parliament to legislate on a matter in the State List in the national interest. This resolution must be passed by a two-thirds majority of the members present and voting.

121. Mention any one provision of the Constitution which clearly establishes the supremacy of the Lok Sabha with regard to money bills. What happens when a Money Bill. is not returned by the Rajya Sabha in 14 days?

Ans : COMP 2017

One provision of the Constitution that establishes the supremacy of the Lok Sabha regarding Money Bills is Article 109, which states that Money Bills can only be introduced in the Lok Sabha, and the Rajya Sabha cannot amend or reject them.
If a Money Bill is not returned by the Rajya Sabha within 14 days, it is deemed to have been passed by both Houses in the form it was originally passed by the Lok Sabha.

NODIA

THREE MARKS QUESTIONS

122. The Union Parliament is the supreme legislative body in the country. With reference to the Indian Parliament answer the following questions:
(i) The Rajya Sabha is called a Permanent House. Explain this statement.
(ii) Explain the composition of the Rajya Sabha.
(iii) Mention any two exclusive powers of the Lok Sabha and two powers exclusive to the Rajya Sabha.

Ans : MAIN 2024

(i) The Rajya Sabha is called a Permanent House because it is not subject to dissolution. Unlike the Lok Sabha, which is dissolved every five years or earlier, the Rajya Sabha is a continuous body. However, one-third of its members retire every two years, and new members are elected to fill the vacancies, ensuring that

110. State two occasions on which the President of India addresses a joint session of Parliament.

Ans : COMP 2014

The Speaker presides over a joint sitting of both Houses of Parliament in the following situations :

(i) When there is a disagreement between the two Houses over a bill.

(ii) If more than 6 months have passed without the bill being approved by the other House.

111. Name the body which elects the Rajya Sabha Members. Mention any two matters where the Rajya Sabha enjoys equal powers with the Lok Sabha.

Ans : COMP 2010

The members of the Rajya Sabha are elected by the elected members of the State Legislative Assemblies and by the members of the Electoral College for Union Territories.
Two matters where the Rajya Sabha enjoys equal powers with the Lok Sabha are:

(i) Passing Ordinary Bills : Both Houses must pass ordinary bills for them to become law.

(ii) Amending the Constitution : Both the Lok Sabha and Rajya Sabha must approve any constitutional amendments with a two-thirds majority.

112. What do we mean when we say that the Rajya Sabha is a permanent body ? What is the term of office of a Rajya Sabha member ?

Ans : SQP 2015

When we say the Rajya Sabha is a permanent body, it means that it is never fully dissolved, unlike the Lok Sabha. Instead, one-third of its members retire every two years, ensuring continuity in the functioning of the House.
The term of office for a Rajya Sabha member is six years, with elections held biennially to fill the seats of retiring members.

113. Who presides over the Rajya Sabha? Who elects the Deputy Chairman of the Rajya Sabha?

Ans : MAIN 2017

The Vice President of India presides over the Rajya Sabha as its ex-officio Chairman.
The Deputy Chairman of the Rajya Sabha is elected by the members of the Rajya Sabha from among themselves.

114. Who is the ex-officio chairperson of the Rajya Sabha ? Mention one of his/her duties other than being the chairperson of the Upper house.

Ans : MAIN 2017

The Vice President of India is the ex-officio chairperson of the Rajya Sabha.
One of their duties, apart from being the chairperson of the Rajya Sabha, is to act as the second-highest constitutional officer in India, succeeding the President in the event of their death, resignation, or removal.

115. Name the lists which distribute the Subjects of legislation between the Union and the States. Mention any one circumstance when the Parliament can make laws on a state subject.

Ans : COMP 2011

The lists that distribute the subjects of legislation between the Union and the States are Union List, State List, Concurrent List.
One circumstance when Parliament can make laws on a state subject is during a national emergency, declared under Article 352, when Parliament can legislate on matters in the State List for the entire country or a part of it.

116. Mention any one matter where the Rajya Sabha enjoys equal powers with the Lok Sabha.

Ans : MAIN 2022

The Rajya Sabha enjoys equal powers with the Lok Sabha in the matter of amending the Constitution. Both Houses must pass any Constitutional Amendment Bill with a two-thirds majority for the amendment to take effect.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

A bicameral legislature strengthens a federal form of government.
Reason: It ensures balanced representation by having one house represent the population (e.g., Lok Sabha) and the other represent the states or regions (e.g., Rajya Sabha). This structure allows for both national interests and regional concerns to be addressed, promoting a stable and equitable distribution of power between the central and state governments.

104. Name the Law making body of Union Government. Name the main constituents of the Indian Parliament.

Ans : SQP 2007

The law-making body of the Union Government is the Parliament of India.
The main constituents of the Indian Parliament are:
(i) Lok Sabha (House of the People)
(ii) Rajya Sabha (Council of States)
(iii) President of India

105. How are the members of the Lok Sabha elected? Who determines the salaries and allowances of the Members of Parliament?

Ans : MAIN 2010

Members of the Lok Sabha are directly elected by the people through Universal Adult Franchise, meaning all citizens aged 18 and above have the right to vote, unless disqualified by law. The salaries and allowances of MPs and Ministers are set by Parliament.

106. What is the quorum to hold the meetings of the Lok Sabha? What happens when the quorum of a House is not met?

Ans : COMP 2015

The quorum required to hold meetings of the Lok Sabha is one-tenth of the total number of members of the House.
If the quorum is not met, the Speaker of the Lok Sabha either adjourns the meeting or suspends the proceedings until the required number of members is present.

107. How are the Speaker and the Deputy Speaker of the Lok Sabha elected ? Who presides over the meetings of the Lok Sabha?

Ans : SQP 2011

The Speaker and Deputy Speaker of the Lok Sabha are elected by the members of the Lok Sabha from among themselves. The election is usually conducted after the general election or when a vacancy occurs, and both positions are filled through a majority vote in the House.
The Speaker of the Lok Sabha presides over the meetings of the House. In the absence of the Speaker, the Deputy Speaker presides over the proceedings. If both are unavailable, a member from the panel of chairpersons presides over the session.

NODIA

108. Name the session of the Lok Sabha. What is the maximum gap allowed between two parliamentary sessions?

Ans : MAIN 2013

The three main sessions of the Lok Sabha are:
(i) Budget Session (February to May)
(ii) Monsoon Session (July to September)
(iii) Winter Session (November to December)
The maximum gap allowed between two parliamentary sessions is six months, meaning Parliament must meet at least twice a year.

109. Mention any two circumstances under which the seat of a member of the Parliament becomes vacant.

Ans : MAIN 2015

(i) Resignation: If a member submits their resignation in writing to the Speaker of the Lok Sabha or the Chairman of the Rajya Sabha, and it is accepted.
(ii) Absence Without Permission : If a member is absent from all meetings of the House for a period of 60 days without obtaining permission from the House, their seat can be declared vacant.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

the Rajya Sabha remains functional at all times.

(ii) The Rajya Sabha consists of a maximum of 250 members. Of these, 2 (iii) 8 members are elected by the elected members of State Legislative Assemblies and Union Territories, using a proportional representation system through a single transferable vote. The remaining 12 members are nominated by the President of India for their expertise in fields such as literature, science, art, and social service.

(iii) Two exclusive powers of the Lok Sabha :

(a) Money Bills : Only the Lok Sabha can introduce and pass Money Bills.

(b) No-Confidence Motion : Only the Lok Sabha can pass a No-Confidence Motion, which can lead to the government's resignation.Two exclusive powers of the Rajya Sabha:

(c) Creation of All-India Services : Rajya Sabha can pass a resolution to create All-India Services.

(d) Legislation on State List : Rajya Sabha can allow Parliament to legislate on State List matters in the national interest.

123. The Union Legislature comprises the President and the two houses of the Parliament. With reference to the Parliament, answer the following questions:

(i) Mr. Raj wants to be a member of the Lok Sabha. Mention any three qualifications required to contest elections for the Lok Sabha.

(ii) Mention any three legislative powers of the Union Parliament.

(iii) The Parliament controls the Executive. Mention any four ways in which it exercises its control.

Ans : MAIN 2023

(i) Qualifications required for Mr. Raj to contest elections for the Lok Sabha:

(a) Citizenship : He must be a citizen of India.

(b) Age : He must be at least 25 years old.

(c) Voter in an Indian constituency : He must be a registered voter in any constituency in India.

(ii) Three legislative powers of the Union Parliament:

(a) Making Laws : The Parliament has the power to frame laws on subjects in the Union List and

(b) Concurrent List. Amending the Constitution : The Parliament has the power to amend the Constitution of India.

(c) Controlling the Budget : The Parliament approves the Union Budget and ensures that government spending is within the approved limits.

(iii) Four ways in which the Parliament controls the Executive:

(a) Question Hour : Members of Parliament can ask questions to the ministers to hold the government accountable.

(b) Vote of No Confidence : The Parliament can remove the government by passing a vote of no confidence.

(c) Budget Approval : The Executive cannot spend money without the approval of the Parliament, which scrutinizes and passes the budget.

(d) Debates and Discussions : The Parliament conducts debates and discussions on policies and actions of the Executive, ensuring transparency and accountability.

124. Keeping in view the powers of the Rajya Sabha, answer the following :

(i) Legislative powers of the Rajya Sabha.

(ii) Financial powers of the Rajya Sabha.

(iii) Administrative or Executive powers of the Rajya Sabha.

(iv) Judicial Powers

Ans : SQP 2000,2011,2015

NODIA

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

(i) The Rajya Sabha, as one of the two houses of Parliament, has important legislative powers, although they are secondary to the Lok Sabha in certain cases:
   (a) Ordinary Bills : It can introduce and pass ordinary bills. However, if the Lok Sabha rejects or does not agree to the amendments made by the Rajya Sabha, a joint sitting of both Houses may be convened to resolve the disagreement.
   (b) Constitutional Amendments : The Rajya Sabha has equal power with the Lok Sabha in amending the Constitution. A constitutional amendment bill must be passed by both Houses.
   (c) Creation or Abolition of All India Services : The Rajya Sabha can pass a resolution with a two-thirds majority to create or abolish All India Services.

(ii) The financial powers of the Rajya Sabha are limited compared to the Lok Sabha:
   (a) Money Bills : The Rajya Sabha cannot introduce or amend money bills. Money bills can only be introduced in the Lok Sabha, and once passed, they are sent to the Rajya Sabha for recommendations. However, the Rajya Sabha must return the bill within 14 days, and the Lok Sabha may accept or reject the recommendations.
   (b) Budget : The Rajya Sabha does not have the power to vote on the budget. It can discuss the budget but cannot make decisions regarding money bills.

(iii) Administrative or Executive powers of the Rajya Sabha :
   (a) Council of Ministers : While the Prime Minister and Council of Ministers are primarily accountable to the Lok Sabha, they can also be questioned and discussed in the Rajya Sabha.
   (b) Removal of Ministers : The Rajya Sabha can discuss issues related to the government's policies and decisions but cannot pass a motion of no-confidence, which can only be done in the Lok Sabha.

(iv) Judicial Powers :
   (a) Impeachment of the President : The Rajya Sabha has the authority to impeach the President on charges of violating the Constitution.
   (b) Removal of Judges : It can pass a special address recommending the removal of a judge from the Supreme Court or High Courts.
   (c) Charges Against the Vice-President : Any charges against the Vice-President can be initiated only in the Rajya Sabha.
   (d) Removal of High Officials : In conjunction with the Lok Sabha, the Rajya Sabha can pass resolutions to remove high-ranking officials such as the Attorney General of India, the Comptroller and Auditor General, and the Chief Election Commissioner. Upon the passage of such a resolution, the President has the power to remove these officers from their positions.

125. What are the powers and functions of the Speaker with reference to the following:
(i) Disciplinary powers
(ii) Administrative powers
(iii) Regulation of Parliamentary procedure
(iv) Supervisory control over committees of the Parliament.

Ans : COMP 2001,2005,2009,2016,2020

(i) Disciplinary power :
   (a) Maintaining Order : The Speaker ensures that the proceedings of the House are conducted in an orderly manner, maintaining decorum at all times.
   (b) Suspension or Expulsion : The Speaker has the authority to suspend or expel members for violating parliamentary rules or engaging in disruptive behavior.
   (c) Censure and Warnings : The Speaker can censure members for misconduct and issue warnings to those who violate the House's code of conduct.

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

(d) Control Over Debate : The Speaker decides who may speak during debates and ensures that discussions remain relevant and within the rules.

(b) Administrative power :
(a) The Speaker is the administrative head of the Lok Sabha Secretariat, overseeing its functioning and personnel management.
(b) The Speaker allocates work to various offices within the Parliament, ensuring smooth functioning.
(c) The Speaker is responsible for the security of the Lok Sabha, ensuring the safety of members and the premises.

(iii) Regulation of Parliamentary procedure :
(a) Presiding Over Sessions : The Speaker presides over the sessions of the Lok Sabha, ensuring adherence to procedures and maintaining the flow of discussions.
(b) Granting Speaking Time : Members must seek the Speaker's permission to speak, and the Speaker determines the order and time allocated to each.
(c) Ruling on Points of Order : The Speaker decides on points of order, ensuring parliamentary rules are followed during debates.
(d) Casting Vote : In the event of a tie, the Speaker exercises a casting vote to resolve the matter.

(iv) Mention any four powers of the Speaker during the Session of the Parliament.
(a) The Speaker serves as the ex-officio Chairperson of the Rules Committee and the Business Advisory Committee of the House.
(b) The Speaker appoints the Chairpersons of all House committees and provides them with directions regarding their work.
(c) The Speaker determines whether a particular document is confidential and decides if it should be presented before a committee.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

126. Keeping in view the composition of the Lok Sabha, answer the following :
(i) Qualifications of a member of the Lok Sabha.
(ii) Disqualifications of a member of the Lok Sabha.
(iii) Term of the Lok Sabha. Can it be reduced?
(iv) Annual schedule of the Parliamentary session.
(v) The composition of the Lok Sabha.

Ans : MAIN 2012,2014.2018

(i) To be eligible for membership in the Lok Sabha, a person must satisfy the following qualifications:
(a) Citizenship : The individual must be a citizen of India. Age : The minimum age for contesting elections to the Lok Sabha is 25 years.
(b) Voter Registration : The person should be registered as a voter in any parliamentary constituency.
(c) Other Requirements : The candidate must meet any additional qualifications as prescribed under law, such as not being of unsound mind or disqualified under laws related to electoral offenses, corruption, etc.

(ii) A person may be disqualified from being a member of the Lok Sabha under the following conditions :
(a) Holding an Office of Profit : If the person holds an office of profit under the government of India or any state, other than those exempted by law.
(a) Unsound Mind : If declared of unsound mind by a competent court.
(b) Insolvency : If the person is declared insolvent (bankrupt).
(c) Criminal Conviction : If convicted for an offense and sentenced to imprisonment of two years or more, unless pardoned or the conviction is stayed by a higher court.
(d) Defection : Under the Tenth Schedule (anti-defection law), if the member voluntarily gives up the membership of their political party or disobeys the party's directions during a vote.

NODIA

90. An adult Indian citizen holding an office of profit under the State Government wishes to contest for election to the Lok Sabha. Is he/she eligible ? Give a reason to justify your answer.

Ans : MAIN 2006

No, the adult Indian citizen holding an office of profit under the State Government is not eligible to contest for election to the Lok Sabha. This is because holding an office of profit under the government would create a conflict of interest, as it may influence their actions as a Member of Parliament. The Constitution disqualifies individuals holding such positions from contesting to maintain the integrity of the parliamentary process.

91. What are the advantages of the Lok Sabha?

Ans : SQP 2008

(i) Greater Representation : It is directly elected by the people, making it more representative of the public's will. This gives the Lok Sabha more democratic legitimacy.

(ii) Power to Remove the Government : The Lok Sabha can pass a vote of no-confidence, leading to the resignation of the Council of Ministers, including the Prime Minister, whereas the Rajya Sabha cannot.

92. (i) Mention any one matter where the Rajya Sabha enjoy equal powers with the Lok Sabha?

(ii) Elections in India are held by the secret ballot. Give reason.

Ans : SQP 2010, 2016

(i) Equal Powers : The Rajya Sabha enjoys equal powers with the Lok Sabha in the passage of Ordinary Bills (non-Money Bills). Both Houses must approve the bill for it to become law.

(ii) Reason for Secret Ballot : Elections in India are held by secret ballot to ensure voter privacy, allowing citizens to vote freely without fear of intimidation, coercion, or undue influence.

93. How has the power of the president to declare an emergency been subject to the control of Parliament?

Ans : MAIN 1981

The President's power to declare an emergency must be approved by Parliament within one month. It can only be extended with parliamentary approval every six months. The Lok Sabha can also revoke the emergency by a majority vote if demanded by members.

94. Give two examples to show that the power of the Rajya Sabha is limited in regard to Money Bills.

Ans : COMP 1984

(i) Cannot Reject or Amend : The Rajya Sabha cannot reject or amend a Money Bill; it can only make recommendations, which the Lok Sabha is free to accept or ignore.

(ii) Time Limit : The Rajya Sabha must return a Money Bill within 14 days, failing which it is deemed passed in the form approved by the Lok Sabha, regardless of any recommendations.

95. Name the three levels of government in a federal set up in India. Why is a federal set-up important in India ?

Ans : SQP 2019

Three levels of government in a federal setup in india are union government, state government and local governments.

Importance of a Federal Setup in India:

(i) India's federal system ensures that its 28 states and 8 union territories cannot secede, maintaining the nation's unity and integrity.

(ii) It accommodates India's diverse population, preventing separatist forces from fragmenting the country, and is thus essential for national cohesion.

96. Name the agencies whose sanction is necessary before a bill becomes a law in the Union Legislature.

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

129. Indian Parliament can control the Executive, if necessary. In this context explain :
(i) Adjournment Motion.
(ii) No-Confidence Motion.
(iii) The Question Hour (Interpellation)

Ans : MAIN 2005, 2010

(i) Adjournment Motion : Parliament can criticize the Executive through adjournment motions on serious and urgent matters such as police firing on peaceful protests, railway accidents, major crimes, atrocities against vulnerable sections of society, or natural disasters like devastating floods or earthquakes. The primary purpose of an adjournment motion is to highlight the government's inefficiency in handling a particular situation, its failure to take preventive action, and to draw attention to matters of public importance requiring suitable action. If the subject is of significant national importance, the government may agree to admit the motion. In that case, the scheduled agenda is suspended, and members devote time to discussing the topic of the adjournment motion.

(ii) No-Confidence Motion : Parliament exercises control over the Union Council of Ministers by holding them collectively responsible to it, as stipulated by the Constitution. Union Ministers remain in office as long as they enjoy the confidence of the majority in the Lok Sabha. If they lose this confidence and a vote of no-confidence is passed against them, they are required to resign. A lack of confidence in the Cabinet can also be demonstrated by rejecting a bill introduced by a Minister or by passing a symbolic reduction in a Minister's salary.

(iii) The first hour of every sitting in the Lok Sabha is reserved for asking questions, where members can ask ministers about government policies, actions, and performance. This allows members of the Lok Sabha to scrutinize the government's functioning and hold ministers accountable for their actions and decisions.

NODIA

Three Ways in Which the Lok Sabha Exercises Control Over the Council of Ministers:

(a) No-Confidence Motion : The Lok Sabha can remove the government by passing a no-confidence motion if it believes the Council of Ministers has lost the support of the majority.

(b) Question Hour : Through questioning ministers, the Lok Sabha ensures transparency and holds the government accountable for its actions.

(c) Debates and Discussions : The Lok Sabha holds regular debates and discussions on policies, budgets, and bills, allowing members to criticize and assess the government's actions and decisions.

130. In the context of the Union Parliament, answer the following questions :
(i) Describe the financial powers of the Union Parliament.
(ii) Mention three instances when the Parliament can make laws on the subjects entered in the State List.
(iii) Explain the powers of the Union Parliament in respect of matters in the Union List and Concurrent List.

Ans : COMP 2006

(i) Financial powers of the Union Parliament:

(a) Passing the Budget : The Union Parliament has the exclusive power to approve the Union Budget, which includes the annual financial statement of estimated receipts and expenditures. No money can be withdrawn from the Consolidated Fund of India without Parliament's approval.

(b) Levying Taxes : Only the Union Parliament has the authority to impose or alter taxes as per the provisions of the Constitution. It can pass laws on taxes like income tax, customs duties, and excise duties.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

Parliament has the right to debate these items, it does not have the authority to vote on them. This ensures that essential expenditures are managed without obstruction, while still allowing for parliamentary oversight through discussion.

(c) Salary and Allowances of Ministers and Judges : Parliament holds the privilege to determine the salaries and allowances of its own members. Additionally, it is responsible for setting the compensation for Ministers, as well as the Chief Justices and Judges of the Supreme Court and High Courts. This ensures that remuneration for key public officials is decided through a democratic and transparent process.

(iii) Administrative or Executive Powers :

(a) Question Hour : One hour each day when Parliament is in session is dedicated to members asking questions to the Government. Members can inquire about state administration, and ministers are required to provide answers, ensuring government accountability.

(b) Vote of No-Confidence : A motion that challenges the Government's adherence to the Constitution. If passed, it forces the entire Ministry to resign, effectively removing the Government from office.

(c) Monetary Controls : Parliament oversees the Government's financial decisions. It can approve, reduce, or reject the annual or supplementary budgets and adjust ministers' salaries, ensuring fiscal responsibility and control.

(d) Other Motions of Confidence : Includes motions like adjournment motions and rejection of Government bills. These motions can undermine the Government's stability and, if passed, can lead to a loss of confidence similar to a no-confidence vote.

138. With reference to the powers and functions of the Speaker of the Lok Sabha state the following:

(i) Any three functions to regulate proceedings of the House.

(ii) Any three administrative functions

(iii) The Speaker of the Lok Sabha occupies a position of great authority and responsibility. Give reasons to support this statement.

Ans : COMP 2015

(i) Three functions to regulate proceedings of the House :

(a) Maintaining Order and Decorum : The Speaker is responsible for maintaining order and decorum in the House during debates and discussions, ensuring that members adhere to the rules of conduct.

(b) Deciding Who May Speak : The Speaker decides who may speak during discussions and allocates time to different members, ensuring that debates proceed smoothly and fairly.

(c) Casting Vote : In case of a tie during a vote, the Speaker exercises their casting vote to break the deadlock. However, the Speaker only votes when necessary to maintain impartiality.

(ii) Administrative Functions

(a) The Speaker acts as the primary representative of the House and is responsible for communicating the House's matters to the President. In this role, the Speaker serves as the intermediary between the President and the House.

(b) The Speaker is responsible for receiving all petitions and documents that are addressed to the House.

(c) The Speaker conveys the House's decisions to the relevant authorities and ensures that these decisions are implemented accordingly.

(iii) The Speaker is the presiding officer of the Lok Sabha, responsible for conducting the House's business. Holding a position of significant authority and responsibility,

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

reserved constituencies, only individuals belonging to these castes and tribes are eligible to contest elections. This provision was implemented to ensure fair representation for marginalized sections of society. Without such reservations, these communities might find it difficult to compete with candidates from more privileged backgrounds.

132. Discuss the procedure to be followed by the Union Parliament in passing a Money Bill.

Ans : MAIN 2009

Bills dealing with taxation, borrowing, and the management of the Consolidated or Contingency Funds of India are classified as Money Bills. Any bill that does not fall into this category is an Ordinary Bill. A Public Bill addresses matters that apply to the general public, while a Private Bill pertains to specific individuals, corporations, or institutions, such as the Orphanages and Charitable Homes Bill.

(i) The Speaker of the Lok Sabha decides whether a bill is a Money Bill or an Ordinary Bill.

(ii) A Money Bill requires the President's recommendation and can only be introduced in the Lok Sabha.

(iii) Once passed by the Lok Sabha, it is sent to the Rajya Sabha, which cannot reject the bill but may offer suggestions within 14 days.

(iv) The Lok Sabha is not bound to accept the Rajya Sabha's recommendations and holds the final authority on Money Bills.

133. With reference to the two Houses of the Parliament answer the following questions.

(i) The two Houses of the Parliament enjoy co-equal powers in many spheres – explain it by giving any three examples.

(ii) How many members may be nominated to the Lok Sabha and the Rajya Sabha? Give reason.

Ans : COMP 2012 ,2018

(i) Co-Equal Powers of the Two Houses of Parliament The Lok Sabha (House of the People) and the Rajya Sabha (Council of States) share co-equal powers in several key areas. Here are three examples:

(a) Ordinary Legislation : Both Houses of Parliament participate in the process of making and passing Ordinary Bills. For a bill to become law, it must be approved by both the Lok Sabha and the Rajya Sabha.

(b) Constitutional Amendments : Both Houses hold equal authority when amending the Constitution. Any amendment must be passed by a two-thirds majority in both the Lok Sabha and the Rajya Sabha.

(c) Approval of Presidential Proclamations : During a national emergency, President's Rule, or financial emergency, proclamations issued by the President must be approved by both Houses of Parliament.

(ii) Nominated Members in the Lok Sabha and Rajya Sabha

(a) Lok Sabha : The President may nominate up to 2 members from the Anglo-Indian community to the Lok Sabha if the community is underrepresented. However, this provision was abolished in 2019 through the 104th Constitutional Amendment.

(b) Rajya Sabha : The President can nominate 12 members to the Rajya Sabha. These members are chosen for their expertise or distinguished contributions in fields like literature, science, art, and social service.

Reason for Nominations : The nomination of members ensures that individuals with specialized knowledge or underrepresented communities can contribute to the legislative process, bringing diverse perspectives to Parliament.

NODIA

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

(c) Approval of Expenditure : The government cannot spend money unless it has been sanctioned by the Parliament. This includes approval of grants, supplementary grants, and appropriation bills.

(d) Financial Oversight : Through tools like the Public Accounts Committee and the Comptroller and Auditor General's (CAG) reports, Parliament ensures proper use of public funds.

(ii) Parliament can legislate on State List subjects under these circumstances:

(a) During a Proclamation of Emergency.

(b) When the Rajya Sabha passes a resolution by a two-thirds majority declaring a State List subject of national importance.

(c) If two or more State Legislatures request Parliament to make laws on a State List subject.

(iii)(a) Union List : Parliament has exclusive authority to legislate on subjects in the Union List, which includes matters of national importance like defense, foreign affairs, atomic energy, railways, and telecommunications. No state legislature can make laws on these subjects.

(b) Concurrent List : On matters in the Concurrent List, both Parliament and state legislatures can make laws. However, if there is a conflict between Union and state laws on the same subject, the Union law prevails, unless the state law has received presidential assent. The Concurrent List includes subjects like criminal law, marriage, bankruptcy, and education.

131. Explain the terms :
(i) Question Hour
(ii) Adjournment Motion
(iii) No-Confidence Motion
(iv) Universal Adult Franchise
(v) Reservation of Seats.

Ans : SQP 2019

(i) Question Hour : Every member of the House has the right to question the government on matters of public interest. These questions are directed to the Chair, and if accepted, the government is required to provide responses. The first hour of each working day in the House is designated for this purpose, unless the Speaker decides otherwise.

(ii) Adjournment Motion : An Adjournment Motion calls for the House to suspend all other business and focus on a "matter of urgent public importance." As it disrupts the normal proceedings, the Speaker applies strict criteria to determine its admissibility. These guiding principles are :

(a) The matter raised must be specific,

(b) The urgency must be significant enough to warrant discussion on the same day, and

(c) The issue should be of public importance.

(iii) No-Confidence Motion : The Council of Ministers is collectively accountable to the Lok Sabha and remains in office as long as it enjoys the majority's support. A No-Confidence Motion, moved by the Opposition, requires the backing of at least 50 members to be considered. Once leave is granted, the motion must be discussed within 10 days. After the debate, the Speaker calls for a vote. If the motion is passed, the Government is obliged to resign.

(iv) Universal Adult Franchise refers to the right of all adult citizens of India, aged 18 years or above, to vote without any discrimination based on caste, creed, color, gender, or education.

(v) Reservation of Seats : The Constitution provides for the reservation of seats in the Lok Sabha for Scheduled Castes (SCs) and Scheduled Tribes (STs). The number of reserved seats is proportional to the population of SCs and STs in each state relative to its total population. In these

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

Ans : COMP 2021

(i) Three federal features of Government in India :
  (a) Division of Powers: The Indian Constitution clearly divides powers between the Union and State Governments through three lists - Union List, State List, and Concurrent List - outlined in the Seventh Schedule.
  (b) Bicameral Legislature: India has a bicameral legislature with the Rajya Sabha representing the states, ensuring a federal structure by giving states a say in the legislative process at the national level.
  (c) Independent Judiciary: The Supreme Court serves as the guardian of the Constitution and ensures the division of powers between the Union and State Governments is maintained, acting as an impartial arbiter in disputes.

(ii) The Parliament can legislate even on subjects included in the State List :
  (a) During a Proclamation of Emergency : When a national emergency is in effect, Parliament can legislate on subjects in the State List.
  (b) Rajya Sabha Resolution : If the Rajya Sabha passes a resolution by a two-thirds majority declaring that a State List subject has assumed national importance, Parliament can make laws on that subject.

(iii)(a) Single Constitution : India has a single Constitution for both the Union and the states, unlike some federal systems where states have their own constitutions. This ensures uniformity in governance across the country.
  (b) Residuary Powers : Unlike many federal systems where residuary powers are vested in the states, in India, residuary powers (powers over subjects not listed in any of the three lists) are vested in the Union Government, giving it additional authority over unlisted subjects.

137. With reference to the powers of the Union Parliament, state the following :
(i) Three of its Legislative Powers.
(ii) Three of its Financial Powers.
(iii) Four of its Administrative or Executive Powers.

Ans : SQP 2020

(i) Legislative Powers :
  (a) Parliament as the Central Lawmaking Body : Parliament serves as the primary legislative authority at the central level. It is responsible for creating new laws, as well as amending or repealing existing ones, for all 97 subjects listed in the Union List and for any residuary subjects not covered by any of the three legislative lists.
  (b) Concurrent List Legislation : For the 47 subjects in the Concurrent List, both Parliament and the State Legislatures have the authority to enact laws. However, in cases where a State Law conflicts with a Central Law, the Central Law takes precedence and overrides the state legislation.
  (c) Constitutional Amendment Powers : The Union Parliament holds the exclusive power to amend the Constitution. While some amendments require ratification by a majority of the States, no State Legislature has the authority to initiate constitutional amendments.

(ii) Financial Powers :
  (a) Annual Budget : The Union Minister for Finance presents the Annual Budget to Parliament, outlining the expected sources of income and planned expenditures for the upcoming year. This presentation is made with the prior approval of the President. Parliament has the authority to approve, reduce, or reject the Budget in its entirety through voting.
  (b) Consolidated Fund of India : Certain budgetary items are charged to the Consolidated Fund of India. While

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

134. Explain any three Legislative powers of the Union Parliament.

Ans : MAIN 2020

(i) Union and Concurrent Subjects
  (a) Union List: Parliament can legislate on 97 subjects in the Union List, which include areas like defense, foreign affairs, and atomic energy.
  (b) Concurrent List: Parliament can also legislate on 47 subjects in the Concurrent List, such as criminal law and education. Both Parliament and State Legislatures can make laws on these subjects, but Parliament's laws take precedence over state laws, establishing its superiority.

(ii) Residuary Powers : Parliament holds the authority to legislate on any residuary subjects not mentioned in the Union, State, or Concurrent Lists. This ensures that any new or unforeseen matters can be addressed by the central legislature

(iii) State List : Parliament can legislate on the 66 subjects in the State List under specific conditions:
  (a) During a National Emergency: Under Article 250, Parliament can make laws on State List subjects for the duration of an emergency.
  (b) Rajya Sabha Resolution: If the Rajya Sabha passes a resolution by a two-thirds majority declaring a State List subject as nationally important (Article 249).
  (c) State Legislature Consent: When two or more State Legislatures request Parliament to legislate on a State List subject.
  (d) Conflict with International Commitments: If a state's actions conflict with the central government's international obligations.
  (e) Breakdown of Constitutional Machinery: During the failure of constitutional governance in a state (President's Rule under Article 356).

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

NODIA

135. State any two Financial and any two Legislative powers of the Indian Parliament.

Ans : SQP 2019

(i) Two Financial Powers of the Indian Parliament:
  (a) Control Over National Finances : The Parliament has the exclusive power to approve the Union Budget, which includes government expenditures and revenues. No money can be withdrawn from the Consolidated Fund of India without the approval of Parliament.
  (b) Imposition of Taxes : Parliament has the authority to impose, alter, or abolish taxes. Any bill related to taxation or government spending must be approved by Parliament, ensuring its control over public finances.

(ii) Two Legislative Powers of the Indian Parliament:
  (a) Making Laws on Union and Concurrent Lists : Parliament can legislate on subjects listed in the Union List (such as defense, foreign affairs, and banking) and also on subjects in the Concurrent List (such as education and marriage), in which both the Parliament and state legislatures have the power to make laws.
  (b) Amending the Constitution : Parliament has the power to amend the Constitution under Article 368. This requires a two-thirds majority in both the Lok Sabha and the Rajya Sabha for most amendments.

136. India has opted for a federal system of government with a strong unitary bias. In this context answer the following questions :
(i) List any three federal features of Government in India.
(ii) List any two conditions when the Parliament can make laws on Subjects in the State List.
(iii) Write short notes on any two unitary features of the Government in India.

the Speaker has extensive powers to maintain discipline within the House. In the Table of Precedence, the Speaker ranks above all Cabinet Ministers except the Prime Minister. When exercising their powers and functions, the Speaker is accountable solely to the House and not to any other authority. Additionally, no court of law can examine the merits of the Speaker's rulings.

139. With reference to the differences in the powers of two Houses answer the following questions :

(i) Compare and contrast the elections to both the Houses.

(ii) What is the procedure that should be followed if there is a deadlock between the two Houses of the Parliament on a non-money bill ?

(iii) What is the difference between a money bill and a non-money bill ?

Ans : SQP 2017

(i)

Feature	Lok Sabha	Rajya Sabha
Election Method	Direct election by the people	Indirect election by State Legislatures
Term	5 years	6 years (1/3rd retires every 2 years)
Dissolution	Can be dissolved	Permanent body
Representation	Represents the people	Represents the states and UTs
Strength	552 members (max)	250 members (max)
Voter Eligibility	Citizens (18+)	Elected State Legislators

Method of Election :

1. **Lok Sabha :** Members are directly elected by the people of India through general elections based on universal adult suffrage.
2. **Rajya Sabha :** Members are elected indirectly by the elected members of State Legislative Assemblies through a system of proportional representation using the single transferable vote.

(ii) If a deadlock occurs between the Lok Sabha and Rajya Sabha on a non-money bill, a joint sitting may be called by the President of India under Article 108. The deadlock happens if the Rajya Sabha rejects the bill, suggests amendments that the Lok Sabha disagrees with, or fails to act within six months. During the joint sitting, members of both Houses vote together, and the bill is passed if it receives a simple majority of members present and voting.

(iii)

Aspect	Money Bill	Non-Money Bill
Definition	Deals solely with financial matters (Article 110).	Covers all other subjects.
Introduction	Only in Lok Sabha.	In Lok Sabha or Rajya Sabha.
Rajya Sabha's Role	Can suggest amendments within 14 days.	Can amend, reject, or pass.
President's Assent	Must assent; cannot return the bill.	Can assent or return for reconsideration.
Legislative Power	Lok Sabha supremacy.	Equal power in both Houses.

140. With reference to the Union Parliament, answer the following questions :

(i) Which House is considered to be more powerful – the Lok Sabha or the Rajya Sabha ? State two reasons to justify your answer.

(ii) How is the Speaker of the Lok Sabha elected ? Mention two functions of the Speaker during the session of the Parliament.

(iii) Mention four ways in which the Lok Sabha exercise control over the Council of Ministers.

Ans : COMP 2011

(i) The Lok Sabha is considered to be more powerful than the Rajya Sabha.

Two reasons to justify this are:

(a) Control Over Money Bills : Money Bills can only be introduced in the Lok Sabha. The Rajya Sabha can only suggest changes, but it cannot reject or amend Money Bills, and the Lok Sabha has the final authority on them.

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

(b) Vote of No-Confidence : The Council of Ministers is collectively responsible to the Lok Sabha, not the Rajya Sabha. A No-Confidence Motion can only be passed in the Lok Sabha, and if it succeeds, the government must resign.

(ii) The Speaker of the Lok Sabha is elected by the members of the Lok Sabha from among themselves through a simple majority vote. After a general election or whenever the position of Speaker becomes vacant, members nominate candidates and vote to elect the Speaker.

Two functions of the Speaker during a session of Parliament:

(a) Maintaining Order : The Speaker ensures that the proceedings in the House are conducted in an orderly manner and that the rules of the House are followed. Conducting Debates:

(b) The Speaker manages discussions, decides who may speak, and ensures a fair distribution of time for all members during debates.

(iii) The four ways in which Lok Sabha exercises control over Council of Ministers are :

(a) Control Over Government : The Lok Sabha can remove the ruling ministry by passing a vote of no-confidence.

(b) Right of Interpretation : Members can ask questions to Ministers, allowing the Lok Sabha to criticize and highlight flaws in government policies.

(c) Adjournment Motions : These motions are introduced on serious issues to highlight government inefficiency in managing specific situations.

(d) Other Motions of Censure : Includes motions to censure Ministers, reject Government Bills, and pass private members' bills against the Government's wishes.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

141. The Union Parliament is the law-making body at the Central level. In this context, briefly describe.

(i) Its power to make laws on subjects mentioned in the Union List and the Concurrent List.

(ii) Its Residuary Powers

(iii) Its Power to make a law on a matter in the State List.

Ans : SQP 2018

(i) Parliament acts as the primary law-making body at the central level, responsible for enacting, amending, and repealing laws on all 97 subjects in the Union List. For the 47 subjects in the Concurrent List, both Parliament and State Legislatures can legislate. However, in cases of conflict between a State law and a Central law on a Concurrent List subject, the Central law takes precedence.

(ii) Parliament holds residuary powers, allowing it to legislate on matters not specified in the Union, State, or Concurrent Lists. These powers apply to new or unforeseen areas, like cybersecurity and space exploration, which were not foreseen when the Constitution was drafted.

(iii) Parliament can legislate on the 66 subjects in the State List under the following circumstances:

(a) National Emergency : During a national emergency, Parliament gains the power to make laws on any subject in the State List.

(b) Breakdown of Constitutional Machinery : If the constitutional governance of a state fails, Parliament assumes legislative authority for that state, including passing its budget.

(c) Rajya Sabha Resolution : If the Rajya Sabha passes a resolution by a two-thirds majority declaring a State List subject as nationally important, Parliament may legislate on that subject.

NODIA

(d) Consent of Multiple States : When two or more states request Parliament to legislate on a State List subject, the law applies only to those consenting states.

(v) International Commitments : Parliament can make laws on State List subjects to fulfill international obligations and agreements.

142. With reference to the composition of the Lok Sabha answer the following questions.

(i) What is the maximum strength fixed by the constitution? What is the term of the House? By whom and on whose advice can the Lok Sabha be dissolved?

(ii) State any three qualifications needed to contest for the Lok Sabha seat?

(iii) Give two reasons to justify how the Lok Sabha is more powerful than the Rajya Sabha.

Ans : MAIN 2011

(i) (a) Maximum Strength : The maximum strength of the Lok Sabha, as fixed by the Constitution, is 552 members, which includes 530 members representing the states, 20 members representing the Union Territories, and 2 members nominated by the President from the Anglo-Indian community (a provision now abolished by the 104th Amendment).

(b) Term of the House : The normal term of the Lok Sabha is 5 years, after which general elections are held to reconstitute the House. However, the term can be extended during a national emergency.

(c) Dissolution of Lok Sabha : The President of India can dissolve the Lok Sabha on the advice of the Prime Minister and the Council of Ministers before the completion of its term.

(ii) Three Qualifications to Contest for a Lok Sabha Seat:

(a) Citizenship : The candidate must be a citizen of India.

(b) Minimum Age : The candidate must be at least 25 years of age.

(c) Electoral Roll : The candidate must be registered as a voter in any parliamentary constituency of India.

(iii) Two reasons to justify how the Lok Sabha is more powerful than the Rajya Sabha:

(a) Control Over Money Bills : The Lok Sabha has exclusive control over Money Bills. A Money Bill can only be introduced in the Lok Sabha, and while the Rajya Sabha can suggest amendments, it cannot reject or amend the bill. The Lok Sabha has the final say.

(b) Vote of No-Confidence : The Council of Ministers is collectively responsible to the Lok Sabha, not the Rajya Sabha. If the Lok Sabha passes a No-Confidence Motion, the government must resign, which gives the Lok Sabha more authority over the executive branch.

143. The Union Legislature is a controlling body of the Union Executive. In this context, describe how it uses the following procedures.

(i) Question Hour

(ii) No-Confidence Motion

Ans : MAIN 2012

(i) Question Hour (Interpellation) : Members of Parliament have the right to ask questions about the Union Government's policies during the Question Hour, which is scheduled at the start of each parliamentary session. These questions may be followed by supplementary questions for more details. This practice, known as interpellation, allows MPs to criticize the government's policies and expose inefficiencies. The criticism often receives media coverage, pushing the government to act responsibly and avoid negative publicity.

(ii) No-Confidence Motion : The Union Council of Ministers remains in office as long as it has the confidence of the Lok Sabha. If a No-Confidence Motion is passed, the Council must resign. This

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

motion reflects the Parliament's control over the executive, as a loss of confidence, rejection of a bill, or passing a symbolic cut in a Minister's salary can lead to the government's fall.

144. With reference to the composition of the Rajya Sabha answer the following questions:
(i) What is the manner of election of its members?
(ii) What are the qualifications of the members of the Rajya Sabha?
(iii) What type of members are nominated by the President to the Rajya Sabha ?

Ans : MAIN 2012

(i) Members of the Rajya Sabha are indirectly elected by the elected members of the State Legislative Assemblies and the Union Territories using a system of proportional representation by means of a single transferable vote. The number of seats allocated to each state is based on its population.
(ii) In order to be chosen as the Member of the Rajya Sabha, a person must fulfil the following qualifications :
  (a) The person must be a citizen of India.
  (b) The person must be at least 30 years of age.
  (c) The person must meet other qualifications as prescribed by law, such as not holding any office of profit under the government.
  (d) Under the Representation of the People Act, candidates for the Rajya Sabha must reside in the state or Union Territory from which they are contesting the election.
(iii) The President of India nominates 12 members to the Rajya Sabha. These members are chosen for their expertise and contributions in fields such as literature, science, art, and social service.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

CASE BASED QUESTION

145. This picture is a symbol of our democratic rule, in this context, answer the following :

NODIA

(i) How does the Parliament symbolise that the people of India make laws for themselves?
(ii) Suppose you want to be a Member of the Lok Sabha and your name is enrolled in the electoral roll in another State and you wish to contest the election from the State where you are residing now. Can you still contest the elections for the Lok Sabha? What other qualifications you need to have to contest the elections? Can you become a member of the Upper House?
(iii) When you grow up, you will have a chance to be an MP. Would you like to be an MP in the Lok Sabha or the Rajya Sabha? Why?

Ans : COMP 2015

(i) The Parliament of India embodies the democratic principle that the people govern themselves. The Lok Sabha is directly elected by the citizens, meaning representatives chosen by the people draft, debate, and pass laws on their behalf. This reflects that the ultimate power to make laws resides with the people, exercised through their elected representatives.
(ii) Yes, you can contest Lok Sabha elections from a different state where you currently reside, even if your name is on the electoral roll in another state. You are allowed to contest from any parliamentary constituency across India as long as you meet the required qualifications.

Other qualifications needed to contest Lok Sabha elections:

1. Must be a citizen of India.
2. Must be at least 25 years of age.
3. Must meet any other qualifications as prescribed by law.
4. Yes, you can become a member of the Rajya Sabha if you are at least (iii)0 years old and meet other prescribed qualifications. Rajya Sabha members are elected indirectly by the elected members of State Legislative Assemblies.

(iii)I would prefer to be a Member of Parliament in the Lok Sabha because:

(a) Direct Mandate : Lok Sabha MPs are directly elected by the people, ensuring a strong democratic connection.

(b) Greater Influence : It has significant control over government policies and exclusive authority over financial matters like Money Bills.

(c) Accountability : MPs can hold the government accountable through tools like the no-confidence motion.

(d) Visibility : Direct interaction with constituents allows for a more tangible impact on their lives.

www.nodia.in

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

38. Who settles disputes in connection with the election of the President and Vice-President?

Ans : COMP 2005

All the election disputes concerning the election of the President and Vice–President are settled by the Supreme Court, whose decision shall be final

TWO MARKS QUESTIONS

39. Name the Chief Executive in India. Why is he elected indirectly ?

Ans : MAIN 2004

The Chief Executive of India is the President. He is elected indirectly because :

(a) Direct elections would require extensive effort and result in significant expenditure.

(b) As a constitutional head, it is appropriate for him to be elected indirectly, as direct elections are not suited for such a role.

40. Mention the procedure when the President addresses joint session of both the Houses of Parliament.

Ans : SQP 2003

The President addresses both Houses of Parliament together during the first session following a General Election. In this address, the President outlines the government's internal and external policies.

41. What does the President solemnly undertake to do when he takes the oath of office ?

Ans : COMP 2002

When the President of India takes the oath of office, he solemnly undertakes to:

1. Preserve, protect, and defend the Constitution and the law.
2. Devote himself to the service and well-being of the people of India.
3. Uphold the sovereignty, integrity, and unity of India.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

NODIA

42. Mention two reasons for adopting the indirect method of election for the President.

Ans : MAIN 2001

(i) The architects of the Indian Constitution intentionally selected this approach to establish a parliamentary system in the nation, designating the Prime Minister as the head of government.

(ii) Because one party is likely to dominate both Houses of Parliament, electing the President solely by a majority of Union Parliament members could result in the President being chosen as a representative of the ruling party, much like the Prime Minister.

43. State the composition of the Electoral College that elects him.

Ans : SQP 2000

The Electoral College, which consists of elected Members of Parliament (MPs) from both Houses and elected Members of the Legislative Assemblies (MLAs) from the States, is responsible for electing the President. This body is temporary and is disbanded immediately after the Presidential election is completed.

Nominated MPs and MLAs do not participate in the Presidential election. To nominate a candidate for President, at least 50 members of the Electoral College must propose the candidate, and another 50 members must second the nomination. Additionally, each candidate is required to deposit a security of Rs.15,000, as stipulated by the ordinance issued in June 1997.

44. State one limitation imposed on the powers of the President by :

(a) The Parliament.

(b) The Council of Ministers.

Ans : COMP 1996

(a) The President has the authority to issue an ordinance, which must be approved by Parliament within six weeks.

(b) The President can declare an emergency only upon receiving advice from the

2. The _____ has the power to summon the Houses of Parliament.
(a) Speaker
(b) President
(c) Vice President
(d) Chief Justice of India

Ans : MAIN 2023

Thus (b) is correct option.

3. Who is the head of the state of the Indian Union?
(a) The Prime Minister
(b) The President
(c) The Chief Justice
(d) The Speaker

Ans : MAIN 2000

Thus (b) is correct option.

4. Who is the Supreme commander of the Defence Forces of India?
(a) The President
(b) The Defence Minister
(c) The Prime Minister
(d) The Commanding Minister

Ans : SQP 2001

Thus (a) is correct option.

5. What is the minimum age to be elected as the President of India?
(a) Thirty years
(b) Thirty-two years
(c) Forty years
(d) Thirty-five years

Ans : COMP 2003

Thus (d) is correct option.

6. Name the President of India.
(a) Ram Nath Kovind
(b) Narendra Modi
(c) Droupadi Murmu
(d) Yashwant Sinha

Ans : MAIN 2010

Thus (c) is correct option.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

7. What is the security deposit of a candidate for Presidential Election?
(a) ₹2500 (b) ₹15,000
(c) ₹10,000 (d) ₹7500

Ans : SQP 2004

Thus (b) is correct option.

8. The power to summon Parliament is subject to the condition that there should not be a gap of more than_____months between two session of each house.
(a) Four
(b) Six
(c) Three
(d) Nine

Ans : COMP 2005

Thus (b) is correct option.

9. No Bill can become a Law without the assent and the signature of the_____.
(a) Prime Minister
(b) Vice-President
(c) Comptroller and Auditor General of India.
(d) President

Ans : MAIN 2011

Thus (d) is correct option.

10. Which amongst the following is not an Emergency Power of the President?
(a) National Emergency
(b) Financial Emergency
(c) Breakdown of Constitutional Machinery in a State
(d) Breakout of an epidermic

Ans : MAIN 2006

Thus (d) is correct option.

11. For how long can President's rule be imposed in a state?
(a) 1 month
(b) 2 months
(c) 6 months
(d) 3 months

Ans : SQP 2007

Thus (c) is correct option.

NODIA

67. What options are open to the President when an Ordinary Bill is sent to him for his assent?

Ans : MAIN 2004

When an Ordinary Bill is sent to the President for assent, the President has three options:

1. Give Assent: The President can approve the bill, making it law.
2. Withhold Assent: The President can refuse to approve the bill, thereby vetoing it.
3. Return the Bill: The President can send the bill back to Parliament with recommendations for reconsideration. If Parliament passes it again, the President must give assent.

68. Under what circumstances can the President of India use his discretionary powers?

Ans : SQP 2004

1. Prime Minister in a Hung Parliament: If no party secures a Lok Sabha majority, the President must appoint a new Prime Minister instead of following the outgoing PM's advice.
2. Prime Minister After Sudden Death: The President appoints a new Prime Minister if the current one dies unexpectedly.
3. Dissolution of Lok Sabha: If the ruling party loses its majority or faces a no-confidence vote, the President can dissolve the Lok Sabha or ask another party to prove its majority.
4. Dismissal of Ministers: If the Council of Ministers loses the House's confidence and refuses to resign, the President may dismiss them.

THREE MARKS QUESTIONS

69. The President is the head of the State and exercises his / her powers on the advice of the Prime Minister and the Council of Ministers. With reference to this, answer the following questions:

(i) What are the three types of emergencies that can be proclaimed by the President?

(ii) Mention any three legislative powers of the President.

(iii) Give any two reasons to justify the need for indirect election of the President. What is the composition of the Electoral College which elects the President?

Ans : MAIN 2023

(i) Three types of emergencies that can be proclaimed by the President :
   (a) National Emergency: Declared under Article 352 in case of war, external aggression, or armed rebellion.
   (b) State Emergency (President's Rule): Declared under Article 356 if the governance in a state cannot be carried on in accordance with the Constitution.
   (c) Financial Emergency: Declared under Article 360 if there is a threat to the financial stability of the country.

(ii) Three legislative powers of the President:
   (a) Summoning and Proroguing Parliament: The President has the power to summon or prorogue sessions of the Parliament and dissolve the Lok Sabha.
   (b) Assent to Bills: A bill passed by Parliament becomes a law only after the President's assent. The President may give or withhold assent, or return the bill for reconsideration (except a money bill).
   (c) Ordinances: The President can promulgate ordinances when Parliament is not in session, which have the same effect as laws.

(iii) Reasons justifying the need for indirect election of the President:
   (a) Representation of States: The indirect election ensures that both the Union and the states have a say in the election, reflecting the federal structure of India.
   (b) Minimizing Political Conflict: Direct elections could lead to political conflict and rivalry between the President and the Prime Minister, as a directly elected President might

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

24. Who settles disputes arising in connection with the election of the President of India?

Ans : COMP 2012

The Supreme Court

25. Who is the Supreme Commander of the Armed forces of India?

Ans : MAIN 2020

President.

26. What is the normal term of office of the Vice-President of India?

Ans : SQP 2020

5 years.

27. State any one qualification necessary for the election of the President of India.

Ans : COMP 2015

He should be a citizen of India.

28. Who is the Head of State in the Union of India?

Ans : MAIN 2018

The President is the Head of State (Chief Executive) in the Union of India.

29. Who administers oath of office to the President?

Ans : SQP 2019

The Chief Justice of India administers the Oath of Office to the President.

30. What is the term of office of the President of India ?

Ans : COMP 2016

The President holds office for a term of 5 years and is eligible for re-election.

31. What do we call the official process by which a President may be removed from office?

Ans : MAIN 2019

The official process by which a President who has violated the constitution is removed from office is known as Impeachment.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

32. What is the normal term of office of the Vice-President?

Ans : SQP 2012

The normal Term of the office of the Vice-President is five years. However, he continues to hold his office until his successor enters upon the office.

33. What is meant by the term 'Ordinance'?

Ans : COMP 2013

An 'Ordinance' implies a direction, or command of an authoritative nature, which has the same face and effect as an Act of Parliament.

34. When can ordinances be issued by the President?

Ans : MAIN 2014

The Ordinance can be issued by the President when both the Houses of Parliament are not in session, and the President is satisfied that circumstances exist which demand, immediate action.

35. Mention three types of Emergencies, which the Constitution makes provision for?

Ans : SQP 2018

(a) National Emergency
(b) Constitutional Emergency
(c) Financial Emergency

36. Mention two important functions of the Vice-President.

Ans : COMP 2011

(a) The Vice-President of the Indian Union acts as the ex-officio Chairman of the Rajya Sabha.
(b) He officiates as President, when the latter is unable to discharge his duties owing to illness or absence from the country.

NODIA

37. Can the President function without the Council of Ministers ?

Ans : SQP 2008

No, the President cannot function without the Council of Ministers.

CHAPTER 14

PRESIDENT AND VICE PRESIDENT

SUMMARY

1. PRESIDENT

Qualifications for Election : To be eligible for election as the President, a candidate must be at least 35 years old, a citizen of India, and qualified to be elected as a member of the Lok Sabha.

1.1 Electoral College

The President is elected by an Electoral College comprising elected members of both houses of Parliament and the elected members of the Legislative Assemblies of states and union territories.

1. **Indirect Election :** The President is indirectly elected to ensure a broader representation, reflecting federalism and preventing regional bias.
2. **Term of Office :** The President serves a 5-year term and can be re-elected.
3. **Impeachment :** The President can be impeached for violation of the Constitution, through a process initiated in either house of Parliament.

1.2 Powers of the President

1. **Executive Powers :** Appoints the Prime Minister, Council of Ministers, Governors, judges of the Supreme Court, and other key officials.
2. **Legislative Powers :** Summons and prorogues Parliament, can dissolve the Lok Sabha, and can promulgate ordinances when Parliament is not in session.
3. **Financial Powers :** Ensures no money bill can be introduced in Parliament without the President's prior approval.
4. **Judicial Powers :** Can grant pardons, reprieves, respites, or commutations of punishment.
5. **Discretionary Powers :** In specific circumstances, such as appointing a Prime Minister in a hung Parliament, the President can act at their discretion.
6. **Emergency Powers :** Declares National, State, and Financial Emergencies as provided in the Constitution.

2. VICE-PRESIDENT

Qualifications for Election : The Vice-President must be at least 35 years old, a citizen of India, and eligible to be elected as a member of the Rajya Sabha.

Term of Office : The Vice-President serves for 5 years and can be re-elected.

Powers : The Vice-President acts as the ex-officio Chairman of the Rajya Sabha. In the absence of the President, the Vice-President acts as the acting President.

MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTION

1. During a hung assembly when no party gets the majority, the President appoints the Prime Minister. What power is the President exercising?

(a) Legislative
(b) Executive
(c) Discretionary
(d) Judicial

Ans : MAIN 2024

Thus (c) is correct option.

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

Council of Ministers.

45. Mention any two financial powers of the President.

Ans : MAIN 2001

1. Control over the Contingency Fund: The President can authorize spending from the Contingency Fund of India for unexpected expenses.
2. Recommendation for Money Bills: A Money Bill can only be introduced in Parliament with the President's prior approval.

46. Mention any two legislative powers of the President of India.

Ans : SQP 2007

(i) The President holds the authority to convene and suspend sessions of Parliament.
(ii) The President is empowered to appoint twelve members to the Rajya Sabha.

47. When does the President address both the Houses of Parliament assembled together?

Ans : COMP 1982

1. At the beginning of the first session after a General Election.
2. At the beginning of the first session of each year (typically the Budget Session).

In these addresses, the President outlines the government's policies and legislative agenda.

48. Mention two military powers of the President of India.

Ans : MAIN 2007

1. Supreme Commander of the Armed Forces: The President is the ceremonial head of the Indian Armed Forces, holding the title of the Supreme Commander.
2. Power to Declare War and Peace: The President has the authority to declare war or conclude peace, but this is done based on the advice of the Council of Ministers.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

49. What is an 'Ordinance' ? Write one limitation.

Ans : SQP 2007,2014,2018

An ordinance is a presidential decree that holds the force of law.
Limitation : The ordinance must be presented to Parliament in its next session, and if Parliament rejects it, the ordinance becomes void.

50. State one limitation imposed on the powers of the President by :
(a) The Parliament.
(b) The Council of Ministers.

Ans : COMP 1996

(a) The President has the authority to promulgate an ordinance, which must receive approval from Parliament within six weeks.
(b) The President may declare an emergency solely based on the recommendations of the Council of Ministers.

51. Who has the power to promulgate an ordinance at the Centre ? When can it be promulgated?

Ans : SQP 2000,2009,2014,2015

(a) When they determine that immediate and necessary legislative action is required.
(b) When Parliament is not in session.

52. When can the national and financial emergency be declared?

Ans : COMP 2019

(i) National Emergency: A national emergency can be declared in the event of a war, external aggression, or armed rebellion within the country.
(ii) Financial Emergency: Under Article 360, the President may proclaim a financial emergency when the financial stability or credit of India is threatened.

NODIA

53. With in what time limit does the approval of the parliament must be taken after the declaration of any type of emergency?

Ans : COMP 1981,1986

A National Emergency must be approved

BETTER THAN BOOK IN THE MARKET

Why students are choosing this book 👉

School teachers already use this content to set papers.

Still not sure?

- 👉 Match this PDF with your question papers
- 👉 See the similarity yourself

Why does this happen?

- ✓ Teachers have its PDF & Word files
- ✓ Easy access
- ✓ Direct copy-paste questions
- ✓ Same pattern followed

Don't miss out—get the advantage today!

12. Which article stipulates that there shall be a Vice President of India?
(a) Article 12
(b) Article 62
(c) Article 63
(d) Article 65

Ans : COMP 2012

Thus (c) is correct option.

13. Who administers the oath of office to the President of India?
(a) Comptroller and Auditor General of India
(b) Prime Minister of India
(c) Chief Justice of India
(d) Judge of the Supreme Court

Ans : MAIN 2009

Thus (c) is correct option.

14. What is the term of office of the President of India?
(a) Five years
(b) Seven years
(c) Three years
(d) Ten years

Ans : SQP 2013

Thus (a) is correct option.

ONE MARK QUESTIONS

15. State any one qualification necessary for the election of the President of India.

Ans : COMP 2015

He should be a citizen of India.

16. When and how can the President of India be removed from office.

Ans : MAIN 2006,1987,2016

The President can be removed from his office for violation of the Constitution by Impeachment.

17. What is the term of office of the President of India?

Ans : SQP 1988

The President of India is elected for 5 years but he can be removed before expiry of his term through impeachment.

18. What is the name of the body that elects the President ? What is the role of nominated members in it?

Ans : COMP 1991,1999,2020

Electoral College is the body that elects the President. Nominated MPs and nominated MLAs have no hand in electing the President.

19. Who administers the Oath of Office to the President?

Ans : MAIN 1985

The Oath of Office to the President is administered by the Chief Justice of India, in presence of the Prime Minister and his Council of Ministers.

20. Mention any two executive powers of the President.

Ans : SQP 2007

(a) To appoint and dismiss high officials.
(b) To administer Union Territories.

21. Who is the ex-officio chairperson of the Rajya Sabha?

Ans : COMP 2015

Vice-President.

22. State the reason why the President cannot dissolve the Rajya Sabha.

Ans : MAIN 1982

The President cannot dissolve the Rajya Sabha because it is a permanent House.

23. Mr. Konar was not found eligible for the election as the Vice-President of India even though he had the qualifications of being a citizen of India and not being a member of the Parliament and the State legislature.
On What grounds was he disqualified ? Give one reason.

Ans : SQP 2009

For holding any office of profit under the Centre or the state government.

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

3. To preserve the parliamentary system, where the President holds a largely ceremonial role.
4. To ensure efficiency and cost-effectiveness, avoiding the complexities of a direct election.

61. How can the President vacate his office? On what grounds can the President of India be removed from office ?

Ans : MAIN 2011

The President of India can vacate office in the following ways:
1. Resignation: By submitting a written resignation to the Vice-President.
2. Completion of Term: After completing the five-year term.
3. Impeachment: The President can be removed for violation of the Constitution, initiated by either House of Parliament and requiring a two-thirds majority in both Houses after investigation.

62. Name the body as well as the process involved in the election of the President.

Ans : SQP 2013

The body involved in the election of the President of India is the Electoral College, which includes:
1. Elected members of both Houses of Parliament.
2. Elected members of the Legislative Assemblies of States.
3. Elected members of the Legislative Assemblies of Union Territories with assemblies.

The process is through indirect election using a single transferable vote system with proportional representation. The candidate must secure more than 50% of the total valid votes to win.

63. Mention the occasion when the President addresses both the Houses of Parliament assembled together.

Ans : COMP 2015

1. At the start of the first session after a general election.
2. At the start of the first session each year (usually the Budget Session).

64. How long can the Vice-President continue to hold office even after the expiry of his term? How can the Vice-President be removed from office?

Ans : MAIN 2000

The Vice-President can continue to hold office until his successor assumes charge, even after the expiry of his term.
The Vice-President can be removed from office by a resolution passed by a majority of all the members of the Rajya Sabha and agreed to by the Lok Sabha. However, a 14-day notice must be given before moving such a resolution.

65. State the power of Vice-President as the ex-office Chairman of the Rajya Sabha.

Ans : SQP 2002

1. Presiding over Rajya Sabha sessions: The Vice-President conducts the proceedings and maintains order during debates.
2. Deciding on points of order: The Vice-President has the authority to decide on procedural issues and points of order raised during discussions.
3. Casting vote: In the case of a tie on any matter, the Vice-President exercises a casting vote to break the deadlock.
4. Ensuring discipline: The Vice-President can take disciplinary actions against members for unruly behavior or breaches of rules.

66. Why are the ordinances considered temporary measures?

Ans : COMP 2003

Ordinances must be presented to both Houses of Parliament when they reconvene. If Parliament rejects the ordinance, it will expire. If Parliament does not reject it, the ordinance will automatically terminate six weeks after Parliament has reassembled.

NODIA
Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

by Parliament within one month of its declaration, whereas Constitutional and Financial Emergencies require parliamentary approval within two months of being declared.

54. How can the Vice-President be removed from office ? Is there any provision for impeachment of the Vice-President in the Constitution?

Ans : MAIN 1992

The Vice-President of India can be removed from office by a resolution passed by a majority of all the members of the Rajya Sabha and agreed to by the Lok Sabha. However, a 14-day notice must be given before moving such a resolution in the Rajya Sabha.

There is no provision for impeachment of the Vice-President in the Constitution, unlike the President. The Vice-President is removed by a special resolution process, not impeachment.

55. How is the Vice-President elected ? Do MLAs have any role in it?

Ans : SQP 1987,2005,2010

The Vice-President is elected by an Electoral College consisting of the elected and nominated members of both Houses of Parliament. MLAs do not have a role in this election.

The Vice-President is elected by MPs only, while the President is elected by both MPs and MLAs.

56. Mention any two powers of the Vice-President as Chairman of the Rajya Sabha?

Ans : MAIN 1988,1991

(a) He determines whether a question or resolution is permissible in the Rajya Sabha.

(b) He sets the order and time limits for members' speeches.

57. What are the qualifications which an individual should possess to be elected as the Vice-President?

Ans : SQP 2016

1. Citizen of India: The person must be a citizen of India.
2. Age: Must be at least 35 years old.
3. Qualification for Rajya Sabha: Must be qualified to be elected as a member of the Rajya Sabha (Council of States).
4. No Office of Profit: The person must not hold any office of profit under the Government of India, a State Government, or any local authority.

58. Mention the qualifications necessary for election as President of India.

Ans : COMP 2018

1. Citizen of India: The individual must be an Indian citizen.
2. Age: Must be at least 35 years old.
3. Qualification for Lok Sabha: Must be qualified to be elected as a member of the Lok Sabha (House of the People).
4. No Office of Profit: Must not hold any office of profit under the Government of India, a State Government, or any local authority.

59. How is the President of India elected?

Ans : MAIN 2019

The President of India is elected by an Electoral College, consisting of:

1. Elected members of Parliament (both Houses).
2. Elected members of State Legislative Assemblies.
3. Elected members of Legislative Assemblies of Union Territories with legislative assemblies.

The election follows a single transferable vote system with proportional representation, and the candidate must secure over 50% of the valid votes to win.

60. Why is the President elected by indirect elections?

Ans : COMP 2017

1. To ensure broad representation, involving both Parliament and state legislatures.
2. To maintain a balance between the Centre and States in the election process.

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

claim more authority.

Composition of the Electoral College: The Electoral College that elects the President consists of:

(a) Elected Members of both Houses of Parliament (Lok Sabha and Rajya Sabha).
(b) Elected Members of the Legislative Assemblies of all States.
(c) Elected Members of the Legislative Assemblies of Union Territories (Delhi, Puducherry).

70. With regard to the executive powers of the President, discuss :
(a) Appointment of the Prime Minister and the Cabinet.
(b) Appointment of other high dignitaries.
(c) Control of the President on the State Government.
(d) His military and diplomatic powers.

Ans : SQP 2016

(a) Appointment of the Prime Minister and the Cabinet:
  (i) Prime Minister: The President appoints the Prime Minister, who is usually the leader of the majority party or coalition in the Lok Sabha. In case of a hung Parliament (no party having a clear majority), the President exercises discretion in appointing the Prime Minister.
  (ii) Council of Ministers: The President appoints the other ministers on the advice of the Prime Minister. The Council of Ministers, along with the Prime Minister, is collectively responsible to the Lok Sabha.

(b) Appointment of other high dignitaries : The President appoints several high-ranking officials in the country, including:
  (i) Governors of States: The President appoints the Governors, who act as the executive heads of their respective states.
  (ii) Judges of the Supreme Court and High Courts: The President appoints judges, including the Chief Justice of India and other judges of the Supreme Court and High Courts, in consultation with appropriate judicial authorities.
  (iii) Attorney General of India: The President appoints the Attorney General, the top legal advisor to the Government of India.

(c) Control of the President on the State Government:
  (i) Governor's Role: As the appointing authority for the Governors, the President has an indirect influence over the state governments. The Governor acts as the representative of the President in the state.
  (ii) President's Rule: Under Article 356, if the President, based on the report of the Governor or other reasons, is convinced that the governance in a state cannot be carried out in accordance with the Constitution, the President can impose President's Rule. This leads to the central government taking direct control of the state's administration.

(d) Military Powers and diplomatic powers
  (i) Military Powers : The President is the Supreme Commander of the Armed Forces of India. This means that the President has the highest authority over the Army, Navy, and Air Force. However, these powers are exercised by the President based on the advice of the Prime Minister and the Council of Ministers.The President has the power to declare war and conclude peace, but such decisions are made with the advice of the Council of Ministers.
  (ii) Diplomatic Powers: The President represents India in international forums and affairs. He appoints Indian ambassadors and other diplomats to foreign countries. The President also receives foreign ambassadors and diplomatic representatives. He can enter into treaties and agreements

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

at the Centre. However, after some time, Smt. Sonia Gandhi indicated that she was unable to establish a government. Consequently, President Shri K.R. Narayanan dissolved the Lok Sabha.

88. Comment on the statement : "The President holds office of great dignity, but very little power."

Ans : MAIN 2004

The statement, "The President holds office of great dignity, but very little power," reflects the unique nature of the office of the President of India. As the ceremonial head of state, the President occupies a position of high respect and constitutional importance, symbolizing the unity and integrity of the nation. However, in practice, the President's powers are largely symbolic and limited by the parliamentary system of governance.

The President's role is mostly guided by the advice of the Council of Ministers, headed by the Prime Minister, as required by Article 74 of the Constitution. While the President has certain key responsibilities, such as appointing the Prime Minister, declaring emergencies, and giving assent to bills passed by Parliament, these functions are typically performed under the direction of the elected government.

In this way, the President's office represents the dignity of the state, but their actual authority is constrained by the democratic framework, where real power rests with the elected executive and Parliament.

CASE BASED QUESTION

89. With reference to the given picture, answer the following questions:

(a) Identify the personality given in the picture. Who is he?

(b) How is he elected?

(c) What are his functions?

Ans : COMP 2024

(a) He is Jagdeep Dhankhar, the current Vice President of India.

(b) The Vice President of India is elected by an electoral college composed of members from both houses of Parliament. The election is conducted through a secret ballot and utilizes the proportional representation system with a single transferable vote.

(c) His functions are as follows:

(i) He oversees the functioning of the Rajya Sabha as its ex-officio Chairman.

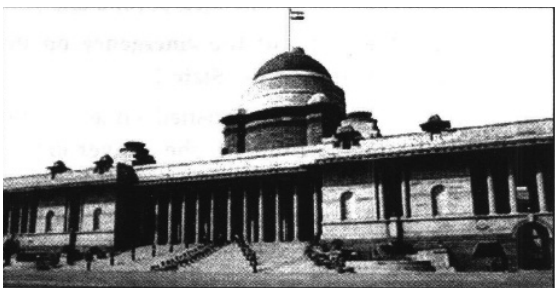
(ii) He assumes the duties of the President when the President is unable to perform them due to illness or being abroad.

(iii) He serves as Acting President in the event of a vacancy in the presidency due to death, resignation, impeachment, or other reasons.

(iv) He undertakes goodwill missions to foreign nations.

(v) He provides guidance to the chairpersons of various committees within the house.

90. Study the picture and answer the questions that follow :



NODIA

exercise his discretionary judgment to invite a leader who can establish a stable administration to become the Prime Minister. His decisions and judgment in these situations are crucial for maintaining governmental stability.

73. The President of India is the Head of the Indian Republic while the Governor is the Head of the State Government. In this context, answer the following questions.
(a) Justify the need for 'Indirect Election' of the President.
(b) Describe the circumstances under which the President can declare an emergency in the country.
(c) Enumerate four similar features in the legislative powers of the President and the Governor.

Ans : MAIN 2010,2012,2005

(a) Need for 'Indirect Election' of the President :
(i) Head of State, not Government: The President represents the nation but does not govern it directly. An indirect election ensures the office remains non-political.
(ii) Representation of Federal Structure: The election involves both Members of Parliament (MPs) and Members of Legislative Assemblies (MLAs) from states, ensuring that the President represents both the union and states equally.
(iii) Avoiding Populism: A direct election could turn the President into a rival power center to the Prime Minister, affecting the balance of power. Indirect elections keep the President's role more ceremonial.

(b) Circumstances under which the President can declare an emergency in the country.
(i) National Emergency: The President can declare a national emergency if India's security is threatened by war, external aggression, or armed rebellion. This can be done preemptively, based on the Council of Ministers' recommendation. Notable instances include the 1962 Indo-China war, the 1971 Indo-Pakistan war, and the 1975 emergency declared by Indira Gandhi. The proclamation must be approved by Parliament within one month and can last for six months, extendable with parliamentary approval.
(ii) Financial Emergency: Under Article 360, the President can declare a financial emergency if the financial stability or credit of India is at risk.

(c) Four similar features in the legislative powers of the President and the Governor.
(i) Summoning and Proroguing: Both the President and the Governor have the power to summon and prorogue their respective legislatures (Parliament for the President, State Legislative Assembly for the Governor).
(ii) Dissolving the House: The President can dissolve the Lok Sabha, and the Governor can dissolve the State Legislative Assembly.
(iii) Ordinance-making Power: Both the President and the Governor can issue ordinances when their respective legislatures are not in session. These ordinances must be approved by Parliament or the State Assembly once they reconvene.
(iv) Assenting to Bills: Both the President and the Governor have the power to give assent to bills, withhold assent, or return bills (except Money Bills) to the legislature for reconsideration.

74. Why is the President of India referred to as a nominal head of the State ? State two examples of his legislative powers that suggest his nominal status.

Ans : SQP 2010

The President of India is called a nominal head because their powers are largely ceremonial and exercised based on the advice of the Prime Minister and Council of Ministers.
Two examples of legislative powers showing

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

nominal status:

1. Assent to Bills: The President must give assent to a bill if Parliament passes it again after reconsideration.
2. Ordinance-making: The President issues ordinances on the advice of the Council of Ministers, and they require parliamentary approval when Parliament reconvenes.

75. State the composition of the Electoral College in the election of the President of India.

Ans : COMP 2014,2016

The President is elected by an Electoral College, a joint body consisting of elected Members of Parliament (MPs) from both Houses and elected Members of the Legislative Assemblies (MLAs) of the states. This Electoral College is a temporary body that dissolves immediately after the presidential election is completed. Nominated MPs and MLAs do not participate in electing the President.

76. Mention three types of Emergencies that the President is empowered to proclaim.

Ans : MAIN 2016

The President of India is empowered to proclaim three types of emergencies:

1. National Emergency (Article 352): Declared when the security of India or any part of its territory is threatened by war, external aggression, or armed rebellion.
2. State Emergency (Article 356): Also known as President's Rule, it is declared when the governance in a state cannot be carried out according to the provisions of the Constitution, often due to the failure of constitutional machinery in the state.
3. Financial Emergency (Article 360): Declared when the financial stability or credit of India is threatened, allowing the central government to take control over the financial affairs of states.

77. Write a critical note on the role of the Vice-President, with reference to his:
(a) Election
(b) Functions
(c) Position

Ans : SQP 2018

(a) State legislatures do not participate in the election of the Vice-President. The Vice-President is elected by a joint vote of both Houses of Parliament using a proportional representation system with a single transferable vote. According to the June 1997 Ordinance, a Vice-Presidential candidate's nomination must be proposed by 20 MPs and seconded by another 20 MPs.

(b) Functions :

1. He oversees and manages the debates and proceedings in the Rajya Sabha.
2. He determines the admissibility of questions or resolutions within the House.
3. He decides the speaking order and time limits for members during sessions.
4. He has the authority to suspend the proceedings in case of serious disorder.
5. He provides guidance to the Chairpersons of various committees within the House.

(c) Despite being the second-highest constitutional office, the Vice-President's role is mostly ceremonial with little influence in governance or policymaking, unless acting as the interim President.

78. With reference to the Vice-President of India, answer the following questions :
(a) Qualification
(b) Election

Ans : COMP 2018

(a) Qualification :
(i) Must be a citizen of India.
(ii) Must have completed 35 years of age.
(iii) Must be qualified to be elected as a member of the Rajya Sabha (Council of States).
(iv) Must not hold any office of profit under the Government of India, any state government, or any local

NODIA

authority, other than that of the Vice-President or President or Governor of a state.

(b) The election of the Vice-President of India does not involve the state legislatures. Instead, the Vice-President is chosen by an Electoral College made up of members from both Houses of Parliament. The election process uses proportional representation and the single transferable vote system. As per the ordinance from June 1997, a Vice-Presidential candidate's nomination must be proposed by 20 MPs and seconded by another 20 MPs. Additionally, the candidate is required to submit a security deposit of Rs.15,000.

79. Explain any three Discretionary Powers of the President.

Ans : MAIN 2020

1. Appointment of the Prime Minister: In situations where no party or coalition has a clear majority in the Lok Sabha, the President exercises discretion in appointing the Prime Minister. The President can invite a leader, who they believe can form a stable government, to take charge as the Prime Minister.
2. Dissolution of the Lok Sabha: The President has the discretionary power to dissolve the Lok Sabha if the Prime Minister loses the confidence of the House and no alternative government can be formed. The President can call for fresh elections, thus dissolving the existing Lok Sabha.
3. Returning a Bill for Reconsideration: The President can return a non-money bill (except a constitutional amendment bill) passed by the Parliament for reconsideration, if they feel the bill needs further deliberation. However, if the Parliament passes the bill again with or without changes, the President is obliged to give assent to the bill.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

80. Mention any four executive Powers of the President.

Ans : SQP 2020

The Constitution states that the executive powers of the Union are vested in the President, covering all subjects on which Parliament can legislate. These powers include:

1. Administrative Head: The President is the head of the Union administration, with all orders and actions carried out in his name.
2. Appointment of Prime Minister and Ministers: The President appoints the Prime Minister and, on their advice, other ministers. Ministers can also be dismissed or resign to the President.
3. Appointment of Key Officials: The President appoints high-ranking officials such as the Attorney General, Supreme Court judges, Governors, and heads of commissions.
4. State Control: The President can issue directions to state governments and has full control over a state during emergencies through the Governor.

81. The President of India enjoys vast powers. In this context, briefly explain

(a) Any three of his/her Executive Powers.

(b) Any three of his/her Legislative Powers.

(c) Any two of his/her Judicial Powers

Ans : COMP 2019

(a) Executive Powers: The Constitution states that the executive power of the Union is vested in the President. These powers include:

1. Head of the Union Administration: All executive orders are issued in the President's name, and all Union officials are subordinate to him.
2. Formation of the Council of Ministers: The President invites the leader of the majority party in Parliament to form the government and, on the advice of the Prime Minister, appoints other ministers. The Prime Minister must

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

with foreign countries, but these require parliamentary approval in certain cases.

11. With reference to legislative powers of the President discuss :
(a) Summoning and proguing the Parliament
(b) Dissolving the Lok Sabha
(c) Assenting to state Bills.

Ans : COMP 2018

(a) Summoning and Proroguing the Parliament:
  (i) Summoning: The President can summon either House of Parliament at any time, ensuring there's no gap of more than six months between two sessions. This is done on the advice of the Council of Ministers.
  (ii) Proroguing: The President can also prorogue (end a session) either House, terminating the session without dissolving the House, based on ministerial advice.

(b) Dissolving the Lok Sabha: The President has the power to dissolve the Lok Sabha, ending its term and triggering new elections. This is done on the advice of the Prime Minister and Council of Ministers. Dissolution can occur before the five-year term if the government loses majority support and no alternative is viable.

(c) Assenting to State Bills : When a State Bill is reserved by the Governor, the President can:
  (i) Give Assent, making it law.
  (ii) Withhold Assent, vetoing it.
  (iii) Return the Bill for reconsideration.
  If passed again by the State Legislature, the President must give assent. These powers ensure the President's involvement in both parliamentary and state legislative processes.

12. Discuss the position of the President, with reference to :
(a) Limitations on his Powers.
(b) His Discretionary Powers.

Ans : MAIN 2010,2011,2015

(a) The limitations on his powers are as under :
  (i) Exercise of Presidential Powers by the Real Executive : The President's authority is carried out by the Prime Minister and the Council of Ministers. The 44th Amendment Act of 1978 granted the President the ability to return advice from the Prime Minister and Council of Ministers for reconsideration. However, if the same advice is submitted again, the President is obligated to follow it.
  (ii) Proclamations of Emergency : Any emergency declarations made by the President under Articles 352, 356, and 360 must be presented to Parliament within one month for approval. If Parliament does not approve the emergency proclamation, it becomes null and void and is no longer in effect.
  (iii) Impeachment of the President : The President can be impeached by Parliament for violating the Constitution in both its letter and spirit. This ensures that the President adheres strictly to the Constitution, as the constitutional framework itself acts as a significant restraint, preventing the President from acting outside its boundaries.

(b) Discretionary Powers :
  (i) Guardian of the Constitution and Law : The President plays a pivotal role in the functioning of India's Parliamentary system. Upon taking the oath of office in the name of God, the President is solemnly committed to safeguarding the Constitution and upholding the law. This oath obligates him to serve diligently for the welfare of the people of India.
  (ii) Appointment of Prime Minister in a Coalition Scenario :When no single party obtains a clear majority and a coalition seeks to form the government, the President must

NODIA

(ii) If there is a danger of armed rebellion within the country.

(c) (i) The President plays a crucial role in the functioning of the parliamentary system in India. Upon assuming office, he takes an oath in the name of God, pledging to uphold the Constitution and the law. This oath obligates him to act as the guardian of the Constitution and to serve for the welfare of the people of India.

(ii) In the event that no single party secures a clear majority, a coalition of parties may claim the right to form the government. The President must exercise discretionary judgment in such situations, inviting a leader capable of providing a stable government to serve as Prime Minister. His decision in such cases is critically important for the country.

83. The President may declare an emergency in a State, if he/she is convinced of the breakdown of constitutional machinery in the State. In this context, answer the following questions:

(a) When can such an emergency be proclaimed ? Why is such an emergency often referred to as President's Rule ?

(b) What is the duration of such an emergency ? State two conditions under which such an emergency can be extended beyond one year.

(c) State the effect of the emergency on the administration of the State ?

Ans : SQP 2012

(a) The President can declare an emergency in a state under Article 356 if they are convinced that the state government cannot function according to the provisions of the Constitution, indicating a breakdown of constitutional machinery. This is often referred to as President's Rule because, during such an emergency, the state government is dissolved, and the President directly administers the state, typically through the Governor.

(b) Initially, the emergency can last for six months but can be extended up to a maximum of three years with parliamentary approval every six months. An emergency can be extended beyond one year if the following two conditions are met:

(i) A national emergency is already in force in the country or in any part of the country.

(ii) The Election Commission certifies that it is not possible to conduct elections in the state due to difficulties such as law and order problems.

(c) Effect of the emergency on the administration of the State :

1. The President cannot suspend constitutional provisions related to the functioning of the High Courts in the state. The judiciary remains independent and operational.
2. The State's annual budget and other legislative matters are handled and approved by Parliament during the period of President's Rule.
3. The President can transfer all executive powers of the state to the Governor, who acts on behalf of the central government.
4. The State Legislative Assembly may be dissolved or kept in suspension. During this time, Parliament assumes the legislative functions of the state, enacting laws on its behalf.

84. According to Article 63 of our Constitution , "There shall be a Vice-President of India. In this context state:

(a) the manner of his/her election

(b) any three qualifications for election ; and

(c) two of his/her important powers.

Ans : COMP 2011

(a) The Vice-President of India is elected by an electoral college consisting of the members of both Houses of Parliament (Lok Sabha and Rajya Sabha). The election is conducted through the system of proportional representation by means of a single transferable vote, and voting

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

keep the President informed of all decisions made by the Council of Ministers.

3. Appointment and Removal of High Officials: The President appoints key officials like the Attorney General, judges of the Supreme Court and High Courts, ambassadors, and heads of commissions like the UPSC and Election Commission. He also has the power to remove ministers and top officials.
4. Administration of Union Territories: The President governs Union Territories through administrators appointed by him.
5. Control over State Governments: The Union Government can issue directions to state governments, and during President's Rule, the President exercises full control over the state through the Governor.

(b) Legislative Powers:

1. Summoning and Proroguing Parliament: The President summons and prorogues Parliament and can dissolve the Lok Sabha on the advice of the Prime Minister. The Rajya Sabha, as a permanent body, is not subject to dissolution.
2. Addressing Parliament: The President addresses both Houses after each General Election and at the beginning of the first session each year, outlining the government's policies. He can also send messages to either House at any time.
3. Assent to Bills: A bill becomes law only with the President's assent. The President can approve, reject, or return a non-money bill for reconsideration. If passed again by Parliament, the President must give assent. Money bills require prior Presidential recommendation.
4. Ordinance Making Power: The President can issue ordinances when Parliament is not in session. These ordinances have the force of law but must be approved by Parliament within six weeks of reassembly.

(c) Judicial Powers:

1. Power of Pardon: The President can grant pardons, reprieves, respites, and commutations, especially in cases involving the death penalty or sentences from military courts.
2. Immunity from Legal Proceedings: The President cannot be arrested or tried in court during their term. A civil suit can only be filed with two months' prior notice.

82. According to Dr. Ambedkar, "The President represents the nation but does not rule the nation." In this context answer the following questions:

(a) The President of India referred to as a nominal head of the State. State two examples of his legislative powers that suggest his nominal status.

(b) Mention the circumstances when the President can declare a national emergency.

(c) Explain two discretionary powers of the President.

Ans : COMP 2014

(a) The President of India is a nominal and constitutional head, as most powers are exercised by the Prime Minister and the Council of Ministers.

(i) The President can dissolve the Lok Sabha, but only after consulting the Prime Minister.

(ii) The President has the power to veto a bill. However, if the Parliament passes the bill a second time and sends it for approval, the President is required to sign it for it to become law.

(b) National Emergency is declared by the President in the following situations:

(i) When the President is convinced that the security of India or any part of it is threatened by external aggression or war.

NODIA

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

(a) Under Article 352 of the Indian Constitution, the President can declare a National Emergency in the following situations:
   (i) War: When India faces a direct attack or the threat of war from a foreign nation.
   (ii) External Aggression: When India is subjected to an invasion or external aggression.
   (iii) Armed Rebellion: When there is a significant internal disturbance, such as an armed rebellion, that endangers the security or integrity of the country.

(b) The Emergency can remain in effect for up to six months at a time. It may be extended in additional six-month intervals if approved by Parliament with a majority of the total members of each House and at least two-thirds of the members present and voting. However, if the Lok Sabha passes a resolution disapproving the Emergency, the President is required to revoke the Proclamation without any discretion.

(c) The Proclamation of Emergency has significant impacts on both the autonomy of states and fundamental rights.
Effects on Centre-State Relations:
   (i) The Union Parliament gains the authority to legislate on any subject within the State List.
   (ii) The Union Government can issue directives to states regarding the exercise of their executive powers.
   (iii) The Central Government is empowered to suspend the financial provisions of the Constitution.

Effects on Fundamental Rights:
   (i) All Fundamental Rights under Article 19 are suspended during the Emergency.
   (ii) The President may suspend the right to approach any court for the enforcement of rights, except those guaranteed under Articles 20 and 21.
   (iii) The exercise of Fundamental Rights may be partially or entirely suspended.

87. Discuss the actual position of the President of India under the following headings :
(a) Powers shall be exercised by President in accordance with the advice of his Council of Ministers
(b) Situations may arise when the President may use his Discretion

Ans : COMP 2003

(a) Under Article 74 of the Constitution, the President is required to act on the advice of the Council of Ministers, led by the Prime Minister. This provision ensures that the President's role remains largely ceremonial, with executive power resting in the hands of the elected government. The key points are:
   (i) Binding advice: The President must accept and act according to the decisions made by the Council of Ministers. This includes decisions on policy matters, the signing of bills into law, and the declaration of emergencies.
   (ii) Reconsideration power: While the President may send a piece of advice or a bill back to the Council for reconsideration, once it is resubmitted, the President is constitutionally bound to act on it. This arrangement ensures that the President serves as a constitutional head of state, while the actual governance is conducted by the political executive.

(b) When no political party or leader secures a majority in the Lok Sabha following a general election, or when multiple leaders vie for the position of Prime Minister, situations can also arise if a Prime Minister resigns. In such cases, the President must make a prudent decision. For instance, on April 17, 1999, Prime Minister Shri A.B. Vajpayee submitted his resignation. The President requested him to remain in office until alternative arrangements could be made. On April 21, the President invited opposition leader Smt. Sonia Gandhi to form a government

is done by secret ballot.

(b) To be eligible for election as the Vice-President of India, a person must meet the following criteria:
  (i) He must be a citizen of India.
  (ii) He must be at least 30 years of age.
  (iii) He must be qualified to be elected as a member of the Rajya Sabha.
  (iv) He must not hold any office of profit under the Government of India or any State Government.

(c) The Vice-President typically has limited involvement with the office of the President, but he performs the following key duties:
  (i) Ex-officio Chairman of the Rajya Sabha: The Vice-President's primary role is to serve as the ex-officio Chairman of the Rajya Sabha, where he regulates debates, decides the order of speeches, and rules on the admissibility of resolutions or questions. In cases of serious disorder, he may suspend or adjourn the session and provides guidance to committee chairpersons on their functions.
  (ii) Acting as President: The Vice-President assumes the role of Acting President in three situations: the death, removal, or inability of the President to perform duties due to illness or other reasons. The Vice-President can serve as Acting President for up to six months, during which time a new President must be elected.

85. The President of India is the head of the Union. In this context explain :
(a) The qualifications for election.
(b) The constitution of Electoral College for his/her elections.
(c) The method of his removal.

Ans : MAIN 2000

(a) To qualify for election as the President of India, a candidate must fulfill the following conditions:
  (i) The candidate must be an Indian citizen.
  (ii) They must be at least 35 years of age.
  (iii) They should be eligible for election as a member of the Lok Sabha.
  (iv) They must not hold any office of profit under the central or state government.
  (v) They must not have been convicted of any offense under the law.

(b) The President of India is elected by an Electoral College consisting of:
  (i) Elected members of both Houses of Parliament (Lok Sabha and Rajya Sabha).
  (ii) Elected members of the Legislative Assemblies of States and Union Territories (including Delhi and Puducherry).

(c) The President of India can be removed from office through impeachment for violating the Constitution. The process involves the following steps:
  (i) The impeachment process begins with a resolution in either House of Parliament.
  (ii) The resolution must have the support of at least one-fourth of the members of that House.
  (iii) To pass the resolution, a two-thirds majority of the total membership of the House is required.
  (iv) The other House then conducts the investigation. If the charges are proven and this House also passes the resolution with a two-thirds majority, the President is removed from office.

86. The President is empowered to declare Emergency in the event of War or External Aggression or Armed Rebellion. In this context explain the following :
(a) Circumstances leading to the Proclamation of Emergency
(b) Duration of such Proclamation
(c) Effect of a Proclamation of Emergency on Centre-State relations and Fundamental Rights.

Ans : SQP 2001

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

(a) Identify the building in the picture and state where it is located. Whose official residence is it ?
(b) State the qualifications necessary to become the President of India.
(c) Why is it said that the President of India is only a nominal head ?

Ans : MAIN 2023

(a) The building shown in the picture is Rashtrapati Bhavan, located in New Delhi, India. It serves as the official residence of the President of India.
(b) To qualify for the position of President of India, an individual must:
  (i) Be an Indian citizen.
  (ii) Be at least 35 years old.
  (iii) Be eligible for election as a member of the Lok Sabha.
  (iv) Not hold any office of profit under the Government of India or any state government.
(c) The President of India is considered a ceremonial head because, although occupying the highest constitutional position, they exercise their authority based on the guidance and support of the Council of Ministers, as stipulated in Article 74 of the Constitution. Most executive decisions are made by the Prime Minister and the Council of Ministers, while the President primarily fulfills a symbolic role.

www.nodia.in

NODIA

entire Council of Ministers need to resign.

31. What is meant by the term Inner-Cabinet?

Ans : COMP 2009

The Inner Cabinet is the core group of three to four Cabinet Ministers, whom the Prime Minister meets and consults regularly.

32. What is the term of the office of the Council of Ministers/Cabinet ?

Ans : SQP 2011

The term of the office of the Council of Ministers is 5 years.

33. Explain the term Collective Responsibility.

Ans : MAIN 2013

The term 'Collective Responsibility' implies that the Ministers are responsible to the Lok Sabha not as individuals alone, but collectively.

34. Who is the head of the Union Council of Ministers ?

Ans : COMP 2014

The Prime Minister is the head of the Union Council of Ministers.

35. How long can a Minister stay in office ?

Ans : SQP 2015

A Minister holds the office as long as he enjoys the pleasure of the President.

36. By whom and on whose advice is the Council of Ministers appointed?

Ans : MAIN 2008

The Ministers are appointed by the President on the advice of the Prime Minister.

37. What is meant by the term Cabinet?

Ans : COMP 2017

The word, 'Cabinet implies the council, consisting of the Prime Minister and other Minister of Cabinet rank.

38. Does the resignation of the Prime Minister mean the resignation of the whole Cabinet ?

Ans : SQP 2023

Yes, the resignation of the Prime Minister means the resignation of the whole Cabinet.

TWO MARKS QUESTIONS

39. State any two legislative powers of the Cabinet.

Ans : MAIN 2023

1. Drafting Bills : The Cabinet has the authority to draft and propose bills in the Parliament, shaping legislation according to government policies.
2. Decision on Legislative Agenda : The Cabinet decides the legislative agenda of the Parliament, determining which bills will be introduced and prioritized for discussion.

40. How is the Prime Minister appointed ?

Ans : COMP 2007

The President appoints the Prime Minister, extending the invitation solely to the leader of the majority party in the Lok Sabha. However, if no single party achieves a majority, the President may invite the leader of a coalition of parties that together form a majority in the Lok Sabha.

41. Under what provision can a non-number of Parliament be made a minister ?

Ans : SQP 1987

Yes, a non-member can be appointed as a Minister, but they must be elected or nominated to Parliament within six months.

42. What is understood by the term - 'Individual Responsibility' in a Parliamentary Democracy?

Ans : SQP 2014

If a minister independently makes a decision that serves the department's best interests, he is personally accountable to the President and, in practice, to the Prime Minister, who

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

structure of India. They are the head of the executive branch of government and the leader of the Cabinet. The Prime Minister is responsible for making crucial decisions regarding national policy, international relations, and other high-level matters. The Prime Minister also acts as the principal spokesperson for the government and represents India on the global stage.

The powers of the Prime Minister include:

(i) Supervising the functioning of various ministries.

(ii) Chairing meetings of the Cabinet and shaping the government's policies.

(iii) Advising the President on key appointments, including those of judges, governors, and other high-ranking officials.

(iv) Leading the ruling party and ensuring political stability.

3. COLLECTIVE AND INDIVIDUAL RESPONSIBILITY

A fundamental principle governing the functioning of the Council of Ministers is collective responsibility. This means that all ministers are collectively accountable to the Parliament for the decisions taken by the government. If the government loses a vote of confidence in the Lok Sabha, the entire Council of Ministers, including the Prime Minister, must resign.

In addition to collective responsibility, there is also individual responsibility. Each minister is accountable for the operations and performance of their ministry. If there is a failure in a particular ministry, the minister in charge is expected to take responsibility, including resigning if necessary.

4. DISTINCTION BETWEEN THE COUNCIL OF MINISTERS AND THE CABINET

Though often used interchangeably, there is a distinct difference between the Council of Ministers and the Cabinet. The Cabinet is a smaller, more influential subset of the Council, consisting of the most senior ministers, usually in charge of the key ministries. It is the Cabinet that takes the most important policy decisions and oversees critical areas of governance.

On the other hand, the Council of Ministers includes all ministers, from Cabinet rank to junior ministers, who help in executing various government functions. While the Cabinet is focused on high-level policy making, the larger Council supports the execution of these decisions across various departments.

MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTION

NODIA

1. The junior category of ministers who assist senior ministers:
(a) Cabinet Ministers
(b) Ministers of State
(c) Deputy Ministers
(d) Council of Ministers

Ans : MAIN 2023

Thus (b) is correct option.

2. Who heads the Council of Ministers?
(a) President
(b) Prime Minister
(c) Council Minister
(d) Chief Justice of India

Ans : COMP 2001

Thus (b) is correct option.

3. Who appoints the Prime Minister and the Council of Ministers?
(a) Comptroller and Auditor General of India
(b) Rajya Sabha
(c) Lok Sabha
(d) President

Ans : SQP 2004

Thus (d) is correct option.

4. Who are the most important members of the Council of Ministers?
(a) Ministers of State
(b) Deputy Ministers
(c) Cabinet Ministers
(d) None of the above

The Minister, under Oath of Office, affirms that:

1. Bear true faith and allegiance to the Constitution of India.
2. Uphold the sovereignty and integrity of India.
3. Faithfully perform their duties as a Minister without fear, favor, affection, or ill will.

   Additionally, under the Oath of Secrecy, the Minister commits to not disclose any Cabinet proceedings or confidential information related to their Ministry, both during and after their term in office.

51. Mention three important features of the Cabinet system of government.

Ans : COMP 2010

1. Collective Responsibility: The entire Cabinet is collectively responsible to the Parliament for government decisions and policies.
2. Prime Minister as Head: The Prime Minister leads the Cabinet and acts as the central figure in decision-making and policy coordination.
3. Separation of Powers: While the Cabinet is part of the executive branch, it is closely linked to the legislative branch, ensuring coordination between law-making and governance.

52. Mention the qualifications which a person should possess to be eligible for appointment as a Minister.

Ans : SQP 2012

Only members of Parliament can be appointed as Ministers. If a non-member is chosen for a ministerial position, they must be elected or nominated to Parliament within six months of their appointment. If they do not achieve membership within this timeframe, they must resign from their ministerial role.

53. What are the powers of the Prime Minister as a Chairperson of the Cabinet?

Ans : MAIN 2016

1. Policy Leadership: Sets the agenda and leads policy formulation.
2. Decision-Making: Guides discussions and decisions on key issues.
3. Coordination: Ensures harmony among ministries and resolves conflicts.
4. Advising the President: Recommends appointments and key decisions.
5. Cabinet Reshuffling: Recommends changes in the composition of the Cabinet.

54. State the difference between Collective Responsibility and Individual Responsibility of the Ministers.

Ans : COMP 2018

Aspect	**Collective Responsibility**	**Individual Responsibility**
Account-ability	The entire Cabinet is jointly accountable for government decisions.	Each minister is accountable for their own department
Resignation	All ministers must resign if the government loses a confidence vote.	A minister may resign if there are failures in their department.
Scope	Applies to the whole Cabinet.	Applies to each individual minister.

55. What role does the Prime Minister play as the Leader of the Nation ?

Ans : SQP 2022

The Prime Minister serves as the representative of the nation, announcing major policy decisions and engaging with foreign governments on behalf of the country. Citizens rely on the Prime Minister for

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

ONE MARK QUESTIONS

15. Who is the Constitutional head of the Union Government ?

Ans : MAIN 2015

Prime Minister

16. Who is the head of the Union Council of Ministers?

Ans : COMP 2005

Prime Minister is the head of the Council of Minister.

17. What is the term of office of the Prime Minister ?

Ans : SQP 2006

Five years. But he has to resign if No-Confidence motion is passed against his government.

18. Who appoints the Prime Minister of India ?

Ans : MAIN 2020

Prime Minister is appointed by the President.

19. Mention two important functions of the Prime Minister.

Ans : SQP 2019

(a) Selection and dismissal of Ministers.
(b) Presiding Officer of the Cabinet meetings.

20. What is meant by the Cabinet?

Ans : COMP 2005

The Cabinet refers to a small but important body of senior leaders of party, who are included in the Council of Ministers.

21. By whom and on whose advice is the Council of Ministers appointed?

Ans : SQP 2019, 2016

The Council of Ministers is appointed by the President on the advice of the Prime Minister.

22. How is Union Cabinet formed?

Ans : MAIN 2007

Union Cabinet is formed by the Prime Minister. It consists of senior ministers holding cabinet rank and important portfolios.

23. What procedure must be followed if a motion of No-Confidence against the Council of Ministers is passed in the Union legislature?

Ans : COMP 2015, 1988, 1984

If a motion of No-Confidence is passed, the Government has to resign and General Elections are held.

24. Which body formulates the foreign policy of India?

Ans : MAIN 2012

Union Cabinet.

25. Who administers the oath of office to the – council of Ministers?

Ans : COMP 2018, 2014

The President.

26. What happen when a motion of 'No Confidence' is passed against a Minister?

Ans : SQP 2019

The Minister need to resign.

27. State the body that decides the major policies of the government?

Ans : MAIN 2020

Cabinet

28. Mention one way by which the authority of the Prime Minister can be checked?

Ans : COMP 2014

Authority of the Prime Minister can be checked by the Cabinet, or by the Parliament or by the opposition party.

29. By whom is the Prime Minister appointed?

Ans : SQP 2020

Prime Minister is appointed by the President.

30. What happens to the Council of Ministers if Prime Minister resigns ?

Ans : MAIN 2007

The Prime Minister's resignation means the

NODIA

Ans : MAIN 2008

Thus (c) is correct option.

5. What happens if a non-member of Parliament is appointed as a Minister?
(a) He/she has to become one within six months of appointment
(b) He/she has to become a member in the next elections
(c) He/she can defer the appointment until he/she becomes a member
(d) He/she cannot be appointed.

Ans : COMP 2010

Thus (a) is correct option.

6. Who assist the Cabinet Ministers and the Council of Ministers?
(a) Deputy Ministers
(b) Ministers of State
(c) Governors
(d) None of the above

Ans : SQP 2012

Thus (a) is correct option.

7. Which amongst the following is not a Financial Powers of the Cabinet?
(a) Budget
(b) Summoning the Lok Sabha
(c) Finances of the Government
(d) Introduction of Money Bills

Ans : MAIN 2016

Thus (d) is correct option.

8. Who is the nominal head of the State? Who is the real head of the State?
(a) President; Prime Minister
(b) Prime Minister; President
(c) President; Cabinet Minister
(d) Prime Minister; Cabinet Minister

Ans : COMP 2018

Thus (a) is correct option.

9. The President's Special Address to Parliament is prepared by
(a) The Prime Minister
(b) The Vice President
(c) The Cabinet
(d) The Speaker of the Lok Sabha

Ans : SQP 2022

Thus (c) is correct option.

10. Whose resignation implies resignation of the whole cabinet?
(a) Prime Minister
(b) President
(c) Chief Justice of India
(d) Deputy Minister

Ans : MAIN 2002

Thus (a) is correct option.

11. Who amongst the following has the power to select and dismiss Ministers?
(a) President
(b) Chief Justice of India
(c) Cabinet Minister
(d) Prime Minister

Ans : COMP 2004

Thus (d) is correct option.

12. Who is the Chairman of the Planning Commission and the Atomic Energy Commission?
(a) Atomic Energy Commissioner
(b) Planning Commissioner
(c) President
(d) Prime Minister

Ans : SQP 2006

Thus (d) is correct option.

13. The initiative of summoning the Houses of Parliament is taken by
(a) the Ministry of Parliamentary Affairs
(b) the Prime Minister
(c) the President
(d) the Chief Justice

Ans : MAIN 2003

Thus (a) is correct option.

14. The Prime Minister of India is answerable to
(a) The people of India
(b) The President of India
(c) The Union Legislature
(d) All of the above.

Ans : COMP 2005

Thus (a) is correct option.

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

may request his resignation. The minister involved responds accordingly.

43. Under what circumstances, can be President use his discretion in appointing the Prime Minister ?

Ans : MAIN 2011

1. No Clear Majority: When no party or coalition secures a majority in the Lok Sabha.
2. Hung Parliament: If no party or pre-election coalition can form a stable government.
3. Mid-Term Resignation/Death: When the Prime Minister resigns or dies, and there's no clear successor.

44. Mention the categories of Ministers in the Council of Ministers.

Ans : COMP 2013

1. Cabinet Ministers
2. Ministers of State
3. Deputy Ministers

45. Explain the term joint/collective responsibility briefly.

Ans : MAIN 1998, 1996, 1994, 1990

The Council of Ministers is collectively accountable to Parliament. After thoroughly discussing and deciding on a matter in a meeting led by the Prime Minister, all Ministers are required to defend that decision both in Parliament and to the public.

46. Mention any two important functions of the Union Cabinet.

Ans : COMP 1989,1987

1. The Cabinet establishes both foreign and domestic policies for the government.
2. It makes decisions on matters such as defense, security requirements, economic policy, imposing President's Rule in a state, creating new states, industrial policy, imports, and other key issues.

47. A large number of people are killed in a major rail accident. What happens if the Railway Minister resigns from the post on moral grounds?

Ans : MAIN 2023

Not all members of the Cabinet are required to resign. Only the Railway Minister may step down on moral grounds. Each minister is individually accountable to Parliament for their respective department. Therefore, if the Railway Minister accepts responsibility for the mistakes and shortcomings within their department, only they need to resign. The other Cabinet members are not obligated to follow suit.

48. State one point of difference between the 'Cabinet' and the Council of Ministers with reference to their responsiblities in the Government?

Ans : COMP 2001

Firstly, the Council of Ministers includes all three ranks of ministers, whereas the Cabinet is typically made up of senior ministers with cabinet rank and key portfolios. Secondly, the Council of Ministers is a large body that meets infrequently, while the Cabinet is a smaller, cohesive group that convenes regularly. Lastly, the Prime Minister may make important decisions without consulting the entire Council of Ministers, but always consults Cabinet members on every significant issue.

49. What are the main features of the Cabinet?

Ans : SQP 2004

The Cabinet is made up of a small group of senior party leaders who are part of the Council of Ministers. They oversee key portfolios and shape the government's major policies. As trusted advisors to the Prime Minister, they form the core of the administration. Essentially, the Cabinet serves as the central hub around which the entire administration functions.

50. What does a Minister affirm under the Oath of Office?

Ans : MAIN 2008

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

holds the authority to remove them from their positions.
2. Reorganization of the Council: He also has the discretion to restructure his Council of Ministers whenever he chooses.

63. Mention two methods which are adopted by the Parliament to control the executive.

Ans : SQP 2009

1. Question Hour: Members of Parliament can ask questions to ministers, holding them accountable for their actions and decisions, and scrutinizing the functioning of the executive.
2. Vote of No Confidence: The Parliament can pass a vote of no confidence, which, if successful, forces the resignation of the entire Council of Ministers, including the Prime Minister.

64. What can be the maximum size of the Council of Ministers ?

Ans : MAIN 2011

The maximum size of the Council of Ministers, including the Prime Minister, is 15% of the total strength of the Lok Sabha, as per the 91st Constitutional Amendment Act, 2003.

65. What is Prime Minister's Office ? Name the officers there.

Ans : COMP 2013

The Prime Minister's Office (PMO) is an administrative body that assists the Prime Minister in the discharge of his/her duties. It serves as the central coordinating office for the Prime Minister's functions and responsibilities, including policy formulation, communication with ministries, and handling public relations.

Key officers in the PMO include:

1. Principal Secretary to the Prime Minister
2. National Security Advisor (NSA)
3. Additional Secretaries
4. Joint Secretaries
5. Advisors and Special Advisors
6. Other supporting staff such as Deputy Secretaries, Under Secretaries, and technical officers.

66. What is the extent of Cabinet's control of proclamation of emergency in India ?

Ans : SQP 2014

The Prime Minister is authorized to declare an emergency only with the Cabinet's advice. Consequently, the decision to announce any type of emergency is made collectively by the Cabinet.

NODIA

67. What ensures Prime Minister's unique position in the Parliament ? Mention any two points.

Ans : MAIN 2015

1. Leader of the Majority: The Prime Minister leads the majority party or coalition in the Lok Sabha, ensuring influence over legislation.
2. Executive Control: As head of the executive, the Prime Minister directs the Council of Ministers and oversees policy implementation.

68. Mention two points to show the Prime Minister as the leader of the nation.

Ans : COMP 2008

1. National Representative: Represents the country in domestic and international matters.
2. Policy Leadership: Guides national policies and development.

69. Mention two important powers or functions of the Cabinet.

Ans : SQP 2017

1. Policy Formulation: The Cabinet plays a key role in framing and directing the government's domestic and foreign policies.
2. Decision-Making: The Cabinet makes crucial decisions on legislative proposals, financial matters, and national security.

70. What do the Prime Minister and other Ministers affirm under :

(a) the Oath of Office.

(b) the Oath of Secrecy.

Ans : SQP 2023

insights on all matters and expect leadership from them. Consequently, when the Prime Minister speaks, it is as if the entire nation is expressing its views through their words.

56. What should the maximum and minimum strength of the Council of Ministers ?

Ans : MAIN 2002

The maximum strength of the Council of Ministers, including the Prime Minister, is 15% of the total strength of the Lok Sabha (as per the 91st Constitutional Amendment Act, 2003).

The minimum strength is not explicitly defined in the Constitution. However, by convention, there is no specific minimum number, but the Council must include at least the Prime Minister and a few ministers to handle key responsibilities.

57. Mention two limitations on the position and authority of Prime Minister.

Ans : COMP 2004

1. There may be internal dissensions within the ruling party, and the Prime Minister must secure the cooperation of key party members.
2. The press and public opinion serve as effective checks on the Prime Minister's authority.

58. How is the Prime Minister a link between the Cabinet and the President ?

Ans : SQP 2006

1. The Prime Minister communicates Cabinet decisions to the President.
2. The Prime Minister regularly informs the President about all government matters.
3. The Prime Minister provides the President with any information requested concerning the affairs of the Union.

59. Mention three ways in which the Constitution ensures the pre-eminent position of the Prime Minister in relation to the Union Council of Ministers.

Ans : MAIN 2003

1. The Prime Minister holds a pre-eminent position as the recognized leader of the Cabinet, with the President appointing ministers based on the Prime Minister's advice.
2. The Prime Minister coordinates the functioning of various government departments to ensure smooth governance.
3. The Prime Minister presides over Cabinet meetings, sets the agenda, and plays a pivotal role in decision-making, making his position central to the Cabinet's structure.

60. Mention three important functions (powers) of the Prime-Minister.

Ans : COMP 2005

1. Selection and Dismissal of Ministers: The Prime Minister has the authority to appoint ministers and can also remove them from their positions as needed.
2. Allocation of Portfolios: It is the Prime Minister who assigns responsibilities and tasks to the ministers. Additionally, the Prime Minister can reorganize the Council of Ministers at his discretion.
3. Liaison Between the Cabinet and the President: The Prime Minister serves as the intermediary, keeping the President informed about the decisions and actions of the Cabinet.

61. What does Article 74 of the Constitution relate to and what does it provide ?

Ans : MAIN 2019

Article 74 of the Constitution stipulates that a Council of Ministers, led by the Prime Minister, shall be established to assist and counsel the President.

62. Mention two ways in which the Constitution ensures the pre-eminent position of the Prime Minister in relation to his Council of Ministers.

Ans : COMP 2007

1. Selection and Dismissal of Ministers: The Prime Minister appoints ministers and

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

CHAPTER 15

PRIME MINISTER AND COUNCIL OF MINISTERS

NODIA

SUMMARY

The Prime Minister is the head of the government in India and is appointed by the President. Typically, the Prime Minister is the leader of the party that has a majority in the Lok Sabha (the lower house of Parliament). The Prime Minister plays a pivotal role in the functioning of the government and is often referred to as the "first among equals" within the Council of Ministers.

Upon assuming office, the Prime Minister is responsible for forming the Council of Ministers, which is a body comprising different ranks of ministers, including Cabinet Ministers, Ministers of State, and Deputy Ministers. The formation of this Council is a key responsibility, as it ensures that the executive branch of government can function effectively and carry out its duties.

1. TENURE AND FUNCTIONS

The tenure of the Council of Ministers is closely tied to that of the Prime Minister. Generally, both the Prime Minister and the Council of Ministers serve for five years, aligned with the Lok Sabha's term, but their tenure can be shorter if they lose the confidence of the majority in the Lok Sabha.

The functions of the Prime Minister and the Council of Ministers are vast and encompass several key areas:

1.1 Policy Making

The Council is responsible for formulating and guiding national policies. The Prime Minister plays a central role in setting the government's agenda and ensuring that policies reflect the vision and goals of the ruling party.

1.2 Administrative Functions

The Council of Ministers is also tasked with overseeing the day-to-day administration of the country. Each minister is responsible for managing their respective ministry and ensuring that government decisions are implemented efficiently.

1.3 Legislative Functions

The Council introduces and supports legislation in Parliament. The Prime Minister and ministers work closely with Parliament to ensure the passage of key bills, and they are involved in drafting legislation that aligns with government policies.

1.4 Financial Functions

One of the most critical responsibilities of the Council is financial management. The government, under the leadership of the Prime Minister, prepares the Union Budget and allocates resources to various sectors. The Council ensures that the country's finances are managed effectively and in accordance with legislative approval.

1.5 Emergency Functions

In times of emergency, the Prime Minister and the Council play an advisory role to the President, helping to decide on emergency declarations. They have the authority to guide the country through crises, including national or state emergencies, ensuring swift and efficient decision-making.

2. POSITION AND POWERS OF THE PRIME MINISTER

The Prime Minister occupies a highly significant position within the political

Under the Oath of Office, the Prime Minister and other ministers affirm:

(a) Oath of Office:
  (i) Allegiance to the Constitution of India.
  (ii) Faithfully and conscientiously performing their duties.
  (iii) Upholding the sovereignty and integrity of India.

(b) Oath of Secrecy :They swear not to disclose any information or matters discussed in the Cabinet or their office, except as required by law for official purposes.

THREE MARKS QUESTIONS

71. The Council of Ministers headed by the Prime Minister aids and advises the President. In this context, answer the following questions:

(i) Mention any three points to distinguish between the Council of Ministers and the Cabinet.

(ii) Who appoints the Cabinet Ministers? Mention any two administrative powers of the Cabinet.

(iii) The President is the nominal head of the Indian Union. Mention any four functions of the Prime Minister with reference to the President.

Ans : MAIN 2024

(i) (a) Size : The Council of Ministers includes all levels of ministers (Cabinet Ministers, Ministers of State, and Deputy Ministers), whereas the Cabinet consists only of the top-level senior ministers.

(b) Meetings : The Cabinet meets regularly to make key decisions, whereas the Council of Ministers as a whole rarely meets.

(c) Decision-making : The Cabinet is responsible for taking major policy decisions, while the Council of Ministers implements these decisions at various levels.

(ii) The President of India appoints the Cabinet Ministers on the advice of the Prime Minister.

Two administrative powers of the Cabinet:

(a) Policy formulation: The Cabinet formulates policies and decides on major legislative proposals for the country.

(b) Implementation of laws: The Cabinet ensures the proper implementation and administration of laws passed by Parliament.

(iii) (a) Chief advisor: The Prime Minister acts as the chief advisor to the President on all matters related to governance and administration.

(b) Communication link: The Prime Minister is the primary channel of communication between the President and the Council of Ministers.

(c) Cabinet formation: The Prime Minister advises the President on the appointment of ministers and allocates their portfolios.

(d) Informing the President: The Prime Minister keeps the President informed about the decisions and policies of the government.

72. Discuss the powers and position of the Prime Minister in relation to

(a) The President.

(b) The Parliament

Ans : COMP 2007

(a) Powers and position of the Prime Minister in relation to the president :

1. Communication Link Between Cabinet and President: The Prime Minister serves as the primary conduit for communication between the Cabinet and the President, relaying the Cabinet's decisions and keeping the President updated on all governmental matters, both domestic and international.
2. Advisory Role in Parliamentary

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

(a) The President appoints the Prime Minister in accordance with established conventions and cannot do so arbitrarily. Typically, the President invites the leader of the majority party or coalition in the Lok Sabha to form the government. This majority party or coalition then selects their leader to serve as the Prime Minister, and the President formally appoints them to the role. In cases where no single political party secures an absolute majority in the Lok Sabha, the President exercises some discretion in appointing the Prime Minister. However, the President must choose a candidate who can garner support from smaller parties or groups to ensure a majority in the House.

(b) Powers of Prime Minister :

(i) Head of the Council of Ministers: The Prime Minister leads the Council of Ministers and plays a key role in appointing and dismissing ministers, coordinating their work, and presiding over Cabinet meetings.

(ii) Advisor to the President: The Prime Minister advises the President on key appointments such as the Attorney General, judges, and governors, and also advises on matters such as ordinances and summoning or dissolving the Lok Sabha.

(iii) Policy Leadership: The Prime Minister plays a crucial role in shaping national policies, guiding government actions, and ensuring the implementation of policies across various ministries and departments.

(c) In India's Parliamentary System, the Prime Minister holds a dominant position as the head of government. The Prime Minister is the central figure in the executive branch and exercises significant authority over national policy and administration. As the leader of the majority party in the Lok Sabha, the Prime Minister ensures that the government maintains the confidence of Parliament. The Prime Minister coordinates between the President, the Cabinet, and Parliament, acting as the primary decision-maker and the chief spokesperson of the government.

88. Compare the working, tenure and election of the Prime Minister and the President.

Ans :

Aspect	Prime Minister	President
Working	Head of the government; holds executive powers, leads the Council of Ministers, directs policy and administration, and represents the government in Parliament.	Ceremonial head of state; acts on the advice of the Council of Ministers, represents the unity and sovereignty of the nation, and performs ceremonial duties.
Tenure	No fixed tenure; serves as long as they have the confidence of the Lok Sabha. The term typically lasts up to 5 years, aligned with the Lok Sabha, and can be reappointed if the majority is retained.	Fixed tenure of 5 years. The President can be re-elected for another term. They serve the full term unless removed by impeachment for violating the Constitution.
Election	Not directly elected by the people. The leader of the majority party or coalition in the Lok Sabha is appointed by the President.	Indirectly elected by an Electoral College consisting of members of Parliament and Legislative Assemblies of the states and Union Territories.

NODIA

BETTER THAN BOOK IN THE MARKET

Why students are choosing this book 👉

School teachers already use this content to set papers.

Still not sure?

- 👉 Match this PDF with your question papers
- 👉 See the similarity yourself

Why does this happen?

- ✓ Teachers have its PDF & Word files
- ✓ Easy access
- ✓ Direct copy-paste questions
- ✓ Same pattern followed

Don't miss out—get the advantage today!

functioning of various departments.

(c) Coordination Among Departments: One of the key functions of the Cabinet is ensuring smooth coordination among the various departments of the government. The Cabinet serves as a central point of control and communication, making sure that all ministries and departments work together in harmony to achieve the government's overall goals. The Prime Minister, as head of the Cabinet, plays a pivotal role in fostering this coordination, ensuring that policies are implemented in a cohesive manner. Without this coordinated effort, the government could face confusion or inefficiency in achieving its objectives. Proper coordination ensures that resources are utilized effectively and that every department contributes to the collective goals of the government.

(d) Diplomatic Relations and Foreign Policy Decisions : The Cabinet is instrumental in managing the country's foreign relations, both diplomatic and trade-related. It makes important decisions regarding international treaties, trade agreements, and diplomatic pacts with other nations. These decisions are crucial to maintaining India's position and influence on the global stage. Additionally, the Cabinet is responsible for appointing diplomatic envoys and representatives, selecting ambassadors, and deciding which new states or regimes to recognize. The Cabinet's role in shaping foreign policy helps India navigate complex international dynamics and build strong, strategic alliances that support its national interests. Through these diplomatic efforts, the Cabinet works to strengthen India's relationships globally, ensuring both political and economic benefits.

75. Discuss the salient features of the Cabinet System of government, with special reference to :

(a) Collective or Joint responsibility.

(b) Individual responsibility.

Ans : COMP 2015

(a) Collective or Joint Responsibility : The Council of Ministers, also known as the Cabinet, holds joint responsibility to Parliament. After thoroughly discussing and deciding on an issue in Cabinet meetings chaired by the Prime Minister, all Ministers are required to support and defend the decision both in Parliament and publicly. They must refrain from criticizing or opposing the decision. However, if a Minister has a significant disagreement, they may choose to resign. The entire Council of Ministers stands together, sharing the fate of the government's decisions. This principle of collective responsibility is a fundamental feature of the Cabinet system.

(b) Individual Responsibility : When a Minister independently makes a decision for their department, acting in what they believe to be the department's best interest, they hold personal accountability to the President. In practical terms, this means the Minister is answerable to the Prime Minister, who has the authority to request the Minister to resign from their position if necessary. Upon receiving such a request, the Minister is expected to comply and step down. This ensures that while Ministers can make autonomous decisions to benefit their respective departments, they remain ultimately responsible to the Prime Minister and, by extension, to the President. This mechanism maintains the integrity and unity of the government's executive branch, ensuring that individual actions align with the collective goals and policies of the administration.

76. Discuss Prime Minister's position as :

(a) Leader of the majority Party.

(b) Leader of the House.

(c) Leader of the nation.

Ans : SQP 2019

(a) Leader of the Majority Party : As the leader of the ruling party or coalition

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

Sessions : The Prime Minister advises the President on convening and suspending Parliament sessions, as well as on the dissolution of the Lok Sabha.

3. Guidance on Appointment and Removal of High Officials:The Prime Minister provides counsel to the President regarding the appointment and dismissal of senior government officials.

(b) Powers and position of the Prime Minister in relation to the parliament :

1. The Prime Minister holds a unique position as the leader of the Lok Sabha, guiding the house and its proceedings.
2. As the chief spokesperson, the Prime Minister defends the government in Parliament, stepping in to support ministers under opposition attack.
3. The Prime Minister makes key announcements regarding government policies on the floor of the house and delivers the concluding speech during debates.
4. In situations of disorder caused by MPs, the Prime Minister intervenes to restore order and ensure smooth proceedings in the House.

13. 'Prime Minister is the captain of the ship of the State." Discuss this statement with regard to the Prime Minister's relation with the Cabinet.

(ICSE 2015)

Ans : SQP 2015

1. The Prime Minister forms the Council of Ministers, determines its size, allocates portfolios, and holds final authority in such decisions.
2. The Prime Minister can remove any minister by asking for their resignation and has the power to reassign portfolios within the Council of Ministers.
3. The Prime Minister convenes and presides over meetings of the Council of Ministers, sets the agenda, and after discussion, makes the final decision, which binds the entire Cabinet under the principle of Collective Responsibility.
4. The Prime Minister ensures coordination between government departments, overseeing that they function in harmony and adhere to the policies and decisions of the Cabinet.

14. Explain any four functions of the Union Cabinet.

(a) Formulation of Policies.
(b) Implementation and Administration.
(c) Co-ordination.
(d) Diplomatic relations.

Ans : MAIN 2019, 2008

(a) Formulation of Government Policies :The Cabinet is responsible for developing and defining both national and international government policies. It takes crucial decisions on a wide array of major issues that impact the country, including defense, national security, economic development, planning, and financial matters. These decisions help shape the overall direction of the nation, guiding its progress and ensuring that pressing concerns are addressed. The Cabinet also takes decisions on critical international issues that affect India's standing and relations with other countries, ensuring a cohesive foreign policy.

(b) Implementation and Administration of Policies: Once the Cabinet makes policy decisions, it becomes the responsibility of the relevant ministries and departments to implement them. The Minister in charge of each department is tasked with ensuring that the policy decisions of the Cabinet are faithfully executed. This includes managing the department's activities and resources to carry out the decision efficiently. Each Minister must administer their department according to the agreed-upon policies, working in collaboration with other ministries to ensure that there is no overlap or conflict. The success of these policies relies on effective administration and the proper

NODIA

as Defence, Home Affairs, Finance, and Foreign Affairs. These ministers are responsible for managing critical sectors of the government and ensuring the smooth operation of the country's administrative functions.

(b) Two administrative powers of the Cabinet:

(i) The ministers are responsible for running the entire state administration. Each minister oversees a specific department and is accountable to the Lok Sabha for its functioning, answering questions raised by Parliament members.

(ii) The Cabinet advises the President on key appointments, including the Attorney General, Governors, Chief Election Commissioner, Election Commissioners, and Judges of the Supreme Court and High Courts, as well as other important officials.

(c) Two legislative powers of the Cabinet :

(i) The Cabinet advises the President on summoning and proroguing Parliament sessions, with the Ministry of Parliamentary Affairs taking the lead. The Cabinet also prepares the President's special address to Parliament.

(ii) The Cabinet is responsible for drafting bills, which are introduced, explained, and defended by ministers in Parliament. Additionally, the President issues ordinances based on the Cabinet's recommendations.

79. With reference to the powers and functions of the Cabinet, briefly state the following :

(a) Three Administrative Functions.

(b) Three Legislative Functions.

(c) Four Financial Functions.

Ans :

(a) Three Administrative Functions :

1. The Cabinet is primarily responsible for framing national policies. Once a policy is decided, it is the duty of the respective ministry or department to implement it.
2. Each Ministry or Department must adhere to the Cabinet's decisions, ensuring that policies are carried out in alignment with the government's overall direction.
3. The Ministry develops detailed plans based on the Cabinet's directives and passes them on to civil servants, who then execute these plans in practice.

NODIA

(b) Three Legislative Functions :

1. The Cabinet plays a key role in legislative matters by advising the President to summon the Houses of Parliament and preparing the President's special address, which outlines the government's legislative program.
2. The majority of bills introduced in Parliament are government bills, prepared by various ministries. With strong parliamentary support, the Cabinet ensures these bills are passed by a majority vote.
3. The Cabinet advises the President on issuing ordinances and is instrumental in proposing and moving amendments to the Constitution.

(c) Four Financial Functional :

1. The Cabinet not only oversees the executive and legislative functions but also holds control over the nation's financial affairs.
2. The Cabinet decides which taxes will be levied and determines how the funds raised will be allocated and utilized.
3. The Finance Minister, guided by the Cabinet, drafts the budget, which outlines the projected income and expenditures for the upcoming year.
4. Although the Budget is approved by Parliament, it is uncommon for any alterations to be made without the approval of the Cabinet, showcasing its strong influence over financial decisions.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

80. Describe the composition of the Cabinet (Council of Ministers) under the following heads :
(a) Designation of new Prime Minister
(b) Appointment of the other Ministers
(c) Oaths of Office and Secrecy

Ans :

(a) Designation of the New Prime Minister :The first step in forming a new government is the appointment of a new Prime Minister. According to the Constitution, the President appoints the Prime Minister. However, the President has limited discretion in this matter. In practice, the Prime Minister is usually the leader of the political party that has secured an absolute majority in the Lok Sabha.

(b) Appointment of the other Ministers : The President appoints other Ministers based on the Prime Minister's recommendations. This allows the Prime Minister to form a cohesive government that operates effectively as a team and garners support from the Lok Sabha. All Ministers must belong to either house of Parliament. However, individuals who are not currently members can be appointed as Ministers, provided they are elected or nominated to either House within six months of their appointment. Additionally, when selecting Ministers, the Prime Minister must ensure that all major communities and geographical regions of the country are represented in the Ministry.

(c) The President administers both the Oath of Office and the Oath of Secrecy to Ministers. In the Oath of Office, a Minister pledges to:
1. Bear true faith and allegiance to the Constitution of India.
2. Uphold the sovereignty and integrity of India.
3. Faithfully perform their duties as a Minister without fear, favor, affection, or ill will.

Additionally, under the Oath of Secrecy, a Minister commits to not disclose any matters that come under their consideration as a Minister to anyone.

81. The Cabinet exercises vast authority in legislation and finance. In this context describe:
(a) Its Legislative functions
(b) Its control over the National Finance

Ans :

(a) Its Legislative functions:
1. The Ministry of Parliamentary Affairs takes the initiative in summoning the Houses of Parliament, while the President formally calls the sessions based on the Cabinet's advice.
2. The Cabinet prepares the President's special address to Parliament, outlining its legislative program at the beginning of the first Lok Sabha session after general elections and the first session of Parliament each year.
3. A significant portion of bills introduced in Parliament, over 90%, are government bills prepared by various ministries. With strong parliamentary support, these bills are typically passed by a majority vote.

(b) Control Over National Finances :The Cabinet not only oversees the government's executive and legislative policies but also manages the nation's finances. It decides which taxes to implement and allocates the funds collected from these taxes. The Finance Minister is responsible for preparing the annual budget, which includes projected income and expenditure for the upcoming year. Although the Parliament approves the budget, alterations to the budget figures are seldom made without the Cabinet's approval.

82. What is meant by the term 'Cabinet' ? Distinguish between the Council of Ministers and the Cabinet.

Ans :

The Cabinet refers to a select group of senior ministers in the Council of Ministers, usually

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

holding key portfolios such as Defence, Home, Finance, and External Affairs. The Cabinet is the main decision-making body of the government, responsible for formulating and implementing major national policies.
Distinction between the Council of Ministers and the Cabinet:

Council of Ministers	**Cabinet**
Composition: Includes all three ranks—Cabinet Ministers, Ministers of State, and Deputy Ministers.	Composition: Comprises only senior ministers, known as Cabinet Ministers, holding key portfolios.
Size: It is a larger body, encompassing all ministers in the government.	Size: It is a smaller, more cohesive group within the Council of Ministers.
Meetings: The entire Council rarely meets as a whole.	Meetings: The Cabinet meets regularly to make major policy decisions.
Role: Assists in the implementation of government decisions and administration.	Role: Responsible for high-level decision-making, policy formulation, and setting the government's agenda.
Decision-Making: Plays a more supportive role; most key decisions are made by the Cabinet.	Decision-Making: The main body that makes major decisions affecting national governance.

83. The Constitution provides a Council of Ministers to aid and advise the President. In this context, answer the following questions :
(a) Briefly mention three of their functions.
(b) How does the Parliament exercise an effective control over the Council of Ministers ?
(c) State the Cabinet's role in the formulation of policies of the Government.

Ans :

(a) Three functions.
1. Policy Implementation: The Council of Ministers is responsible for implementing laws and policies approved by Parliament. Each minister oversees a specific ministry, ensuring the proper execution of government decisions.
2. Administration: Ministers manage the daily administration of the government, ensuring that different departments function smoothly and effectively to serve public needs.
3. Advising the President: The Council of Ministers advises the President on important matters, including appointments, ordinances, and key governmental decisions, ensuring the executive's smooth functioning.

(b) The Parliament exercises effective control over the Council of Ministers through several mechanisms that ensure accountability and proper functioning of the executive. These include:
1. Question Hour: During Parliament sessions, members can ask questions to ministers, holding them accountable for the functioning of their ministries.
2. Vote of No Confidence: If the Lok Sabha loses confidence in the Council of Ministers, they can pass a no-confidence motion, which forces the entire Council, including the Prime Minister, to resign.
3. Debates and Discussions: Parliament can debate government policies and actions, allowing members to criticize or suggest changes, ensuring that the Council of Ministers remains responsive to legislative scrutiny.

(c) The Cabinet plays a crucial role in formulating the policies of the government. It is responsible for making decisions on key national and international issues, shaping the legislative agenda, and setting priorities for economic, social, and foreign policies. The Cabinet discusses

NODIA

in the Lok Sabha, the Prime Minister holds significant power in shaping the government's policies and legislative agenda. This role includes influencing party decisions, determining key strategies, and maintaining party discipline. The Prime Minister ensures the government's stability as long as they have the continued support of the majority in Parliament.

(b) Leader of the House:As the Leader of the Lok Sabha, the Prime Minister manages parliamentary proceedings, defends the government's stance on key issues, and guides legislation through the House. The Prime Minister plays a central role in ensuring the smooth functioning of the House, addressing opposition criticisms, and ensuring that ministers are accountable to Parliament. The Prime Minister also works to maintain order and decorum during debates.

(c) Leader of the Nation :As the nation's leader, the Prime Minister represents India both domestically and internationally. They play a crucial role in formulating national policies, managing crises, and fostering unity during challenging times. The Prime Minister serves as the chief spokesperson of the government, making important announcements and representing India on the global stage by engaging with foreign leaders and international organizations.

77. Bring out the distinction between the Council of Ministers and the Cabinet.

Ans : MAIN 2019, 2015,2010

Council of Ministers	**Cabinet**
Composition: Includes all three categories of ministers: Cabinet Ministers, Ministers of State, and Deputy Ministers.	Composition: Comprises only senior ministers, known as Cabinet Ministers, holding key portfolios.
Size: It is a larger body, which can consist of many ministers.	Size: It is a smaller, more cohesive group within the Council of Ministers.
Meetings: The entire Council of Ministers rarely meets; meetings are usually held by the Cabinet.	Meetings: The Cabinet meets regularly to make key decisions on national policies and administration.
Role: The Council of Ministers assists in the execution of government policies and legislation.	Role: The Cabinet formulates major policies and decisions, guiding the overall direction of the government.
Decision-Making: Not involved in high-level decision-making; decisions are generally made by the Cabinet.	Decision-Making: The Cabinet is the main decision-making body, setting the agenda for government actions.

78. The Cabinet holds a pivotal position in the working of the Indian Parliamentary Government. In this context discuss the following:

(a) The formation of the Cabinet.

(b) Any two administrative powers of the Cabinet.

(c) Any two legislative powers of the Cabinet.

Ans : COMP 2018, 2014

(a) The formation of the Cabinet :

(i) The Cabinet forms the core and most crucial part of the government, holding significant authority in decision-making and policy formulation.

(ii) The Cabinet is composed of the most experienced and senior leaders from the ruling party or coalition, who are trusted with the highest responsibilities within the government.

(iii) Cabinet Ministers are appointed by the Prime Minister and are entrusted with key portfolios such

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

of the Government within Parliament. When contentious issues such as caste conflicts, corruption, or price hikes arise, the Prime Minister steps in to address and resolve these challenges effectively.

(b) The Prime Minister holds a distinctive role within India's constitutional framework, possessing the following key powers:

1. Authority to Appoint and Dismiss Ministers : The Prime Minister has the prerogative to select individuals for ministerial positions and can also remove them from their roles as needed.
2. Allocation of Portfolios :It is the Prime Minister who assigns specific responsibilities and departments to each Minister. Additionally, the Prime Minister can reorganize the Council of Ministers at their discretion.
3. Bridge Between the Cabinet and the President :The Prime Minister acts as the primary liaison, ensuring that the President is kept informed about the Cabinet's decisions and actions.

(c) The Prime Minister holds a paramount position within the Constitution as the acknowledged leader of the Cabinet. The President appoints other Ministers solely based on the Prime Minister's advice and guidance. Additionally, the Prime Minister coordinates the operations of various government departments and presides over Cabinet meetings, setting the agenda for each session. This central role makes the Prime Minister the cornerstone of the Cabinet's structure, ensuring cohesive and effective governance.

86. With reference to the powers and position of the Prime Minister of India, answer the following questions:

(a) What are his relations with the President?
(b) What is his position in the Parliament ?
(c) What is his position in relation to the Cabinet.

Ans :

(a) The Prime Minister is the principal advisor to the President and communicates all decisions of the Cabinet to the President. Key powers of the President, such as appointing ministers, judges, and other high-ranking officials, as well as summoning and dissolving the Lok Sabha, are carried out based on the Prime Minister's advice. The Prime Minister ensures that the government's actions are in accordance with the Constitution and keeps the President informed on all significant matters of state.

(b) The Prime Minister represents the government in the Lok Sabha, introduces important policies, and makes key announcements regarding national matters. As the head of government, the Prime Minister is responsible for maintaining the confidence of the Lok Sabha, ensuring that the government's legislative agenda is carried out. The Prime Minister defends the government's policies in debates and answers questions posed by members of Parliament.

(c) The Prime Minister is the head of the Cabinet and holds a dominant position within the executive branch. The Prime Minister appoints other ministers, allocates portfolios, presides over Cabinet meetings, and plays a key role in shaping government policies and decisions. The Prime Minister ensures coordination among different ministries and is responsible for the smooth functioning of the Cabinet. Ministers are accountable to the Prime Minister, and the Prime Minister has the power to remove ministers if needed. In short, the Prime Minister is the central authority in the Cabinet, guiding its actions and decisions.

NODIA

87. As head of the Government, the Prime Minister has the responsibility of managing all affairs of the country. In this context, state the following :

(a) The manner of his appointment.
(b) His important powers.
(c) His position under the Parliamentary system of government.

Ans :

and approves major policy proposals before they are presented to Parliament, ensuring that government decisions are aligned with the overall objectives of governance.

84. With reference to the Prime Minister of India, answer the following questions :
(a) State any three qualifications which a person should possess to be eligible for appointment as Prime Minister.
(b) What is the position of the Prime Minister under the Parliamentary system of government ?
(c) How is the Prime Minister a link between the Cabinet and the President ?

Ans :

(a) Three qualifications for a person to be eligible for appointment as Prime Minister.
(i) Citizen of India: The person must be a citizen of India.
(ii) Member of Parliament: The individual must be a member of either the Lok Sabha or the Rajya Sabha, or they must become a member of Parliament within six months of their appointment.
(iii) Minimum Age Requirement: The person must be at least 25 years old if they are a member of the Lok Sabha or 30 years old if they are a member of the Rajya Sabha.

(b) Position of the Prime Minister under the Parliamentary system of government :
1. Legislative Role: The Prime Minister holds a key position in relation to the Parliament, as it is on their advice that the President summons, prorogues, or dissolves the Lok Sabha, playing a crucial role in legislative proceedings.
2. Principal Spokesperson: As the Principal Spokesperson of the government in Parliament, the Prime Minister makes important announcements on national policies and serves as the main representative of the government's stance in the Lok Sabha.
3. Defender of Ministers: When a minister's work comes under attack in Parliament, the Prime Minister defends the government and often intervenes to diffuse tensions on sensitive issues like caste wars, corruption, or economic concerns, ensuring stability in the House.

(c) The Prime Minister acts as the primary channel of communication between the Cabinet and the President. The Prime Minister keeps the President informed about all decisions made by the Cabinet and advises the President on crucial appointments, policy matters, and the functioning of the government. All important decisions of the Cabinet are conveyed to the President by the Prime Minister, ensuring that the executive branch operates in harmony with the head of state. This role ensures that the President's constitutional authority is exercised in alignment with the Cabinet's policies and decisions.

85. With reference to the Prime Minister of India, answer the following questions :
(a) How can we say that the Prime Minister occupies a unique position in the Parliament?
(b) State any three powers of the Prime Minister as a Chairperson of the Cabinet?
(c) Mention three ways in which the Constitution ensures the pre-eminent position of the Prime Minister in relation to the Union Council of Ministers.

Ans :

(a) In his interactions with Parliament, the Prime Minister holds a distinctive and crucial role. As the leader of the Lok Sabha, the directly elected lower house of Parliament, he plays a central part in its functioning. The President relies on the Prime Minister's advice to summon, prorogue, and even dissolve Parliament. Additionally, the Prime Minister acts as the primary spokesperson and defender

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

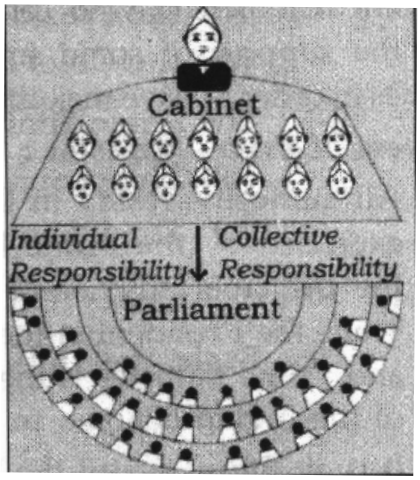
CASE BASED QUESTION

89. Study the figure and answer the following questions.

(a) What is meant by the term 'Cabinet' ? Who comprises the Cabinet ?

(b) State three points of difference between the Cabinet and the Council of Ministers.

(c) Distinguish between individual responsibility and collective responsibility.



Ans :

(a) The Cabinet is a smaller, select group of senior ministers in the Council of Ministers responsible for formulating key government policies and decisions. It is the core decision-making body in the executive branch. The Cabinet is comprised of senior ministers, typically heading important ministries like Defence, Finance, Home, and External Affairs. These ministers hold the rank of Cabinet Ministers and are appointed by the Prime Minister.

(b) Difference between the Cabinet and the Council of Ministers :

Cabinet	**Council of Ministers**
Comprises only senior ministers, known as Cabinet Ministers, who hold key portfolios.	Includes Cabinet Ministers, Ministers of State, and Deputy Ministers.
It is a smaller body that meets regularly to make major policy decisions.	It is a larger body, but the entire Council rarely meets as a whole.
Plays a central role in formulating policies and high-level decision-making.	Assists in implementing policies and executing the decisions made by the Cabinet.

NODIA

(c) Distinguish between individual responsibility and collective responsibility:

Type	**Individual Responsibility**	**Collective Responsibility**
Definition	Ministers are individually responsible to the Prime Minister for their ministry's performance.	The entire Council of Ministers is collectively responsible to the Lok Sabha.
Account-ability	A minister may be asked to resign for their personal misconduct or failure.	If the Lok Sabha passes a no-confidence motion, the entire Council of Ministers must resign.
Scope	Focuses on individual actions and decisions.	Relates to the unity and decisions of the entire government.

www.nodia.in

53. How does the Supreme Court protect the Fundamental Rights of the individuals ?

Ans : MAIN 2010

The Supreme Court protects Fundamental Rights by:

(i) Writ Jurisdiction: Under Article 32, it can issue writs like Habeas Corpus, Mandamus, etc., for enforcing rights.

(ii) Judicial Review: It can declare laws or actions unconstitutional if they violate Fundamental Rights.

54. Mention any two administrative functions of the Supreme Court.

Ans : COMP 2012

(i) Supervision of lower courts: The Supreme Court oversees and monitors the functioning of all subordinate courts and High Courts to ensure uniformity and consistency in judicial proceedings.

(ii) Appointment of officers and staff: The Supreme Court manages the appointment of its administrative staff and officers to ensure smooth functioning of the Court's operations.

55. How does the Constitution ensures the neutrality and impartiality in the dispensation of Justice by the Supreme Court?

Ans : SQP 2016

The Constitution of India ensures the independence of the judiciary through several measures, including:

1. Appointment of Supreme Court judges by the President in consultation with the Cabinet and Supreme Court judges.
2. Removal of judges only through impeachment for proven misbehavior or incapacity.
3. Security of tenure and protection of judges' salaries and service conditions.
4. Freedom to deliver judgments independently.
5. Power to punish for contempt of court.
6. Prohibition of legislative discussions on judges' conduct.
7. on post-retirement legal practice.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

THREE MARKS QUESTIONS

56. The judiciary is the system of courts that interprets and guards the Indian Constitution. With reference to the Supreme Court of India, answer the following:

(i) What is the composition of the Supreme Court? Why is it called the Court of Record?

(ii) Explain the power of Judicial Review.

(iii) What is meant by the term Original Jurisdiction? Mention any three cases which come under this jurisdiction.

Ans : MAIN 2024

(i) The Supreme Court of India consists of the Chief Justice of India and a maximum of 34 judges. It is called a Court of Record because its decisions and judgments are preserved as legal records. These records can be referred to in future cases and are binding on all lower courts. Additionally, the Supreme Court has the power to punish for contempt of itself.

(ii) The power of Judicial Review allows the Supreme Court to examine the constitutionality of laws and executive actions. If any law or action is found to violate the provisions of the Indian Constitution, the Supreme Court can declare it null and void. This ensures that the legislative and executive branches do not exceed their constitutional limits.

(iii) The term Original Jurisdiction refers to the authority of the Supreme Court to hear certain cases directly, rather than on appeal from a lower court. This means the case originates in the Supreme Court.
Three cases under this jurisdiction:
Disputes between the Union and States: Cases involving conflicts between the central government and one or more states.
Disputes between two or more states: For example, boundary or water-sharing disputes between states.
Enforcement of Fundamental Rights:

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

5. JURISDICTION AND FUNCTIONS OF THE SUPREME COURT

The Supreme Court has a broad and comprehensive jurisdiction, covering a wide range of cases. Its jurisdiction can be classified into several categories:

1. **Original Jurisdiction :** Under Article 131 of the Constitution, the Supreme Court has the power to hear disputes between the Union and States, or between different states. This jurisdiction allows the Court to directly hear important federal cases, especially those involving constitutional questions or disputes between different levels of government.
2. **Appellate Jurisdiction :** The Supreme Court is the highest appellate court in India. Under its appellate jurisdiction, it can hear appeals against decisions made by High Courts in civil, criminal, and constitutional cases. This ensures that individuals and entities can approach the highest court for redressal if they believe they have not received justice at the lower levels of the judiciary.
3. **Advisory Jurisdiction :** Under Article 143, the President of India can seek the advice of the Supreme Court on any legal matter of public importance. While the Court's opinion is not binding, it plays a critical role in providing legal guidance on complex or significant issues.
4. **Revisory Jurisdiction :** The Supreme Court has the power to review its own judgments in cases where it believes that a mistake or error has occurred. This function ensures that justice is delivered fairly, even if a previous judgment needs to be corrected. This revisory power provides an additional layer of protection to ensure fairness.
5. **Judicial Review :** The Supreme Court has the power of judicial review, which allows it to determine the constitutionality of laws passed by Parliament and state legislatures. If the Court finds that a law is inconsistent with the Constitution, it can declare that law null and void. This function makes the Supreme Court the guardian of the Constitution and ensures that legislative and executive actions remain within constitutional bounds.
6. **Court of Record :** As a Court of Record, the judgments of the Supreme Court are preserved for perpetual memory and can be used as precedents in future cases. Additionally, the Supreme Court has the authority to punish individuals or entities for contempt of court, which is critical for maintaining respect for its decisions and authority.

6. ENFORCEMENT OF FUNDAMENTAL RIGHTS AND WRITS

One of the most significant roles of the Supreme Court is the enforcement of fundamental rights. Citizens can approach the Court if they believe their fundamental rights, as guaranteed by the Constitution, are being violated. To protect these rights, the Court can issue various types of writs, including:

1. Habeas Corpus : To release a person from unlawful detention.
2. Mandamus : To compel a public authority to perform a duty.
3. Prohibition : To prevent a lower court from exceeding its jurisdiction.
4. Certiorari : To transfer a case from a lower court to a higher court for review.
5. Quo Warranto : To challenge the legality of a person holding a public office.

MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTION

1. When the Supreme Court reviews any judgement made by it to remove an error, it falls under _____ jurisdiction.
(a) Advisory
(b) Revisory
(c) Original
(d) Appellate

Ans : Main 2023

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

CHAPTER 16

THE SUPREME COURT

SUMMARY

The Supreme Court of India is the apex judicial authority, playing a crucial role in upholding the rule of law, interpreting the Constitution, and protecting the fundamental rights of citizens. It serves as the final court of appeal and the protector of constitutional integrity. Below is an exploration of the Court's composition, qualifications and appointment of judges, independence, and its various powers and functions.

1. COMPOSITION

The Supreme Court consists of the Chief Justice of India (CJI) and a maximum of 34 judges, as permitted by law. This ensures that the Court has adequate capacity to handle the high volume of cases. The Chief Justice is the head of the judiciary, while the other judges assist in delivering justice across a wide array of legal matters, ensuring that the Court operates efficiently and impartially.

2. QUALIFICATIONS OF JUDGES

To be eligible for appointment as a Supreme Court judge, a candidate must meet the following criteria:

1. Be a citizen of India.
2. Have served as a judge in a High Court for at least five years or practiced as an advocate in a High Court for at least ten years.
3. Alternatively, be an eminent jurist, as recognized by the President of India.

These qualifications ensure that only highly experienced and capable individuals ascend to the highest court in the land.

3. APPOINTMENT OF JUDGES

Judges of the Supreme Court, including the Chief Justice, are appointed by the President of India. The process follows the Collegium System, where the Chief Justice of India, along with the four senior-most judges of the Supreme Court, recommends appointments. This system is designed to preserve the judiciary's independence by minimizing the influence of the executive in judicial appointments.

4. INDEPENDENCE OF THE JUDICIARY

The independence of the judiciary is a cornerstone of the Indian Constitution, designed to ensure that the judicial branch remains free from interference by the executive and legislature. Several safeguards ensure this independence:

1. **Security of Tenure :** Judges serve until the age of 65 and can only be removed through an elaborate process of impeachment.
2. **Fixed Salaries :** The salaries and allowances of judges cannot be reduced during their tenure, ensuring they are not financially pressured.
3. **No Practice After Retirement :** Judges of the Supreme Court are barred from practicing law after retirement, ensuring their impartiality during their service.
4. **Immunity from External Pressure :** Judges are immune from civil or criminal liability for actions taken in their official capacity, ensuring that they can make judgments without fear of repercussions.

NODIA

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

ONE MARK QUESTIONS

11. Which is the highest court of appeal in India ?

Ans : MAIN 1988

The Supreme Court.

12. What is the total number of judges in the Supreme Court ?

Ans : MAIN 2007

There are 30 judges and one Chief Justice in the Supreme Court.

13. Who determines the strength of the Supreme Court?

Ans : COMP 2011

The strength of the Supreme Court is decided by the Parliament.

14. Mention any one power of the Supreme Court which is not enjoyed by other courts.

Ans : SQP 1986

The Supreme Court has the power of exclusive juridisction with regard to questions relating to constitutional validity of Union laws.

15. By whom are judges of the Supreme Court appointed and how ?

Ans : MAIN 2009, 2011, 1987

The judges of the Supreme Court are appointed by the President in consulation with the Chief Justice.

16. How is the Chief Justice appointed and by whom ?

Ans : COMP 1983

The appointment of the Chief Justice of the Supreme Court is a political decision and there are no set conventions.

17. What is impeachment of a Judge ?

Ans : SQP 2010

It is a procedure through which the Chief Justice/ Judge is removed.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

18. What is the term of office of a Supreme Court Judge?

Ans : MAIN 2012

A judge remains in the office until he attains the age of sixty-five years.

19. What happens if either the Parliament or a State Legislature pass any law that is against the Constitution ?

Ans : COMP 1985

The Supreme Court can declare a law 'Ultra Vires' or null and void, if it is against the letter and spirit of the Constitution.

20. Which body has the final authority to interpret the Constitution of India ?

Ans : SQP 2006, 1985

The Supreme Court of India.

21. Mention one important exclusive function of the Supreme Court.

Ans : COMP 2009

To interpret the Constitution.

22. Name the courts that are empowered to issue writs for the enforcement of Fundamental Rights.

Ans : MAIN 2013

High Courts and Supreme Court.

23. Name the courts that are empowered to issue writs for the enforcement of Fundamental Rights.

Ans : COMP 2020

Supreme Court.

24. Who determines the strength of the Supreme Court ?

Ans : SQP 2011

Parliament can determine the strength of the Supreme Court Judges.

25. What is meant by the term Jurisdiction?

Ans : COMP 2017

Jutisdiction implies the power that a court of law exercises to carry out Judgements and enforce laws.

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

This process is carried out by Parliament under Article 124(4) of the Constitution of India.

41. Why is the Judiciary kept independent from the control of the executive and legislature?

Ans : COMP 2015, 2007

(i) Independent and Superior Judiciary: A free and top-tier judiciary is vital for effective federal governance.
(ii) Protection of Human Rights and Democracy: Ensures the safeguarding of human rights and the maintenance of democratic principles.
(iii) Preservation of Judicial Dignity: Maintains the honor and integrity of the judges and the court.

42. Who decides the salaries and other emoluments of the Judges of the Supreme Court ? Under what circumstances can the salaries and allowances of the Judges of Supreme Court be reduced ?

Ans : COMP 2022

The salaries and other emoluments of the Judges of the Supreme Court are decided by Parliament through legislation. These salaries are charged on the Consolidated Fund of India, ensuring financial independence.
The salaries and allowances of Supreme Court Judges can only be reduced under one specific circumstance : During a Financial Emergency as declared under Article 360 of the Constitution of India.
In any other situation, their salaries cannot be reduced to maintain judicial independence.

43. What is meant by 'Single Integrated Judicial System' as provided in the Indian Constitution?

Ans : SQP 2014

(i) Unified structure: India has a unified judicial hierarchy, with the Supreme Court at the top, followed by High Courts and subordinate courts.
(ii) Uniform application of law: The same laws are applied consistently across all courts, ensuring uniformity in justice.

44. Name the types of jurisdiction of the Supreme Court. In case of violation of the Fundamental Rights of individuals, which type of Jurisdiction of the Supreme Court is applicable?

Ans : SQP 2002

The Supreme Court of India exercises three main types of jurisdiction:
(i) Original Jurisdiction
(ii) Appellate Jurisdiction
(iii) Advisory Jurisdiction
In case of violation of Fundamental Rights, the Original Jurisdiction of the Supreme Court, under Article 32, is applicable. Under this jurisdiction, the Supreme Court can issue writs for the enforcement of Fundamental Rights directly.

45. What is meant by 'Appellate Jurisdiction? Name two types of cases in which an appeal shall lie to the Supreme court.

Ans : COMP 2019

The Appellate Jurisdiction of the Supreme Court makes it the final court of appeal in India. Appeals from State High Court decisions can be made to the Supreme Court in specific criminal and civil cases. These include:
(i) Constitutional Interpretation: When a case involves the interpretation of the Constitution.
(ii) Significant Legal Issues: When a case raises a substantial question of law that is of general importance.

46. What is meant by the term 'Writ' ? Name any two writs issued by the Supreme Court.

Ans : COMP 2006

A Writ is a legal tool used to ensure compliance with court orders. The Constitution grants both the Supreme Court and High Courts the authority to issue writs.
(i) Writ of Mandamus:
  (a) Meaning: Derived from the Latin word "mandamus," meaning "we command."

NODIA

34. What is Advisory jurisdiction of the Supreme Court?

Ans : SQP 2007, 1994,1984,

The Advisory Jurisdiction of the Supreme Court refers to its power to offer legal advice to the President of India on matters of law or fact. Under Article 143 of the Constitution, the President can seek the Supreme Court's opinion on:

(i) Any question of law or fact of public importance.
(ii) Matters related to pre-constitutional treaties or agreements.

35. What Writs can the Supreme Court issue to protect the Fundamental Rights ?

Ans : MAIN 2008, 1994

The Supreme Court can issue the following five types of writs to protect Fundamental Rights under Article 32 of the Indian Constitution:

(i) Habeas Corpus: To release a person unlawfully detained.
(ii) Mandamus: To compel a public authority to perform its duty.
(iii) Prohibition: To prevent a lower court or tribunal from exceeding its jurisdiction.
(iv) Certiorari: To quash the order of a lower court or tribunal that acted beyond its authority.
(v) Quo Warranto: To challenge the legality of a person's claim to a public office.

36. What do you mean by terming the Supreme Court as 'Court of Record'

Ans : COMP 2015, 2005

(i) Keep a record of its proceedings, which can be used as legal evidence and reference in future cases.
(ii) Punish for contempt of court, meaning it has the power to take action against anyone disrespecting or disobeying its orders.

37. Mention any two points/measures to ensure the independence of judiciary.

Ans : SQP 2000, 1994

(i) Judges are appointed by the President in consultation with the Chief Justice and other judges, ensuring their independence.
(ii) Supreme Court and High Court judges are prohibited from practicing law after they retire.

38. Mention any one power of the Supreme court which is not enjoyed by other courts. What happens if either the Parliament or a State Legislature passes any law that is against the Constitution?

Ans : MAIN 2004

The Supreme Court has the unique power of Judicial Review, allowing it to assess whether laws passed by Parliament or State Legislatures align with the Constitution. If a law is found to be unconstitutional, the Supreme Court can invalidate it, preventing its implementation.

39. "The Supreme Court of India also is the guardian of the Constitution." Justify.

Ans : MAIN 2010

(i) It conducts judicial review to ensure laws align with the Constitution.
(ii) It protects Fundamental Rights under Article 32 by issuing writs.
(iii) It interprets the Constitution to resolve disputes and uphold its principles.

40. With reference to the judiciary, what is meant by the term 'impeachment' ? On what grounds can a judge of the Supreme Court be removed from office ?

Ans : MAIN 2018

Impeachment in the judiciary refers to the process of removing a judge from office. It is a formal procedure used to remove a Supreme Court judge for misbehavior or incapacity.

A judge can be removed on two grounds:

(i) Proven misbehavior: If a judge is found guilty of misconduct or unethical actions.
(ii) Incapacity: If a judge is unable to perform duties due to physical or mental incapacity.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

Thus (b) is correct option

2. What is the maximum number of judges that can be appointed in the Supreme Court, excluding the Chief Justice of India?
(a) 30
(b) 33
(c) 34
(d) 28

Ans : 2007

Thus (a) is correct option

3. What is the minimum period for which a citizen has to be the judge of a High Court or of two or more such courts in succession in order to be appointed as a judge of Supreme Court?
(a) 5 years
(b) 10 years
(c) 2 years
(d) 7 years

Ans : COMP 2009

Thus (b) is correct option

4. What is the term of office of a judge of the Supreme Court?
(a) Until he attains 63 years
(b) Until he attains 70 years
(c) Until he attains 60 years
(d) Until he attains 65 years

Ans : SQP 2011

Thus (d) is correct option

5. The appellate jurisdiction extends to
(a) Constitutional cases
(b) Criminal cases
(c) Civil cases
(d) All of the above

Ans : MAIN 2013

Thus (d) is correct option

6. The minimum number of judges to hear and decide a case involving interpretation of the Constitution shall be
(a) Ten (b) four
(c) Five (d) Seven

Ans : COMP 2014

Thus (c) is correct option

7. As a "Court of Record" the Supreme count has the power to
(a) punish for contempt of itself
(b) fine for collusion of opposing parties
(c) declare evidence as indisputable
(d) confer titles to appellants

Ans : SQP 2015

Thus (a) is correct option

8. What is the full form of "PIL"?
(a) Public Interest Law
(b) Public Interest Litigation
(c) People's Interest Litigation
(d) People's Interest Law.

Ans : COMP 2008

Thus (b) is correct option

9. A detained person has not been produced before the magistrate within 24 hours of arrest. Which legal remedy is available to him/her?
(a) Writ of Mandamus
(b) Writ of Quo Warranto
(c) Writ of Habeas Corpus
(d) Writ of Prohibition.

Ans : MAIN 2017

Thus (c) is correct option

10. If the Supreme Court declares a law made by the Central Government as null and void, which power is used by it?
(a) Revisory Jurisdiction
(b) Judicial Review
(c) Advisory Jurisdiction
(d) All of the above.

Ans : SQP 2018

Thus (b) is correct option

NODIA
Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

(b) Purpose: Compels an inferior court or an individual to perform their official duties.

(ii) Writ of Prohibition:

(a) Meaning: Prevents an inferior court from acting beyond its legal authority.

(b) Purpose: Issued by a higher court, such as the Supreme Court or a High Court, to stop a lower court from exercising powers it does not legally possess.

47. State the difference between the Original jurisdiction and the Appellate jurisdiction.

Ans : MAIN 2005

Aspect	Original Jurisdiction	Appellate Jurisdiction
Definition	The power to hear a case directly at the Supreme Court.	The power to hear appeals against judgments of lower courts.
Cases Involved	Disputes between Union and States, or between States, and enforcement of Fundamental Rights.	Appeals in civil, criminal, or constitutional cases from High Courts.
Court of First Instance	Supreme Court acts as the first and original court.	Supreme Court reviews cases already decided by lower courts.

48. Mention two types under which an appeal in a criminal case lies to the Supreme Court.

Ans : SQP 2003

(i) Cases Without High Court Certification: Appeals that proceed without obtaining a certificate from the High Court

(ii) Cases With High Court Certification: Appeals that include and require a certificate from the High Court.

49. What do you understand by 'the Supreme Court is the guardian of the Fundamental Rights'?

Ans : SQP 2023

Any citizen whose rights have been violated can approach the Supreme Court to seek enforcement of their rights. The Supreme Court has the authority to issue writs such as Habeas Corpus, Mandamus, Prohibition, Quo-Warranto, and Certiorari to ensure the protection and enforcement of Fundamental Rights.

50. Mention the Advisory functions of the Supreme Court.

Ans : MAIN 2001

The President can refer any question of law or matters of public importance to the Supreme Court for its opinion. However, the advice provided by the Court is not binding on the President.

51. Mention appellate jurisdiction of the Supreme Court with regard to civil matters.

Ans : COMP 2020

In civil matters, the Appellate Jurisdiction of the Supreme Court allows it to hear appeals against the judgments of High Courts. This applies when:

(i) A substantial question of law of general importance is involved.

(ii) The High Court certifies that the case is fit for appeal to the Supreme Court under Article 133 of the Constitution.

52. Mention appellate jurisdiction of the Supreme Court with regard to criminal matters.

Ans : SQP 2008

(i) If the Sessions Judge acquits the accused, but the High Court, upon a government appeal, reverses the acquittal and sentences the accused to death.

(ii) If the High Court withdraws a case from a subordinate court, convicts the accused, and sentences them to death.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

26. By whom are the Judges of the Supreme Court appointed and how ?

Ans : MAIN 2013

The President appoints Judges of the Supreme Court. He must consult the Chief Justice of the Supreme Court before appointing any Judge.

27. What is the term of office of a Judge of the Supreme Court?

Ans : SQP 20\15

The judge of a Supreme Court holds office till they complete 65 years of age.

28. On what grounds can a judge of the Supreme Court be removed from office ?

Ans : MAIN 2008

The judge of Supreme Court can be removed on the grounds of:
(i) Violation of the Constitution.
(ii) Proved misbehavior.

TWO MARKS QUESTIONS

29. Mention any two ways in which the Constitution ensures the independence of the Judiciary from the Executive.

Ans : MAIN 2023

(i) Security of Tenure : Judges cannot be removed easily and serve fixed terms, allowing them to make unbiased decisions.

(ii) Separate Appointments : The appointment of judges is independent of the Executive, reducing their influence over the Judiciary.

30. Under what circumstances can the salaries of the Supreme Court Judges be reduced ?

Ans : MAIN 2008

As per article 360 of the Constitution of India, when a Proclamation of Financial Emergency is in operation, the salaries of Supreme Court Judges may be reduced.

31. Besides being a citizen of India, what are the legal/ judicial, qualifications of a Judge of the Supreme Court ?

Ans : COMP 2005, 1991

(i) Must have been a Judge of a High Court for at least 5 years.
(ii) Must have been an advocate of a High Court for at least 10 years.
(iii) Must be a distinguished jurist in the opinion of the President.
These are specified in Article 124 of the Constitution of India.

32. On what grounds can a Supreme Court Judge be removed from office ?

Ans : SQP 2019, 1990,, 1981

A Supreme Court Judge can be removed from office on the following grounds: Proven misbehavior: If the judge is found guilty of misconduct or improper behavior. Incapacity: If the judge is unable to perform their duties due to physical or mental incapacity. The procedure for removing a Supreme Court Judge is:
(i) A motion is initiated by at least 100 members of the Lok Sabha or 50 members of the Rajya Sabha.
(ii) A committee investigates the charges of misbehavior or incapacity.
(iii) If found guilty, both Houses must pass the motion with a two-thirds majority.
(iv) Finally, the President signs the order for removal.

33. Mention two types of cases over which the Supreme Court exercises Original Jurisdiction.

Ans : COMP 19989, 1982

Original Jurisdiction is the Supreme Court's authority to hear cases first. It includes:
(i) Union-State Disputes: Constitutional conflicts between the Union Government and one or more states.
(ii) State-State Disputes: Constitutional conflicts between two or more states over judicial rights.

NODIA
Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

The Supreme Court can be approached directly for the protection of citizens' fundamental rights under Article 32 of the Constitution.

57. Referring to the composition and organisation of the Supreme Court, explain the following:
(i) Manner of the appointment of Judges/ Chief Justice.
(ii) Qualification for appointment of Judges.
(iii) Term of the office and removal.

Ans : COMP 2016, 2013, 2010, 2005

(i) Manner of the appointment of Judges/ Chief Justice :
  (a) Chief Justice: The Chief Justice of India (CJI) is appointed by the President, traditionally following the senior-most judge of the Supreme Court.
  (b) Judges: Other Supreme Court judges are appointed by the President after consultation with the CJI and other senior judges, following the Collegium System to ensure fairness in appointments.

(ii) A person can be appointed as a Supreme Court judge if they:
  (a) Are a citizen of India.
  (b) Have served as a judge of a High Court (or multiple High Courts) for at least 5 years, or
  (c) Have been an advocate in a High Court (or multiple High Courts) for at least 10 years, or
  (d) Are, in the President's opinion, a distinguished jurist.

(iii) A Judge of the Supreme Court, including the Chief Justice, serves until reaching the age of sixty-five. The process for impeachment or removal of a Judge is as follows:
  (a) A resolution to impeach the Judge can be introduced in either House of Parliament, with a 14-day notice, and must be backed by one-fourth of the total members of that House.
  (b) The resolution must be approved by a two-thirds majority of the members of that House.
  (c) The other House then investigates the charges. The Judge has the right to defend themselves, either in person or through a counsel.
  (d) If two-thirds of the members of the investigating House also approve the charges, the impeachment is completed, and the Judge is removed from office on the date the resolution is passed.

58. With reference to the powers and functions of the Supreme Court discuss the following :
(i) Original jurisdiction.
(ii) Appellate jurisdiction.
(iii) Advisory Jurisdiction.
(iv) As a guardian of Fundamental Rights.

Ans : SQP 2019, 2018, 2015, 2014, 2010, 2005, 1998, 1994

(i) Original jurisdiction :
  (a) The Supreme Court possesses original and exclusive jurisdiction to interpret the Constitution in cases of disputes between the Union Government and one or more states, or among multiple states, especially when these disputes involve matters of justiciable rights requiring Constitutional interpretation.
  (b) It has the sole authority to rule on the Constitutional validity of Union laws. Such matters are deliberated upon by a Constitutional Bench, which must comprise no fewer than seven judges to ensure comprehensive scrutiny.
  (c) The Supreme Court holds special jurisdiction for enforcing Fundamental Rights, granting it the power to issue writs like Habeas Corpus, Mandamus, Prohibition, Quo-warranto, and Certiorari. This enables citizens to seek direct redress from the Supreme Court without the need to first approach lower courts, such as the High Courts.
  (d) The Court also exercises exclusive and original jurisdiction over disputes concerning the election of the President and Vice-President of

NODIA

that all legislative actions adhere to constitutional provisions. As the guardian and protector of the Constitution, the Supreme Court maintains the supremacy of the constitutional framework. When exercising judicial review, the Court must form a bench of at least five judges to ensure thorough and balanced decision-making.

(ii) Guardian of Fundamental Rights : The Supreme Court serves as the protector of individual liberties and Fundamental Rights in India. It holds the authority to declare any law unconstitutional if it infringes upon or violates the Fundamental Rights guaranteed to Indian citizens. In essence, the Court can nullify any legislation that encroaches upon these essential rights. By effectively exercising this power, the Supreme Court rightfully earns its reputation as the "Protector and Guardian" of Fundamental Rights, ensuring that the freedoms and rights of individuals are upheld and safeguarded against any unconstitutional actions.

(iii) Court of Records : The Supreme Court functions as a Court of Record, meaning that all its decisions and decrees are officially documented and preserved for future reference. These records are maintained not only within the Court for ongoing judicial purposes but also serve as important resources for lawyers to cite in their legal arguments and pleadings.

66. Supreme Court has many functions to protect the interests of all citizens. In this context, answer the following questions:

(i) What is meant by Judicial Review?

(ii) What is the significance of the power of the Judicial Review?

(iii) Mention three ways in which the Constitution ensures the independence of the Judges of the Supreme Court.

Ans : COMP 2011

(i) Judicial Review is the power of the Supreme Court to examine the constitutionality of laws passed by the legislature or actions taken by the executive. If the Court finds that a law or executive action violates the Constitution, it has the authority to declare it null and void. This process ensures that all laws and government actions adhere to the principles and provisions outlined in the Constitution.

(ii) No doubt, the Legislature holds the highest position in a democracy, but the power of Judicial Review remains essential for several reasons:

(a) The Indian Constitution is a written document, and certain articles or laws may be ambiguously worded, leading to the need for interpretation. The Supreme Court, through its power of Judicial Review, serves as the final interpreter of the Constitution, ensuring clarity and consistency.

(b) The Constitution grants extensive powers to both the Centre and the States. If either the Union Government or the States exceed their constitutional boundaries, the functioning of a federal government may become strained. Only the Supreme Court, through Judicial Review, can resolve disputes between the Union and its constituent units, maintaining federal harmony.

(c) The Legislature often lacks the expertise and impartiality required to interpret the real intent of the law. This responsibility is best handled by a judicial body, which is equipped to provide fair and expert legal interpretation.

(iii) The Constitution ensures the independence of Supreme Court judges through several provisions:

(a) Security of Tenure: Judges of the Supreme Court cannot be removed from office except through a complex impeachment process for proven misbehavior or incapacity, which requires a two-thirds majority in both Houses of Parliament. This ensures that judges cannot be arbitrarily

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

(a) Judicial Appointments : Supreme Court judges are appointed by the President in consultation with the Chief Justice of India and other senior judges, ensuring that the selection process remains free from external pressures and influences.

(b) High Qualifications : Judges of the Supreme Court are highly qualified, possessing extensive legal expertise and significant experience. They are recognized as eminent jurists, which supports their ability to function independently and impartially.

(c) Impeachment Process : The removal of a judge is deliberately difficult, requiring a simple majority in both Houses of Parliament followed by a two-thirds majority of those present and voting. This stringent process protects judges from arbitrary dismissal and maintains judicial stability.

(d) Secure Salaries : Judges receive their salaries from the Consolidated Fund of India, and their remuneration cannot be reduced during their tenure except in cases of financial emergency. This financial security ensures that judges are not subject to economic pressures that could compromise their independence.

(e) Judicial Independence : Supreme Court judgments are protected from open debate in Parliament, and ongoing cases (sub-judice) cannot be publicly discussed. This prevents external influences from affecting judicial decisions and preserves the impartiality of the judiciary.

(f) Contempt of Court : The judiciary has the authority to penalize individuals for contempt of court, safeguarding its dignity and authority. This power ensures that the judiciary is respected and that its orders are complied with without interference or disrespect.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

(g) Post-Retirement Restrictions : After retiring, judges are prohibited from practicing law, which helps maintain their impartiality and prevents conflicts of interest that could arise from continued legal practice.

(h) Oath of Office : Upon appointment, judges take an oath to uphold the Constitution, perform their duties without fear or favor, and preserve the sovereignty and integrity of India. This oath reinforces their commitment to judicial independence and ethical conduct.

60. The Supreme Court is the guardian and final interpreter of the Constitution. In this context, explain the following :

(i) Judicial Review.

(ii) Significance of Judicial Review.

(iii) Role of Judiciary in India's Parliamentary system.

Ans : COMP 2020, 2018, 2013, 2007, 2005, 1992

(i) Judicial Review is the power of the Supreme Court to examine the constitutionality of legislative acts and executive orders. If any law or executive action is found to violate the Constitution, the Court can declare it null and void. This power ensures that no law or action of the government contradicts the principles of the Constitution and that citizens' Fundamental Rights are protected.

(ii) Significance of Judicial Review :

(a) Supreme Court's Authority to Review Legislation and Executive Actions : The Supreme Court possesses the authority to scrutinize all laws, executive orders, and ordinances. If any of these are found to be in conflict with the Constitution, the Court has the power to nullify them, rendering them void.

(b) Resolution of Disputes Between Union and States or Among States : In cases of conflict between the Union Government and a State, or between

NODIA

different States, the Supreme Court is empowered to adjudicate and resolve these disputes. This role acts as a check on the Union Government's powers, ensuring balanced federal governance.

(c) Supreme Court's Superior Capacity for Legal Interpretation : The legislative branch may lack the necessary expertise, experience, and impartiality required to interpret the law effectively. The Supreme Court is uniquely positioned to fulfill this interpretative function, ensuring laws are understood and applied correctly.

(iii) In India's parliamentary system, the judiciary acts as a check on the powers of the legislature and executive. It ensures that laws made by the Parliament and actions of the government conform to the Constitution. The judiciary plays a crucial role in interpreting the Constitution, settling disputes between the central and state governments, and protecting citizens' Fundamental Rights. It also serves as the final authority in ensuring that no branch of government oversteps its constitutional limits. This balance is vital for the smooth functioning of India's democracy.

61. With reference to the judiciary, write short notes on the following:

(i) Original jurisdiction of the Supreme Court.

Any three cases that came under the Original Jurisdiction of Supreme Court.

(ii) The Supreme Court as a court of Record.

(iii) What is Appelate jurisdiction. Mention any two types of cases over which the Supreme Court has appelate jurisdiction.

(iv) The composition of the Supreme Court of India.

Ans : SQP 2020, 2016, 2011, 2010, 2007, 2005, 2001

(i) Three cases that came under the Original Jurisdiction of Supreme Court.

(a) Centre-State and Inter-State Disputes: Between the Government of India and one or more States : Any conflict between the central government and individual states falls under the Supreme Court's original jurisdiction. Between the Government of India and States on one side and one or more States on the other : This includes disputes where the central government and certain states are on one side, and other states are on the opposing side. Between two or more States : Any disagreements or conflicts between different states are directly addressed by the Supreme Court.

(b) Protection of Fundamental Rights: The Supreme Court's original jurisdiction extends to cases where an individual's Fundamental Rights are violated. In such instances, the Court can issue various writs to enforce these rights. Individuals have the right to approach the Supreme Court directly if they believe their Fundamental Rights have been infringed upon.

(c) Transfer of Cases from Lower Courts: Under Article 139A, introduced by the 44th Amendment in 1978, the Supreme Court has the authority to transfer cases from one or more High Courts to itself. This typically occurs when the cases involve significant legal questions or are of considerable importance. Additionally, the Supreme Court can transfer cases between High Courts to ensure justice is served efficiently and effectively.

(ii) A Court of Record is a judicial body whose decisions are officially documented and preserved for use as evidence and testimony. These recorded judgments serve as binding precedents, meaning that High Courts and other subordinate courts are required to follow similar rulings in comparable cases without dispute. Under Article 129 of the

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

Constitution, the Supreme Court of India is designated as a "Court of Record." This designation grants the Supreme Court all the inherent powers associated with such courts, including the authority to impose penalties for contempt of court.

Key Implications of Being a Court of Record:

(a) Preservation of Judgments and Orders: All judgments and orders issued by the Supreme Court are meticulously recorded and maintained as official records. These records can be cited as precedents in any court, ensuring consistency and uniformity in legal decisions across the judiciary.

(b) Authority to Punish for Contempt: The Supreme Court holds the exclusive power to punish individuals who commit contempt of court. This authority is inherent and cannot be removed or diminished by any external body, thereby safeguarding the court's dignity, authority, and the integrity of the judicial process.

(iii) Appellate Jurisdiction allows the Supreme Court to hear appeals against judgments and final orders from any lower court, including High Courts, covering Constitutional, Civil, and Criminal cases. It serves as the highest appellate authority, capable of altering or overturning lower court decisions.

(a) Constitutional Cases : High Courts can certify cases that involve significant legal questions or require constitutional interpretation for appeal to the Supreme Court.If the High Court does not certify the case, the Supreme Court can still grant special leave to hear the appeal.

(b) Civil Cases : Appeals are allowed if the High Court certifies that the case presents a substantial question of law of general importance. The Supreme Court may grant special leave to appeal even if the High Court refuses to certify the case.

(iv) The composition of the Supreme Court of India :

(a) The Supreme Court comprises the Chief Justice of India and up to 30 additional judges.

(b) If there is a temporary surge in the workload of the Supreme Court, the Chief Justice, with the prior approval of the President and after consulting the Chief Justice of the relevant High Court, may invite a High Court Judge to serve as an Adhoc Judge in the Supreme Court for the necessary period.

(c) Likewise, a retired Judge of the Supreme Court or a High Court can be requested to serve the Supreme Court as a Judge for a specific purpose or duration.

62. The Supreme Court is the apex court in the entire judicial set up in India. In this context answer the following questions:

(i) What is meant by the term Single integrated Judicial System?

(ii) Mention three kinds of cases which come under appellate jurisdiction of the Supreme Court.

(iii) Mention the type of cases that come under Original Jurisdiction.

Ans : MAIN 2016

(i) A single integrated judicial system is essential for a federal government, where powers are constitutionally divided among the Executive, Legislature, and Judiciary. India has adopted a unified judicial structure for the entire country, with the Supreme Court at the top, overseeing and regulating the functioning of other courts. There are no separate legal systems, and a single civil and criminal legal framework operates nationwide. Directly below the Supreme Court are the State High Courts, followed by District Courts at the lower level. All courts operate under the same Constitution and the same civil and criminal codes. Appeals from District Court decisions are made

NODIA

on constitutional and legal matters. However, there are two important points to consider:

(a) Discretionary Opinions: The Supreme Court is not required to provide an opinion on referred questions and may choose whether or not to respond.

(b) Non-Binding Nature : Any advisory opinions issued by the Supreme Court are not binding on the President or other courts, as they do not hold the force of judicial decisions.

(ii) Under Article 139A, introduced by the 44th Amendment in 1978, the Supreme Court is empowered to transfer cases from one or more High Courts to itself when these cases involve significant legal questions or hold considerable importance. Furthermore, the Supreme Court has the authority to move cases from one High Court to another in the interest of justice, ensuring that matters are adjudicated fairly and efficiently.

69. Your friend from Australia has asked you to explain the following terms and their implication in the working of the courts in your country. Write notes to him about these terms :-

(i) Habeas Corpus
(ii) Mandamus
(iii) Prohibition
(iv) Certiorari
(e) Quo-Warranto.

Ans : MAIN 2015

(i) Habeas Corpus : Habeas Corpus literally means "you may have the body." It is a writ used to protect an individual's liberty. If someone is unlawfully detained or imprisoned, the courts can issue a writ of Habeas Corpus, requiring the authority holding the person to bring them before the court. The court then determines if the detention is legal. This writ ensures that no one is held without lawful justification and is an important safeguard against arbitrary arrest.

(ii) Mandamus : Mandamus means "we command." This writ is issued by a higher court to a lower court, government official, or public authority, compelling them to perform a duty they are legally required to do. It is used to ensure that public officials fulfill their obligations and cannot refuse to perform their legal responsibilities. For instance, if a government authority fails to issue a license or enforce a law, a court may issue a writ of Mandamus.

(iii) Prohibition: A writ of Prohibition is issued by a higher court to prevent a lower court or tribunal from exceeding its jurisdiction or acting beyond its legal authority. It commands the lower court to stop proceedings in a case that falls outside its jurisdiction. This writ helps ensure that courts or authorities do not act beyond their powers and maintain judicial boundaries.

(iv) Certiorari: Certiorari is a writ issued by a higher court to review the decision or proceedings of a lower court or tribunal. It is usually issued when there has been an error of law or when the lower court has acted without or in excess of its jurisdiction. The higher court can quash or nullify the judgment or order passed by the lower court if found unconstitutional or beyond the scope of authority.

iv) Quo-Warranto: Quo-Warranto means "by what authority." This writ is issued to prevent an individual from illegally or wrongfully holding a public office. It challenges the right of a person to occupy a public position or authority. The court issues this writ to ask the person to show by what authority they claim to hold the office in question, and if found illegitimate, the court can remove them from the position.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

(iii) The Supreme Court and High Courts possess the power to punish for contempt, whether it is civil or criminal contempt. This authority allows the judiciary to maintain its dignity, authority, and smooth functioning by punishing acts that disobey court orders, obstruct the administration of justice, or lower the court's esteem in public eyes. By having the power to address any contemptuous behavior, the judiciary ensures its decisions are respected and followed, further strengthening its independence.

64. The Supreme Court has extensive jurisdiction. In this context answer the following :

(i) What is meant by 'Appellate Jurisdiction ? Name two types of cases in which an appeal shall lie to the Supreme Court.

(ii) What do you understand by advisory functions of the supreme court? State the types of cases where the supreme court may be required to express its opinion.

(iii) What is meant by Revisory Jurisdiction of the Supreme Court ?

Ans : SQP 2007

(i) Appellate Jurisdiction refers to the authority of the Supreme Court to hear appeals against decisions made by lower courts, such as High Courts. In such cases, the Supreme Court reviews the decisions of these courts to ensure that justice has been correctly administered.

Two types of cases where an appeal may be made to the Supreme Court are:

(a) Civil Cases: Appeals involving significant legal questions or constitutional interpretation.

(b) Criminal Cases: Appeals in instances where a High Court has reversed a prior acquittal, sentenced a person to death, or given a severe sentence.

(ii) The Supreme Court has advisory jurisdiction over any question of law or fact of public importance that the President may refer to it. This includes:

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

(a) Referral of Legal Questions by the President : The President can refer a question of law considered to be of public significance to the Supreme Court for its opinion. This advisory opinion is not binding on the Government and cannot be enforced as a judgment.

(b) Exclusion of Pre-Constitution Treaties and Agreements : Disputes arising from treaties and agreements made before the Constitution are excluded from the Supreme Court's original jurisdiction under Article Consequently, the Court cannot directly adjudicate these pre-Constitutional disputes.

(iii) Under Article 137, the Supreme Court is authorized to review any of its own judgments or orders to correct any mistakes or errors that may have occurred. This power ensures the accuracy and fairness of its decisions. As a Court of Record, the Supreme Court's rulings carry significant evidentiary weight and are final, meaning they cannot be challenged or questioned in any other court. This authority reinforces the Supreme Court's role as the highest judicial authority, capable of maintaining the integrity and reliability of its judgments.

NODIA

65. Discuss how the Constitution has ensured that the Supreme Court acts as :

(i) Custodian of the Constitution.

(ii) Guardian of the Fundamental Rights.

(iii) A Court of Records and its implication.

Ans : MAIN 2009

(i) Custodian of the Constitution and Judicial Review : The Supreme Court is the highest authority for interpreting the Constitution of India. Through its power of judicial review, it can declare any law passed by the State Legislatures or the Union Parliament as unconstitutional and thus null and void if it violates the Constitution. This ensures

BETTER THAN BOOK IN THE MARKET

Why students are choosing this book 👉

School teachers already use this content to set papers.

Still not sure?

- 👉 Match this PDF with your question papers
- 👉 See the similarity yourself

Why does this happen?

- ✓ Teachers have its PDF & Word files
- ✓ Easy access
- ✓ Direct copy-paste questions
- ✓ Same pattern followed

Don't miss out—get the advantage today!

to the High Court, and further appeals from High Court decisions can be taken to the Supreme Court.

(ii) Three kinds of cases which come under appellate jurisdiction of the Supreme Court :

(a) Civil Cases: Appeals in civil matters where significant legal principles are involved, particularly those that raise substantial questions of law, or where the interpretation of complex legal statutes is required. Such cases often involve disputes over property, contracts, or fundamental legal rights.

(b) Criminal Cases: Appeals in criminal cases, especially in instances where a High Court has reversed a prior acquittal, found a person guilty, or imposed the death penalty. These cases are brought to the Supreme Court to ensure that justice has been served and legal errors have not occurred during the trial or appeal process.

(c) Constitutional Cases: Cases involving the interpretation of Constitutional provisions, particularly when there are challenges to the constitutionality of laws, executive actions, or amendments. These cases often address fundamental issues related to the rights of citizens or the powers of government institutions, requiring authoritative interpretation by the Supreme Court.

(iii) Type of cases that come under Original Jurisdiction :

(a) Disputes between the Government of India and one or more States: These cases typically concern issues related to the constitutional division of powers or administrative disputes between the central government and state governments.

(b) Disputes between two or more States: This jurisdiction includes matters where states are in conflict over boundaries, water resources, or any other issues that require constitutional interpretation or resolution.

(c) Matters involving the enforcement of Fundamental Rights: Individuals whose Fundamental Rights have been violated can directly approach the Supreme Court for relief under Article 32 of the Constitution. The Court has the power to issue writs such as Habeas Corpus, Mandamus, and others to protect these rights.

63. The independence of the judiciary is necessary in a federal democratic set-up. In this context, describe the part played by the following :

(i) Security of Tenure of Office

(ii) Security of Salary and Allowances of the Judges.

(iii) Power to punish for Contempt of itself.

Ans : COMP 2021

(i) Judges of the Supreme Court and High Courts enjoy security of tenure, meaning they cannot be easily removed from office. They hold office until the age of retirement—65 years for Supreme Court judges and 62 years for High Court judges. A judge can only be removed by the President through a rigorous process of impeachment, based on proven misbehavior or incapacity. This ensures that judges can function without fear of losing their positions for delivering decisions that may not favor the government or other powerful entities, thereby upholding judicial independence.

(ii) The salaries and allowances of judges are protected by the Constitution and are drawn from the Consolidated Fund of India, ensuring financial security. These payments cannot be reduced during their term in office, except in cases of financial emergency. This provision prevents any undue influence by the executive or legislature in terms of manipulating financial incentives, thereby allowing judges to make impartial decisions wit hout fear of financial repercussions.

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

removed, allowing them to make decisions without fear of losing their position.

(b) Salaries and Allowances: The salaries, allowances, and pensions of Supreme Court judges are charged to the Consolidated Fund of India and cannot be reduced during their term, except in cases of financial emergency. This provision ensures that judges are not financially dependent on the government, preventing undue influence.

(c) Appointment Process: Judges of the Supreme Court are appointed by the President of India after consultation with the Chief Justice and other senior judges. This process ensures that appointments are made based on merit and judicial expertise, minimizing political interference in judicial appointments.

67. With regard to the Supreme Court of India, answer the following questions.

(i) State three qualifications required to be a Judge of the Supreme Court.

(ii) Mention three ways in which the Constitution ensures the independence of the Judges of the Supreme Court.

(iii) Mention two types under which an appeal in a criminal case lies to the Supreme Court.

Ans : SQP 2013

(i) Three qualifications required to be a Judge of the Supreme Court.

(a) Citizen of India: The individual must be an Indian citizen.

(b) Experience as a Judge: The person should have served as a judge in one or more High Courts for at least five years.

(c) Experience as an Advocate: Alternatively, the person must have been an advocate in one or more High Courts for at least ten years or be a distinguished jurist, in the opinion of the President.

(ii) The Constitution ensures the independence of Supreme Court judges through the following provisions:

(a) Security of Tenure: Judges cannot be removed from office except by a rigorous impeachment process for proven misbehavior or incapacity, ensuring that they are free from external pressures.

(b) Salaries and Allowances: The salaries, allowances, and pensions of judges are drawn from the Consolidated Fund of India and cannot be reduced during their term, safeguarding their financial independence.

(c) Appointment Process: Judges are appointed by the President in consultation with the Chief Justice and other senior judges, ensuring appointments are based on merit and free from political influence.

(iii) An appeal in a criminal case may lie to the Supreme Court under the following circumstances:

(a) Death Penalty Cases: When a High Court has sentenced a person to death or reversed an acquittal.

(b) Cases Involving Substantial Questions of Law: Where a case involves a substantial question of law of general importance or requires the Supreme Court's interpretation for clarity.

68. Only an independent and unified Judiciary with the Supreme Court at the apex can ensure the smooth functioning of the judicial system in a democracy. In this context, answer the following questions :-

(i) What is the Advisory role of the Supreme Court?

(ii) How does the Supreme Court maintains its control over the High Courts?

Ans : SQP 2014

(i) The Supreme Court can offer guidance to government entities, including departments, the Legislature, the President, and the Council of Ministers,

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

India, ensuring the legitimacy and fairness of the electoral process for these highest offices.

(ii) Appellate jurisdiction :

(a) Constitutional Cases: Appeals can be made to the Supreme Court from High Court judgments involving state laws if the High Court certifies that the case presents a "substantial question of law regarding the interpretation of the Constitution."If the High Court declines to certify such a question, the Supreme Court may still grant a special leave to appeal.

(b) Civil Matters: In civil cases, appeals to the Supreme Court are allowed when the High Court certifies that the case raises a significant legal question of general importance that warrants the Supreme Court's decision. The Supreme Court can also permit appeals in civil matters through special leave petitions.

(c) Appeals by Special Leave: The Supreme Court can grant special leave to appeal in any case or matter from any court or tribunal in India, except Military Tribunals and Courts-Martial. This power is exercised in exceptional circumstances where there has been a violation of natural justice principles or a significant injustice has occurred.

(iii) Advisory Jurisdiction :

(a) The President of India can seek the Supreme Court's opinion on questions of law or fact that are of public importance, even if such issues have not yet arisen but are likely to arise. A Bench of five Judges hears the matter and delivers its opinion in open court, but this opinion is not binding on the President, as it is merely consultative.

(b) The Supreme Court is not obligated to provide its advisory opinion when referred by the President and may choose to decline. Additionally, the Court's advisory opinion is not legally enforceable, and it is typically disregarded by other courts and tribunals.

(iv) The Supreme Court acts as the guardian of Fundamental Rights in India. When a citizen's fundamental rights are infringed upon by an individual, government entity, or institution, they have the right to approach the Supreme Court for protection and redress. A writ is a legal mechanism used to ensure compliance with court orders. It is a formal written directive issued by a judicial authority, instructing a specific person or official to perform or refrain from certain actions. The Constitution grants both the Supreme Court and the High Courts the authority to issue various writs, including Habeas Corpus, Mandamus, Prohibition, and Certiorari. Among these, the writ of Habeas Corpus is particularly important, as it serves as a crucial tool for safeguarding individual liberty by ensuring that no person is unlawfully detained.

NODIA

59. The Supreme Court of India is the highest judicial tribunal of our country. In this context, explain :

(i) Meaning of independence of judiciary.

(ii) Manner in which the Constitution seeks to maintain the independence of judiciary.

Ans : MAIN 2018, 2011, 2005

(i) The independence of the judiciary refers to the freedom of the judicial system from interference or influence from the executive or legislative branches of government. It ensures that judges can make impartial decisions based on the law and the Constitution, without external pressure or fear of retaliation. This independence is vital for upholding the rule of law, safeguarding the rights of individuals, and ensuring fair administration of justice.

(ii) The independence of the judiciary in India, especially the Supreme Court, is upheld through several key measures:

CASE BASED QUESTION

70. Study the figure and answer the following questions :

(i) Identify the building in the picture. Where is it located? What is the position of this court in the entire judicial set up in India ?

(ii) State three qualifications required to be the judge of this court.

(iii) How does this court maintain the sanctity of the Constitution of India ?

Ans : COMP 2008

(i) (a) The building shown in the picture is the Supreme Court of India, located in New Delhi. The Supreme Court is the highest judicial authority in the country and stands at the top of the entire judicial hierarchy in India.

(b) Position in the judicial setup : The Supreme Court is the apex court in the Indian judicial system, which means it is the final court of appeal and the ultimate authority on constitutional matters.

(ii) Three qualifications required to be a judge of the Supreme Court:

(a) The person must be a citizen of India.

(b) The person must have served as a judge in one or more High Courts for at least five years.

(c) Alternatively, the person must have been an advocate in one or more High Courts for at least ten years or be regarded as an eminent jurist in the opinion of the President.

(iii)(a) Judicial Review: The Supreme Court has the power to review laws passed by the legislature and actions taken by the executive to ensure they are consistent with the Constitution. If any law or action violates constitutional provisions, the Supreme Court can declare it null and void.

(b) Enforcement of Fundamental Rights: The Supreme Court protects the Fundamental Rights of citizens by allowing individuals to approach it directly through writs like Habeas Corpus, Mandamus, and Certiorari, ensuring that no authority infringes upon their constitutional rights.

(c) Final Interpreter of the Constitution: The Supreme Court serves as the final interpreter of the Constitution, settling disputes on constitutional matters and ensuring that the rule of law is upheld in the country.

www.nodia.in

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

22. What is meant by the "Appellate Jurisdiction" of a High Court ?

Ans : MAIN 1987,1990,1997,2014

Appellate Jurisdiction means that the High Court has the power to accept appeals against the decision of Distinct Court in civil as well as criminal matters.

23. Name the highest Civil Court of a district.

Ans : SQP 2007,2016

The District Judge's court is the highest civil court of a district.

24. How is the District Judge appointed ?

Ans : COMP 1990

The District Judge is appointed by the State Governor in consultation with the High Court.

25. How are Subordinate Judges in the judicial service appointed ?

Ans : MAIN 1989,1996

The Subordinate Judges are appointed through a Judicial Service Competitive examination held by the State Public Service Commission.

26. Which is the highest criminal court in a district ?

Ans : SQP 1985,2005,2009,2013,2018

The highest criminal court is the court of the Session Judge.

27. Mention one administrative power of a District Judge.

Ans : COMP 1981,1984,1993

The District Judge maintains law and order of the area which is under his administration. He also supervises the collection of revenue and taxes from the district.

28. Name the Tribunal over which the High Court does not have the power of superintendence.

Ans : MAIN 2005

Court Martial or Tribunal related to Army.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

29. What are the two types of the subordinate courts in a State?

Ans : SQP 1999

(i) Civil Court
(ii) Criminal Court

30. Name two High Courts of India whose jurisdiction extends to more than two States.

Ans : COMP 2000

(i) Chandigarh High Court
(ii) Guwahati High Court

31. What is the composition of a High Court?

Ans : MAIN 2001

Each High Court consists of a Chief Justice and such other Judges as the President of India may appoint from time to time.

32. Who decides the salaries and allowances of the Judges of the High Court ?

Ans : SQP 2002

The Chief Justice of a High Court and other Judges of the High Court are paid a monthly salary, as decided by the Parliament.

NODIA

33. Name a Union Territory which has a High Court of its own.

Ans : COMP 2003

Delhi

34. What is the term of office of a Judge of the High Court?

Ans : MAIN 2004

The judge of a High Court holds office till they complete 65 years of age.

35. Which is the highest Civil Court in a District?

Ans : SQP 2004

The Court of the District Judge is the highest Civil Court of the District.

36. Who is the highest Judicial Official at the district level for civil and criminal cases?

Ans : COMP 2005

The Court of District Judge.

under Article 226 of the Constitution. These writs include:

(i) Habeas Corpus (to protect individual liberty against unlawful detention),
(ii) Mandamus (to compel a public authority to perform its duty),
(iii) Prohibition (to prevent a lower court from exceeding its jurisdiction),
(iv) Certiorari (to transfer a case from a lower court to a higher one for review),
(v) Quo Warranto (to challenge the legality of a public official's appointment).

2. SUBORDINATE COURTS

The Subordinate Courts function under the supervision of the High Court and are divided into civil and criminal courts:

2.1 Court of the District Judge

The District Judge is the highest judicial authority in the district for civil matters. The court deals with various civil cases, including property disputes, marriage and divorce cases, and civil contracts. It is the principal court of original jurisdiction for civil disputes within its territorial limits.

2.2 Sessions Court

The Sessions Court deals exclusively with criminal cases. It is the highest criminal court in a district and handles cases involving serious offenses such as murder, rape, robbery, and other crimes that carry severe penalties. The Sessions Judge has the power to pass the death sentence, although this must be confirmed by the High Court.

3. LOK ADALATS

Lok Adalats, meaning "People's Courts," are a system of alternative dispute resolution. They were created to provide a quick, cost-effective mechanism for resolving disputes outside the formal judicial process. Cases are resolved in Lok Adalats through mutual agreement and compromise between the parties.

Lok Adalats offer several benefits :

(i) Cost-effective : Parties do not need to pay court fees, and the process is free of the formalities of a traditional court.
(ii) Speedy Justice : Disputes are resolved quickly, reducing the backlog of cases in regular courts.
(iii) Compromise-based Settlement : Lok Adalats encourage amicable settlements, where both parties agree on the outcome, fostering harmony.
(iv) Reduced Burden on Courts : By resolving many cases outside the regular court system, Lok Adalats help in reducing the overall burden on the judiciary.

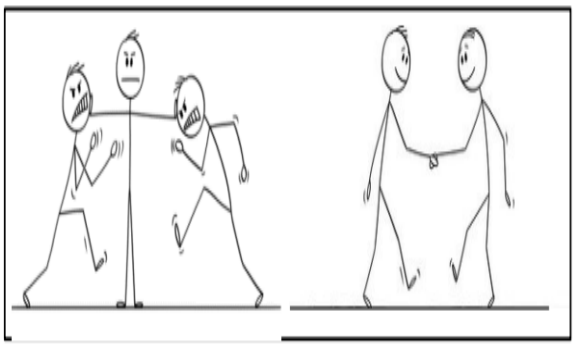
MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTION

1. Civil Cases : Court of District Judge : : Criminal Cases :
(a) Revenue Court
(b) Family Court
(c) Sessions Court
(d) Commissioner's Court

Ans : MAIN 2024

Thus (c) is correct option.

2. The Lok Adalat has many advantages. Which of the following statements about the advantages of the Lok Adalat is best described in the picture given above?



(a) It is inexpensive
(b) It is organised in various parts of the country
(c) It works on the spirit of compromise
(d) It reduces the burden of the higher courts

Ans : MAIN 2024

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

CHAPTER 17

HIGH COURT AND SUBORDINATE COURTS

SUMMARY

1. THE HIGH COURTS

1.1 Composition

Each High Court comprises a Chief Justice and a set number of other judges as decided by the President of India. The strength of each High Court varies depending on the needs and caseload of the state. The Chief Justice is the administrative head of the court.

1.2 Qualifications of Judges

To be appointed as a judge in a High Court, a person must meet specific eligibility criteria:

(i) Must be a citizen of India.

(ii) Should have held a judicial office in the territory of India for at least 10 years, or

(iii) Must have been an advocate in a High Court (or multiple High Courts) for at least 10 years.

These qualifications ensure that the person appointed as a judge has significant legal experience and expertise.

1.3 Appointment

Judges of the High Courts are appointed by the President of India. The process involves consultation with the Chief Justice of India, the Governor of the concerned state, and in some cases, senior judges of the High Court. This process is designed to maintain a balance of executive, judicial, and state involvement, ensuring the independence and integrity of appointments.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

1.4 Jurisdiction and Functions

1. Original Jurisdiction :
The High Court has the authority to hear certain types of cases first, without those cases being heard by any lower courts. This includes matters relating to the constitutionality of laws, election disputes, and enforcement of fundamental rights.

2. Appellate Jurisdiction :
The High Court acts as an appellate authority, reviewing decisions made by subordinate courts. This applies to civil, criminal, and constitutional matters. It can either uphold or overturn the decisions of the lower courts.

3. Revisory Jurisdiction :
The High Court holds the power to review and revise the judgments of lower courts if it finds that a miscarriage of justice has occurred. It ensures that all legal procedures and principles are correctly applied.

4. Judicial Review :
The High Court has the authority to examine the constitutional validity of laws and executive actions within its territorial jurisdiction. This power is essential to uphold the supremacy of the Constitution and prevent arbitrary government actions.

5. Court of Record :
As a Court of Record, the judgments, proceedings, and orders of the High Court are preserved for future reference. These records serve as precedents and authoritative legal guidance, and the High Court can also punish for contempt of court.

NODIA

1.5 Enforcement of Fundamental Rights and Writs

The High Court is empowered to issue writs for the enforcement of Fundamental Rights

Thus (d) is correct option.

12. All_____are impowered to issue writs.
(a) High Courts
(b) District courts
(c) Members of Parliament
(d) Ministers of the Cabinet

Ans : COMP 2017

Thus (a) is correct option.

13. A Munsif court is authorised to deal with civil cases involving not more than_____.
(a) ₹15,000
(b) ₹20,000
(c) ₹30,000
(d) ₹50,000

Ans : MAIN 2010

Thus (b) is correct option.

14. When a judge decides Civil cases, he/she is called____and when he/she decides criminal cases, he/she is called_____.
(a) Sessions Judge; District Judge
(b) District Judge ; Sessions Judge
(c) Magistrate; District Judge
(d) Magistrate; Sessions Judge

Ans : SQP 2009

Thus (b) is correct option.

15. First class Magistrate can award imprisonment upto____years and/or a fine of ₹_____.
(a) 4 years; ₹20,000
(b) 3 years; ₹10,000
(c) 3 years; ₹5,000
(d) 2 years; ₹5,000

Ans : COMP 2008

Thus (c) is correct option.

16. Second class Magistrate can award imprisonment for not more then_____year or impose a fine of ₹_____or both.

Ans : MAIN 2007

(a) 1 year; ₹1,000
(b) 2 years; ₹5,000
(c) 1 year; ₹2,000
(d) 2 years; ₹1,000

Ans : SQP 2006

Thus (d) is correct option.

17. Lok Adalat means
(a) District Court
(b) People's Court
(c) High Court
(d) Supreme Court

Ans : COMP 2005

Thus (b) is correct option.

18. Suppose the auto-rickshaw driver, who daily takes you to school, was issued a number of traffic violation challans and had to pay a fine of five thousand rupees. He pleaded for reducing the fine but was not shown any mercy. To which court he would go to get speedy redressal of his grievance?
(a) Lok Adalat
(b) Sessions Court
(c) High Court
(d) Supreme Court

Ans : MAIN 2004

Thus (a) is correct option.

ONE MARK QUESTIONS

19. Define High Court's power of Judicial Review.

Ans : MAIN 2016

The High Court exercises the power of Judicial Review to judge the validity of a State law or the Central law.

20. Name the Tribunal over which the High courts do not have the power of Superintendence.

Ans : SQP 2005

The High Court has no power of superintendence over any court of tribunal constituted under any military law.

21. What is the composition of a High Court ?

Ans : COMP 2006

The High Court consists of a Chief Justice and some other Judges.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

Thus (c) is correct option.

3. Given below are details of Indian citizens. Select the ones who are eligible for

Candidate	Age	Details
P	65	Is a distinguished jurist
Q	61	Has been a High Court Advocate for 10 years
R	67	Has been a High Court Advocate for 5 years
S	56	Has held a judicial office for at least 10 years

(a) P and R
(b) Q and S
(c) R and P
(d) Q and R

Ans : MAIN 2024

Thus (b) is correct option.

4. Court of District Judge : Civil Cases : : Sessions Court : _____ Cases
(a) Advisory
(b) Criminal
(c) Constitutional
(d) Appellate

Ans : MAIN 2023

Thus (b) is correct option.

5. How many High Courts are three in India?
(a) 25
(b) 30
(c) 32
(d) 28

Ans : SQP 2022

Thus (a) is correct option.

6. Out of the following Union territories, which Union territory has a High court of it's own?
(a) Chandigarh
(b) Ladakh
(c) New Delhi
(d) Lakshadweep

Ans : COMP 2021

Thus (c) is correct option.

7. What is the maximum age in order to be qualified for appointment as a Judge in High court?
(a) 62 years
(b) 68 years
(c) 65 years
(d) 60 years

Ans : MAIN 2016

Thus (a) is correct option.

8. In order to be qualified as a Judge of a High court, the individual must have held a judicial office in the territory of India or has been an advocate of a High court for atleast
(a) 15 years
(b) 10 years
(c) 5 years
(d) 12 years

Ans : SQP 2014

Thus (b) is correct option.

9. Every High court has the power of interpret the Constitution. This power is known as
(a) Judicial Review
(b) Constitutional Review
(c) High Court Review
(d) Interpretation Review

Ans : COMP 2011

Thus (a) is correct option.

10. _____of High court means that the power to accept appeals against decisions of District courts, in civil as well as criminal matters.
(a) Revisory jurisdiction
(b) Judicial jurisdiction
(c) Appellate jurisdiction
(d) Advisory jurisdiction

Ans : MAIN 2018

Thus (c) is correct option.

11. _____Jurisdiction means that the High court can call for the record of a case which has been decided by a subordinate court:
(a) Advisory (b) Appellate
(c) Confirmatory (d) Revisory

Ans : SQP 2019

NODIA

37. What is a Board of Revenue?

Ans : MAIN 2006

The highest authority in the field of revenue in a State is the Board of Revenue. It works, directly under the High Court. It hears appeals against decision of all the lower courts of revenue under it.

38. What is the purpose of a Family Court ?

Ans : SQP 2007

The purpose of a Family Court is to secure speedy settlement of disputes relating to marriage, family affairs and related matters.

39. Who has the power of superintendence over the District Courts?

Ans : COMP 2008

High Court has the power of superintendence over the district courts.

40. Mention any two states where Lok Adalats have been held.

Ans : MAIN 2019

Lok Adalats have been held in Delhi and Gujarat.

41. Which court at district level has the authority to award a death sentence?

Ans : SQP 2010

The authority to pass a death sentence is given to the Sessions Court but this has to be confirmed by the High Court.

42. Name the highest Criminal Court in a district.

Ans : COMP 2011

The District Sessions Court is the highest Criminal Court in India.

43. What are Subordinate Courts?

Ans : MAIN 2012

All courts below the High Court are called Subordinate Courts. For instance, the District Courts deal with civil cases, Sessions Courts which deal with criminal cases, etc.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

TWO MARKS QUESTIONS

NODIA

44. Mention any two writs issued by the High Court.

Ans : MAIN 2024

Habeas Corpus: This writ is issued to produce a person who has been detained, ensuring the individual's right to liberty.
Mandamus: This writ commands a public authority to perform a duty it is legally obligated to do.

45. By whom is the Chief Justice of a High Court appointed and how is it done ?

Ans : SQP 1985,1997,1985

The Chief Justice of a High Court is appointed by the President of India. The Chief Justice of India (CJI) recommends the appointment, and the President consults with the Governor of the concerned state. In case of a transfer, other Supreme Court judges are also consulted. The final decision rests with the President after completing these consultations. This process ensures judicial independence and merit-based appointments.

46. What are the qualifications of the High Court Judge?

Ans : COMP 1981,1988,1992

1. Citizen of India: The person must be an Indian citizen.
2. Judicial Experience: Must have held a judicial office in the territory of India for at least 10 years, or
3. Advocacy Experience: Must have been an advocate in one or more High Courts for at least 10 years.
4. There is no specific age requirement, but typically, judges are appointed from those with significant legal experience.

47. (i) On which ground can a Judge of a High Court be removed ?
(ii) Who administers the Oath of office to the High Court Judges ?

Ans : MAIN 2011

(i) A Judge of a High Court can be removed on the grounds of proven misbehavior or incapacity. The removal process is initiated through impeachment by Parliament, following a prescribed procedure.

(ii) The Governor of the respective state administers the Oath of office to the High Court Judges before they assume their duties.

48. Define original jurisdiction of the High Court. Mention two types of such cases over which a High Court exercises original jurisdiction.

Ans : SQP 1984,1998,2005,2011

Original jurisdiction of the High Court refers to the authority of the court to hear cases directly, without the case being referred from a lower court.

Two types of cases over which a High Court exercises original jurisdiction are:

1. Matters related to the enforcement of Fundamental Rights under Article 226 of the Constitution.
2. Disputes related to wills, marriage, and divorce, especially in civil cases involving individuals within its territorial limits.

49. How does a High Court act as a guardian of the Constitution ?

or

State whether the High Court has jurisdiction to declare any central law to be constitutionally invalid.

Ans : COMP 1982

The High Court oversees both state and central laws. If it determines that a law contradicts the Constitution, the court has the authority to nullify that law, rendering it inoperative. In this capacity, the High Court serves as the guardian of the Constitution.

50. What is meant by Revisory jurisdiction ?

Ans : MAIN 2009

Revisory jurisdiction refers to the power of a High Court to review and revise the decisions or orders of subordinate courts to ensure that there is no miscarriage of justice or legal error. The High Court can use this power to correct or modify decisions where lower courts may have acted outside their jurisdiction, violated legal procedures, or misapplied the law. This jurisdiction ensures that justice is upheld and that subordinate courts operate within legal boundaries.

51. What is meant by a High Court being a 'Court of Record' ?

Ans : SQP 1986.1996,2001,2012,2015,2019

A High Court being a 'Court of Record' means that its judgments, proceedings, and records are permanently preserved and serve as authoritative references. These records have evidentiary value and can be used as legal precedents in future cases. Additionally, as a Court of Record, the High Court has the power to punish for contempt of court, ensuring respect for its authority and judgments.

52. What do you understand by a Lok Adalat ?

Ans : COMP 2006,2016,2018

A Lok Adalat is a system of alternative dispute resolution in India where cases are settled through compromise and mutual agreement. It offers speedy and cost-effective justice without formal court procedures. Lok Adalats handle civil, family, and minor criminal cases, and their decisions are binding and final, with no appeal allowed.

53. Mention one reason why the system of Lok Adalat has become popular.

Ans : SQP 1991,2008,2011

The Lok Adalat system has become popular because it provides speedy and cost-effective justice, resolving cases quickly through mutual agreement without the lengthy formalities of regular courts.

54. What was the outcome of the First Lok Adalat ?

Ans : COMP 2006

Approximately 150 cases were resolved in

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

a single day, and compensation totaling 3.5 lakhs was disbursed to the accident victims or their families.

55. Mention the three types of courts that a district usually has.

Ans : MAIN 2010

(i) Civil Courts
(ii) Criminal Court
(iii) Courts of Revenue

56. How does the High Court protect the Fundamental Rights of Individuals?

Ans : SQP 2012,2015

The High Court issues writs, including Habeas Corpus, Mandamus, Prohibition, Quo-Warranto, and Certiorari, to safeguard Fundamental Rights.

57. State one point distinction between the District Judge and the Session Judge.

Ans : COMP 2014,2019

District Judge	Session Judge
Primarily handles civil cases	Primarily handles criminal cases, including serious offenses like murder and robbery.

58. Who administers the oath of office to the High Court Judges? By whom is the Chief Justice of a High Court appointed ?

Ans : SQP 2016,2020

Oath of Office for High Court Judges is administered by the Governor of the respective state.
The Chief Justice of a High Court is appointed by the President of India, in consultation with the Chief Justice of India and the Governor of the concerned state.

59. Who can remove a Judge of the High Court ? On what grounds can a Judge of the High Court be removed from office ?

Ans : MAIN 2003

A Judge of the High Court can be removed by the President of India.
The removal can occur on the grounds of proven misbehavior or incapacity, following the process of impeachment by Parliament, which requires a majority vote in both houses.

60. How does the High Court protect the Fundamental Rights of individuals ? What is meant by Revisory Jurisdiction of the High Courts?

Ans : SQP 2005

The High Court protects the Fundamental Rights of individuals by issuing writs under Article 226 of the Constitution, such as Habeas Corpus, Mandamus, Prohibition, Certiorari, and Quo Warranto, to ensure that rights are not violated by the state or authorities.
Revisory Jurisdiction of the High Courts refers to their power to review and revise decisions made by subordinate courts to correct any errors of law or ensure that justice is properly served, especially in cases where lower courts may have overstepped their authority or misapplied the law.

61. Mention two types of Subordinate Courts in a State.

Ans : COMP 2009

(i) Civil Courts – including the Court of the District Judge, which deals with civil cases like property disputes and family matters.
(ii) Criminal Courts – including the Sessions Court, which handles criminal cases such as murder, theft, and other serious offenses.

62. Which is the highest Civil Court in a District ? Name the highest Criminal Court in a district.

Ans :

The highest Civil Court in a district is the Court of the District Judge.
The highest Criminal Court in a district is the Sessions Court.

NODIA
Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

63. Who is the highest Judicial Official at the district level for civil and criminal cases? How are the District Judges in a State appointed?

Ans : COMP 2010

The highest judicial official at the district level for civil cases is the District Judge, and for criminal cases, it is the Sessions Judge.
District Judges in a state are appointed by the Governor of the state, based on recommendations from the High Court. The appointment process considers the qualifications and experience of the candidates, ensuring they meet the required legal standards.

64. Mention any two functions of the Commissioner's Court?

Ans : MAIN 2011

(i) Appellate Jurisdiction: It hears appeals against decisions made by lower revenue courts or authorities, particularly in matters related to land and property disputes.
(ii) Supervisory Authority: It exercises supervisory control over the functioning of revenue officers within its jurisdiction, ensuring proper administration of revenue laws and regulations.

65. Describe the powers of a District Judge.

Ans : SQP 2013

1. Original Jurisdiction: Handles important civil cases such as property and family disputes.
2. Appellate Jurisdiction: Reviews appeals from subordinate civil courts.
3. Administrative Authority: Oversees the functioning of subordinate courts in the district.
4. Supervisory Powers: Supervises civil judges to ensure justice is properly administered.
5. Election Disputes: Handles disputes related to local body elections in some cases.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

66. What procedure is followed in the appointment of the Chief Justice of a High Court ?

Ans : COMP 2012

The Chief Justice of a High Court is appointed by the President of India based on the recommendation of the Chief Justice of India (CJI). The President also consults the Governor of the state before making the formal appointment.

67. What procedure has been laid down for the removal of the Judge of a High Court ?

Ans : MAIN 2014

A judge can only be removed when each House of Parliament passes an address by a majority of its total membership and by at least two-thirds of the members present and voting. This address is then submitted to the President for action.

68. Mention two ways in which the Constitution ensures the independence and impartiality of the High Courts.

Ans : COMP 2015

(i) A judge serves in office until they reach the age of 62. Removal from their position can only occur through the President, based on an address presented by each House of Parliament that demonstrates proven misconduct or incapacity.
(ii) The salaries and allowances of judges are funded from the State's Consolidated Fund.

69. What are the functions of the Sessions Court?

Ans : MAIN 2016

1. Trial of Serious Criminal Cases: It handles serious criminal offenses such as murder, rape, and robbery.
2. Appellate Jurisdiction: The Sessions Court hears appeals against decisions made by lower criminal courts in the district.
3. Sentencing: It has the authority to impose severe punishments, including life imprisonment and, in some cases,

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

the death penalty, subject to High Court confirmation.

4. Bail and Remand: It deals with matters of bail, remand, and pre-trial procedures in serious criminal cases.

70. Mention the jurisdiction of each of the following:
(a) District Judge
(b) Sessions Judge

Ans : COMP 2017

(a) District Judge:
   (i) Handles civil cases such as property disputes and family matters.
   (ii) Hears appeals from subordinate civil courts.

(b) Sessions Judge:
   (i) Deals with serious criminal cases like murder and rape.
   (ii) Hears appeals from lower criminal courts and can impose severe sentences, including the death penalty (with High Court approval).

71. Mention the role of a Lok Adalat.

Ans : SQP 2018

The roles of Lok Adalats are as follows:

1. Leadership and Organization: Lok Adalats are led by qualified judicial officers or other designated individuals and are organized periodically.
2. Mediation and Settlement: They strive to mediate and reach compromises between the disputing parties.
3. Binding Decisions: Decisions made by Lok Adalats are considered equivalent to Civil Court decrees and are binding on all parties involved.
4. Scope of Disputes: They handle disputes related to public utilities, transport services, postal services, communications, and similar areas.

72. Mention one reason why the system of Lok Adalat has become popular.

Ans : MAIN 2019

The Lok Adalat system has gained such popularity that various government departments, including the Telephone Department and Electricity Boards, now organize Lok Adalats, resolving hundreds of cases in a single day.

NODIA

THREE MARKS QUESTIONS

73. The State Judiciary has a High Court as an apex body. In this context, answer the following:
(a) Describe the composition of a High Court?
(b) What is the territorial jurisdiction of a High Court?
(c) How has the independence of the judiciary been ensured?

Ans : MAIN 2024

(a) Each High Court includes a Chief Justice and other judges, who are appointed by the President of India as required. Additionally, the President has the authority to:
   (i) Appoint additional judges for a temporary period, not exceeding two years, to help manage pending cases in the High Court.
   (ii) Appoint acting judges when a permanent judge (other than the Chief Justice) is temporarily unavailable or is assigned as the acting Chief Justice. The acting judge remains in office until the permanent judge resumes their duties.

(b) The Constitution of India establishes a High Court for each state. However, Parliament has the authority to set up a common High Court for two or more states or Union Territories, based on the region's population and the workload of the court. Currently, there are 21 High Courts in India, with two of them having jurisdiction over multiple states.
   (i) A High Court judge serves until the age of 62 and can be removed only by

Quo Warranto, and Certiorari solely for enforcing Fundamental Rights, High Courts can issue these writs for both the enforcement of Fundamental Rights and for other legal matters.

(c) Similar to the Supreme Court, the High Court holds the power of Judicial Review. If any law, executive order, or ordinance passed by the State Legislature or any other authority violates Fundamental Rights or contradicts any provision of the Constitution, the High Court can declare it 'null and void'. The High Court can also withdraw a constitutional case from a Subordinate Court, handle it directly, or send it back with specific directions for further proceedings.

84. All the Courts, at the district level and below are known as Subordinate Courts. In this context, state the provision of the Subordinate Courts with reference to the following:
(a) Civil Courts
(b) Criminal Courts
(c) Courts of Revenue

Ans : MAIN 2023

(a) Civil Courts :
(i) Small or Petty Courts: Headed by junior magistrates, these courts handle minor cases of nominal value, with no right to appeal.
(ii) Munsif's Court: Deals with civil cases involving amounts up to ₹2,000. Appeals are made to the Sub-Judge.
(iii) Court of Civil Judge/Sub Judge: Handles cases between ₹2,000 and ₹5,000 with appeals going to the District Judge.
(iv) Principal Civil Court: The District Judge's Court is the highest civil court, handling cases over ₹5,000 and appeals from Civil Judges. Appeals against District Judge decisions can go to the High Court if the amount involved is at least ₹5,000.

(b) Criminal Courts :
(i) Sessions Court: The highest criminal court in the district, presided over by the District and Sessions Judge, handles serious offenses like robbery, dacoity, and murder. Only the Sessions Judge can award death sentences or life imprisonment, but death sentences must be confirmed by the High Court.
(ii) Chief Metropolitan Magistrate/Chief Judicial Magistrate: Handles less serious offenses, with authority to impose sentences up to seven years but not death or life imprisonment.
(iii) First Class Magistrates: Deal with minor offenses, able to impose imprisonment up to three years or fines up to ₹5,000, and can hear appeals from lower courts.
(iv) Second Class Magistrates: Handle less serious criminal cases and can sentence up to two years imprisonment or fines up to ₹1,000 or both.
(v) Third Class Magistrates: Address petty criminal cases such as minor quarrels, with power to award imprisonment up to one month or a fine up to ₹50 or both.

(c) The Revenue Courts deal with cases relating to the maintenance of land records, assessment and collection of land revenue. The lowest Revenue Court is the Court of the Tehsildar, which hears cases relating to the assessment and collection of revenue from the farmers.

The highest Revenue Court in the district is the Court of the Collector. It hears appeals from the Judgements of the Deputy Collector.

Next in the ladder is the Commissioner's Court. The Commissioner Court extends to all the districts in a particular division. The highest Revenue Court is the Board of Revenue, which functions under the supervision of the High Court. The High Court is the Supreme judicial body in the State, having jurisdiction in Civil, Criminal, Revenue and all other matters.

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

(a) The Chief Justice of a High Court is appointed by the President of India, in consultation with the Chief Justice of India (CJI) and the Governor of the concerned state. Other judges are also appointed by the President, based on recommendations from the CJI and consultation with the state Governor.

(b) A High Court Judge must possess the following qualifications :
   (i) Must be a citizen of India.
   (ii) Should have held a judicial office in India for at least 10 years, or
   (iii) Must have been an advocate of a High Court (or multiple High Courts) for at least 10 years.
   (iv) He should be less than 62 years.

(c) Tenure : A High Court judge holds office until the age of 62.
   Conditions of Service:
   (i) Removal from Office : A judge may be dismissed from their position by the President on the grounds of proven misbehavior or incapacity.
   (ii) Transfer Between High Courts :The President has the authority to transfer a judge from one High Court to another. This action is taken after consulting the Chief Justice of the Supreme Court, who in turn consults four of his senior colleagues.

(d) A Supreme Court judge, including the Chief Justice, serves until reaching the age of sixty-five. A judge may resign by submitting a handwritten letter to the President. Additionally, a judge can be removed from office by the President through impeachment for proven misbehavior or incapacity. This removal process requires an address to be passed in each House of Parliament, supported by a simple majority of the House's total membership and a two-thirds majority of those present and voting in both Houses. The address is then presented to the President. This procedure is known as the impeachment of a judge.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

76. In the light of powers and functions of a High Court, discuss the following:
(a) Original Jurisdiction.
(b) Appellate Jurisdiction.
(c) Administrative Powers of Superintendence.

Ans : COMP 1996,1999,1995,2005,2008,2011

(a) A High Court holds Original Jurisdiction over cases it can hear and decide first-hand. These include:
   (i) Wills, Divorce, Marriage, Admiralty, Company Law, Contempt of Court: High Courts handle cases related to these civil issues directly.
   (ii) Interpretation of Law: Cases that involve the interpretation of the Constitution and other significant laws fall under the High Court's original jurisdiction.
   (iii) Enforcement and Protection: High Courts are empowered to enforce and protect Fundamental Rights, addressing any violations directly.
   (iv) Revenue Matters: Issues related to state revenue and its collection are within the High Court's original jurisdiction.
   (v) Kolkata, Chennai, and Mumbai High Courts: These courts can hear civil cases where the disputed property's value meets or exceeds a specified threshold.

(b) Appellate Jurisdiction refers to the High Court's authority to hear appeals against decisions made by District Courts in both civil and criminal cases. The High Court reviews appeals in the following scenarios:
   (i) Judgments by Assistant Sessions Judges, Chief Metropolitan Magistrates, or Judicial Magistrates: Appeals can be made if the punishment exceeds four years of imprisonment.
   (ii) Sentences Over Seven Years: Appeals against judgments by Assistant Sessions Judges where the imprisonment term exceeds seven years.
   (iii) Death Penalty: Any sentence of death

NODIA

final and binding, with no option for appeal in any court.

(iv) Disputes can be brought directly to Lok Adalats, even before filing a case in a court of law.

(v) Lok Adalats help to reduce the workload of regular courts, thereby minimizing delays in the justice system.

(c) Lok Adalats are essential in addressing the growing backlog of over 2.5 crore pending cases across India. These courts are particularly effective in resolving family disputes, neighborhood conflicts, and minor cases involving assault and injury. Lok Adalats provide significant support to the weaker sections of society, offering them timely justice without the high costs and delays typically associated with regular court procedures.

www.nodia.in

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

district level. Explain the different categories of cases that fall under the jurisdiction of each.

Ans : COMP 2012,2006

(a) (i) Composition of a High Court : The number of judges in a High Court is not fixed and varies between different High Courts. Each High Court is led by a Chief Justice, and the President of India can appoint additional judges as needed.When a High Court faces an increased workload, the President may appoint an Additional Judge for a period of two years. Additionally, the President can designate a qualified individual as an Acting Judge to temporarily replace a judge who is unable to perform their duties due to illness or leave. Similarly, if the Chief Justice is unavailable because of health issues, the President can appoint a Senior Judge from the High Court to serve as the Acting Chief Justice.

(ii) To become a judge in a High Court, the following qualifications are required:

1. Must be a citizen of India.
2. Must have held a judicial office inIndia for at least 10 years, or
3. Must have been an advocate of a High Court (or two or more High Courts) for at least 10 years.

(b) Judges of the High Court hold office until they reach the age of 62 years.

Removal of Judges:

1. A High Court judge can be removed from office on the grounds of proven misbehavior or incapacity. The removal process involves:
2. Impeachment: The process begins with a motion in either House of Parliament.
3. Investigation : A committee investigates the charges.
4. Parliamentary Vote: The motion must be passed by a two-thirds majority in both Houses of Parliament.
5. Presidential Order: After approval by Parliament, the President of India orders the removal of the judge.

(c) (i) District Court (Session Court):

Jurisdiction: The District Court is the highest court at the district level. It handles both civil and criminal cases.

Categories of cases:

1. Criminal Cases: Serious criminal offenses like murder, robbery, rape, and other major crimes.
2. Civil Cases: Major civil disputes involving significant amounts of money, property, divorce, etc.
3. Appeals: It also hears appeals from the lower courts (such as Magistrate courts) in both civil and criminal matters.

(ii) Additional District Court (Additional Sessions Court):

Jurisdiction: These courts are created to manage a heavy caseload in large districts and assist the District Court.

Categories of cases:

1. Criminal Cases: They handle criminal cases that the District Court cannot manage due to a large volume of cases.
2. Civil Cases: They may also deal with civil cases that involve large sums of money or complex legal issues.

(iii)Magistrate Court:

Jurisdiction: The Magistrate Court deals with less serious criminal offenses and civil matters. It is the first level of the judiciary.

Categories of cases:

1. Criminal Cases: Minor offenses like theft, assault, and traffic violations.
2. Civil Cases: Small civil disputes such as family matters, maintenance, or property issues.

79. With reference to the Lok Adalat, explain :
(a) Meaning of the Lok Adalat.
(b) Advantages of Lok Adalat.

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

handed down by lower courts must be confirmed by the High Court.

(iv) Sessions Judge Acquittals: If a Sessions Judge grants an acquittal in a state case, the state can appeal the decision to the High Court.

(c) High Courts possess various supervisory powers over subordinate courts to ensure their proper functioning. These include:

(i) Detailed Reports: High Courts can request comprehensive reports on the operations of subordinate courts.

(ii) Framing Procedures: They have the authority to establish rules that govern the proceedings of subordinate courts.

(iii) Transferring District Judges: High Courts can transfer District Judges between different courts as needed.

(iv) On Deputation: High Courts can recall District Judges who are on deputation to other assignments.

(v) Judicial Service Personnel: They can promote and confirm individuals in the judicial service below the level of District Judge. The Governor, in consultation with the High Court, handles the appointment, promotion, and posting of District Judges.

(vi) Court Records: High Courts can specify the formats for maintaining books, entries, and accounts in subordinate courts

(vii) Subordinate Court Personnel: They have the authority to determine the fees for officers, clerks, and advocates working in subordinate courts.

77. With reference to the Jurisdiction of High Courts explain power to issue writs.

Ans : SQP 1996,2019

(a) Writ of Habeas Corpus : The Writ of Habeas Corpus serves as a protection for an individual's personal liberty. It offers a remedy to someone who is being held unlawfully, whether in custody or by the police. This writ orders the detaining person or authority to present the detainee before the court and justify the reason for their detention. If the justification is found to be inadequate, the detainee must be released immediately.

(b) Writ of Prohibition : The Writ of Prohibition is issued to stop a lower court or authority from exercising powers that it does not legally possess. It directs the inferior court to operate strictly within its designated jurisdiction. This writ serves a preventive function, ensuring that lower courts do not overstep their legal boundaries.

(c) Writ of Quo-Warranto : The Writ of Quo-Warranto is directed against an individual who has unlawfully occupied a public office. This writ demands that the person justify the authority under which they are holding that office. If it is determined that the office is being held without legal right, the writ can declare the position vacant.

(d) Writ of Mandamus : Mandamus, meaning "We command," is a writ issued to compel a lower court or authority to perform its official duties. This writ can be issued specifically to protect Fundamental Rights, ensuring that inferior courts or officials fulfill their legal obligations.

(e) Writ of Certiorari : The Writ of Certiorari allows the High Court to request the records of a particular case from a lower court after a judgment has been rendered. This writ is remedial in nature, enabling the High Court to review and oversee the decisions made by subordinate courts to ensure justice is properly administered.

78. With reference to the Judiciary :

(a) (i) Explain the composition of a High Court.

(ii) State the qualifications required to become a judge in the High Court.

(b) State the term of office of the Judges of the High Court. Explain when and how the Judges can be removed from office.

(c) Name the three types of courts at the

NODIA

Courts historically exercised Original Jurisdiction in all civil and criminal cases involving Christians and Parsees.

(b) (i) Appeals may be filed against the judgment of a Sessions Judge or an Additional Sessions Judge in cases where the imposed sentence of imprisonment exceeds seven years.

(ii) Appeals may be lodged against the decisions of an Assistant Sessions Judge, Chief Metropolitan Magistrate, or other Judicial Magistrates in instances where the sentence of imprisonment surpasses four years.

(c) The jurisdiction of the High Courts under the Constitution remains unchanged from what it was before its implementation. High Courts have the power to review legislative acts and executive orders, and can declare them invalid if they are found to be inconsistent with the provisions of the Constitution.

82. With reference to the powers of the High Court, answer the following questions :

(a) How does the High Court act as a custodian of the Constitution ?

(b) How does the High Court act as a protector of Fundamental Rights ?

(c) What do we mean when we say that the High Court is a 'Court of Record' ?

Ans : SQP 2022

(a) As the Custodian of the Constitution, the High Court holds the power of Judicial Review, similar to the Supreme Court. This authority enables the High Court to scrutinize laws, executive orders, or ordinances issued by the State Legislature or other bodies. If any of these violate the Fundamental Rights or conflict with any part of the Constitution, the High Court has the power to invalidate them. Furthermore, the High Court can extract a constitutional case from a lower court to adjudicate it itself or return it with specific instructions.

(b) The High Court protects Fundamental Rights by issuing writs under Article 226 of the Constitution. These writs, such as Habeas Corpus, Mandamus, Certiorari, Prohibition, and Quo Warranto, allow the High Court to enforce the rights of individuals against unlawful actions by the state or public authorities.

(c) When we say that the High Court is a 'Court of Record', it means that its judgments, proceedings, and records are preserved as legal references. These records have evidentiary value and can be used as precedents in future cases. Additionally, as a Court of Record, the High Court has the power to punish for contempt of court, ensuring respect for its authority and decisions.

83. With reference to the jurisdiction of High Courts, write short notes on :

(a) Revisory Jurisdiction of High Courts.

(b) Its power to issue Writs.

(c) Its power to Judicial Review.

Ans : COMP 2021

(a) The High Court has the authority to review any case decided by a Subordinate Court. If it finds that the Subordinate Court acted beyond its authority or committed a serious irregularity, the High Court can make any order it sees appropriate. Simply put, Revisory jurisdiction allows the High Court to withdraw a case from a Subordinate Court and handle it directly if it determines that the case involves an important constitutional issue.

(b) In addition to the Supreme Court's authority to issue writs for enforcing Fundamental Rights, every High Court also has the power to issue directions, orders, or writs to any person or authority within its jurisdiction. This applies not only for the enforcement of Fundamental Rights but also for other purposes. The High Court's power to issue writs is broader than that of the Supreme Court. While Article 32 allows the Supreme Court to issue writs like Habeas Corpus, Mandamus, Prohibition,

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon

the President of India, following an address by both Houses of Parliament, and only on the grounds of proven misbehavior or incapacity.

(ii) The salaries and allowances of the judges are paid from the Consolidated Fund of the State and cannot be reduced during their tenure.

(c) The President can transfer a judge from one High Court to another only under the following conditions:

(i) The transfer order must be issued after consulting the Chief Justice of India.

(ii) The Chief Justice of India must make the recommendation after consulting the four senior-most judges of the Supreme Court.

(iii) The opinions of the Chief Justices of both the High Court from which the judge is being transferred and the High Court to which the judge is being moved must also be considered.

(iv) After the transfer, the judge is entitled to a compensatory allowance in addition to their salary.

74. The Constitution of India provides for a High Court for each State. With reference to the High Courts and Subordinate Courts, answer the following questions:

(i) Who appoints the judges of the High Court? Mention any two qualifications required for a person to be appointed as a judge of a High Court.

(ii) Mention any three cases that come under the Original Jurisdiction of the High Court.

(iii) What are Lok Adalats? Mention any three advantages of the Lok Adalats.

Ans : MAIN 2023

(i) The judges of the High Court are appointed by the President of India.

Two qualifications required for a person to be appointed as a judge of a High Court:

(a) The person must have been an advocate of a High Court (or two or more such courts in succession) for at least 10 years.

(b) The person must have served as a judge in any subordinate court in

(ii) Three cases that come under the Original Jurisdiction of the High Court :

(a) Fundamental Rights Cases : The High Court has the power to hear cases related to the enforcement of fundamental rights under Article 226.

(b) Election Disputes: Cases related to election disputes for members of the Legislative Assembly or Parliament are within the original jurisdiction of the High Court.

(c) Civil and Criminal Cases: In some matters, the High Court can directly hear civil and criminal cases, particularly those that are serious in nature.

(iii) Lok Adalats are a system of alternative dispute resolution in India where cases are settled amicably through mediation and conciliation, often without the formal procedures of courts. Three advantages of Lok Adalats:

(a) Cost-effective: There are no court fees for cases heard in Lok Adalats, making it an affordable option for dispute resolution.

(b) Quick Resolution: Cases are resolved quickly without the prolonged delays often seen in regular courts.

(c) Binding Decisions: The awards passed by Lok Adalats are legally binding, and there is no provision for appeal, ensuring finality in the settlement.

NODIA

75. As regard the High Court answer the following questions :

(a) Appointment of a Chief Justice and other Judges of a High Court.

(b) Qualifications.

(c) Tenure and conditions of service.

(d) Impeachment.

Ans : SQP 2019,2008

85. Today Criminal Courts in a district have a three-tier structure. In this context describe:
(a) The organisation of the Sessions Court
(b) The organisation of the Court of the Chief Judicial Magistrate
(c) The organisation of the Courts of First Class and Second Class Judicial Magistrates

Ans : SQP 2020

(a) The Sessions Court is the highest criminal court in a district, headed by the District and Sessions Judge. It handles serious criminal cases like murder, dacoity, and robbery. The Sessions Judge has the authority to award death sentences or life imprisonment, though death sentences must be confirmed by the High Court. There are also Additional Sessions Judges who assist with the caseload.

(b) The Chief Metropolitan or Chief Judicial Magistrate is authorized to impose imprisonment for a maximum of 7 years. Therefore, they do not have the authority to issue a death sentence or life imprisonment.

(c) First Class Judicial Magistrates handle minor criminal cases and have the authority to impose imprisonment up to three years or a fine up to ₹5,000 or both.They can also hear appeals from lower courts. Second Class Judicial Magistrates deal with less serious criminal cases, with the power to impose imprisonment up to two years or fines up to ₹1,000 or both.

Download INDIA's Best Study app NODIA

CASE BASED QUESTION

86. Study the picture and answer the following questions.

(a) Identify the court whose logo is given in the picture on the right. How do these courts function?
(b) What are the advantages of resolution of disputes through such courts ?
(c) What is the scope of a Lok Adalat in India?

Ans : COMP 2024

(a) The logo represents Lok Adalat (People's Court). A Lok Adalat is a people's court, consisting of public-spirited individuals such as Supreme Court judges, lawyers, students, and social workers. These courts facilitate the speedy settlement of disputes by encouraging parties to bring their cases voluntarily.

Key Principles of Lok Adalats:

1. Presided over by judicial officers or other qualified individuals, as prescribed by the state.
2. Aim to achieve compromise or settlement between disputing parties.
3. Organized periodically to handle cases.
4. Their decisions are treated as decrees of a Civil Court and are binding.
5. Resolve disputes related to public utilities, such as transport, postal, and communication services.

(b) The advantages of settling disputes through Lok Adalats include:
(i) Compromise-based approach: Lok Adalats aim to resolve conflicts through mutual agreement.
(ii) They provide quick and affordable justice.
(iii) Decisions made by Lok Adalats are

Downloaded from www.pdf.tube

Ans : MAIN 2015.2020,2012

(a) A Lok Adalat (People's Court) is an alternative dispute resolution mechanism in India, where cases are settled amicably without going through the formal court process. It provides a platform for disputing parties to resolve their issues through mutual agreement, ensuring faster and cost-effective justice.

(b) Advantages of a Lok Adalat are as under:

(i) Speedy Justice: Cases are resolved quickly, without the delays of traditional court procedures.

(ii) Cost-Effective: There are no court fees, and the process is affordable for all parties.

(iii) Final and Binding Decisions: The decisions are final, with no provision for appeal, ensuring closure.

(iv) Reduces Burden on Courts: It helps reduce the caseload of regular courts, speeding up the overall judicial process.

80. A High Court consists of a Chief Justice and other judges whose number the Parliament may fix from time to time. As regards the composition of the High Court, answer the following questions:

(a) How are the Chief Justice and other Judges of the High Court appointed?

(b) State three qualifications for appointment as a Judge of the High Court ?

(c) Mention two ways in which the Constitution ensures the independence and impartiality of the High Courts.

Ans : SQP 2011

(a) The Chief Justice and other judges of the High Court are appointed by the President of India. The appointment of the Chief Justice involves consultation with the Chief Justice of India (CJI) and the Governor of the respective state. For other judges, the President consults the CJI and other senior judges.

(b) To be eligible for a appointment as a judge of the High Court a person must :

(i) The person must be a citizen of India.

(ii) Must have held a judicial office in India for at least 10 years, or

(iii) Must have been an advocate of a High Court (or multiple High Courts) for at least 10 years.

(c) The independence of High Courts is maintained by ensuring judges have secure tenure and protected salaries and allowances. Additionally, High Courts uphold their autonomy by:

(i) Controlling Procedures and Establishment: They have full authority over their working methods and organizational structure.

(ii) Contempt Powers: They can penalize individuals for contempt of court, safeguarding their authority.

(iii) Legislative Protection: The conduct of High Court judges is not subject to discussion in the State Legislature, preventing political interference. These measures collectively ensure that High Courts operate freely and without undue influence.

81. With reference to the powers of the High Court, briefly describe the following :

(a) What is meant by the Original Jurisdiction of the High Court ? Mention two types of cases in which the High Court exercises Original Jurisdiction.

(b) Mention two types of cases in which the High Court exercises Appellate Jurisdiction.

(c) How does the High Court control the power of the Legislature and the Executive?

Ans : MAIN 2023

(a) Original Jurisdiction means that certain types of cases can be directly filed in the High Court, bypassing subordinate courts.

(i) The High Court can directly hear cases related to wills, divorce, marriage, company law, and contempt of court.

(ii) The Bombay and Madras High

Visit :
www.pdf.tube

Download PDFs For :

- ✓ Chapterwise Question Bank
- ✓ JEE NEET Foundation
- ✓ Primary Classes Worksheets
- ✓ Olympiad Guide
- ✓ Sample Papers
- ✓ Previous Year Papers
- ✓ Previous JEE Papers
- ✓ Previous NEET Papers

Nodia Editions LLP
125, Sector 6, Vidhyadhar Nagar, Jaipur 302039

MRP ₹ 410.00

Click Here to Buy book on Amazon